This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world’s books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that’s often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book’s long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

+ **Make non-commercial use of the files** We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.

+ **Refrain from automated querying** Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google’s system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.

+ **Maintain attribution** The Google “watermark” you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.

+ **Keep it legal** Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can’t offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book’s appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google’s mission is to organize the world’s information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world’s books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at [http://books.google.com/](http://books.google.com/)
Caesar's Gallic war

Julius Caesar, Arthur Tappan Walker, Cornelius Marshal Lowe, John Thomas Ewing
GIFT OF
Provost
Monroe E. Deutsch

EX LIBRIS
Zelda Mikelson
442 Locust St.
Kansas City Mo.
GAIUS JULIUS CAESAR
From a bust in the British Museum
CAESAR'S GALIC WAR

WITH INTRODUCTION, NOTES, VOCABULARY
AND GRAMMATICAL APPENDIX

BY

ARTHUR TAPPAN WALKER, Ph.D.
PROFESSOR OF LATIN IN THE UNIVERSITY OF KANSAS

A REVISION OF THE EDITION BY
C. M. LOWE, Ph.D., AND J. T. EWING, M.A.

SCOTT, FORESMAN AND COMPANY
CHICAGO—NEW YORK
PREFACE

In its general plan the present edition of Caesar is based on that of Lowe and Ewing, first published in 1891. It retains the features which gave distinction to that book, the most important of which are thus described in its preface:

"The vocabularies, notes, illustrations, and explanatory matter have been placed on the same page with the text, thus saving the student's time, which is uselessly spent in turning leaves and searching for explanations which are here placed immediately before him. At the same time, self-reliance is secured by the use of a separate text in the classroom, without either notes or vocabulary. The special vocabularies have been arranged so that the first four books and the rest of the annotated text may be read consecutively, or the war with Ariovistus (Bk. I, chaps. 30-54) may be omitted and the valuable and less familiar matter substituted from the annotated chapters of Bks. V-VII. An opportunity for sight reading is afforded in the unannotated parts of these latter books."

While the general plan of the earlier edition has been followed, in all details the book has been rewritten from beginning to end. In its preparation three definite purposes have been kept steadily in mind:

1. To help the pupil to follow the narrative understandingly.
2. To give the pupil, especially at the beginning of his reading, a systematic drill on all the common syntactical principles.
3. To exclude all bits of antiquarian and grammatical lore which, however valuable in themselves, have no direct bearing on an appreciation of Caesar's language or story.

The Study of Caesar's Narrative. It is surely a pedagogical mistake to let a pupil carry away from the study of Caesar nothing but a memory of ablatives absolute and indirect discourse. These things he must learn as a preparation for further reading, it is true, and the language must be his chief study; but there is danger that
a year of grammar only will not tempt him to the further reading for which he has been preparing. Caesar tells an interesting story and tells it well. The universal testimony of the ages to the greatness of his writing is not founded on a universal love for grammar. The interest in finding out what Caesar did should serve as an incentive to solve his sentences. Moreover, a neglect of Caesar's thought is wrong on principle. The habit of careful attention to the subject-matter is the one thing best worth cultivating, whether one reads English or a foreign language; and this should not be forgotten in teaching Caesar.

Therefore as much as possible has been done in the notes and maps to assist in an understanding of the narrative, without introducing any discussion of disputed points. Every effort has been made to adopt the most reasonable theory for each campaign, and to make every note, plan, and map consistent with that theory.

The pupil's progress through the story must be slow, and, however well he understands each move in Caesar's game, he will have difficulty in grasping the whole. It is hoped that the campaign maps may lessen this difficulty by putting before the eyes the total results of the campaigns. In each map the route is laid out on a map of all Gaul, because only in this way can the relation of any one campaign to the whole of Caesar's task be kept constantly before the mind. The system of coloring shows the condition of Gaul at the end of each campaign,—how much had been reduced by fighting, how much had yielded without fighting, and how much was yet untouched. A comparison of any two maps will show the results of the intervening operations.

*System in Grammar References.* An attempt has been made to facilitate and even insure, early in the study of Caesar, a systematic drill on the more important case and mode constructions. In the notes on Book I, 1-29, it is believed that references are given for all the most common constructions. In general, the cases are emphasized during the earlier chapters, and the modes during the later. To each construction reference is made three times, two
sets of references being given close together, that they may re-
enforce each other, and the third after a few chapters, that the point
may be clinched by review. And these references are made not
only to the grammatical Appendix given in this book, but also to
five leading grammars.

In Book II the same references are given, as nearly as possible
in the same order; but the references for each chapter are grouped
together after the notes of that chapter. In this way opportunities
for the same grammatical drill are afforded, whether the class be-
gins with Book I or Book II; but, if the class begins with Book I,
these references in Book II may be omitted as unnecessary.

With such a system it is natural and right to postpone to later
chapters or books the consideration of certain constructions.
Thus, conditions and the details of indirect discourse are post-
poned to Book I, 30-54, tenses to Book III. If the teacher does
not like the order of presentation he can easily supply needed refer-
ences; but if he will insist on the study of the references as they
come in the notes, it is believed that he will find the necessary
ground covered thoroughly and systematically.

Exclusion of Non-essentials. Many things are known or are
guessed about ancient military science which in no way help the
pupil to understand Caesar. Many facts and theories of grammar
are suggested by Caesar's language which the pupil might find use-
ful at some later day, but which help him neither in translating
Caesar nor in writing the Latin composition which should accom-
pany the reading. An honest attempt has been made to give what
is helpful and to exclude the useless lumber, though it is not hoped,
much less expected, that all teachers would draw the line where
the editor has drawn it.

Beginning with Book II. The most dreaded portions of Caesar
are his indirect discourse. and unfortunately the majority of the
speeches are found in the first book. Though the fear of indirect
discourse is largely traditional, and though the construction is not
really difficult for one who is properly grounded in the essentials
of Latin, yet it is clearly a misfortune that the pupil should en-
counter its full difficulties at a time when the ordinary narrative gives him trouble enough. Moreover, it is questionable whether it is worth while to drill the pupil on all details of the construction, since he will see very little indirect discourse elsewhere in his preparatory course. For these reasons many teachers seek to make the pupil’s path easier by reading the second book before the first, or by omitting chapters 30–54 of the first book, in which chapters the construction chiefly abounds. In preparing this edition everything possible has been done to make feasible either of these plans, without throwing any obstacles in the way of a consecutive reading from the first. But the editor feels strongly that Book I, 1–29 should be read first. The latter part of the book may well be omitted entirely, and one or more of the very interesting annotated portions of the last three books may be substituted for it.

No editor of Caesar can escape a debt of gratitude to Mr. T. Rice Holmes for having discussed with such impartiality and thoroughness the geographical and military questions of the Gallic War. Caesar’s Conquest of Gaul, by Mr. Holmes, should be in the hands of every teacher of Caesar. Though the present editor has found it impossible to agree with all its conclusions, the book is so fair in its discussions that he is under equal obligations whether he agrees or disagrees with the author.

The text of the Lowe and Ewing edition was Kranner’s. In the present edition Meusel’s readings have been substituted for the most part, but not completely. The quantities are marked in accordance with the revised edition of Lane’s Grammar. A few doubtful words were submitted to the decision of Professor Hanns Oertel, of Yale University, who prepared the chapter on Sound in that Grammar. For his ready assistance, thanks are due.

It would be impossible to mention by name all who have assisted the editor by suggestion and in various ways. The labor of preparing the Vocabulary was largely performed by Mr. Earl W. Murray, a former graduate student, now Assistant Professor in the University of Kansas. Mr. Murray also prepared the first draft of the systematized references for Book I, 1-29, and Book II. For the
preparation of the Index the editor is indebted to Miss Martha Whitney. Professor Charles Knapp, of Columbia University, gave the early part of the book the benefit of a most searching and helpful criticism. From beginning to end the editor has been under deep obligations to the editors-in-chief of the series.

Arthur Tappan Walker.
TABLE OF CONTENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Preface</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>List of Maps and Illustrations</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduction</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I. The Importance of the Gallic Campaigns</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II. Life of Caesar</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III. Chronological Table</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV. Caesar as General</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V. Caesar as Author</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VI. The Gauls</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VII. Caesar's Army</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A Brief Bibliography</td>
<td>38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>List of Abbreviations</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Book I, 1-29</td>
<td>41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Book I, 30-54</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Book II</td>
<td>115</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Book III</td>
<td>160</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Book IV</td>
<td>215</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>252</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
MAPS AND ILLUSTRATIONS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>General Map of Gaul</td>
<td>Front Cover</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Caesar (Bust in British Museum)</td>
<td>Frontispiece</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pila</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gladius and Vagina</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Roman Soldiers</td>
<td>Facing 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plan of a Roman Camp</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Camp on the Axona</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vallum and Fossa</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Roman Officers and Gauls</td>
<td>Facing 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gallic Wall</td>
<td>33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Storming a City</td>
<td>Facing 34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Agger</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plutei</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Musculus</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vinea</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Catapulta</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prow of Galley</td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Campaign Map for Book I, 1-29</td>
<td>Facing 42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fortifications on the Rhone</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Battle with the Helvetii, first stage</td>
<td>104</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Battle with the Helvetii, second stage</td>
<td>108</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Campaign Map for Book I, 30-54</td>
<td>Facing 117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Battle with Ariovistus</td>
<td>153</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Campaign Map for Book II</td>
<td>Facing 162</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Battle on the Axona</td>
<td>177</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Battle on the Sabis</td>
<td>191</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Town of the Atuatuci</td>
<td>207</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Campaign Map for Book III</td>
<td>Facing 217</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Galba's Camp</td>
<td>219</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Operations against the Veneti</td>
<td>232</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Campaign Map for Book IV</td>
<td>Facing 254</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Caesar's Bridge</td>
<td>272</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pile-driver</td>
<td>273</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
INTRODUCTION

I. THE IMPORTANCE OF THE GALIC CAMPAIGNS

The Commentaries on the Gallic War are Caesar's own story of how he conquered the peoples living in what is now France and some of the lands bordering on France. He has told his story simply and directly. It was his genius that made the conquest possible, and the story could not be true without making this evident; but he has spoken of himself as if the writer and the general were different men, and there is no boasting. He has not explained to us the great importance of the war to the Roman state; there is no suggestion of its importance to his personal career; much less has he hinted at his own importance in the history of Rome and the world. These things must be learned from a study of history, not from Caesar's story.

Effect on Rome. Rome was the governing nation of ancient times. In Caesar's time she had conquered the other nations which touched the Mediterranean, and was governing most of them as provinces; that is, she sent Roman governors to them and collected taxes from them. In this way she governed a comparatively narrow strip of land in southern Gaul; and as this was the particular province which Caesar was sent to govern, he calls it simply "the Province," Provincia (see map). This province was only partially protected by mountains and rivers from the semicivilized and warlike Gauls on the north; and for this reason it could never be sure of peace and safety until the rest of Gaul was conquered. Moreover, the land on the north was productive and well worth having.
Therefore Caesar's conquest of Gaul was justified, from a Roman point of view, both by the value of the land and by the necessity of protecting the Province.

3 Effect on Gaul. But there was a better reason for that conquest. Though the Gauls were brave they were no match for the less civilized Germans, who lived across the Rhine. Just at the time when Caesar took command of his province the Germans had begun crossing the Rhine in great numbers and were driving the Gauls out of their homes. If this movement had not been checked, the homeless Gauls would have been driven to attack Roman territory; and if the Gauls had been exterminated between the Germans and the Romans, then the Romans would have found the Germans still more dangerous neighbors than the Gauls. For the Gauls themselves, too, it was far better to be conquered by the civilized Romans than by the uncivilized Germans. The one means of safety for both Gauls and Romans was that the Romans should govern all the country west of the Rhine and should hold the Germans at bay on the other side of that great river. This was the result of Caesar's conquest of Gaul; and this result is the great justification of his bloody warfare there.

4 Effect on Caesar. In their effect on Caesar's own career the Gallic campaigns were all-important, and his career changed the course of history. In Gaul he gained military experience and the devotion of his army. By the aid of that army he overthrew a constitution under which the Roman state was going to ruin, and laid the foundations of an empire which lived for centuries. No doubt he did this from selfish and ambitious motives; but his ambition was so great that it could never have been satisfied until he had brought the empire he ruled to the highest possible degree of excellence, and his genius was so great that he saw the needful measures and the means to carry them out. The daggers of his assassins gave him too short a time to complete his work; but he did enough to prove himself the greatest man in Roman history.
II. Life of Caesar

Early Years, and Choice of Party. Gaius Julius Caesar was born in the year 102 B.C., on the 12th day of the month which was then called Quintilis, but which we now, in his honor, call July. Tradition traced the descent of the Julian family back beyond the foundation of Rome, and even to the goddess Venus as its remote ancestor. Caesar, therefore, belonged to the Roman nobility, and in the continuous strife between the Senatorial, or Aristocratic, and the Democratic parties, might have been expected to side with the aristocrats. But none of his own family had been very conspicuous in the state, and his aunt had married Marius, the greatest leader of the Democratic party, the great general who had saved Rome by his victories over the Cimbrici and Teutoni. It was natural that his ambition should be fired by his uncle's career, and that his sympathies should incline toward the Democratic party. When he was only fifteen Marius made him priest of Jupiter, an office of some honor and few duties; and in 83, after the death of Marius, he deliberately identified himself with the Democratic party by marrying Cornelia, the daughter of the new leader of that party, Cinna.

Overthrow of Caesar's Party. But the power of the Democratic party was almost at an end. In 83 Sulla, the leader of the Aristocratic party, returned to Italy with his victorious army, after fighting for several years against Mithradates, in the East. A bloody contest drove the Democrats from power; and in 82 the victor, determined to make a revival of that party impossible, slaughtered its eminent men and so changed the constitution of the state that the Senate was in full control. The young Caesar, as nephew of Marius and son-in-law of Cinna, was too conspicuous to be overlooked. Sulla ordered him to divorce Cornelia. Caesar refused, and had to flee for his life until influential friends persuaded Sulla to

\footnote{Or perhaps in the year 100 B.C.}
pardon him. Sulla's grudging consent is said to have been coupled with the warning that Caesar would prove as dangerous as many Mariuses.

7 Weakness of Opposite Party. But the form of government set up by Sulla did not stand long, and the years which followed his death made more and more clear the need of some strong man who should give order and stability to the state. During those same years Caesar was testing and developing the powers which were to make him the man to do this work.

8 Revival of Caesar's Party. When Sulla died, in 78, the Senate was in complete control: the Democratic party had neither a leader nor any chance to use its strength. Gradually the Senate lost this control, until, in 70, under the consuls Pompey and Crassus, the changes made by Sulla were completely done away with and the Democratic party again had an opportunity, if it could but find a leader. For a time Pompey seemed likely to be this leader. In 66 the people, contrary to the wishes of the Senatorial party, elected him general to serve against Mithradates. This gave him supreme control in Asia Minor, but kept him out of Rome for the next four years.

9 Development of Caesar's Powers. During all this time Caesar was developing his powers of leadership. He got a taste of military service in Asia Minor, and at twenty-two he won the civic crown of oak leaves for saving the life of a fellow citizen in battle; but as yet he seems to have had no thought of gaining distinction as general. A born politician, he loved the game of politics for its own sake as well as for its rewards. An excellent orator, both by nature and by training, he used his oratorical powers in furthering the plans of his party. He made friends easily, and his influence over them was strong. Therefore, before he was old enough to take office he was a great favorite with the people and a much sought for ally in political scheming; and at the earliest age permitted by law he was elected without difficulty to the offices of Quaestor (for 68), Aedile (for 65), and Praetor (for 62). The greatest test
of his popularity came in 63, when the office of Pontifex Maximus fell vacant and Caesar was elected to this most honorable position over the strongest candidate the Senatorial party could put forward.

**Caesar's First Military Command.** But in spite of his ability and popularity, in the year 63 Caesar was thought of as only a shrewd politician. Rome looked upon Pompey as her greatest man, because he was her greatest general; and Caesar knew that if he should come into conflict with Pompey his shrewdness could never prove a match for Pompey's army and generalship. Caesar felt that he too must be a general, but he did not know whether he could be; for he had never had an opportunity to try his powers. The opportunity offered itself in 61, when he was sent to govern a part of Spain. There he fought with great success against some of the native tribes. His victories were not very important in themselves, and they attracted no great attention in Rome; but they showed Caesar what he could do and made him anxious for a larger field of operations.

**Caesar's Consulship.** Caesar now wanted the consulship, the highest office in the state: if he got it he intended to carry through some measures which would be opposed by the Senatorial party. He therefore needed strong friends. Pompey had returned in triumph from the war with Mithradates, but the Senate had refused to grant some reasonable requests which he had made of it. Crassus too had a grievance against the Senate. With these two men Caesar made a secret agreement that each should further the interests of the others; and thus Caesar, Pompey, and Crassus formed what is known in history as the First Triumvirate, a mere personal agreement, with no public sanction. The influence of Pompey and Crassus helped in securing Caesar's election to the consulship for the year 59, and also assisted him, when consul, in passing measures which were for the advantage of each of the three allies. For himself Caesar took a five-year term of office as governor of Cisal-
pine Gaul (the northern part of Italy), Illyricum (north and east of the Adriatic Sea), and Transalpine Gaul (then including only the southern part of France). To protect these provinces he was given an army of four legions.

12 Caesar's Command in Gaul. In 58, therefore, Caesar entered upon his command. Partly because it was best for the province and the state (cf. 2 and 3), and partly because he needed the training and the reputation of a general (cf. 10), he determined to conquer all the rest of Gaul. How he did this he tells us himself in the Commentaries; and a brief summary prefixed to each book in this edition makes it unnecessary to tell the story here. Since he found the five years originally given him too short for the full accomplishment of his purpose, he secured an additional five years. By the year 50 the last trace of resistance to Roman authority had been crushed, and Caesar's great task was completed. Moreover, he now had a perfectly disciplined, veteran army, enthusiastically devoted to its leader.

13 Outbreak of Civil War. It was high time that Caesar should have his hands free, for a greater task lay before him. For several years Pompey and Crassus had looked out for his interests in Rome. But in 53 Crassus was killed in battle; and at about the same time Pompey began to feel jealous of Caesar's success and fearful of his power. He gradually turned away from Caesar and attached himself to the Senatorial party, which had always hated Caesar. On the first day of the year 49 the Senate voted that Caesar should lay down his command and return to Rome as a private citizen, though the time for which the command had been given him had not yet expired. Caesar was then in Cisalpine Gaul, and his reply was an immediate march toward Rome.

14 Weakness of the Constitutional Government. But during Caesar's absence from Rome the complete failure of the constitutional form of government had shown that the so-called republic could not exist much longer. Trials and elections were decided by bribery and bloodshed. The governing party
had been so weak that for one entire year a succession of riots had prevented the holding of elections. Now when it was attacked by Caesar it again showed its weakness. Although it had taken steps which were sure to bring on civil war it had done nothing to prepare for that war, except to appoint Pompey its commander-in-chief. In about two months from the time when Caesar marched into northern Italy, Pompey set sail from southern Italy with his army and most of the Senate, leaving Rome and Italy in Caesar's hands.

Civil War Makes Caesar Master of Rome. But the hardest 15 fighting of his life lay before Caesar. Pompey had crossed the Adriatic only to gain time for preparation. Besides, while Pompey's strong army lay on the east of Italy, there was another large army of Caesar's enemies in Spain, on the west. But Caesar's magnificent army and wonderful generalship carried him through all difficulties. In 49 he marched to Spain and defeated his enemies there. In 48 he followed Pompey across the Adriatic and utterly routed his army in the great battle of Pharsalus. Pompey himself fled to Egypt and was assassinated by order of the counselors of the Egyptian king. Caesar followed him to Egypt with an insufficient force and was blockaded for several months in the city of Alexandria by the Egyptian army. Meanwhile the remnants of Pompey's army made their way to the northern coast of Africa, and a new army was there organized to oppose Caesar. In 46 Caesar defeated this army too, at Thapsus, so decisively that he is said to have lost but fifty men while fifty thousand of the enemy fell. Then the sons of Pompey rallied the last opponents of Caesar, in Spain, for a final struggle, and Caesar's victory at Munda in 45 made him the undisputed master of the Roman world.

Caesar as Statesman. Caesar was no mere soldier, and it was 16 from no choice of his own that he spent all these years in fighting. He became a general because that was the only way to achieve his purpose of becoming sole ruler of Rome. But that purpose was not prompted wholly by personal ambition.
He had begun as a politician and had matured into a great statesman. There had been many abuses in the state, and the civil war had brought in confusion as well. With characteristic energy and clear-sightedness he set himself to bring order out of chaos, to organize the whole empire, and to improve its details. To carry out this work he needed the best men in the state, regardless of party: hence he pardoned those who had fought against him and gave some of them positions of high honor and great responsibility. He reformed the calendar. He took measures to remedy the financial disorders of the country. He planned a codification of the laws. He intended to carry out some great engineering feats, among others the cutting of a canal through the isthmus of Corinth. In order to protect the frontiers of the empire he planned military expeditions against the Parthians and the nations along the Danube.

**Assassination of Caesar.** Such enormous plans needed time for their execution, and time was denied to Caesar. A form of government which had stood for centuries could not be overthrown without grieving some true lovers of their country. One man could not make himself the master of all others, who had previously been his equals, without arousing jealousy. One man could not select the men to fill all offices without disappointing many. Men of all these classes, patriots, would-be rivals, and disappointed office seekers, joined in a conspiracy, and on the fifteenth of March, 44 B.C., Caesar fell beneath their daggers while presiding over a meeting of the Senate. The history of the following years shows the folly of this murder. For themselves the assassins reaped only death, since in a very few years every one whose fate is known had died by violence. For the state the deed was equally disastrous, since the assassination of Caesar merely caused a bloody civil war to intervene between his rule and that of Augustus.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>B.C.</th>
<th>Caesar's Age</th>
<th>Event</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>101</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Marius defeats the Cimbri.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>87</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>Marius appoints Caesar Priest of Jupiter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>86</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>Death of Marius. Cinna is Dictator.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>83</td>
<td>19</td>
<td>Caesar marries Cornelia, daughter of Cinna, the Dictator.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>82</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>Sulla becomes perpetual Dictator. He proscribes and pardons Caesar.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Caesar leaves Rome for the East.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>80</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>Caesar wins the civic crown at Mytilene.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>78</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>Sulla dies. Caesar returns to Rome.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>76</td>
<td>26</td>
<td>Caesar sails to Rhodes to study under Molo.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>74</td>
<td>28</td>
<td>Caesar is elected Military Tribune and Pontifex.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>70</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>Consulship of Pompey and Crassus. The Sullan constitution is overthrown.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>68</td>
<td>34</td>
<td>Caesar is Quaestor.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>65</td>
<td>37</td>
<td>Caesar is Curule Aedile.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>63</td>
<td>39</td>
<td>Caesar is elected Praetor and Pontifex Maximus. Cicero is Consul.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Conspiracy of Catiline exposed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>62</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>Caesar is Praetor. Pompey returns from the East.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>61</td>
<td>41</td>
<td>Caesar is Propraetor in Farther Spain.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60</td>
<td>42</td>
<td>Caesar is elected Consul. &quot;First Triumvirate&quot; is formed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>59</td>
<td>43</td>
<td>Caesar is Consul. He marries Calpurnia.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>58</td>
<td>44</td>
<td>Caesar becomes Proconsul of Gaul. Campaigns against the Helvetii and Ariovistus. Cicero is exiled.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>57</td>
<td>45</td>
<td>Caesar conquers the Belgae. Recall of Cicero.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>56</td>
<td>46</td>
<td>Caesar's campaign in Brittany.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55</td>
<td>47</td>
<td>Caesar invades Britain and Germany. Pompey and Crassus are joint Consuls for the second time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>54</td>
<td>48</td>
<td>Caesar invades Britain a second time. Death of Julia.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53</td>
<td>49</td>
<td>The northeastern Gauls rebel. Crassus is slain.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>General revolt of the Gauls. Alienation of Pompey.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51</td>
<td>51</td>
<td>Caesar completes the conquest of Gaul.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50</td>
<td>52</td>
<td>The quarrel between Caesar and the Senate.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49</td>
<td>53</td>
<td>Civil War. Caesar is made Dictator.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48</td>
<td>54</td>
<td>Caesar defeats Pompey at Pharsalus. Pompey is killed in Egypt.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>The &quot;Alexandrian War.&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>47</td>
<td>55</td>
<td>Caesar, again Dictator, reorganizes the government.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>46</td>
<td>56</td>
<td>The &quot;African War.&quot; The Pompeians defeated at Thapsus.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45</td>
<td>57</td>
<td>The &quot;Spanish War.&quot; Battle of Munda.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44</td>
<td>58</td>
<td>Caesar Dictator for life. Assassinated March 15th.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The Commentaries present Caesar to our view as a military leader of the first rank, and yet he had reached middle life before he held an independent command. During his youth, when the fascinations of "war's wild trade" may have attracted him, all the channels to military preferment were closed to him on account of his connection with the Marian party. When he finally turned his attention to war, he brought the calm calculation of the man of affairs seeking to accomplish certain desirable ends through its agency. Neither the charm nor the traditions of camp and field life held sway over his mind. Love of military glory alone never lured him on, nor was the sweep of his genius hampered by the shackles of an exclusively military training.

Characteristics as General. The Commentaries reveal his method. He clearly conceived the object desired and took the most direct way possible to reach it. When it best suited his purpose he was deliberate and cautious, watching for the best opportunity to strike a crushing blow. Yet in an emergency he would coolly carry out the most daring plans, so that he sometimes appears even reckless; but this apparent recklessness was the result of swift and unerring decision, based on a keen insight into the character and probable action of his opponents. He always took the offensive and endeavored to concentrate his force and strike the enemy unexpectedly. He made up by quickness of movement for his lack of numbers. In battle he was cool and confident. He was devoid of fear, and when necessary fought in the foremost ranks. If the enemy fled he pursued him vigorously with his cavalry, slaughtering without mercy as long as a man was to be reached. He was sometimes cruel from policy, though naturally clement.

Power over his Men. Caesar won the entire devotion of his army, and this was one of the secrets of his success. He was careful of the comfort and lives of his men. He saw
to it that they had an abundance of supplies. He cautioned them against unnecessary risk in battle, and sometimes refused to allow them to fight in dangerous places even when they wished to do so. He ruled by tact rather than by fear. He generously rewarded their valor and fidelity, and knew how to rouse them on occasion to the highest pitch of enthusiasm. But such statements only partially account for his ascendancy over their minds. He possessed in the fullest measure that combination of natural qualities which makes a man a born leader. Therefore his army was the obedient instrument of his will and endured unexampled hardships without a murmur.

V. CAESAR AS AUTHOR

Caesar's genius was many-sided, and he might have been no less eminent as an orator and an author than as a statesman and a general, if he had chosen those fields of activity for their own sake. Even as it was, though he spoke and wrote mainly for political effect, he was recognized by his contemporaries as an orator second only to Cicero, and the simplicity, clearness, and terseness of his Commentaries have made them a classic from his day to our own. In the purity of their Latinity they rank with Cicero's works as the best that have come down to us. The interest of the narrative and the quality of the generalship shown in it have made the book a favorite with some of the world's greatest generals. The great Napoleon, for example, recommended it to his officers and himself wrote an abstract of it.

Purpose in Writing the Commentaries on the Gallic War. Yet the book was written hastily, probably in the winter of 52-51, after the events narrated in Book VII; and it was written for a political purpose. Absent from Rome and deprived of his two chief supporters by the death of Crassus and the alienation of Pompey, Caesar wished to put himself in a good light before the Roman people. With such a purpose
he might have been expected to misstate some facts; and there have been many attempts to show that he did so. But a fair examination of these attempts shows that not one of them is well-founded. There may be occasional mistakes, where Caesar was forced to rely on information furnished him by the Gauls; but it can not be proved that there is a single intentional false statement in the whole work.

24 Caesar’s Other Writings. In addition to the Commentaries on the Gallic War, in seven books, we have Caesar’s Commentaries on the Civil War, in three books. Besides these we know of other works, now lost. We hear of some poetry and a collection of jests. He wrote a treatise on grammar while traveling rapidly from Rome to Spain. He wrote a treatise on astronomy when he reformed the calendar. He wrote an attack on Cato to counteract the effect of certain books which in praising Cato attacked Caesar. All this shows his versatility; but probably no one of these works would have been very valuable if it had been preserved.

VI. The Gauls

25 First Appearance of the Gauls in History. Some seven centuries before Christ, a tall, fair-haired race of men, the Gauls, began crossing the Rhine and conquering the original inhabitants of the country on its west. In time they overran everything as far as the Pyrenees, partly destroying the original inhabitants, partly uniting with them. About five centuries before Christ they began crossing the Alps and settling in northern Italy, and in 390 B.C. they took Rome and burned it. Rome was then but a small city, governing only the part of Italy which immediately surrounded it.

26 First Decline of Gallic Power. But from that time on the power of Rome increased and that of the Gauls decreased. A little more than two centuries before Christ, after desperate fighting, the Romans conquered and held northern Italy, Cisalpine Gaul. Again in the years from 123 to 118 there was
THE GAULS

hard fighting with Gauls, and at the end Rome controlled that part of Gaul which Caesar calls Prōvincia (see 2).

Invasion of Cimbri and Teutoni. In 113 began the invasion of the Cimbri and Teutoni, the most terrible danger of Rome since the day when the Gauls burned the city. It is not known whether they were Germans or Gauls, and probably the Romans of the time did not discriminate between the two races. They crossed the Rhine with their women and children, and marched slowly through Gaul, leaving a waste wherever they had passed. Several Roman armies met them and were cut to pieces. At last they made ready to invade Italy, the Teutoni by the western Alps, the Cimbri by the eastern. But the great Marius was now in command of a Roman army. In 102 he met the Teutoni and destroyed them. In 101 he joined the other Roman army and destroyed the Cimbri.

Geographical Divisions of Gaul in Caesar's Time. In Caesar’s time Cisalpine Gaul was almost as Roman as any other part of Italy. From it Caesar recruited his legions and levied new ones; and later he gave its inhabitants the right of Roman citizenship. The Province was peaceable and loyal to Rome, although the Allobroges had rebelled only a few years before. Caesar’s task was the subjugation of all the rest of the Gauls, the inhabitants of all the country lying north of the Province and west of the Rhine. This is the country which he calls Gallia. However, he divides it into three parts and often uses the name Gallia of only the great central part, Gallia Celtica, where the Gallic stock was purest. In the southwestern part, Aquitania, fewer of the Gallic invaders had settled, and the population consisted largely of descendants of the original inhabitants. In the northeastern part, Belgium, Germans had settled in large numbers.

Factions in Gaul. If Caesar had found Gaul a compact nation his task would have been more difficult than it was. But faction and division seem to have been a part of the Gallic nature, and he took advantage of this characteristic. Gaul
was cut up into many small states, each feeling itself rightfully independent. These states fought frequently with one another, and the weaker of them were either forced into dependence on the stronger or voluntarily attached themselves to stronger states for protection. In this way loose leagues or confederations were formed, between which rivalry and warfare went on. In Gallia Celtica the chief confederations were the one headed by the Haedui and the one formerly headed by the Arverni, but in Caesar's time headed by the Sequani. But the evils of faction did not stop here. The individual states, for the most part, had no strong governments. Apparently most of them had been governed by kings one or two generations before Caesar's time; but a series of revolutions had generally abolished the kingly office and had substituted magistrates elected yearly. The real power lay in the hands of rich nobles, or equites as Caesar calls them. Each of these nobles lived surrounded by numerous slaves and retainers; and as there was no power strong enough to keep them in order, individual nobles or leagues of nobles sometimes pushed their continuous rivalries to the point of civil war.

30 Caesar's Use of the Gallic Factions. This factional spirit was of great assistance to Caesar, for he usually found means to attach one faction or the other to himself. For example, at the outset he found two factions in the state of the Haedui, headed by two brothers, Diviciacus, friendly to the Romans, and Dumnorix, hostile to them. By strengthening Diviciacus and checking Dumnorix he secured the help of the state. The state was the leader of one of the two leagues in Celtic Gaul, and Caesar thus secured the submission of all the states in that league without fighting for it. In fact, not only did he have their passive submission, but he obtained from them provisions and men to use in conquering other parts of Gaul.

31 Gallic Civilization. The details of the Gallic manners and customs can be learned best from Chapters 11-20 of Book VI. It will be enough to say here that in Caesar's time the Gauls
were not wild barbarians, but had attained a considerable degree of civilization. They had long passed the stage of roaming about from one part of the country to another; though we find, in the first book of the Commentaries, that for special reasons the Helvetii intended to leave their homes and find new ones. They had roads and bridges and towns of considerable size, fortified by well built walls.

VII. Caesar's Army

The legions

The legions formed the strength of Caesar's army. When the enemy met him in hand to hand battle the legions bore the brunt of the fighting and won him the victory. But since they consisted of heavily armed, and therefore comparatively slow, foot soldiers, and since their weapons were useless at any considerable distance, the legions needed the assistance of cavalry and light-armed infantry, to complete their success.

Organization of the Legion. In theory a legion consisted of 6000 men; but battles, accidents, and disease so reduced this number that Caesar's legions probably averaged about 4000 men, or even less. The following table gives the divisions of a legion and their theoretical strength:

- century [centum, hundred] = 100 men
- 2 centuries = 1 maniple = 200 men
- 3 maniples = 1 cohort = 600 men
- 10 cohorts = 1 legion = 6000 men

In theory, again, the legions were made up of Roman citizens; but in fact a large part of Caesar's legionary soldiers came from Cisalpine Gaul, which had not yet received the right of citizenship. However, it was thoroughly Romanized, and, in spirit at least, Caesar's legionaries were Roman citizens.
CAESAR'S GALIC WAR

EQUIPMENT OF THE LEGIONARY SOLDIER

(Plate I)

34 Clothing. a. A sleeveless woolen shirt, reaching nearly to the knees.
   b. Tight-fitting leather trousers, or perhaps merely bandages wrapped about the legs.
   c. Shoes or sandals.
   d. A heavy cloak for bad weather. This served also as a blanket at night.

35 Armor. a. A helmet of leather (galea) or metal (cassis).
   b. A leather coat (lorica), strengthened by bands of metal across the shoulders, breast, and back.
   c. A curved wooden shield (scutum), covered with leather, and having a metal boss in the center. It was about four feet high and two and a half feet wide.
   d. Perhaps a greave on the right leg, though Caesar does not mention it. This was very much like a football shin-guard, but made of metal.

36 Arms. a. A heavy wooden javelin (pilum, Fig. 1), with a long iron point which was strong enough to pierce any armor but was likely to bend as it did so. Therefore it could not easily be withdrawn when it had pierced a shield, and could not be thrown back by the enemy. After the battle the javelins were gathered and straightened by the Romans. Each soldier carried but one javelin.

   b. A straight, heavy, two-edged sword (gladius, Fig. 2), about two feet long, adapted for either cutting or thrusting. Its scabbard (vagina) hung from a belt (balteus) which passed over the left
shoulder. The sword was thus on the right side, out of the way of the shield. But the higher officers, who carried no shield, wore the sword on the left side.

**Individual Baggage.** Besides his personal belongings each 37 soldier carried his share of the picks, spades, baskets, etc., used in entrenching the camp; cooking utensils; and several days' rations of grain, which seems to have been apportioned out only twice a month. All this, weighing from thirty to forty-five pounds, was made into a pack (sarcina) and strapped on a forked stick; this the soldier carried on his shoulder. While thus encumbered the soldiers were said to be impediti. If the army was attacked on the march the packs were stacked in one place under guard, and the soldiers were then expediti.

**OFFICERS OF THE LEGIONS**

**Lēgātus.** All governors of provinces were given several 38 lēgātī, deputies or assistants. These legates were not strictly military officers, but were to be employed by the governors in any way they saw fit. Caesar introduced the innovation of putting a legate in command of each legion just before a battle. When one or more legions were detached from the main army for special service, Caesar put a legate in command; and legates were left in command of the winter quarters during Caesar's absence. But no one legate was in permanent command of any one legion.

**Quaestor.** The quaestors were financial officers, elected 39 yearly by the people at Rome. One was chosen by lot to take charge of the finances of each province, so that Caesar always had one with him. He took charge of the pay and the supplies of the army. When he was competent Caesar employed him in battle as he did his legates, putting him in command of a legion.

**Praefectus Fabrum.** The chief of engineers had charge of 40 such matters as the building of bridges, construction of camps, erection of siege works, repair of artillery, and the refitting of
ships. He probably had special assistants, but the actual labor was performed by skilled men detailed from the ranks.

41 Tribūnus. No single officer permanently commanded a legion, as our colonels command regiments. Each legion had six tribunes, who took the chief command in rotation, while the rest probably commanded groups of cohorts or were assigned to special service. In Caesar's army many of the tribunes were experienced and capable officers, who did good service; but others were young men without military experience, who had been appointed only because they were friends or relatives of influential men at Rome whom Caesar wished to please. It was for this reason that Caesar put his legates and quaestor in command of the legions in battle. On the march or in camp a tribune was in command.

42 Centuriō. The centurions commanded centuries, and there were therefore sixty in each legion. On them fell the immediate management of the men in battle. They fought in the ranks like the men and were expected to set the men an example of conspicuous bravery. They were therefore promoted from the ranks on the basis of their strength and size as well as their skill and gallantry. They could hope for no promotion above the rank of centurion; but there were grades of centurions from one to the other of which they rose. The highest of all was the first centurion of the first cohort, the primipilus. He and a few others, just how many is not known, were called centurions of the first rank (centuriōnēs primōrum ordinum, or primi ordinēs), and were commonly summoned to councils of war along with the tribunes and legates.

STANDARDS AND SIGNALS OF THE LEGIONS

43 Aquila. Each legion had as its standard a bronze or silver eagle (aquila), carried on the top of a wooden staff. It was regarded with almost religious respect, and its loss was the deepest disgrace that could befall the legion. It was in charge of the first centurion of the first cohort, and was carried by a
PLATE I

1. funditor  3. legionarii  5. signiferi  7. tubicen
2. levis armaturae milites  4. vexillum  6. aquilifer  8. bucinator

ROMAN SOLDIERS
man of conspicuous strength and bravery, the *aquilifer* (Plate I, 6).

**Signum.** Each cohort had its own standard (*signum*), carried by a *signifer* (Plate I, 5). These standards were of various forms—an open hand, the figure of an animal, etc. On the staff, below the figure, were fastened the decorations of honor which had been bestowed on the cohort—disks, half moons, wreaths, and tassels. The diversity of form was necessary in order that each soldier might recognize easily the standard of his own cohort. In hasty preparation for battle each man found his place by looking for his standard; and all through the battle he regulated his movements by those of his standard. For this reason the technical terms for such maneuvers as advancing and retreating are *signa inferre, signa referre*, etc.

**Musical Instruments.** There were no bands, and the only use made of musical instruments was in the giving of signals. The only instrument mentioned by Caesar in the Gallic War is the *tuba*, a straight brazen trumpet, blown by a *tubicen*, but others were probably used as well (Plate I, 7, 8).

**BAGGAGE OF THE LEGION**

The heavy baggage (*impedimenta*) consisted of tents, provisions, hand-mills for grinding grain, engines of war, etc., and was carried on pack horses or mules (*iūmenta*). These were driven or led by the drivers (*mūliōnēs*) and camp servants (*cālōnēs*), who were probably slaves.

**AUXILIARY INFANTRY AND CAVALRY**

**Infantry.** The light armed infantry (Plate I, 1 and 2), which Caesar usually calls *auxilia*, contained no Roman citizens. Caesar had slingers (*funditōrēs*) from the Balearic Islands, and archers (*sagittārii*) from Crete and Numidia; but most of his light armed infantry was drawn from friendly Gallic tribes and was armed in the native fashion. He put little reliance on them for serious fighting, but made them
useful in various ways: as skirmishers, to delay the enemy’s attack; as raiders; in making fortifications at a critical time; for mere show, to impress the enemy with his numbers; and in pursuit of a routed enemy. Their higher officers were prefects (praefecti). Their standard was a banner (vexillum, Plate I, 4) attached to a horizontal cross-piece at the end of a staff.

48 Cavalry. Caesar had no Roman cavalry. During his first six years in Gaul he had none but Gallic cavalry, but in the seventh year he secured some Germans and found them much more effective. They were useless against a line of infantry, but met the enemy’s cavalry. Caesar employed them especially as scouts and raiders, or in pursuit of a routed enemy. Their higher officers were praefecti, and their standards were vexilla (cf. 47).

THE CAMP

49 A Roman army never halted even for one night without fortifying its camp (castra) with a wall and trench. This must have cost two or three hours of hard work; but it made the army safe from attack, and so allowed the general to choose his own time and place for battle; and in case of defeat the camp was a place of refuge.

50 Location and Form of Camp. Whenever it was possible the camp was built on a hill sloping gently toward the enemy, so that the Roman army could form its line of battle in front of the camp and make the enemy charge up hill. The normal shape of the camp was a square or oblong, but it had to be accommodated to the shape of the hill. Fig. 3 shows the normal shape, while Fig. 4 shows the actual shape of one of Caesar’s camps. Within the camp, streets were laid out in accordance with a fixed plan, and every legion, every cohort, every maniple had always the same location. Fig. 3 shows the normal arrangement for a camp which would accommodate five legions.
Fortifications of Camp (Fig. 5). The size of the trench 51 (fossa) varied, but was usually about nine feet wide and seven deep. The earth, dug out with spades and carried in baskets, was piled up just inside the trench to make the wall (vallum). This wall was faced partly with sods, partly with bundles of sticks (fascines), so that it was quite steep on the outside. Other fascines were put inside the wall, to strengthen it. It stood about six feet high, was wide enough on top to let the soldiers move about comfortably in fighting, and sloped so gradually toward the inside that soldiers could easily ascend it. Sometimes this slope was faced with logs, so as to make steps. On the outer

**Fig. 3. Plan of a Roman Camp (Rüstow)**

**Fig. 4. Camp on the Axona**
edge of the top stood a row of palisades (välli), about four feet high, which served as a breastwork. In case of an attack the enemy would be halted by the ditch several feet from the wall, and be completely exposed to the Roman javelins, while the defenders stood on a higher position, protected by a breastwork, and could throw their missiles with great effect. In times of especial danger, towers (turrēs) were erected at intervals on top of the wall.

52 Gates of Camp. Usually there was one gate (porta) on each of the four sides; but in the camp represented in Fig. 4 there were two gates in front, where the soldiers had most occasion to pass in and out. The gates were mere openings in the wall, about forty feet wide as a rule. Fig. 4 shows how they were protected. A short curved wall projected into the camp from the left side of the gate. A line of soldiers stood in the gate, and another manned this wall. If the enemy got into the opening they would be exposed on their shieldless side to a shower of missiles from the wall. Ordinarily this was a sufficient protection, and it left the gates open for a sudden charge from within. But in times of great emergency the gates could be walled up solidly.
PLATE II

1. imperator  
2. legatus  
3. centurio  
4. lictor  
5. Gallic warrior  
6. Gallic standard bearer  
7. Gallic chief

ROMAN OFFICERS AND GAULS
THE MARCH

Line of March. The vanguard usually consisted of cavalry and light armed infantry. Under ordinary circumstances each legion was followed by a train of pack animals carrying its baggage; but in the near neighborhood of the enemy all the baggage was brought together, preceded by most of the legions and followed by the rest.

Length of March. The length of a day's march of course varied greatly, according to the nature of the country and the need for haste. As the soldier had to carry from forty-five to sixty pounds of arms and baggage, and as the army had to halt early in the afternoon to give time for making camp, the rate of march of the army could be nothing like that of an unencumbered individual. Probably when there was no need of haste the average march was no more than twelve to fifteen miles, and a day of rest was given about every fifth day. But Caesar, like Napoleon, owed much of his success to his power of inspiring his army to great efforts on the march. When he speaks of forced marches (magna itinera, maxima itinera), we are to think of marches of from eighteen to twenty-five miles a day, or even more. On one occasion he marched four legions, without baggage, fifty Roman miles in less than thirty hours, including all stops.

THE BATTLE

Since the legions had to do the serious work of fighting, the line of battle was arranged solely with reference to their tactics. When the enemy were within the short range of the Roman javelins they were met by a volley of these deadly missiles and their ranks were thus broken. Immediately the Romans charged, and the rest of the battle was fought out at close quarters with the sword. When possible, therefore, the line of battle was drawn up facing down a gentle slope. This gave greater range to the javelins and greater impetus to the charge; while the enemy must begin the battle breathless from
a charge up the hill. The auxiliary infantry might be posted in front of the line, but it was expected to do no more than delay the attack of the enemy. More often it was posted on the flanks, sometimes merely as a show of strength. The cavalry might meet the cavalry of the enemy. Otherwise it usually merely awaited the rout of the enemy, when it pursued and cut to pieces the fugitives.

56 Line of Battle. The line of battle was commonly triple (triplex aciēs), though sometimes only double (duplex aciēs). In the triple line of battle the first line was composed of the first four cohorts of each legion, standing side by side, with no intervals between the cohorts. Three cohorts of each legion formed the second line, which stood a short distance behind the first, ready to relieve it when it became exhausted in the battle. The remaining three cohorts of each legion formed the third line, in the rear, and were held as a reserve for any emergency. Each of these lines was eight or ten men deep, and only the front rank of the first line could engage in the battle at any one moment. But that rank would fight vigorously for a few moments, then fall back and be relieved by the next rank, and so on until all the men of the first line had been engaged. Then it was relieved as a whole by the second line.

57 Orbis. When surrounded by the enemy and hard pressed, a body of men would form what is now called a hollow square, and what the Romans called a circle (orbis), with the baggage and camp servants inside the ring of armed men.

THE CAPTURE OF TOWNS

58 A great part of Caesar's military operations consisted in the capture of walled towns. The fortification of these towns was rather primitive, but it was quite effective (Fig. 6). The face of the wall showed regular rows of log ends separated by huge stones. No one log could be grappled and pulled out, for they were all fastened together far within the wall. The logs
would not burn, for they were each imbedded in stone and earth. A battering-ram could demolish a solid stone wall, but the framework of timbers defied it. Therefore Caesar relied little on making breaches in the walls and entering in that way. But there were three other possible methods—a blockade, a sudden assault, and a formal siege.

**Blockade (obsidiō).** A ring of fortifications could be built around the town, and the place starved into submission. But this was too slow a method to be employed unless all other methods were hopeless, and Caesar used it only once in the Gallic War.

**Sudden Assault (oppugnātiō repentina).** If a town had low walls and few defenders, it might be taken by a sudden assault. Archers and slingers kept the wall partly clear of defenders. Soldiers approached the wall in safety by holding their shields over their heads and letting them overlap, forming a testūdō (tortoise, Plate III, 3). If there was a trench around the wall, they filled it with bundles of brushwood (crātēs, fascines). Then they mounted the wall by means of scaling ladders (scālæ, Plate III). But such towns would usually surrender without a struggle, so that the method was little used.

**Formal Siege (oppugnātiō).** The favorite method was by the use of the agger and tower (turris). The agger was a great causeway, built of logs and earth, which sloped gradually up toward the top of the wall. Generally it was not intended to be as high as the wall. In that case a tower, several stories high, was pushed up the causeway on rollers. From the upper stories, which rose higher than the wall, archers and slingers and artillery shot down the defenders. When the tower was near enough, a drawbridge was let down from one of the lower stories to the top of the wall, and the Romans charged across
it. Sometimes the causeway was as high as the wall, and thus itself gave access to its top (Fig. 7). Sometimes, if the wall was

![Diagram of Agger in Process of Construction]

**Fig. 7. Side View of Agger in Process of Construction**

a b, the enemy's wall. f g h, part already constructed. c d e f h, part to be constructed. a b c d, part to be filled in with earth and rubbish at the last moment. p p p, lines of plutei protecting the workmen. The lines of direction show the spaces protected by the plutei.

low and the ground about it level, no causeway was built, and the tower was pushed over the ground to the wall. Then a battering-ram might be hung in the lowest story, and the drawbridge was let down from one of the upper stories. Plate III illustrates this method of using the tower, as well as several other devices; but the city is not a Gallic town.

62 **Means of Protecting the Besiegers.** In building the agger and carrying on the other operations of a siege the assailants had to approach within easy range of missiles from the wall; hence they made use of several forms of protection.

a. The **pluteus** (Fig. 8) was a heavy shield, several feet high, mounted on wheels. A line of these, parallel to the wall, gave protection to men working immediately behind it; and it could be moved forward at pleasure.

b. The **musculus** (Fig. 9) was a hut with one end open and the other end partially closed. Its roof was strong enough to withstand the
shock of great stones which might be dropped upon it from the wall. It could be pushed up to the wall, and under its shelter men could dig out the foundation of the wall.

c. The testūdō arietāria (Plate III, 2) was a similar hut in which hung a battering-ram (ariēs), a heavy timber capped with iron, intended to be swung against the wall.

d. The vinea (Fig. 10) was a lighter hut, open at both ends. A number of these placed end to end made a safe covered gallery extending from a point out of range up to the musculi, testūdinēs, or platei.

All these huts were pushed forward on rollers.

The Artillery.—Caesar had with him engines of war, the 63 purpose of which corresponded to that of modern artillery. They were too heavy and clumsy to be of much service in battle: hence their chief use was in siege operations. The general name tormenta is derived from torqueō, to twist, and was applied to them because the propelling force was obtained by twisting a stick between two tightly stretched horse-hair ropes.

a. The ballista
(Plate III, 5) threw heavy stones at a considerable angle from the horizontal.

b. The catapult (catapulta) threw great arrows nearly horizontally. Fig. 11 makes most of its mechanism clear without explanation. (A) is an arrangement for raising or lowering the rear of the nearly horizontal track, thus regulating the range. The track is grooved to hold a long sliding carriage, on the rear portion of which is the trigger (B). The operation of firing was as follows: The carriage was pushed forward till the claws of the trigger were over the bowstring; a block (c) was shoved under the heavy rear end of the trigger, and the claws were thus held down on the string; the carriage was drawn back by means of the windlass, and held in place by the hook (D); the arrow was laid on the grooved upper surface of the carriage, with its end resting on the string between the claws of the trigger, the block (c) was withdrawn and the rear end of the trigger fell by its own weight, thus releasing the string.

c. The scorpio was a small catapult.

d. The onager (Plate III, 4) threw stones, like the ballista, but was of different construction.

THE FLEET

The fleet is to be considered as belonging to the army, rather than as a separate organization; for when Caesar had need of it he manned it with his legions, put tribunes and centurions in command of indi-
individual ships, and made one of his legates its admiral. The ships of war were about eight times as long as they were broad, and were therefore called nāvēs longae, in distinction from the transports (nāvēs onerāriae), which were shorter and wider. They had a mast and single sail, but in battle depended on oars for their propulsion. Their prows (Fig. 12) were armed with metal beaks (rōstra), with which to ram the ships of the enemy. If the Romans failed in this they sought to make the battle as much as possible like a battle on land, their special object being to grapple one of the enemy's ships and board it.
A BRIEF BIBLIOGRAPHY

The following list of books will suggest those which are most helpful to pupils and teachers who read only English. Those who wish to make a more detailed study of special points will find that Holmes gives references to almost everything of importance in the enormous literature of Caesar, except on the linguistic side.

Editions

A. Holder. (Freiburg and Tübingen, 1882.) This may be useful for its (inaccurate) index of words, which is intended to be complete.


H. Rheinhard. (Stuttgart, 1896.) Useful for its illustrations.

Of the following English editions the first two are useful:


A. G. Peskett. (Cambridge, 1878-1882.)

St. George Stock. (The Clarendon Press, Oxford, 1898.) Usually good when it follows good authorities.

Caesar’s Life and Campaigns

Col. T. A. Dodge. Caesar. (Houghton, Mifflin & Co., 1894.) Useful if Napoleon can not be obtained, but without much independent value.


T. Rice Holmes. Caesar’s Conquest of Gaul. (Macmillan

Napoleon III. *History of Julius Caesar.* (Out of print, but can be obtained at second hand. If possible get the Atlas with the two volumes. The French edition is more easily obtained.) Volume II gives a more complete narrative and explanation of Caesar’s campaigns in Gaul than can be found elsewhere, but without much discussion of disputed points.

C. W. C. Oman. *Seven Roman Statesmen.* (Edward Arnold, London, 1902.) The characterization of Caesar is too violent a reaction against the views of Mommsen and Froude.

Plutarch’s Lives. Every pupil should read the life of Caesar.

Anthony Trollope. *The Commentaries of Caesar.* (In the series, Ancient Classics for English Readers.)

Much that is valuable will be found in the following histories:

Duruy. *History of Rome.*

Long. *The Decline of the Roman Republic.* This is especially good in its treatment of Caesar’s campaigns.

Merivale. *History of the Romans under the Empire.*

Mommsen. *History of Rome.* The chief defect of this extraordinary work is its too great partiality for Caesar.

**Miscellaneous**

H. P. Judson. *Caesar’s Army.* (Ginn & Co., 1888.) This gives much fuller information about the organization and tactics of the Roman army than can be given in the introduction of an edition. It should be at hand for reference.

R. Oehler. *Bilderatlas zu Cäsars de Bello Gallico.* (Leipzig, 1890.)

W. Rüstow. *Atlas zu Cäsars Gallischem Krieg.* (Stuttgart.)

A. Van Kampen. *Quindecim ad Caesaris de Bello Gallico Commentarios Tabulae.* (Gotha.)
REFERENCES AND ABBREVIATIONS

In the grammatical references, App. = Appendix (following Book VII); G.-L. = Gildersleeve-Lodge; A. = Allen and Greenough; B. = Bennett; H.-B. = Hale and Buck; H. = Harkness. In each case the latest revision has been followed.

References are made to books of the text in Roman characters, to chapters in bold-faced Arabic numerals, to lines in plain-faced Arabic numerals. Thus, III, 2, 11 = Book III, chapter 2, line 11.

In the page vocabularies, the figures 1, 2, 3, and 4, following definitions, indicate the number of times the word is used in Books I-IV. * indicates that the word is used 5 or more times in those books.

For the explanation of some other details, see p. 2 of the general vocabulary at the end of the book.

abbr. = abbreviation.
abl. = ablative.
acc. = accusative.
act. = active.
adj. = adjective.
adv. = adverb, adverbial.
card. = cardinal.
ct. = confer, compare.
chap. = chapter.
comp. = comparative.
conj. = conjunction.
dat. = dative.
def. = defective.
dem. = demonstrative.
dim. = diminutive.
distr. = distributive.
e.g. = exempli gratiâ, for example.
encl. = enclitic.
etc. = et cetera, and so forth.
f. = feminine.
fig. = figure, figuratively.
freq. = frequentative.
fut. = future.
gen. = genitive.
i.e. = id est, that is.
imp. = imperative.
impers. = impersonal.
impt. = imperfect.
incept. = inceptive.
ind. = indicative.
indecl. = indeclinable.
indef. = indefinite.
BOOK I, CHAPTERS 1 TO 29. WAR WITH THE HELVETII

The Helvetii were a Gallic people living in northern Switzerland. Hemmed in by the mountains, they had retained without loss their strength and independence. During the invasion of Gaul by the Cimbri a part of the Helvetii had left their country independently and defeated a Roman army in 107 B.C. Many of the Helvetii had joined the Cimbri and Teutoni in their attempted invasion of Italy in 102 and 101 B.C. After the disastrous result of these attempts the Helvetii had remained comparatively quiet for a long time; but now, dissatisfied with the narrow limits of their country, they determined to seek wider fields.

The originator of this plan was Orgetorix, their most powerful nobleman. But the Helvetii soon learned that he was trying to further ambitious plans of his own and to use them as tools; that he intended to make himself their king, and then to unite with two neighboring states in the subjugation of all Gaul. The penalty for the crime of aiming at royal power was death, but Orgetorix anticipated the punishment by committing suicide. Yet the Helvetii persisted in the plans which they had adopted at his suggestion. They made all preparations, then burned their homes and gathered near the western end of Lake Geneva, ready to set out.

But Rome had been watching their preparations in some alarm. If the Helvetii marched through the province, they could not fail to give trouble to the Romans. And what was a mere serious matter, if the Helvetii left their country vacant it would be occupied by the Germans; and the Germans were dangerous neighbors. Caesar's term of office as governor of Gaul began in the year of their departure. Learning that the Helvetii intended to set out sooner than he had expected, he hurried to Geneva, so that when they gathered he was there to meet them. He destroyed the bridge across the Rhone, which they had failed to secure, and with his one legion hastily made and manned a line of defenses on the south bank of the river. He then forbade their crossing, and easily checked their attempts to disobey his orders.

The baffled Helvetii now obtained permission of the Sequani to pass to the west through their territory. The great host, with its women and children and thousands of wagons, marched slowly through this to the Saone, and its van crossed the river and began plundering the land of
the Haeduhi. Meanwhile Caesar had hastened back to northern Italy and returned with five legions. The Haeduhi, who had been nominal allies of the Romans for many years, now appealed to Caesar. He was not sorry to appear as the champion of Gallic freedom, for he thus gained a footing in Gaul. Finding that one of the four divisions of the Helvetii had not yet crossed the Saone, he fell upon it and cut it to pieces. Immediately he crossed the river in pursuit of the main body. For fifteen days he followed it, but on account of the nature of the country he was unable to head off the slowly moving mass. Finally the lack of provisions compelled him to turn aside to Bibrae. Believing that this action was due to cowardice, the Helvetii in turn became the pursuers, thus allowing Caesar to meet them on ground of his own choosing. In a hard fought battle he defeated them with immense loss; and the remnant of the once proud and mighty people sadly returned to its mountain home.

EXPLANATION OF CAMPAIGN MAP

Brown indicates the part of Transalpine Gaul which belonged to Rome when Caesar entered upon his command.

Red indicates the states whose submission Caesar secured by conquering them in battle. The Boii are shown in the homes given them after their defeat. The Latobrigi and the Tulingi lived across the Rhine and are not shown on this map. The Cetrones, the Graiolesi, and the Caturiges were forced to permit the passage of the army, but were probably not reduced to submission, and are therefore left uncolored.

Blue indicates the states which submitted without fighting. In chap. 30 we are told that envoys from "nearly all Gaul" came to Caesar as a result of his victory over the Helvetii. It is certain that Celtic Gaul is meant; therefore Aquitania and Belgium are left uncolored. In chap. 31 we are told that Ariovistus held a part of the territory of the Sequani; this is left uncolored. In II, 34 we are given a list of states which did not submit till 57; these also are left uncolored. All the rest of Celtic Gaul may be supposed to have submitted at the close of the war with the Helvetii; it is therefore colored blue.

The line of march shows Caesar's route in crossing the Alps the second time, with the five legions. It also shows the route of the Helvetii after they left their territory. After crossing the Arar Caesar's route coincides with that of the Helvetii.

Crossed sabers indicate battlefields. Colonel Stoffel's identification of the main battlefield (Histoire de Jules César: Guerre Civile, II, 439–453) is almost certainly right and is indicated on this map.
C. IULI CAESARIS

BELLII GALLICI

LIBER PRIMUS

1. Gallia est omnis divisa in partēs trēs, quārum unam

1. Gallia, -ae, f., Gallia (gāli'ā), better, Gaul, including either (1) Belgium, Celtica, and Aquitania, or (2) only Celtica. See map. *

sum, esse, fui (App 66), intr., be, exist, live; stay, remain; serve for; with gen. in predicate, be the mark or sign of; belong to; be the duty of: with dat. of possessor, have. *

omnis, -e, adj., all, every, all the, every kind of; the whole, as a whole; m. pl. as noun, all, every one; all the rest; n. pl. as noun, all possessions or goods.

dīvidō, dīvidere, dīvisi, dīvisum, tr. divide, separate; dīvisus, p.f. part. as adj., divided. *

in, prep. with acc. and abl. With acc. (1) of motion, from one place into or towards another place, into, to; in, among; towards, for, against; at; upon: (2) of time, till, into; for; on, at: (3) other uses, in, in respect to, for, under, over, on; in diēs, from day to day; in fūgam concīere, put to flight; in Caesarem incidere, meet with Caesar;

summum in cruciātum venire, be severely punished. With abl. (1) of rest or motion within a place, in among, over, within, throughout; on, upon: (2) of time, in, during, in the course of; on: (3) other uses, in, in the case of; in consequence of, in view of; on, upon; in Arari, over the Arar; in eō, in his case; in ancoris, at anchor; in operes esse, be engaged in the work. *

pars, partis, f., part, portion; party, faction; direction, side, place; district. *

trēs, trīa, gen. trium (III), card. num. adj., three. *

quī, quae, quod, rel. pron. (and see quis), who, which, what; often implying an antecedent, he who, those who; with force of dem., this, that; quam ob rem, wherefore; quem ad modum, in what manner, how, as; quō, with comparatives, the; quō . . . eō, the . . . the.

ānus, āna, ānum, gen. ānus (App. 82), card. num. adj., one, the same one; single, alone; the sole, the only; the sole or only one. *

omnis, "as a whole," shows that Gal- lia here has meaning (1) of the vocabulary.

divisa: the adjective.

partēs trēs: on the divisions of Gaul, see Int. 28.


Chap. 1. A brief description of the great divisions of Gaul, and of their inhabitants.

1. Gallia: in translating, proper names should always be pronounced like English words. The pronunciation is always indicated in the vocabulary. The values of the vowel markings are shown in the table on p. 2 of the vocabulary at the end of the book.

*The asterisk, in the vocabulary, shows that the word occurs five or more times in Books I-IV. A figure, 1, 2, 3, or 4, similarly placed, is used when the word occurs less than five times.
incolunt Belgæ, aliam Aquitāni, tertiam quī ipsōrum linguā Celtae, nostrā Gallī appellantur. Hi omnēs linguā, institūtīs, lēgibus inter sē differunt. Gallōs ab Aquitānis Garumna

2. incolō, -colere, -colui, —, tr. and intr. (colō, cultivate), inhabit, dwell in; live. *

Belgæ, -ārum, m. (ABdefg), the Belgae (bēl'jē), or Belgians. *

alius, -a, -ud, gen. alius (App. 82), another, other; alius . . . alius, one . . . another; in pl., some . . . others. *

Aquitānus, -a, -um, 'adj., of Aquitania, Aquitanian; pl. as noun, the Aquitani (āk'w-it'ānī), possibly Aquitanians, inhabiting southwestern Gaul. *

tertius, -a, -um, ord. num. adj. [ter, thrice], third. *

ipsa, ipsam, ipsum, gen. ipsīmus (App. 56), intensive pron., self (as opposed to some one else; not to be confused with the reflexive sē, self. App. 163); himself, herself, itself, themselves; he, she, it, they; as adj., very; in gen., his, her, its, or their own. *

lingua, -ae, f., tongue, language. 3.

3. Celtae, -ārum, m., the Celtae (sēl'tē), better, the Celts. 1.

noster, -stra, -strum, possess. adj. [nōs, we], our, ours, our own; in pl. as noun, our men, our troops. *

Gallus, -a, -um, adj., of Gaul, Gallic; pl. as noun, the Gauls, inhabiting Central Gaul, Northern Italy, etc. *

appellō, 1. tr., accost, address, call by name, name, call. *

hic, hæc, hoc, dem. pron. (App. 54), used for what is near in space, time, or thought, with more emphasis than is; this, this man, woman, or thing; he, she, it; abl. sing. hōc, on this account; in this respect; the (with comparatives); hic . . . ille, the latter . . . the former.

See App. 170, a. *

institūtum, -i, n. [Instituō, set up, establish], a fixed course or principle; habit, institution, custom. 3.

inter, prep. with acc. (sometimes following its noun), 1) of place, among, between; 2) of time, during, within, for; 3) in other relations, among, between, in; in among or between; to; over; along with: 4) with reflex. pron., of reciprocal action (App. 186), with, to, or from each other or one another, as, inter sē differunt, differ from one another; each other, one another, as, co-

ways be looked up and studied. In the notes on I, 1-29, for each of the most common principles of syntax grammar references are given three times, in order that it may be studied and twice reviewed.

2. Belgæ: it is impossible to understand and appreciate Caesar’s story unless one follows it on the map. The letters in parentheses which follow geographical names, in the vocabulary, correspond to the letters on the margins of the map in the front of the book. By their aid places can easily be found.

aliam, tertiam: sc. partem incolunt.

quī = īs quī: a nominative pronoun antecedent is often omitted.


linguā, institūtīs, lēgibus, “in language, institutions, and laws.” Notice the absence of a conjunction. Latin usually says either “a, b, c, ” or “a and b and c,” while English usually says “a, b, and c.” For case see App. 149: G.-L. 397: A. 418: B. 226: H.-B. 441: H. 490.


flūmen, á Belgís Matrona et Sēquana dīvīdit. Hōrum omnium s fortissimi sunt Belgae, propterea quod ā cultū atque ĕhumāni-
tātē prōvinciāe longissimē ābsunt, minimēque ā eos mercā-

| Sēquana, -ae, m. (BCdef), the river Sequana (sēkˈwɑːˈnaː), better Seine. | 1. fortis, -e, adj., strong, valiant, brave. *
| propterea, adv. [propter, because of], on this account; propterea quod, because. *
| quod, conj. [adv. acc. of the neuter of qui, who, which], as to which, in that, that; as to the fact that, insomuch as; because; quod sī, but if; propterea quod, because. *
| cultus, -us, m. [coll., cultivate], cultivation; civilization; mode of life; dress. 2. 
| atq; e, ae (ac only before consonants, atque before vowels and consonants), conj., usually adds something especially important, while et usually associates objects of equal importance; and also, and even, and; after words denoting a comparison or difference, than, as, from. *
| hūmānitās, -tātēs, f. [hūmānus, humane], humanity, refinement, culture. 2.
| prōvincia, -ae, f., office of governor of a province; province, a territory subject to Rome and governed by a Roman governor; especially the Province, the southern part of France. *
| longē, adv. [longus, long], far, far away, distant; longē lātēque, far and wide. *
| absūm, abesse, āsum, intr. [sum, be]. App. 78, be away from, be absent or distant, be wanting or free from. *
| minimē, adv. [minimus, least], least, 


7. prōvinciae: see Int. 2, 26.

tórēs saepe comenent/ atque ea quae ad effeminandōs animōs pertinent important, proximique sunt Germaniās, qui transt Rhēnum incolunt, quibuscum continent bellum gerunt.

very little; by no means, not at all. 4.

que, conj. (always affixed to the word or some part of the expression it connects), and; que ... que, or que ... et, both ... and. *
ad, prep. with acc., originally denoting motion toward; (1) denoting motion, to, toward, against, to the vicinity of: (2) denoting position, at, by, near: (3) denoting purpose, with gerund and gerundive, to, for: (4) with numerals, up to, about: (5) of time, up to, until; at, on: (6) variously translated in other relations, at, after, for, to, according to, in the eyes of, among. *

is, ea, id gen. elus (App. 57 weak dem. pron. referring to some p. son or object named in the context, this, that, these, those; he, she, it, they; the, a; locus quō, a, or the, place where; ea quae, (the) things which; eō, with comp., the; eō magis, all the more; eō ... quō, with comparatives, the ... the. *
mercātōres, -ōris, m. (mercēr, trade), merchant, trader. *

8. saepe, adv., often, frequently; many times, again and again; saepe numerō, often, time and again, frequently; comp. saepius, oftener, more frequently; time and again; too often. *
commēō, 1, intr. (meō, go), go back and forth; with ad, resort to, visit. 1.

effeminō, 1, tr. [ex + fēmina, woman], make effeminate, enervate, enfeeble. 1.
anīmus, -i, m., soul, spirit; mind, intellect; feelings; character; resolution, courage; animī causā, for amusement; in animō habēre, intend. *

9. pertinēō, -tīnērē, -tīnul, ---, intr. [teneō, hold], hold or reach to, extend; pertain, have reference to, concern, attend, aim at; sōdem pertinērē, tend to the same purpose or result, amount to the same thing. *
importō, 1. tr. [in + portō, carry], carry or bring in, import. 3.
proximus, -a, -um, adj., sup. (App. 48), nearest, next; last, previous; with acc. (App. 123, b), next to. *
Germaniān, -ōrum, m., the Germani (jēr-mān), better, Germans. *
trāns, prep. with acc., across, beyond, over; in compounds, trāns or trā, across, over, through. *

10. Rhēnum, -ī, m. (ABCīgh), the river Rhēnum (rē'nūs), better, the Rhine. *
cum, prep. with abl., with, along with, together with. *
continentēr, adv. [continēnēs, continuous], without interruption, continuously, continually. 3.
bellum, -ī, n., war. *
gerō, gerere, gessi, gestum, tr., bear, carry, wield; (of war) carry on,

mercātōres: Roman traders had for some time penetrated the interior of Gaul, bringing, among other things, strong wines, of which the Gauls were very fond.

8. quae ... pertinent: notice that in relative clauses the relative almost always stands first and the verb last: everything that stands between the relative and the first finite verb which follows usually belongs to the relative clause.

ad effeminandōs animōs, "to weaken the courage"; the gerundive construction will be treated later.


10. quibuscum: use and position of cum? App. 140; 60; G.-L. 352; 413, 1: A. 418, 6; 150, d: B. 222; 143, 4: H.-B. 418, a; 419, 4: H. 473, 1; 182, 3.
perform, wage, conduct; pass., be done, go on, occur. *

11. dé, prep. with abl., originally denoting motion from; (1) of place, from, down from, away from, out of; (2) of time, just after, about; (3) variously translated in other relations, about, concerning, of, from, in accordance with, for. *

causa, -ae, f., cause, reason, grounds, motive; situation, condition; a (legal) case; cause; causam dicere, to plead a case; causā, following a gen., for the sake of, for the purpose of, for. *

Helvētius, -a, -um, adj. (Cgb), of the Helvetii (hēl-vē’shi), Helvetic; as noun, one of the Helvetii, an Helvetic; pl., the Helvetii, possibly Helvetians. *

quoque, conj., following the word emphasized, also, too, likewise. *

reliquus, -a, -um, adj. [relinquō, leave], left, remaining, the rest, the rest of; future, subsequent; a, as noun, remainder, rest. *

virtus, -ūtis, f. [vir, man], manliness, valor, merit, worth, virtue, courage; strength, energy; pl., good qualities, virtues, merits. *

praecēdō, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessum, tr. [cēdō, go], go before; surpass, excel. 1.

12. ferē, adv., almost, nearly, about, for the most part. *

cotidiānus, -a, -um, adj. [cotidiē, daily], every day, daily; usual, customary. *

proelium, -ii, n., battle, contest, engagement; proelium committere, join or begin battle, risk a fight, engage in battle, fight. *

contendō, -tendere, -tendi, -tendērum, tr. and intr. [tendō, stretch], push forward, hasten; march; strive, contend, fight; be anxious for; maintain, insist. *

13. cum, conj., when, as, while; after, as soon as; whenever; since, because, although; cum ... tum, not only ... but also, both ... and; cum prīmum, as soon as. See App. 238-242. *

aut, conj., used where the difference is important or exclusive, or; aut ... aut, either ... or. *

suus, -a, -um, reflex. pronominal adj. referring to subject (App. 163, 164, 165, 167, a) [suī, himself, herself, etc.], of or belonging to himself, herself, etc., his own, their own; his, hers, its, theirs; suae, n. pl. as noun, one's property; suī, m. pl. as noun, their men (friends or countrymen). *

finis, -īs, m., boundary, limit, border, end; pl., boundaries; territory, country. *

prohibēō, 2, tr. [babeō, have, hold], keep from, keep, restrain, prevent, prohibit; keep out or away from; protect, guard. *

11. quá dé causā, "(and) for this reason." The relative is often used to connect independent sentences in Latin, but is not so used in English. We must in such cases translate by a personal or demonstrative pronoun, and we may render the connective force of the relative by using "and" or "but," if we like: App. 173, a: G.-L. 610, 1: A. 306, f: B. 561, G.-B. 284, 8: H. 510.

Helvētii: although the rest of the chapter is concerned with the larger divisions of Gaul, Caesar speaks of this tribe in particular, because it is to be prominent in the following chapters. virtūte: ablative of specification.

12. proelis, "in battle"; but it is an ablative of means.

13. suis finibus: the reflexives suī and suus regularly refer to the subject:
bellum gerunt. Eōrum ūna pars, quam Gallōs obtinēre dici-
tum est, /initium capiētā flūmine Rhodonē;/continētur Ga-
rumnā flūmine, Ōceanō, finibus Belgārum; attingit etiam ab
Sēquaniēs et Helvētiēs flūmen Rhēnum; vergit ad septen-
trīōnēs. Belgae ab extrēmis Galliae finibus oriuntur; perti-

14. obtinēō, -tinēre, -tinul, -ten-
tūm, tr. [tēnēō, hold], hold, retain, pos-
sess, maintain; acquire, obtain. *

dīō, dicere, dīxi, dictum, tr., say,
tell, speak, express, mention; name, appoint; causae dicere, plead a case;
fūs dicere, administer justice. *

15. initiēm, -ti, n. [ineō, go into],
beginning, commencement, origin; edge
of a country, borders. *

capiē, capere, cēpl, captum, tr.,
take, capture, seize, catch; take in,
begin, induce; take up (armes); choose,
select (a place); form, adopt (a plan);
reach, arrive at (a place); make (a begin-
ing); collum capere, take position on
a hill; fugam capere, take to flight. *

Rhodanus, -I, m. (CDfg), the river
Rhodanus (rōd'a-nūs), better, Rhone. *

continēō, -tinēre, -tinul, -ten-
tūm, tr. [tēnēō, hold], hold together;
hold, keep, restrain; bound, shut in;
contain; sē continēre, with abl., remain
in, on, or within. *

16. Ōceanus, -I, m., the ocean; as
adj., with mare, the ocean. *

sūis therefore refers to the Helvetii.
For case see App. 184: G.-L. 390, 2: A.
400; 401: B. 214, 2: H.-B. 408, 2: H. 484, 1;
and notice that the preposition ab is
often used in the same sense, as in ab
Aquitānis, l. 4.

eōrum refers to the Germans. For
case see App. 99: G.-L. 382: A. 343: B.

14. sōrum refers back to the Gals
as a whole, not to the Helvetii, who have
just been mentioned.

quam is the object, Gallōs the sub-
ject of obtinēre: App. 123: G.-L. 343, 2:
infinite clause, quam . . . ob-
tinēre, is the subject of dictum est:

atingō, -tingere, -tigi, -tāc-
tūm, tr. [ad+tangō, touch], touch or
border on, reach, extend to, arrive at,
attain. *

etiam, conj., and also, also, even,
yet. *

17. Sēquaniēs, -a, -um, adj., of or be-
longing to the Sequani; pi. as noun,
Sēquani (CfG), the Sequani (sēk'wa-
ni). *

-vergō, -ere, —, —, intr., look; or
lie towards, be situated; slope. 3.

septenrīōnēs, -um, m. [septem,
seven +triōnēs, plough oxen], the
seven plough oxen, the stars of the Great
Bear, hence the north. *

18. extrēmus, -a, -um, adj. [sup. of
exterus. App. 44], outermost, utmost,
farthest, extreme; the farthest part of;
extrēmi (as noun), the rear; ad extrē-
mum, at last, at the end; as a last
resort. *

orior, oriri, ortus sum, intr., arise,
begin, spring up, rise, start; be born,
descend; oriēns sōl, the rising sun,
sunrise; the east. *

314, 1: H.-B. 589: H. 442. The whole
may be freely translated, “which,
as has been said, the Gauls occu-
pay.”

15. ā flūmine, “at the river.” There
are many phrases in which we feel “at”
or “on” to be the appropriate prepo-
sition, but in which the Romans seem
to have thought of a starting-point and
consequently used ab or ex, which lit-
erally mean “from.”

16. ab Sēquaniēs, “in the direction
of” or “on the side of.” Cf. the preced-
ing note.

18. extrēmis finibus: i. e. those
farthest from the Roman province.
nent ad inferiorem partem fluminis Rhêni; spectant in septentrionês et orientem sólem. Aquitania à Garumnâ flumine ad Pyrënaeós montês et eam partem Òceanî quae est ad Hispâniam pertinet; spectat inter occásum sólis et septentrionês.

2. Apud Helvëtiós longè nóbìlissimus fuit et ditìssimus Orgetorix. Is, M. Messalâ, M. Pisône cónsulibus, régni cupi-

19. Inferus, -a, -um, adj., low, below; comp., inferior, lower; inferior: ab inferiore parte, below, down stream; sup., minus or minus, lowest, last; with collis, the base of; ad inimum, ab inûmë, at the bottom. * spectò, 1, tr. [freq. of speciō, see], look at, regard; look, face, lie. 3.

20. sólì, sólìs, m., the sun; ad occidentem sólem, toward the setting sun or west; ad orientem sólem, toward the rising sun or east. * Aquitania, -ae, f. (D Ecc), Aquitania (ák'wi-tâ'ni-a), southwestern Gaul between the Garonne and the Pyrenees.

21. Pyrënaeus, -a, -um, adj., Pyrenean; Pyrënae montês (Ede), the Pyrenees (pîr'ë-në-të), better, Pyrenees Mountains. 1. móns, montis, m., mountain; moun-
tain range; hill, height. 22. Hispànìa, -ae, f. (Eabed), Hispània (his-pà'nì-a), better, Spain. 2. occàsus, -ús, m. [occidó, fall, set], falling down, setting; with sólìs, sun-
set; the west. 4.

2. M. Messalâ . . . cónsulibus, "in the consulsip of Marcus Messala and Marcus Piso." Case? App. 150: G.-L. 409; 410: A. 419, a; 420, 1: B. 237, 1, 2; a: H.-B. 421, 1: H. 489, 1. These men were consuls in the year 61 B.C., three years before Caesar went to Gaul. In giving dates the Romans designated the year by naming the consuls of that year.

ditāte inductus coniūrātiōnem nōbilītātīs fēcit et civitātī persuāsit/ut de finibus suīs cum omnibus cōpiis exirent:

Perfacile esse, cum virtūte omnibus praestārent, tōtius Galliae

3. inductūs, -ducere, -duxi, -ductum, tr. [duco, lead], lead or draw on; induce, influence, instigate; cover. 4. coniūrātiōnem, -onis, f. [coniūrō, swear together], a swearing together; plot, conspiracy; secret league, confederacy. 3.

nōbilītās, -tātis, f. [nōbilis, well known], celebrity; noble birth, nobility, rank; the nobility, the nobles. 3.

faciō, facere, fēcī, factum, tr. and intr.: tr., make, construct, form, do, execute (commande, etc.); give opportunity, etc.; with ut, bring about, cause: intr., do, act. Pass., fīös, fieri, factus sum (App. 83), with passive of above meanings, and, used impersonally, result, happen, come to pass. *

civitās, -tātis, f. [civis, citizen], citizenship; the citizens (as forming a community), state, city. *

3. coniūrātiōnem: the real purpose of the conspiracy was to make Orgetorix king, although the Helvetii, like most Gallic peoples, had no king. See Int. 29. His real reasons for wishing the people to emigrate were (1) that by making himself leader of the emigration he could get power enough to make himself king; and (2) that as king he wished to conquer the other states of Gaul.


cōpiis here includes the women and children.

5. perfacile esse . . . potīri is indirect discourse, depending on a verb of saying implied in persuāsit. Indirect discourse (App. 265) is very common in Caesar, and for this reason its essential principles should be grasped as soon as possible. No reference to details of the construction will be given in I, 1-29. The most essential fact to grasp is that when a declarative sentence is turned into indirect discourse the verb of the principal clause becomes an infinitive: App. 266: G.-L. 648: 650: A. 580, a: B. 314, 1, 2: H.-B. 589: H. 642, 1. This infinitive, however, cannot properly be translated by an English infinitive. In the present instance, what Orgetorix said was, perfacile est . . . potīri, "it is very easy to get control." The est has become esse, but the English equivalent is "(saying) that it was very easy to get control."

imperiō potiīri. Id höc facilius ās persuāsit, quod undique locī nātūrā Helvētii continentur: unā ex parte flūmine Rhēnō lātissimō atque altissimō, qui agrum Helvētium ā Germānīs dividit; alterā ex parte monte Iūrā altissimō, qui est inter

praestō, -stāre, -stītis, -stātum, tr. and intr. [stō, stand]. stand or place before; show, exhibit, supply, furnish; be superior, excel, surpass; imperā, praestāt, it is better or more advisable.

tōtus, -a, -um, gen. tōtīus (App. 33), adj., the whole, the whole of; entire, all; with force of adv., wholly, entirely. *

6. imperium, -i, n. [imperā, command]. command, order; authority, sway, supreme power, dominion, sovereignty; supreme military command, highest official power. *

potior, 4, intr. [potis, powerful], become master of, get control or possession of, obtain, capture. *

facile, adv. [facilis, easy], easily, readily. Comp., facilius; sup., faciliīmes (App. 41). *

undique, adv. [unde, whence], from all parts; on all sides, everywhere. *

7. locus, -i, m. (pl. loca, -ōrum, n.), place, position, locality, situation; topic, subject; condition, state; rank, family; opportunity; obsidium locō, as hostages. *

nātūrā, -ae, f. [nāscor, be born], nature; natural disposition, character; constitution. *

ē (only before consonants), ex (before vowels and some consonants), prep. with abl., originally denoting motion out of; (1) of place, out of, from, away from; denoting position, in some phrases, on; unā ex parte, on one side: (2) of time, from, after, since; ex itinere, immediately after the march: (3) variously translated in other relations, from, out of, of, because of, in accordance with; ē regiōne, opposite. *

8. lātus, -a, -um, adj., broad, wide, extensive, 4.

altus, -a, -um, adj., high, lofty; deep; neut. as noun, the deep, the sea. *

ager, agri, m., field, land; district, territory. *

9. alter, -era, -erum, gen. alterius (App. 32), the other (of two); second; the one; alter / . . . alter, the one . . . the other; alteri . . . alteri, the one party . . . the other. *

Iūra, -ae, m. (Cg), the Jura (jū'ra) mountains. 3.

tōtius . . . potiīri: i.e., the Helvetii were to do what the Haeduani and the Sequani were trying to do. See Int. 29. imperiō: case? App. 145: G.-L. 407: A. 410: B. 218, 1: H.-B. 499: H. 477, I.

6. id . . . persuāsit, lit. "he persuaded this (id) to them more easily on this account (hōc)" = "he persuaded them to this course the more easily."


Īs: cf. civitātis, 1. 3.


8. ā Germānīs: case? App. 134: G.-L. 390, 1, 2: A. 401: B. 214, 2: H.-B. 408, 1, a: H. 461. We have learned in 1, 12-14, that the Rhine did not prevent frequent battles with the Germans. Later in his work Caesar implies that the pressure of the Germans was one of the reasons for the emigration of the Helvetii. On the other hand, the certainty that Germans would occupy Helvetia was one of the reasons why Caesar would not let the Helvetii emigrate. See Int. 3.

9. alterā ex parte: "on a second side." Notice how often a monosyllabic preposition stands between an adjective and its noun.
10. * CAESAR'S GALIC WAK, f. 2

10. Sēquanōs et Helvētiōs; tertīā lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō, qui prōvinciam nostram ab Helvētiōs dividit. His rēbus fīebat āt et minus lātē vagārentur et minus facile finitimus bellum inferre possent: quā ex parte hominēs bellandī cupidī magnō dolore afficiēbantur. Prō multitūdine autem

10. lacus, -ās, m., lake. 3.
Lemannus, -ī (with or without lacus), m. (Cg.), Lake Lemannus (lē-mān'ūs), better, Lake Leman, or the Lake of Geneva. 3.

12. rēs, rel., f., of indefinite meaning; variously translated according to the context; thing, object, matter, event, affair, occurrence; circumstance, case; act, action, deed; reason, ground; rēs familiāris, property; rēs frumentāria, supplies; rēs militāria, warfare; novae rēs, revolution; rēs publicā, state; rēs āctae, deeds, achievements; quam ob rem, see qui and quis. *

minus, adv. comp. [parvus, little], less; not at all, too little; quō minus, see quō minus. *

lātē, adv. [lātus, wide], widely, extensively; longō lātēque, far and wide. 4.

vagōr, 1, intr. [vagus, roaming], roam about, rove, wander. 4.

finitimus, -ās, -um, adj. [finis, limit, border], bordering on, adjoining, neighboring; pl. as noun, neighbors. *

13. inferō, inferre, intullī, illātum, st. [ferō, bear], bear into, import, inflict, cause, produce, cast into; in equum inferre, mount on a horse; causā illātâ, making an excuse; signa inferre, advance the standards, attack. *
possūm, posse, potūlī, —, (App. 80).

10. tertīā: sc. ex parte. The fourth boundary, not mentioned here, was formed by the Alps.
11. his . . . fīebat, lit. "by these things it was brought about" = "the result was."

minus, "less" than they desired. finitimus: for case cf. omnibus, l.5.


14. prō . . . hominum, "considering the great size of the population."
hominum/et pró gloriā belli atque fortitūdinis angustōṣ se et finēs habère arbitrabantur, qui in longitūdinem milia passuum ccxl, in lātitūdinem clxxx patēbant.

3. His rēbus adductī et auctōritāte Orgetorīgis permōti

return for; as, in the disguise of; in place of, instead of; in proportion to, according to; in compounds (written pró, pró, and prōd), for, before, forward, forth. *

multitūdō, -inis, f. [mulitus, much]. a great number, multitude; the multitude, the common people, the populace. *

autem, conj., but (a weak adversative); however, on the other hand; now; moreover. *

15. glōria, -ae, f., glory, renown, honor, fame, reputation. 2.

fortitūdō, -inis, f. [fortis, brave], bravery, courage. 1.

angustōs, -a, -um, adj. [angō, squeeze], compressed, confined, straitened, narrow; in angustō, in a critical condition. *

16. habēō, 2, tr., have, hold, possess; think, consider, regard; deliver (with ὀράτιōnem); in animō habēre, intend; rationē habēre, have regard for; take care or see that (followed by an ut clause); consilium habēre, form a plan; in numerō hostium habēre, consider as enemies; alter sé habēre, be otherwise or different; for habēre with pf. pass. part., e.g. vectigālia redempta habēre, see App. 286, 6. *

arbitōr, 1, tr. and intr. [arbiter, umpire], decide; think, believe. *

longitūdō, -inis, f. [longus, long]. length, extent; long duration. 1.

mīlīa, indecl. num. adj., a thousand; pl. as noun, milīa, -īum, a., thousands (usually followed by genitive); milīa passuum, thousands of paces, miles. *

passus, -us, m. [pandō, extend], a pace, the distance from where the foot leaves the ground to where the same foot strikes it again, a measure of 4 feet, 10 1/2 inches (five Roman feet); mīlē passus or passuum, a Roman mile, 1,481 feet. *

17. ducenti, -ae, -a (CC), card. num. adj. [duo, two + centum, hundred], two hundred. *

quadragintā (XL), card. num. adj., indecl., forty. 2.

lātitūdō, -inis, f. [látus, wide]. width, extent, breadth. *

centum (C), indecl. card. num., a hundred. 4.

octōgintā (LXXX), card. num. adj., indecl. [octō, eight], eighty. 3.

-pateō, -ère, -ul, -i, intr., lie or be open, be passable; stretch out, extend. 4.

1. adduō, -dūcere, -dūxi, -ducērum, tr. [ducō, lead], lead or draw to, bring to; induce, influence. *

auctōritās, -ātis, f. [auctor, producer], influence, character, authority, reputation. *

permovere, -movēre, -mōvi, -mōtum, tr. [moveō, move], move thoroughly, arouse, incite, excite; affect, influence. *


angustōs finēs, "(too) narrow limits." finēs: case? App. 124: G.-L. 350: A. 387: B. 172: H.-B. 350: H. 404. Caesar has somewhat overstated the size of Helvetia, because he had to depend on the reports of the Gauls. It comprised rather more than half of modern Switzerland. According to chap. 29 the population was 283,000, while Switzerland now has a population of about 3,000,000.

oónstituērunt ea quae ad proficiscendum pertinērent comparāre, iūmentōrum et carrōrum quam maximum numerum coēmere, sēmentēs quam maximās facere, ut in itinere cópia frūmentī suppeteret, cum proximās civitātibus pācem et amicitiam cōnfirmae. Ad eās rēs cōnfiendās biennium sībi satis esse dūxē-

2. cōnstituō, -stituere, -stitul, -stitūtum, tr. [stātū, set up], set up, erect, construct; appoint, decide, decree, determine, establish, set, settle; (of troops) draw up, station; (of ships) anchor, station; raise (a legion). ♠

— proflēscor, proflēscī, proflēctus sum, intr. [cf. prōficiō, advance], set out, start, depart; set out for, start for; go. proceed.

comparā, l, tr. [parē, prepare], prepare, get ready; acquire, gain, secure; prepare for.

3. iūmentum, -i, m. [tungō, join, yoke], yoke or draft animal, beast of burden. ♠

carrus, -i, m., cart.

quam, (1) adv., (a) interrog., how? (b) rel., as; with sup. and with or without posse, as . . . as possible, very; quam diū, as long as; (2) conj. with comp., than; prius . . . quam, before; post . . . quam, postea . . . quam, after.

maximus, -a, -um, adj. [sup. of magnum, great. App. 42], greatest, largest.

— numerus, -i, m., number, quantity, amount; account; in numerō, with gen., among, as.

cōmē, -emere, -ēmē, -ēmptum, tr. [ēmō, buy], buy, buy up.

4. sēmentis, -is, f. [sēmen, seed], sowing.

iter, itineris, n. [ēō, go], route, road; journey, march; passage; facere iter, march, travel; magnis itineribus, by forced marches.

frūmentum, -i, m., grain; pl., crops.

— 5. suppētō, -petere, -petīvi, -petītum, intr. [sub + petō, seek, obtain], be near or at hand; be in store, be supplied, hold out.

pāx, pācia, f., peace; favor.

amicitia, -ae, f. [amicus, friend], friendship.

cōnfārmō, l, tr. [fārmō, strengthen], establish, strengthen, encourage, console; declare, assert.

6. cōnflēctō, -f骢ere, -foon, -fōctum, tr. [fació, make], make or do thoroughly, complete, accomplish, finish; finish

Chap. 3. The Helvetii make preparations. Orgetorix conspires with other chiefs.


comparāre, coēmere, facere, cōnfārmāre all depend on cōnstituērunt; "they decided to get ready . . . to buy . . . to sow . . . and to establish . . ."


quam maximum numerum, "as great a number as possible" or "as many . . . as possible."


5. cum . . . cōnfārmāre: although the Helvetii were warlike they wished to march peaceably while encumbered with their women and children and baggage train.


6. ad . . . cōnfiendās, lit. "for these things to be completed" = "for completing these preparations." Study
runt; in tertium annum profectiōnem lēge confirmant. Ad eās rēs conficiendās Orgetorix deligitur. Is sibi légatiōnem ad civitātēs suspicit. In eō itinere persuāset Castīcō, Catamantaloedis fīliō, Sēquanō, cuius pater rēgnūm in Sēquanīs multōs annōs obtinuerat et a senātū populi Rōmānī amicus appellātus

carefully this very common gerundive construction: App. 238; 293: G.-L. 427; 432: A. 563; 566: B. 339, 1, 2: H.-B. 609; 610; 612, III: H. 623; 628. Compare with it the gerund in l. 2. Notice that ad governs rēs and that conficiendās is an adjective in agreement with rēs. App. 157: G.-L. 299: A. 236: B. 234: H.-B. 330: H. 304. But conficiendās must be translated as if it were a verbal noun (gerund) governing rēs as its object.


biennium...dūxērunt, "they judged that two years were sufficient." Dūxē with this meaning is followed by indirect discourse: cf. 2, 5. The Helvetii intended to spend the years 60 and 59 in preparation and to leave home in the spring of 58.

7. confirmat: tense? App. 190, a: G.-L. 239: A. 409: B. 259, 3: H.-B. 491, 1: H. 532. 3. Caesar uses the historical present much more freely than English idiom permits it to be used in translating. It is best always to translate by a past.

8. sibi suspicit, "he took on himself." For case cf. omnibus, 2, 5.


obtinuerat, "had held." Always be suspicious of a translation which sounds like the Latin word. It may be
erat, ut rēgnum in civitāte suā occupāret, quod pater antē habuerat; itemque Dumnorīgi Haeduō, frātri Diviciāci, quī ēō tempore principātum in civitāte obtinēbat ac maximē plēbī acceptus erat, ut idem cōnārētur persuādet, eique filiam suam

the crowd, as opposed to individuals; a people or nation. *

Rōmānus, -a, -um, adj. [Rōma, Rome], Roman; as noun, a Roman. *

amicus, -a, -um, adj. [amō, love], friendly, well disposed; devoted; as noun, m., a friend, an ally. *

12. occupāre, i. tr. [ob- + -cipō, take], take possession of, seize, occupy; engage, employ. *

ante, (1) adv., before, above, previously; (2) prep. w. acc., before, in advance of. *

13. item, adv., in like manner, so, also, just so. *

Dumnorix, -Igis, m., Dumnorix (dōm'nō-řiks), a Haeduān chief, a brother of Diviciācus. *

Haeduō, -a, -um, adj. (Cef), of the Haedu (hēd'ū-ī); Haeduān; as noun, a Haedu; pī, the Haedu, possibly Haeduans, one of the most powerful of the Gallic tribes. *

frāter, -tris, m., brother. *

Diviciācus, -i, m., Diviciācus (divi-

right, but it is very likely to be wrong. Obtained" would be worse here.


amicus: an honorary title often granted to foreign states or chiefs by the Roman Senate in recognition of special services or to attach them to Roman interests.

12. ut occupāret, "to seize." This clause is the object of persuādet in l. 10: mode? App. 238: a: G.-L. 545, 1, 2: A. 563: B. 565, 1: H.-B. 560, 3, a: H. 563, 1; 565. Cf. ut suppeteret, 1. 4, which is not used as an object.

13. Dumnorīgi: younger than Diviciācus, and a bold leader of the anti-Roman party among the Haeduī.

Haeduō: the Haedu were the rivals of the Sequani for the leadership among the Gallis states. See map, and Int. 29. qui: i.e. Dumnorix.


principātum, "the leading position"; but he was not a magistrate.


15. ut idem cōnārētur, "to attempt the same thing"; i.e. attempt to overthrow the constitutional government and make himself king.

in mātrimōnium dat. Perfacile factū esse illis probat cōnāta perficerē/propereā quod ipse sua civitātis imperium obtentūrus essent: Nōn esse dubium quin lōtius Galliae plūrimum Helvētii possent: sē/suis cōpiis suōque exercitū/illis régna conciliātūrum confirmat. (Hāc ōrātiōne adductī/inter sē fidem et īūs iūrandum)

16. mātrimōnium, -nī, n. [māter, mother], marriage, wedlock, matrimony; in mātrimōnium dare, to give in marriage; in mātrimōnium dācere, to marry (said of the man). 2.

dō, dare, dedi, datum (App. 85), tr., give, bestow, present, grant, furnish; offer; yield, give up; in fugam dare, put to flight; dare manūs, yield; dare negotium, with dat., employ, engage, direct. (Some compounds of dō are derived from an obsolete verb, dō, put. 4.

ille, illa, illud, gen. illius, dat. illī (App. 56), dem. pron. (of what is remote in time, place, thought, etc., cf. hic), that, that man, woman, or thing; he, she, it; hic . . . ille, the latter . . . the former, see App. 170, a. 4.

probō, 1, tr. [probus, good], consider good, approve; prove, show, demonstrate. 3.

cōnātum, -ātī, n. [cōnār, try], attempt, undertaking. 1.

17. perficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, tr. [facē, make, do], make or do thoroughly or completely, complete, finish; subordinate verbs which in the direct form were either indicatives or subjunctions must be subjunctives in the indirect form: App. 269: G.-L. 650: A. 580: B. 314, 1: H.-B. 534, 2: I; 535, 2: H. 643.

18. nōn (App. 188, a), adv., not; no. * dubius, -a, -um, adj., uncertain, doubtful. 1.

quīn, conj. [qui, who or how+me, negative], that not, but that; after negative words of doubt or hindrance, but that, that, from, to; quīn etiam, nay even, moreover. *

multum, adv. [acc. of multus, much], much, very, greatly, especially; comp. plus, more; plūs posse, be more able or powerful, have more influence; sup. plūrimum, most, very; plūrimum posse, be most powerful; be very powerful or influential. *

19. exercitus, -ūs, m. [exerceō, train], a trained or disciplined body of men, an army. *

conciliātūr, 1, tr. [conciliō, assemble], bring together; gain or win over, secure; reconcile, conciliate. 1.

ōrātiō, -ōnīs, f. [ōrō, speak], a speaking, speech, language, words, address, argument. *

fidēs, -ei, f. [fidō, confide], faith, con-

18. perfacile . . . perficere, lit. "he shows to them to accomplish the attempts to be very easy to do [facē, the supine"] = "he showed them that it was very easy to carry out the undertaking." esse: cf. 2, 5.

19. propertēs quod obtentūrus esset, lit. "because he was about to seize upon" = "because he intended to seize upon." The clause is causal, like propertēs quod abest in 1, 6; but the subjunctive is used because it is a subordinate clause in indirect discourse. The second important fact about indirect discourse (cf. 2, 5) is that all
dant et, régno occupató, per trés potentissimós ac firmissimós populós, to-tius Galliáe sé sé potiri posse/spérant.

4. Ea rēs est Helvètiiis /per indicium ūnūntiātā. Mōribus suis Orgetorigem ex vinculis causam dicere coēgērunt; dannātum poenam sequi oportēbat, ut igni cremārētur. Diē

fidēncia; faithfulness, loyalty, trustworthiness; allegiance, protection, dependence; pledge, assurance; fīdem facere, convince, give a pledge; fīdem sequi, surrender. *

ītūs iūrandum, ūtūs iūrandī, n. [ītūs, right+īūrō, swear], an oath. *

- 21. per, prep. with acc., through, throughout; by means of, through the agency of, on account of, through the efforts or influence of; per se, of their own accord, on their own responsibility; sometimes with intensive force, in itself, themselves; in composition, through, very, thoroughly, completely. *

potēns, -entis, adj. [pres. part. of possum, be able], powerful, influential. 4.

fīrmus, -a, -um, adj., strong, stable, vigorous, firm. 3.

22. spērō, 1, tr. [spēs, hope], hope, hope for, anticipate. 2.

- 1. indicium, -i, n. [indicō, disclose], disclosure, information; per indicium, through informers. 1.

ūnūntiās, 1, tr. [ūnūntiō, announce], report, declare, disclose. *

- mōs, mōris, m., manner, custom, practice; pl. customs, habits; character. *

- 2. vinculum, -ī, n. [vincō, bind], bond, fetter, chain. 3.

cōgō, cōgere, coēgī, coēctum, tr. [co+āgō, lead], lead or bring together, collect, draw together, assemble; force, compel, constrain. *

3. dannāt, 1, tr. [dannum, damage], declare guilty, sentence, condemn. 1.

poena, -ae, f., punishment, penalty. 3.

sequor, sequi, secūtus sum, tr. and intr., follow, follow after, pursue; accompany, attend; follow in point of time; with poena, be inflicted; fīdem sequi, seek the protection. *

- oportet, -ēre, -uit, —, intr. imper., it is necessary, needful, becoming, proper; when translated as personal verb, must, ought. *

ignis, -is, m., fire. 4.

cremō, 1, tr., burn. 2.

dīēs, -ī, m. and f., day; time; in dīēs, from day to day; diēm ex dīēs, day after day. *

21. régno occupató potiri posse spérant, “they hoped that after they had seized the royal power [each in his own land] they could get control of.” régno occupató: case? App. 150: G.-L. 409; 410: A. 419: B. 227, 2; H.-B. 421, 3; H. 498, 1. Latin is very fond of the ablative absolute: English very seldom uses its corresponding idiom, the nominative absolute. Never translate an ablative absolute literally “The royal power having been seized” is wretched English.

per trés populós: i.e. the Helvetii, the Sequani, and the Haeduī.


Chap. 4. Orgetorix is tried for conspiracy, but escapes. His sudden death.

1. ea rēs, “this conspiracy.”


2. ex vinculis, “in chains.” Cf. note on 1, 15.

3. dannātum . . . cremārētur, lit. “it was necessary for the punishment to
cōstitūtā/causeae dictiōnis/Orgetorix ad iūdicium omnem suam familiam, ad hominum milia decem, undique coēgit, et omnēs clientēs obaerātōsque suōs, quōrum magnum numerum habēbat, eōdem condūxit; per eōs, nē causam diceret, sē ēripuit. Cum civitās ob eam incitāta armis iūs suum exsequi cōnārētur, multitūdinemque hominum ex agris

4. dicitō, -ōnis, f. [dīcō, say], speaking, pleading. 1.

iūdicium, -ī, n. [INDEX, judge], judicial proceedings, trial; opinōn, judgment; iūdicium facere, express an opinion; iūdiciō, by design, purposely. 4.

5. familia, -ae, f., household (including slaves); retinē (including all dependents); family. 3.

decem (X), indic. card. num., ten. *

6. cliēns, -entis, m., f. [clueō, hear, obey], client, vassal, dependent, retainer. 3.

obserātus, -a, -um, adj. [aēs, money], in debt; as noun, debtor. 1.

7. eōdem, adv. [old dative of Iadem], to the same place, to the same point (result, end, etc.). *

condūcō, -ducere, -düxi, -ductum, tr. [duō, lead], lead or bring together, assemble; conduct; hire. 4.

nē (App. 189, b), (1) conj. with subj., that . . . not, so that . . . not, in order that . . . not, lest; after verbs of fearing, that, lest: (2) adv., not; nē . . . quidem (enclosing the emphatic word), not even. *

8. ēripiō, -ripere, -ripui, -rep tum, tr. [rapiō, seize], wrest or take away, extort, deprive; rescue, relieve, save. * ob, prep. with acc., on account of, for; in compounds, opposed to, to, toward, against; quam ob rem, wherefore, why. *

incitō, 1, tr. [cītō, put in motion], set in motion; incite, arouse, urge on, stimulate; exasperate; cursū incitātō, at full speed. *

arma, -ōrum, n. pl., arms; equipment; by metonymy, battle, war. *

iūs, iūris, n., right, justice, law; rights; power, authority. *

9. exsequor, -sequi, -secūtus sum, tr. [sequor, follow], follow out, enforce. 1.

follow (him) condemned that he should be burned with fire = "if condemned it was necessary that the punishment of being burned be inflicted upon him."


5. ad, "about."

6. obaerātōs: those who had become slaves on account of debt.

7. per eōs, "by their help."


8. cum cōnārētur . . . -que magistrātus cōgerent, "when the state was attempting . . . and the magistrates were collecting": mode? App. 240; 242, a: G.-L. 565: A. 546, notes 1, 2, 3: B. 288, b: H.-B. 534: H. 600, II, 1.
magistrātus cōgerent, Orgetorix mortuus est; neque abest suspiciō, ut Helvētii arbitrantur, quīn ipse sibi mortem cōnsēverit.

5. Post eius mortem( nihilō minus ) Helvētii id quod cōnstituerant facere cōnantur, ut ē finibus suis excant. Ubi iam sē ad eam rem parātōs esse arbitrātī sunt, oppida sua omnia, numerō ad duodecim, vicōs ad quadringentōs, reliqua privāta aedificia incendunt; frūmentum omne, praeterquam quod sēcum

10. magistrātus,-ūs, m. [magister, master], public office, magistracy; public officer, magistrate. *
   morior, mori, mortuus sum, intr. [mors, death], die. 2.
   neque (nec) (App. 198, a), conj. [ne-que], and not, not, nor; but not; neque ... neque, neither ... nor. *
   suspiciō,-ōnis, f. [suspicior, suspect], suspicion, distrust; cause for suspicion; indication, appearance. *
   mors, -tis, f., death; sibi mortem cōnsēcrere, commit suicide. 4.
   cōnsēcrō, -sciscere, -scivī, -scītum, tr. [sciscēre, resolve], resolve upon; sibi mortem cōnsēcrere, commit suicide. 2.
   post, adv., and prep. with acc. (1) as adv., later, afterwards; (2) as prep., behind, after; post tergum or post sē, in the rear. *
   nihilō, adv., by no means; nihilō minus, nevertheless; nihilō sētius, none the less, nevertheless. 3.

11. ut with the indicative usually means either "as," or "when."
   quīn ... cōnsēcrī, "that he committed suicide."

Chap. 5-8. Caesar thwarts the efforts of the Helvetii to cross the Rhone and march through the Roman Province.

Chap. 5. The Helvetii burn their dwellings and secure allies.


2. ubi, adv. (1) of place, in which place, where; (2) of time, when, whenever; as soon as; ubi primum, as soon as. *
   iam, adv., now, at this time; already, by this time, at last; really, indeed, even; neque iam or iam nōn, no longer; ubi iam, as soon as. *
3. parā, i, tr, prepare, get ready; procure, acquire; prepare for, get ready for; parātus, p, part. as adj., ready, prepared, equipped. *
   oppidum, -i, n., fortified town, town, stronghold. *
4. duodecim, card. num. adj. [duo, two-+decem, ten], twelve. 2.
   vicus, -i, m., hamlet, village. *
   quadringenti, -ae, -a, card. num. adj., four hundred. 2.
   privātus, -a, -um, adj., private, personal, individual; as noun, person, individual. 3.
5. aedificium, -iō, n. [aedificō, build], building, house. *
   incendō, -cendere, -cendi, -cēnd-

ut excant, "(namely) to go forth," is a substantive volitive (or purpose) clause in apposition with id.

3. ad eam rem, "for the enterprise." parātōs is the adjective.
   esse, "were": indirect discourse.
   oppida, vicōs, aedificia: notice the absence of conjunctions, and cf. note on 1, 3.

   ad, "about."
portātūri erant, combūrunt, ut, domum reditiōnis spē sublātā, parātiōres ad omnia pericia subeunda essent; trium mēnsium molīta cibāria sibi quemque domō efferre īnvent. Persuādēnt Rauracīs et Tulingis et Latobrigis, finitimis, utī eōdem ūsī

sum, tr. [cf. candēō, shine], set fire to, fire, burn; inflame, excite. *
praeterquam, adv., besides, except. 1.
6. portō, 1, tr., carry, transport, bring, take. 3.
combrō, -āre, -ussi, -ustum, tr. [com(b)-āre, burn], burn up. 1.
domus, -ās (App. 29, d.), f., house; home; native country. *
redivīs, -ānis, f. [redoē, return], return. 1.
spēs, -ēl, f., hope, anticipation, expectation. *
tollō, tollere, sustulī, sustulātum, tr., lift, elevate; take on board; take away, remove; do away with, destroy; cancel; substulātus, plf. part. as adj., elated. *
7. periculum, -ī, n., trial, test, attempt; risk, danger, peril. *
subēō, -īre, -īli, -itum, tr. [ēō, go]. App. 84], come or go under, come up to, come up; undergo, endure. 4.
mēnsis, -is, m., month. 3.
8. molēs, -ere, -ulī, -itum, tr., grind. 1.
cibārius, -ās, -um, adj. [cibus, food], pertaining to food; n. pl. as noun, provisions; molīta cibāria, meal, flour. 2.
-quisque, quidque, and quisque, quaeque, quodque, universal indef. pron. (App. 62), each one, each; every one, all. *
efferē, efferre, extulli, ēlātum, tr. [ex+ferō, carry. App. 81], bring or carry out, carry or take away; raise; spread or publish abroad, make known; elate, puff up. 2.
tubeō, tubēre, iussi, iussum, tr., order, bid, command, enjoin. *
9. Rauraci, -ōrum, m. (Cg), the Rauraci (rawr'ah-si). 2.
Tulingi, -ōrum, m. (Cgh), the Tulingi (tu-lin'i), a Gallic tribe east of the Rhine. 4.
Latobrigi, -ōrum, m. (Bh), the Latobrigi (la-toh-brij'i), a Gallic tribe east of the Rhine. 3.
ōtor, ūtī, īsus sum, intr., make use of, employ, use, avail one's self of, exercise; have, enjoy, experience, possess, show; adopt, accept; īsus, plf. part. often translated with. *

6. portātūri erant, lit. "they were about to take" = "they intended to take." ut essent is a purpose clause.
spē subiātā: translate the ablative absolute by a temporal clause.
7. ad . . . subeunda: construction?
trium mēnsium cibāria, "supplies for three months." mēnsium: case? App. 100: G.-L. 966, 2: A. 345, b: B. 203, 2: H.-B. 355: H. 440, 3. Napoleon III estimates that 3,500 wagons, drawn by 34,000 draft animals, were needed to transport the necessary provisions and baggage of the Helvetican host: even this is probably an underestimate.
ūti . . . proficiēcantur, lit. "that having used the same plan, their towns ... having been burned, they set out along with them" = "to adopt . . . , to burn . . . , and to set out." consiliō: case? App. 145: G.-L. 407: A. 410: B. 218, 1: H.-B. 429: H. 477.
10 cōnsiliō, oppidīs suis vicisique extantis, ānā cum iis proficiscantur; Bōiosque, qui trāns Rhēnum incoluerant et in agrum Nōricum trānsierant Nōreamque oppugnābant, receptōs ad sē sociōs sibi asciscunt.

6. Erant omnīnō itinerā duo quibus itineribus domō exīre

10. cōnsiliō, -II, n., consultation, deliberation; counsel, advice; plan, design; measure, course of action; judgment; prudence, wisdom; an assembly for deliberation, council, council of war; commūnē cōnsiliō, by, or in accordance with, general action; pūblīcō cōnsiliō, by action of the state; cōnsiliūm capere or inire, form or adopt a plan; cōnsiliōm habēre, think, consider.

ēxtrō, -āre, -usu, -ustum, tr. [ārō, burn], burn up. 1.
ānā, adv. [ānns, one], (1) of place, together, along with, in one place; (2) of time, together, along with, at the same time, also.

11. Bōii, -ōrum, m. (Ce), the Bōii (bō'yi), a Celtic tribe once very powerful in southern Germany and Cisalpine Gaul. Those who joined the Helvetii were afterwards settled by Caesar as indicated on the map.

12. Nōricus, -a, -um, adj., pertaining to Nōricum (a country between the Danube and the Aippa), Nōrican. 2.

trānseō, -ire, -i-tum, tr. and infr. [ēō, go. App. 84], go across or over, cross; march through, pass through; move, migrate; of time, pass by.
Nōria, -ae, f. (Ck), Nōrea (nō-rē'ya), a town in Nōricum, now Neumarkt. 1.
oppugneō, i. tr. [ōb+-pugnā, fight], fight against, attack, assault, storm, besiege.
recipio, -cipere, -ōpī, -ceptum, tr. [re+-capō, take], take or get back, recover; admit, receive, receive in surrender or submission; admit of, allow; with sē, withdraw one's self, retreat, escape, flee, run back; recover one's self.

13. socius, -ei, m. [cf. sequor, follow], companion; confederate, ally.
asciscō, -sciscere, -scivi, -scitum, tr. [ad+asciscō, approve], approve; admit or receive (as allies). 2.
- 1. omnīnō, adv. [omnis, all], at all; whatever; altogether, entirely, wholly; in all, only.
- duo, duae, duo (App. 49), card. num. adj., two.

called to the fact; and if the pupil has not yet mastered the construction he should do so immediately.

THIRD REFERENCES:
Direct object
Ablative of specification

Chap. 6. The Helvetii decide to march through the Roman Province.

1. erant, "there were."
quibus itineribus, "by which." Caesār sometimes repeats the antecedent in the relative clause, where English usage requires its omission. Case? App. 144:
quibus . . . possent, "by which they
possent: ūnum per Sēquanōs, angustum et difficile, inter montem Iūram et flūmen Rhodanum, vīx quā singuli carri dūcerentur; mōns autem altissimus impendēbat, ut facile perpauci prohibēre possent: alterum per prōvinciam nostram, multō facilius atque expeditiūs, propterea quod inter finēs Helvētiorum et Allobrogum, qui nūper pācāti erant, Rhodanus fluit, isque/nōn nūllis locis/vadō trānsitūr. Extrēmum oppidum

2. difficilis, -e, adj. [facilis, easy], not easy, hard, troublesome, difficult. 3.
- vīx, adv., with difficulty, barely, hardly, scarcely. 4.
quā, adv. [abl. fem. of quī], by which way or road; in which place, where. *
singuli, -ae, -ā, distrib. num. adj., one each, one; one at a time, single, separate; each, every; the several; in annōs singulōs, annually. *
4. impendēs, -pendere, —, —, intr. [in]-pendēs, hang), overhang, impend. 2.
5. perpauci, -ae, -a, adj. [pauci, few], very few, but very few; m. pl. as noun, very few. 4.
6. multō, adv. [abl. of multus, much], by far, much. 4.

facilis, -e, adj. [faciō, do], easy. 4.
- expeditus, -a, -um, adj. [pf. part. of expediō, set free], unimpeded, free, unobstructed; without baggage; light armed; as noun, a light armed soldier. *
7. Allobrogēs, -um, m. (Dīg), the Allobroges (ā-lōb'rō-jēs), a powerful Gallic people in the Province. *
nūper, adv., recently, not long ago. 3.
pācō, 1, tr. [pāx, peace], make peaceful, subdue, pacify; pācātus, pf. part. as adj., peaceful, quiet, subdued. *
8. fluō, fluere, fāxi, —, intr., flow, run. 2.
vadum, -ī, s., ford, shallow. *

2. ānum (īter) and alterum (īter) are appositives of itinera duo; App. 95, d: G.-L. 330: A. 281; 283, a: B. 169, 1, 2, 5: H.-B. 317, 2; 319, 1, a: H. 303, 4. Study the two routes on the map, p. 70. The one involved passing through Pas de l'Écluse, the other involved crossing the Rhone.
3. vīx: notice its emphatic position before the relative, and cf. note on quae pertinent, 1, 8.
4. dūcerentur, "could be drawn." This is another subjunctive of characteristic, but it differs from possent in that here the subjunctive mode has the potential meaning "could": App. 230, c: G.-L. 631, 2: H.-B. 517, 2. The place referred to is Pas de l'Écluse: see map, p. 70.
6. prohibēre: sc. ēsā.
7. nūper pācāti erant: in 61 a.C., after a desperate struggle to regain their independence.
vadō trānsitūr, lit. "is crossed by a ford" = "is fordable."
extrēmum: i.e. it is on the northern frontier.
Allobrogum est proximumque Helvëtiörum finibus Genava.


9. Genava, -ae, f. (Cg), Genava (jēn'ë-vä), a city of the Allobroges, now Geneva. *

10. pōns, pontis, m., bridge. *

11. nōndum, adv. [nōn, not-+dum], not yet. *

bōnus, -a, -um, adj., good, beneficial, profitable, well-disposed; (with animō) friendly; as noun, bonum, -i, profit, advantage; bōna, -ōrum, goods, property, estate; bonī, -ōrum, the good, good men or citizens. Comp., melior; sup., optimus (App. 42). *

12. videō, vidēre, vīdi, visum, tr., see, perceive, observe, examine, understand; see to, take care; in pass., be seen; seem, appear; seem proper, seem best. *

ut paterentur is a substantive volitive (or purpose) clause, the object of both persuāsrōs and coāctūrōs.

13. omnibus rēbus comparātīs, "when they had made everything ready."

14. qua diē: cf. note on quībus il·lērībus, 1. 1.

qua diē omnēs conveniant, "on which they should all assemble."


15. a. d. V. Kal. April. = ante diem quīnīnum Kalēndās Aprilīs = diē quīnīo ante Kalēndās Aprilīs. The former phrase is idiomatic but can not be parsed. In all such reckonings the Romans counted both ends, while we count but one. The date here meant is the twenty-eighth of March, which we should consider the fourth day before the
7. Caesar cum id nūntiātum esset, /ēōs per prōvinciam nostram iter facere cōnāri, mātūrat ab urbe profisciēt, /et quam maximīs potest itinerībus/in Galliam ulterīōrem contēndit et ad Genavam pervenit. Prōvinciae tōtī quam maximum potest

---

**Third References:**

**Apposition**

**Purpose clauses**

Chap. 7. Caesar hastens to Gaul and delays the Helvetii by a pretext.

1. Caesarī: he had been consul in the year 59, and at the end of his year of office he had immediately become pro-consum Galli. See Int. 11, 12. He was at this time near Rome, preparing to leave for his province. The news merely hastened his movements.


1d, “this fact,” is explained by its appositive, the clause, ēōs . . . cōnāri, “that they were planning, etc.” ēōs: case? App. 123: G.-L. 303, R: 1: 243, 2: A. 397, c: B. 184: H.-B. 398: H. 4'5. cōnāri: construc-


2. ab urbe, “from [near] the city,” instead of ex urbe, because one who held a military command could not legally be in the city.

**quam maximīs potest itinerībus,** lit. “by (as great) day’s journeys as the greatest he can” = “by as long day’s journey as possible.” **quam maximīs itinerībus** would have meant the same thing. These two idioms are very common in Caesar. We learn from Plutarch that Caesar traveled about ninety miles a day. **itinerībus: case?** App. 142: G.-L. 399: A. 412: B. 230, 1: H.-B. 445, 2: H. 473, 3.

3. **ulterīōrem = trānsalpinam,** “beyond the Alps” from Rome.

militum numerum imperat (erat omnino in Gallia ulterior legio una), pontem qui erat ad Genavam iubet rescindiri. Ubi dē eius adventū Helvetii certiorēs factī sunt, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt, nōbilissimōs civitātīs, cuīs lēgātiōnis Nammēius et Verucloetius princīpem locum obtinēbant, /qui dicerent sibi 10 esse in animō sine āūlō maleficiō iter per prōvinciae facere, propereā quod alīud iter habērent nūllum; rogāre ut eius

5. miles, -itis, m., soldier, private soldier; infantry (posed to equitās); mūlitēs imperāre, levy soldiers upon.

imperō, 1, tr. and intr. [in+parō, procure], demand from, enjoin or levy upon; command, order, instruct, rule. *

legiō, -onis, f. [legō, choose], a legion.

rescindē, -scindere, -scīdi, -scissum, tr. [re+-scindō, cleave], cut away or down, break down, destroy. 2.

adventus, -ūs, m. [venīō, come], coming, arrival, approach.

certus, -a, -um, adj. [for crētus, pf. part. of cernō], decided; certain, sure, fixed; certiōrem facere, to inform (acc. and inf.); order (ut or nē and subj.); certior fieri, be informed. *

lēgātus, -i, m. [lēgō, delegate], one with delegated powers; ambassador, envoy, legate; lieutenant, legatus. *

mittō, mittere, misi, missum, tr., send, send off, dismiss, let go, dispatch; hurl, discharge.

Nammēius, -i, m., Nammetus (nā-mē'-yūs). 1.

Verucloetius, -ti, m., Verucloetius (vērū-kō-lē'-tūs), an Helvetian envoy, sent to Caesar. 1.

 princeps, -ipis, adj. [primus, first+ capiō, take], taking the first place; chief, most prominent, first; as noun, chief or principal person, leader, chief. *

sine, prep. with abl., without. *

tullus, -a, -um, gen. tullius (App. 33), adj., a single, any; as noun, any one, anybody. *

maleficus, -ī, n. [malum, evil+ faciō, do], evil doing, mischief, harm, injury. 4.

nūllus, -a, -um, gen. nūllius, adj. [ne+-nullus, any, not any, no; as noun, no one, none; nōn nūllus, some; as noun, some, some persons. *

rogō, 1, tr., ask; request, ask for. *


6. legiō: this was the tenth, afterwards Caesar’s favorite legion. On the organization of a legion see Int. 33.

7. certiorēs factī sunt, lit. “were made more certain” - “were informed.”


8. nobilissimus: used as a noun.

9. qui dicerent, “who were to say”

="to say": a relative clause of purpose.


11. quod habērent is a subordinate clause in indirect discourse. Cf. 3, 17.

rogāre (sc. aē), “that they asked.” The speakers said to Caesar rogāmus, “we ask.”

ut sibilicesat, “that it be permitted them” or “that they be allowed.” For mode see App. 228, a: G.-L. 546, 1: A. 563: B. 235, 1: H.-B. 530, 2: H. 563, 1; 565.

eius: i.e. Caesar’s.
voluntāte id sibi facere liceat. Caesar, quod memoriā tenēbat L. Cassium consulem occisum exercitumque eius ab Helvētiis pulsum et /sub iugum missum/ concēendum nōn putābat; neque hominēs inimicō animō, datā facultāte per prōvinciam tr., beat, defeat, rout; drive out, expel. *
sub, prep. with acc. and abl. (1) With acc., (a), with verbs of motion, under, beneath; up to: (b) of time, just at, about, toward. (2) With abl., (a) of position, under, beneath; toward, near to; at the foot or base of: (b) of time, during, within: in compounds, sub or subs, under; up, away; from beneath; secretly; in succession; slightly. *
iugum, -I, n. [Iungō, join], yoke; ridge, crest. *
concedō, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessum, tr. and intr. (cēdō, go), go away, depart, withdraw; grant, yield; allow, permit. *
pūtō, 1, tr., think, consider, believe. *
imicēsus, -a, -um, adj. [in + amicus, friendly], unfriendly, hostile; as noun, an enemy (personal), rival, to be distinguished from hostis, a public enemy.
-facultās, -tātis, f. [old adj. facult =facilis, easy], power; opportunity, chance; resources, supply. *

12. voluntātēs, -tātis, f. [volō, wish], wish, will, desire, inclination; good will, favor; consent, approval. *
licet, licēre, licuit and licētum est, intr., imper., it is lawful, one has permission, it is permitted, one may, one is allowed; licet mihi, I may; petere ut licet, to ask permission. *
memoria, -ae, f. [memor, mindful], the faculty of memory; recollection, memory, remembrance; tradition; memoria tenēre, remember; patrum memoria, in the time of our fathers. *
tenēo, tenère, tenul, tentum, tr., hold, keep, occupy, possess, hold possession of; hold in, restrain, bind; sē tenēre, remain; memoria tenēre, remember. *
13. Cassius, -i, m., Lucius Cassius Longinus (lū'shyūs kāsh'yūs lōn-gi-nūs), consul 107 B.C., slain in battle by the Tigurini. 3.
occidō, -cidere, -cidī, -cissum, tr. [ob+cædō, cut, slay], cut down, kill, slay. *
14. pellō, pellere, pepull, pulsum,}

12. voluntātēs is an ablative of accordance.

13. occisum, pulsum, missum are perfect passive infinitives in indirect discourse, and depend on memoriā tenēbat, which is equivalent to a verb of knowing. The perfect infinitive represents the action as past at the time of tenēbat: "that Lucius Cassius had been slain," etc.

14. sub iugum, "under the yoke." This "yoke" was made of three spears, two planted in the ground and the third fastened across them at a suitable height. Under this the soldiers of the captured army were compelled to pass, in token of submission and degradation.
concēendum (esse), "that permission ought to be granted."

15. hominēs temperamentōs (esse), "that men would refrain." The future infinitive shows that a future indicative was used in the direct form. Caesar thought nōn temperamentunt, "they will not refrain."

datā facultātēs may be translated by a conditional clause; "if an opportunity should be given."
itineris faciendi, temperatūrōs ab iniūriā et maleficiō existimiābat. Tamen, ut spatium intercēdere possit, dum militēs quōs imperāverat convenirent, légātis respondit diem sē ad deliberandum sūmptrum; si quid vellent, ad Ἱδ. April. reverterentur.

16. temperō, 1. intr., restrain or control one's self, refrain; temperātus, p. part. as adj., temperate, mild. 2.

iniūria, -ae, f. [in-+iūs, right], wrong, injustice; outrage, injury, harm, violence. *

17. tamen, adv. (opposed to some expressed or implied concession), yet, nevertheless, notwithstanding, still, however; at least. *

spatium, -tī, n., space, distance, extent, length of space; period or length of time; space, length of time, opportunity. *

intercēdō, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessum, intr. [cēdō, go, go or come between, lie between, intervene, be between; pass. 4.

dum, conj., while, as long as; till, until. *

18. respondeō, -spondēre, -spondi, -spōnsum, tr. and intr. [spondeō, promise], reply, answer. *

19. dēliberō, 1. tr. [libra, balance], weigh well; consider, deliberate. 2.

sūmō, sūmere, sūmpsi, sūmpsum, tr. [sub-emō, take], take away, take; assume; with supplicium, infect; with labor, spend. *

si, conj., if, if perchance; to see whether or if; whether; quod si, but if, now if. *

quis, quid, and qui, quae, quod (App. 61 and 62), (1) interrog. pron., who? which? what? quam ob rem, why? quem ad modum, how? (2) indef. pron., especially after si, nisi, né, num, any one, anything, any; somebody, something, some. *

volō, velle, volui, — (App. 82), tr. and intr., wish, be willing, want, desire; prefer, choose; intend; mean; quid sibi velit, what did he intend or mean? *

Idas, -uum, f., pl., the Ides: the 15th of March, May, July and October, and the 15th of other months. 1.

20. revertō, -vertēre, -verti, -versum, intr., used almost exclusively in the perfect tenses, and revertor, -verti, -versum, intr., used in the tenses direct form. Caesar said si quid velit, revertimus, "if you want anything, come again." The third (cf. 2, 5 and 3, 17) important fact about indirect discourse is that all imperatives of the direct form become subjunctives in the indirect form: App. 267: G.-L. 652: A. 588: B. 516: H.-B. 534: 2; 558: H. 642.

THIRD REFERENCES:
Predicate nouns and adjectives
Agreement of adjectives
Partitive genitive
Subject of infinitive
Substantive volitive (or purpose) clause
Causal clauses with quod, etc.
Infinitive in indirect discourse
Gerund
Gerundives
8. Intereā eā legiōne quam sēcum habēbat militibusque qui ex provinciā convenerant, ā lacū Lemannō, quī in fūmen Rhodanum infuluit, ad montem Iūram, quī finēs Sēquanōrum ab Helvētīis dīvidit, miliaria passuum XIX mūrum in altitūdinem pedum sēdecim fōssamque perdūcit. Eō opere perfectō præsidīa dispōnit, castella communīt, quō facilius, si se invitā trānsire.

formed on the present stem [re-vertō, turn], turn back, come back, return. * 1. intereā, adv., in the meantime, meanwhile. 4.

2. infuō, -fluere, -fūxi, —, intr. [fīno, flow], flow into, empty into. * 4. andēvīngintī (XIX), card. num. adj., indecl. (anus, one+ē, from +īngintī, twenty), nineteen. 2.

mūrus, -i, m., a wall. * altitūdō, -inis, f. [āltus, high, deep], height; depth; thickness (of timber). * 5.

pes, pedis, m., the foot; a foot, 11.65 inches in length; pedibus, on foot; pedem referre, retreat. * sēdecim (XVI), card. num. adj., indecl., sixteen. 3.

fossa, -ae, f. [īb. part. fem. of fossāre, dig], trench, ditch. * perduō, -dūcere, -dūxi, -ductum, tr.[duō, lead], lead through or along, conduct, bring over, bring; construct, extend; influence, win over; draw out, prolong. 4.

opus, operis, n., work, labor; military work or works, fortifications, defenses; a work of engineering or architecture; nātūrā et opere, by nature and art; opera, crafts. * præsidium, -di, n. [præsideō, guard], guard, garrison; safeguard, protection; fortification, stronghold; help, aid; safety. * 6.

dispōnō, -pōnerē, -posuī, -posūtum, tr. [pōnō, place], place apart or about; distribute, arrange, station. 2.

castellum, -I, n. [castrum, fort], fortress, redoubt. * commāniō, 4, tr. [māniō, fortify], fortify strongly, intrench. 1.

quō, conj. [abl. case form of qui, who, structured the wall and trench—a total of about three miles. Napoleon’s view is generally accepted, but there are good grounds for doubting its correctness. in altitūdinem pedum sēdecim, lit. “of sixteen feet into height” = “sixteen feet high.” pedum: App. 100: G.-L, 365, 2: A. 345, b: B. 203, 2: H.-B. 355: H. 440, 3. The “section of Caesar’s wall,” set into the map, p. 70, makes clear the method of constructing this wall. The top of the bank was cut down so as to make a steep front sixteen feet high: this was the mūrus. The earth which was dug out was simply thrown down the hill. A line of palisades was set on top, to serve as a breastwork for the Roman soldiers.

6. dispōnit, “stationed at several points.” Caesar had too few men to man the entire line. He therefore sta-
cōnārentur, prohibēre posset. Ubi ea dies quam cōnstituerat cum lēgātīs vēnit et lēgātī ad eum revertērunt, negat sē mōre et exemplō populi Rōmāni posse ite ēm per provinciam dare; et, si vim facere cōnentur, prohibitūrum ostendit. Halvētii

which, in order that, so that, that. *
invitus, -a, -um, adj., against one's wish or will, unwilling, reluctant; sē invītō, against his will. *

3. venīo, venire, vēni, venītum, intr., come, arrive, go, advance; in spem venire, have hopes; pass. often imper., as ventum est, they came, it came, etc. *

negō, 1, tr. and intr., say no, refuse, say . . . not. 1.
9. exemplum, -I, n., example, precedent. 2.
10. ostendō, -tendere, -tendī, -tendūm, tr. [obs.-tendō, stretch], stretch before; present, show, bring into view, reveal; tell, declare; point out, mention. *

tioned detachments (prāssidēa) in castella, at suitable points, and of course had pickets all along the line. At an alarm the nearest detachments were to run to the threatened point.

CAESAR'S FORTIFICATIONS ON THE RHONE


sī cōnārentur, "if they should try." sē invītō: construction? App. 150:

G.-L. 409: A. 419, a; 420, 1: B. 297, 1, 2, a: H.-B. 421, 1: H. 489, 1.
8. negat sē posse, "he said that he could not."

mōre et exemplō: case? App. 142, a:

10. sī . . . cōnentur, "if they should try to use force."

prohibitūrum (sc. se . . . esse), "that he would stop them."
eā spē dēiectī, nāvibus iūnctīs ratibusque complūrībus factīs, alīi vadis Rhodani, quā minima altitūdō flūminis erat, nōn numquam interdiū, saepius noctū si perrumpere possent cōnāti, operis mūnītīōne et militum concursū et tēlis repulsi hōc cōnātū dēstīrunt.

9. Relinquēbātur ūna per Sēquanōs via, quā Sēquanis

11. dēiectī, -icere, -icēs, -iectum, tr. [iacē, throw. App. 7], hurl or cast down; dislodge; kill; foill, disappoint. *

nāvēs, -is, f., ship, boat; nāvēs longa, galley, ship of war; nāvēs ocnaria, transport. *

lungō, lungere, lungērē, iuňctum, tr., join or unite together, attach, connect. 4.

ratis, -is, f., raft. 2.

complūrēs, -a, adj. [plūs, more], several, many; a great many. *

12. parvus, -a, um, adj., little, small, insignificant; comp., minor, minus, lesser, smaller; shorter; minus, as nōnus, less; sup., minimus, -a, -um, least, very small. *

numquam, adv. [ne-numquam, ever], not ever, never; nōn numquam, sometimes. 3.

interdiū, adv. [diēs, day], during the day, by day. 1.

noctū, ade. [nox, night], by night. 4.

perrumpō, -rumpere, -ruppl, -rupturn, tr. and intr. [rumpē, break], break through, force one’s way through, force a passage. 1.

mūnītiō, -ōnis, f. [mūniō, fortify], fortifying; fortification, rampart, works, intrenchments. *

concursus, -a, m. [concurrō, run], a running together, attack, assault, collision. 2.

tēlum, -i, n., a weapon for fighting at a distance, missile, dart, javelin. *

repellō, repellere, repulslum, tr. [rē-+-pellō, beat, drive], beat or drive back, repel, repulse. 4.

cōnātūs, -a, m. [cōnor, try], attempt, undertaking. 1.

dēsistō, -sistere, -stītī, -stittm, intr. [sistō, stand], abandon, cease, give up. 4.

1. relinquō, -inquare, -ilquī, -lic-

repulsi, “were repulsed and.”

15. cōnātū is an ablative of separation.

THIRD REFERENCES:

Accusative of extent of space
Ablative of separation
Ablative of means
Ablative absolute

Chap. 9-15. The Helvetii march out through the territory of the Sequani. Caesar, with a reinforced army, cuts to pieces a fourth of them and follows the rest.

Chap. 9. The Helvetii obtain permission from the Sequani to pass through their country.

1. ūna via, “only the way.” This was through Pas de l’Écluse, the way mentioned in 6, 2.

quā, “and by this.” Case? App. 144:
invitis propter angustias ire non poterant. His cum sua sponte persuadere non possent, legitus ad Dumnonigem Haeduum mittunt, ut eō deprecātōre á Sequanis impetrārent. Dumnonix gratā et largitio amicus, quod ex ea civitāte Orgetorīgis filiam in matrimonium duicerat, et cupiditāte regni adductus novis rebus studēbat et quam plūrimās civitātēs suō beneficiō habēre obstrictās volēbat. Itaque rem suscipit et á Sequanis

tum, tr. [re-linquō, leave, leave behind, leave, abandon; pass., be left. remain. *
via, -ae, f., way, road, route; journey, march. *
2. propter, prep. with acc. [prope, near], on account of, because of, in consequence of. *
angustia, -ārum, f. pl. [angustus, narrow], narrowness; a narrow place or pass, strait, defile; straits, difficulties, perplexity. *
3. sponti, gen., and sponte, abl. [obsoleto nomine, spōna], f., of one’s own accord, willingly, voluntarily; by one’s self. 2.
4. deprecātor, m. [deperecor, plead for], mediator, intercessor. 1.
impetrō, 1, tr. [in-patrō, accomplish], obtain [by request, entreaty, exer- tion], accomplish, succeed in obtaining (one’s request): impetrāre à (ab), gain permission from, persuade. *
5. grātia, -ae, f. [grātus, pleasing], favor, good will, gratitude, esteem, influence, popularity; grātias agere, thank; grātiam habēre, to feel grateful; grātiam referre, to return a favor; hanc grātiam referre, to return a favor in this way; grātiam intre, to gain favor; grātia following a gen., for the purpose of, in order to. *
largitio, -onis, f. [largior, brie], bribery. 1.
8. novus, -a, -um, adj., new, novel, unusual, fresh; rēs nova, a change of government, revolution; sup., novissimus, -a, -um, latest, last; as noun or with agmen, those in the rear, the rear. *
studeō, -ēre, -uli, —, intr., be eager or zealous; desire, strive after, devote one’s self to; pay attention to; accustom one’s self to. *
benevolentium, -i, n. [bene, well+ faciō, do], well-doing, benefit, favor, kindness. *
9. obstringō, -stringere, -strinxī,


Séquanis invitis, “if the Sequani should refuse.” Ablative absolute.
sua sponte, “by their own efforts” or “by themselves.” The phrase usually means “of their own accord.”
3. Dumnonigem: this is the Dumnonior who is mentioned in 3, 13 as having conspired with Orgetorix. Although that plot had failed he was still seeking a chance to make himself king.

4. ut impetrārent is a clause of purpose.
eō deprecātōre, lit. “he being mediator” = “by his mediation.”

suō . . . obstructās, lit. “to hold bound by his kindness” = “to keep under obligations.”
impetrat ut per fines suos Helvetiiors ire patiantur, obsidésque 10
uti inter sese dent perficit: Séquanis, nè itinere Helvetiäns
prohibeant; Helvetii, ut sine maleficìo et iniuriā trānsseant.

10. Caesarī renuntiātur Helvetiās esse in animō per agrum
Séquanōrum et Haeduōrum iter in Santonum fines facere, qui
nōn longē a Tolósātium finibus absunt, quae civitās est in pró-
vinciā. Id sī fieret, intellegēbat magnō cum periculō provinciae

-strictum, tr. [stringō, tie], bind, hold
under obligations, pledge. 2.

itaque, conj. [ita, so], and so, there-
fore, accordingly. *

10. obsēs, -īdis, m. and f. [obsideō, 
blockade], one that is guarded, hostage;
pledge, security. *

1. renuntiō, i. tr. [re- + nuntius, mes-
sage], bring back word, bring news, 
report; declare elected. *

2. Santoni, -ōrum, or Santones,
-um, m. (Dcd), the Santoni (sān′tō-ni), 
or Santones (sān′tō-nēs). 3.

3. Tolósātēs, -īrum, m., the Tolosates 
(tolōs′sā-tēz), the people of Tolosa. 4.

4. intellegō, -legere, -lexī, -lēctum, 
tr. [inter + legō, choose, select], select 
or distinguish between; understand; 
know; see, perceive, realize; find out, learn. *

10. obsides: all through Caesar’s 
narrative we find that states were 
obliged to bind themselves to carry out 
their agreements by giving hostages. 
The hostages were usually the children 
of the most influential men of the state, 
and were liable to enslavement or death 
if the state failed to fulfill its agree-
ment.

11. Séquanis, Helvetii: sc. obsides 
dent; i.e. the Séquani bound themselves 
not to stop the Helvetii, etc. The clauses 
are substantive volitive clauses, objects 
of the implied phrase “bind themselves.”

THIRD REFERENCES:
Dative with special verbs
Dative with adjectives

Chap. 10. Caesar brings more troops 
from Italy.

424; 425, I.

renuntiātur: tense? App. 190, a; G.-L. 
229: A. 469: B. 350, 3: H.-B. 491, 1: H. 
532, 3. Caesar had sent out spies and 
scouts to report the movements of the 
Helvetii.

Helvetii: case? App. 117: G.-L. 349: 

esse is the subject of renuntiātur.

2. facere is the subject of esse.

3. nōn longē: the distance is really 
about 130 miles, but the Helvetii would 
be more dangerous in the territory of 
the Santones than in their own country, 
because they would no longer be hemmed 
in by natural barriers. Caesar had rea-
son to fear that either the Helvetii or the 
Gauls whom they should drive from 
their homes would raid the Province; 
and since it was his duty to protect the 
Province he was justified in forcing the 
Helvetii to remain at home. He does 
not choose to add, however, that this 
movement of the Helvetii gave him an 
excellent opportunity to interfere in the 
affairs of Gaul, and thereby fitted in 
with his plans for the conquest of the 
country.

4. id sī fieret, “if this should be car-
ried out,” is a subordinate clause in in-
direct discourse, depending on futūrum: 
214: H.-B. 584, 2, II: H. 648. Caesar’s 
thought was, “if this shall be carried 
out [future indicative], it will, etc.”

magnō . . . futūrum, “that it would 
be (attended) with great danger to the 
province.” provinciae is a genitive.
5. *bellicosus, -a, -um, adj. [bellum, war], of or full of war, warlike.

6. *patēns, -entis, adj. [pateō, be open], open, unobstructed, accessible.

frumentarius, -a, -um, adj. [frumentum, grain], of or pertaining to grain; of places fruitful, productive of grain; rēs frumentaria, supply of grain, provisions.

7. T. abbr. for Titus (tī' tūs), a Roman praenomen.

Labiēnus, -i, m., Titus Atius Labiēnus (tū' tūs l'ībē' nūs), Caesar's most trusted lieutenant in the Gallic War. In the Civil War he aided Pompey and was slain at Munda 45 B.C.

praecīō, -ācere, -ācitum, tr. [facīō, make], make before; place over, put in command of, put at the head of, put in charge of.

Italia, -ae, f., Italy, sometimes (in Caesar) including Cisalpine Gaul, but usually including only the rest of the peninsula.

ibid, adv., there, in that place.

conscribō, -scribere, -scripsī, -scriptum, tr. [scribō, write], write together in a list; levy, enroll, enlist; write.

circum, prep. with acc. [circus, a circle], around, about, near.

Aquiliāna, -ae, f., Aquilia (a' k'ūl' ĭ lā' yā), a city of Cisalpine Gaul.

hiemō, -i, intr. [hiems, winter], pass the winter, winter.

hibernā, -ārum, n. [sc. castra, camp], winter camp, winter quarters.

dūcō, -dācere, -dūxit, -dūctum, tr. [dūcō, lead], lead out or forth; draw (a sword).


inimicōs is here used as a noun, and therefore a genitive depends on it. If used as an adjective it would govern the dative.

locis is probably a dative depending on finītimōs, though it may be an ablative of place.

habēret: sc. provinciā.


lēgātum: see Int. 36.

Italian: i.e. Cisalpine Gaul, which was one of the provinces under his proconsular command.


9. conscribis: he did this without authority from Rome. He had been given only four legions,—the one in Transalpine Gaul and the three at Aquileia. But the situation was more serious than the Roman Senate realized. He therefore increased his army to six legions, perhaps 90,000 men. With these legions and some auxiliary troops he had to oppose 90,000 fighting men, according to the Gallic records given in chap. 29.


quā proximum īter erat, “where there was the shortest route.” He chose the pass of Mount Genève, and the route is shown on the map facing p. 42. He did not wish to return to Geneva, for by this time the Helvetii had left their
Galliam per Alpēs erat cum his quinque legiōnibus ire contendit. Ibi Ceutroνēs et Graiociēlī et Caturigēs, locis superiōribus occupātīs, itinēre exercitum prohibēre cōnāntur. Complūribus his proelīs pulsīa, ab Ocelō, quod est oppidum citeriōris provinciāe extrēmum, in finēs Vocontiōrum ulteriōris provinciāe diē septimō pervenīt; inde in Allobrogum finēs, ab Allobrogibus in Segusiāvōs exercitum dūcit. Hī sunt extrā provinciām trāns Rhodanum prīmī.

11. Helvētīi iam per angustiās et finēs Sēquanōrum suās cópiās trādūxerant, et in Haeduōrum finēs pervēnerant

11. Alpēs, -ium, f. pl. (Cghi), the Alpes (Al′pēz), better, the Alps. *

12. Ceutroνēs, -um, m. (Dg), the Ceutrones (sā′trō-nēz). 1.

13. Graiociēlī, -ōrum, m. (Dg), the Graiociellī (grā-yōs′ē-ī-ī). 1.

14. Caturigēs, -um, m. (Dg), the Caturigēs (kāth-rīt′jēz). 1.

15. Ocelum, -ī, m. (Dg), Ocelum (ōs′ē-lūm). 1.

16. Citeriēs, -ius, comp. adj. (App. 43), nearer, hither; Gallia Citeriērī (=Cis- alpīna). Cisalpine Gaul, on the nearer (Italian) side of the Alps. *

17. Vocontiōrum, -ōrum, m. (Df), the Vocontiōrum (vō-kōn′shy). 1.

18. septimīus, -a, -um, ord. num. adj. [septem, seven], seventh. *

19. extrā, adv., from that place, thence; then, thereupon. *

20. Segusiāvī, -ōrum, m. (Def), the Segusiāvi (sēg′ū-shi-ā/vi). 1.

21. extrā, adv., and prep. with acc., out of, outside of, beyond, without. 1.

22. primīs, -a, -um, adj., sup. (App. 43), first, foremost; first part of; pl. as sōnus, the first, the front rank or ranks; leaders, chiefs; in prīmis, especially. *

23. trādūcō, -dūcere, -dūxi, -ducī, tr. [trāns + dūcō, lead], lead across.

Third References:

Possessive genitives
Indirect object
Dative with compound verbs
Ablative of place from which
Ablative of accompaniment
Historical present
Subordinate clause in indirect discourse.

Chap. 11. Three states ask Caesar to protect them against the Helvetii.

1. iam, "by this time."

2. angustiās: at Pas de l′Ecluse.

3. pervēnerant: i.e. the head of their column had crossed the Arar, though its rear was some miles from
eorumque agrós populábantur. Haedui, cum sè suaque ab ipsis
defendere nón possent, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt rogātum
 auxilium: Ita sè omni tempore dē populo Rōmānō meritōs esse
ut paene in cōnspéctu exercitūs nostri agrī vāstāri, liberī in
servitūtem addūcī, oppida expugnāri nón débuerint. Eōdem
tempore Ambarri, necessāriī et cōnsanguineī Haeduōrum,

Ilberi, -ōrum, m., [līber, free], the
free members of the household (as opposed
to slaves); children. *

7. servītūs, -ūtis, f. [servus, a
slave], slavery, servitude. *

abdūcō, -āducere, -ādūxī, -ductum,
tr. [āductō, lead], lead away, draw or
carry off, withdraw. 1.

expugnō, 1. tr. [pugnō, fight], take
or carry by storm, capture by assault;
overpower, sack. *

dēbecō, 2. tr. [dē+habeō, have], have, or
keep from some one; owe; with infr.,
ought, must; pass., be due. *

8. Ambarri, -ōrum, m. (Cf), the Am-
barri (ām-bār’i), clients of the Hae-
dui. 2.

-necessārius, -a, -atum, adj. [necessae,
necessary], necessary, requisite, press-
ning; with tempus, critical; as noun,
kinsman, friend. *

cōnsanguineus, -a, -um, adj. [sang-
guis, blood], of the same blood; as noun,
kinsman, relative. 3.

that river. They had traveled only
about a hundred miles during the two
months of Caesar’s absence. Much of
this time, however, had been spent in
negotiations with the Sequani. Their
line of march must have been at least fift
ty miles in length, and their progress was
necessarily slow, especially at the pass.
For their route see the map facing p. 42.

3. cum possent: causal.
suaque, “and their property.”

265: G.-L. 445, n. 8: A. 509: B. 840, 1: α:

5. omni tempore, “on every occa-
sion.”

meritōs esse depends on the idea of
“saying” which is implied in rogātum.
About sixty years before, the Haedui
had been called “brothers” of the Roman
people, and ever since that time
their relations with Rome had been
friendly; but we do not know that
they had ever been of assistance to
Rome.

6. ut agrī vāstāri nón débuerint,
“that their lands ought not to have
been devastated.” débuerint: mode?
App. 286: G.-L. 552: A. 537, 1: B. 284, 1:
H.-B. 521, 2: H. 570.

nostri = Rōmānī. It agrees with exer-
citūs.
Caesarem certòrem faciunt sēsē dépopulātis agris non facile
ab oppidis vim hostium prohibère. Item Allobroges qui tràns
Rhodanum vicīs possessionēaque habēbant fugā sē ad Caesarem
recipient et dēmōnstrant sibi prae ter agri solum nihil esse
reliqui. Quibus rébus adductus Caesar nón exspectandum sibi
statuit dum, omnibus fortūnis sociōrum cōnsūmpτis, in Santōns
Helvētii pervenirent.

12. Flūmen est Arar, quo per finēs Haeduōrum et

War with the Helvetii, B.C. 58

9. dépopulātis, agris, nōn facile ab oppidis vim hostium prohibère. Item Allobroges qui tràns Rhodanum vicīs possessionēaque habēbant fugā sē ad Caesarem recipient et dēmōnstrant sibi prae ter agri solum nihil esse reliqui. Quibus rébus adductus Caesar nón exspectandum sibi statuit dum, omnibus fortūnis sociōrum cōnsūmpτis, in Santōns Helvētii pervenirent.

12. Flūmen est Arar, quo per finēs Haeduōrum et

nihil, indic. noun. m., nothing; with gen. no, none of; acc. as adv., not at all, by no means; nōn nihil, somewhat.

- exspectō, ĕ, ĕ, [spectē, look at], look out for, await, expect; wait to see; anticipate, apprehend.

- statū, statuere, statūl, statu- tum, tr. [status, position], put in position, set up, place; determine, resolve; judge, pass sentence; think, consider.

- fortūna, -ae, f. [fors, chance], fortune, luck, chance, opportunity; lot, condition; good fortune, success; property, estate.

- cōnsūmpτ, -sumere, -sumptum, tr. [sumō, take], take together or all at once; devour, consume, destroy; use up, waste, pass.

1. Arar, Arear (acc. -im), m. (CDfg), the Arar (Arar), the modern Saone.

9. sēsē dépopulātis agris, "that their lands had been laid waste and that they," etc. In a number of deponent verbs the perfect participle is used with a passive meaning.

10. Allobroges, qui ... habēbant: most of the Allobroges were south of the Rhone and were not troubled; but the map shows that some were north of the river and on the route of the Helvetii.


14. dum pervenirent, "until they should arrive."

Third References:
Dative of possessor Relative instead of demonstrative

Chap. 12. Caesar destroys the Tigurini, the rearguard of the Helvetii.

1. flūmen est Arar, "there is a river (named) the Arar."
Séquanorum in Rhodanum influit, incrédibili lénitāte, ita ut oculis in utram partem fluat inidicāri non possit. Id Helvētiī ratibus ac lintribus iūnctis transibant. Ubi per explōrātorēs Caesar certior factus est tres iam partēs cōpiārum Helvētiōs id flūmen trāduxisse, quàrtam ferē partem citrā flūmen Ararim reliquam esse, dé tertiā vigiliā cum legiōnibus tribus ē castrīs profectus ad eam partem pervēnīt quae nōndum flūmen trāns-

2. incrédibilis, -īs, -e, adj. [in- + crēdibilis, credible], incredible, unlikely; extraordinary. 1.
   - lēnitās, -ētās, f. [lēnis, smooth], smoothness, gentleness. 1.
3. oculus, -i, m., eye. 3.
4. uter, utra, utrum, gen. utrum (App. 33), adj. (1) as interrog., which one or which of two; (2) as rel., the one who, of two, whichever. 1.
5. iūdīcis, 1, tr. [īdex, a judge], pass judgment on, judge, decide, determine; think, consider. *
- 4. līter, -tris, f., skiff, rowboat, canoe. 2.
6. explōrātor, -ōris, m. [explōrō, search out], explorer, scout, spy. *
7. cāstrum, -i, n., fort; pl., castra, castrōrum, fortified camp, camp; castra facere or pōnere, pitch camp; castra movēre, break up camp. *

2. incrédibilis lēnitāte, "of remarkably slow current": descriptive ablative.
   Why is the present tense used? Strictly because Caesar meant "can," not "could." Every subjunctive tense has a meaning and is used because that meaning is needed in the sentence; at the same time, however, they are almost invariably used in accordance with the rule for sequence of tenses. Learn once for all this very important rule, and the distinction between principal and historical tenses: App. 203; 303: G.-L. 509; 510; 511: A. 482, 1, 2; 483: B. 266, B; 267, 1, 2, 3: H.-B. 473, foot-note 2: H. 108; 543; 544; 545.
4. ratibus, lintribus: ablatives of means.
   iūnctis modifies only lintribus.
   transibant: at a point about twelve miles north of Caesar's camp. Excavations in this vicinity have brought to light numerous graves which give evidence of hasty interment, as if after a battle.
5. trēs . . . trāduxisse, "that the Helvētiī had already conveyed three-fourths of their troops across this river." The verb trāduxisse governs two objects, partēs depending on the meaning of the simple verb dūctō, flūmen depending on the meaning of the preposition trāns: App. 127: G.-L. 331, R. 1: A. 388, b: B. 175, 2, a, 1: H.-B. 301, 3: H. 405.
6. cītra: i.e. on the east.
7. dé tertīā vigiliā, "just after (the beginning of) the third watch" = "just after midnight."
   legiōnibus: how many men in a legion? Int. 33.
ierat. Hős impeditōs et inopinantēs aggressus magnam partem eōrum concidit; reliqui sēsē fugae mandārunt atque in 10 proximās silvās abdidērunt. Is pāgus appellābātur Tigurinus; nam omnis civitās Helvētia in quattuor pāgōs divisa est. Hic pāgus ūnus, cum domō exisset patrum nostrōrum memorīā, L. Cassium cōnsulem interfēcerat et eius exercitum sub iugum miserat. Ita sīve cāsū sīve cōnsiliō deōrum immortālium, 15 quae pars civitātis Helvētiae insignem calamitātem populō

9. impeditus, -a, -um, adj. [pf. part. of impediō, hinder]; hindered, burdened, impeded, delayed; hindered or burdened by baggage; occupied or engaged in; at a disadvantage; of places, difficult of passage. *

inopināns, -antis, adj. [in-+opināns, expecting], not expecting, not suspecting, unawares, off one’s guard. 2.

aggređior, -gređi, -gressus sum, tr. [ad+gradior, step], advance to or against; attack. 4.

10. concīdō, -cidere, -cīdi, -cīsum, tr. [caedō, cut], cut down, slay, kill; cut off. 3.

-mandō, 1, tr. [manus, hand+-dō, give], give into one’s hands; entrust, commit; enjoin, order, command. *

11. silva, -ae, f., a wood, forest, woods. *

-abdō, -dere, -dīdi, -ditum, tr. [dō, put], put away, remove, withdraw, hide, conceal. *

pāgus, -ī, m., village; district, province, canton. *

Tigurinus, -a, -um, of or belonging to the Tigurini; pl. as noun, Tigurini (Cg), the Tigurini (tīgūrīni). 2.

12. nam, conj., for. *

quattuor (IV), card. num. adj., indicl., four. *

14. interficīō, -ficere, -fēcis, -fectum, tr. [faciō, make], make away with, kill, destroy. *

15. sīve and seu, conj. [si, if+-ve, or], or if, or; whether; sīve . . . sīve, either . . . or, whether . . . or, to see if . . . or. *

cāsus, -ās, m. [cadō, fall], what befalls; accident, chance; misfortune, fate; crisis; cāsū, by chance. *

deus, -i (nom. pl., dī; dat. pl., dis), m., god, deity. 4.

immortālis, -e, adj. [in-+mortālis, mortal], not mortal, immortal. 3.

16. insignis, -e, adj. [signō, mark], marked, remarkable; m. as noun, mark, sign; ornament, trapping. 4.

calamitās, -tātis, f., misfortune, disaster, defeat. *


in silvās: from the English point of view we might expect the ablative (place where), but the verb implies motion into,—“ran into and hid.”


16. quae pars . . . ea, “that part which.” Not infrequently the antecedent is thus expressed in the relative clause instead of the principal clause, and the relative clause then precedes the antecedent.

populō: the compound infĕrō governs the indirect object.
Rōmānō intulerat, ea princeps poenās persolvit. Quā in rē Caesar nōn sōlum pūblīcās sed etiam privātās iniūriās ulītus est, quod eius soceri L. Pisonis avum, L. Pisonem lēgātum, Tīgurīni eōdem proeliō quō Cassium interfecerant.

Hoc proeliō factō, reliquās cōpiās Helvētiōrum ut cōnsēquī possēt, pontem in Arāri faciendum cūrat atque ita exercitum trādēcit. Helvētiī repentinō eius adventū commōtī, cum id quod ipsi diēbus xx aegerrimē cōnfecerant, ut flūmen trānsīrent, illum ūnō diē fēcisse intellegērunt, lēgātōs ad

17. persolvō, -solvere, -solvē, -solvē-tum, tr. [solvō, pay], pay in full; suffer (punishment). 1.

18. sōlum, adv. [sōlus, alone], only, merely. *

pūblicus, -a, -um, adj. [populus, people], of the state or people, common, public; s. as noun, public, public view; rēs pūblica, common weal, state. *

sed, conj., but, but yet (a stronger adversative than autem or at). *

uliscōr, uliscē, ultus sum, tr., avenge; punish, take vengeance on. 3.

19. soceri, -erī, m., father-in-law. 1.

avus, -ī, m., grandfather. 2.

Pisō, -ōnis, m., Lucius Calpurnius Piso (lū'ēshūs kāl-pōr'nī-ūs pī'sō),

killed in the defeat of Cassius’s army by the Tīgurīni, 107 B.C. 1.

20. cōnsequor, -sequi, -sectītus sum, tr. [sequor, follow], follow up; go after, pursue; reach, overtake; gain, attain, accomplish; ensue, succeed. *

-cūrō, 1, tr. [cūra, care], care for, take care of, provide for; with gero (App. 285, II, b), have, order. 4.

3. repentinus, -a, -um, adj. [repēns, sudden], sudden, unexpected, hasty. 3.

commovē, -movēre, -movē, -mōvē-tum, tr. [moveō, move], move or excite thoroughly, rouse, agitate, alarm. *

4. vigintī (XX), card. num. adj., ēndēcl., twenty. *

-aegrē, adv. [aeger, ill], hardly, with difficulty, scarcely. Comp., aegrius; sup., aegerrimē (App. 40). 3.

1. ut would usually stand before reliquis.

2. pontem faciendum cūrat, “he had a bridge made”: construction? App. 285, II, b: G.-L. 430: A. 500, 4: B. 337, 7, b, 2: H.-B. 612, III: H. 623. This bridge was probably of boats, and was made by the chief of engineers: see Int. 40.

in Arāri, “over the Arāri.”

4. cum intellegērunt, “since they saw,” or better “seeing.” The object of intellegērunt is illum fēcisse. id is the object of fēcisse. ut transītum, “(namely) the crossing of the river,” is in apposition with id: mode? App. 229, a: G.-L. 553, 1: A. 568: B. 297, 1: H.-B. 521, 3, a: H. 571, 4.

5. lēgātōs, “envoys.”
eum mittunt; cuius lēgātiōnis Divicio princeps fuit, qui bellō Cassiānō dūx Helvētiōrum fuerat. Is ita cum Caesare ēgit: Si pācem populus Rōmānus cum Helvētiīs faceret, in eam partem itūrōs atque ibi futūrōs Helvētiōs ubi eōs Caesar cōnstituisset atque esse voluisset; sīn bellō persequī perseverāret, reminiscerē tur et veteris incommodi populi Rōmāni et prīstinae

6. Divicio, -ōnis, m., Diviciō(dīv'ī-kō), an Helvētiēn chieftain. 2.
7. Cassiānus,-a,-um, adj., of Cassius, see Cassius. 1.

agō, agere, ēgī, āctum, tr., set in motion; drive (of animals); move forward, advance (of military works); do, transact, carry on (of business); discuss, speak; hold (conventum); give, render (grātīās); plead (causam or rem); quod agitur, the matter in hand; rēs agitur, something is at stake. *

6. Divico was an old man, for the battle was fought 40 years before.

7. The rest of this chapter and the whole of the next are in indirect discourse. If the teacher wishes the class, at this point, to make a more detailed study of the construction than is called for by the notes, he will find help in the direct form of these speeches as printed after Book VII.

Remember the important facts already learned,—that in every declarative sentence the principal verb will be an infinitive, and that in every subordinate clause the verb will be a subjunctive. Usually the future infinitive shows that the speaker used a future indicative, a present infinitive shows that he used a present indicative, and a perfect infinitive shows that he used a past tense of the indicative. But note that not every infinitive stands for an indicative in the direct form; for all infinitives in the direct form are retained unchanged in the indirect. Note that every subjunctive follows the rule of sequence of tenses: App. 202; 203; G.-L. 509; 510; 511: A. 483, 1, 2; 488: B. 266; B. 267, 1, 3, 3; H.-B. 476, foot-note 2: H. 106; 543; 544; 545.

8. faceret, "if ... should make." Only the sense of the passage shows that faceret stands for an original future rather than a present, and for an indicative rather than a subjunctive.
9. Helvētiōs is the subject of itūrōs and futūrōs.

ēōs is the subject of esse.
ubi cōnstituisset, "where he should have decided"-"where he should decide" or "where he decided." The pluperfect can stand equally well for the perfect, the pluperfect, or the future perfect; but the Helvetii do not promise to return to their own country, and Caesar had not yet decided to settle them anywhere else; therefore cōnstituisset must stand for a future perfect, a tense rarely used in English.

10. perseverāret stands for a future, like faceret, l. 8.
reminiscerētur, "he should remember." Since this is a principal clause the use of the subjunctive shows that the sentence is not declarative. App. 287: G.-L. 632: A. 588: B. 316: H.-B. 594, 2; 538: H. 642.
11. et ... et, "both ... and."
incommodi: i.e. the defeat of Cassius: case? App. 107: G.-L. 376: A.
virtūtis Helvētiōrum. Quod imprōvisō unum pāgum adortus esset, cum it qui flūmen trānsissent suis auxiliūm ferre nōn possent, nē ob eam rem aut suae magnopere virtūtī tribueret aut ipsōs dēspiceret; sē ita ā patribus maiōribusque suis didicisse ut magis virtūte contenderit quam dolō aut insidiis nīterentur. Quārē nē committeret ut is locus ubi cōnstitissent

inconveniēnt, inconvenientia, disadvantagē, disaster, defeat, loss, injury. 1.
prōstinus, -a, -um, adj. [for prōstus, from prōrius, former], former, original; previous, preceding. 4.
13. imprōvisō, adv. [imprōvisus, unforeseen], unexpectedly, without warning. 1.
adoriōr, -ārī, -ārtus sum, tr. [ōriōr, arise], rise against, assail, attack. *
13. ferō, ferre, tull, lātum (App. 81), tr. and intr.; tr., bear, carry, bring; endure, suffer, support, withstand; receive; tell, report, give, render (aid); offer, propose (term); graviter or molestē ferre, be annoyed or angry at; passe. (sometimes) rush: intr. almost = verb to be. *
14. magnopere, adv. [magnus, great +opus, work], with great labor; especially, greatly, exceedingly, earnestly. *
tribuō, tribuere, tribul, tribuērum, tr. [tribus, a tribe or division], divide, distribute; attribute, assign, allot, ascribe; grant, do for the sake of, render. 2.
dēspicō, -spicere, -spexi, -spectum, tr. [spēcīō, look], look down; look down upon, scorn, despise. 2.

maior, maius, adj. [comp. of magnus, great], greater (in degree, size, time etc.); older, elder; as noun, maiōrēs nātō, elders, old men; maiōrēs, ancestors. *
16. discō, discere, dīdidī, —, tr. and intr., learn, be taught. 1.
dolus, -i, m., craft, trick, treachery. 2.
insidiāe, -ārum, f. pl. [sedecē, sit], a sitting or lying in wait; ambush, ambuscade; treachery; artifice, crafty device. *
17. nitor, nītī, nīrūs sum, intr. rest or rely upon; exert one's self, strive, endeavor. 1.
quārē, adv. [qui, which + rēs, thing], (1) interrog., why? wherefore? (2) rel., wherefore; on this account, therefore. *

committō, -mittere, -mīsē, -missum, tr. [mittō, send], join, splice; commit (a crime), do; allow, permit; entrust; proelium committere, join or begin battle. *
cōnstitō, -sisterē, -stitū, —, intr. [sītū, stand], take a stand or position, keep one's position, stand, form (of soldiers); stop, halt, remain, stay; (of ships) ride at anchor; consist in, depend or rest on. *


12. quod adortus esset, "as to the fact that he had attacked."
13. nē suae magnopere virtūtī tribueret, lit., "he should not greatly ascribe to his own prowess"="he should not overrate his own prowess." For mode cf. reminiscērētur, 1. 10.
15. ipsōs, sē: i.e. the Helvetii.

16. ut contenderent: a result clause. magis quam, "rather than."
17. The meaning of the last sentence is, "Do not let the spot on which we stand become famous as the scene of your bloody defeat."
cōnstitissent stands for a perfect in-
ex calamitate populi Romani et internecione exercitus nomen caperet aut memoriam proderet.

14. His Caesar ita respondit: Eo sibi minus dubitationis dari, quod eas res quas legati Helvetii commemorassent memoria tenaret, atque eoque gravius ferre quod minus meritum populi Romani accidisset; quia et aliquis iniuriae sibi conscius fusisset, non fuisset difficile cavere; sed eoque deceptum, quod

dicative: "where they had taken their stand" for "where we have taken our stand."

THIRD REFERENCE:
Substantive clause of result or fact

Chap. 14. Caesar proposes terms, which the Helvetii refuse.

1. his: i.e. the envoys.
   e6 is an ablative of cause, explained by the causal clause quod . . . tenet.
   minus dubitationis, "less hesitation."
   dubitationis: partitive genitive.

2. eas res: i.e. the defeat of Cassius.


4. quid si, "now if they." Caesar uses the singular in referring to the collective noun populus, but English prefers the plural.

iniuriae, "of wrong doing": case?

sibi, lit. conscious "to themselves," should not be expressed in translating.

5. non fuisset difficile, "it would not have been difficult."
   e6, is an ablative of cause, explained by the clause quod . . . putet.

deceptum: sc. populum Romanum . . . esse.
neque commissum a se intellexerat quare timere, neque sine causâ timendum putaret. Quod si veteris contumeliae obliviscer vellet, num etiam recentium iniuriarum, quod eō invitō iter per prōvinciam per vim temptassent, quod Haeduōs, quod Ambarrōs, quod Allobrogis verassen, memoriam deponere possē? Quod sua victōriā tam insolenter gloriārentur, quamque tam diū se impūne iniurias intulisse admirārentur, eōdem  

6. timeō, -ēre, -uī, —, tr. and intr., fear, be afraid of, dread; with dat., be anxious about, be anxious for, dread; nihil timēre, have no fear. *

7. contumēlia, -ae, f., afront, indignity, insult; injury, violence. 3.

- obliviscor, oblivisci, oblivītus sum, intr. [obliviō, forgetfulness], forget. 1.

8. num, interrog. particle implying the expectation of a negative reply. 1.

recōnīs, -entīs, adj., recent, late; fresh, new, vigorous. 3.

9. temptō, i, tr., make an attempt upon, try to gain possession of, attack; try, test; try to win over. 4.

10. vexō, i, tr. [intensive of vehō, carry], carry or drag hither and thither; harass, plunder, waste, overrun. 3.

depōnē, -ponere, -posui, -positum, tr. [ponō, place], lay down or aside, put away, give up; place, station, deposit. 3.

11. victōria, -ae, f. [victor, victor], victory. *

- tam, adv., so, so very. *

insolenter, adv. [insolēns, unwonted], unusually; arrogantly, insolently. 1.

- gloriā, i, intr. [glōria, glory], glory, glory in, boast of. 1.

12. diū, adv., for a long time, long; quam diū, as long as; comp., diūtius, longer, too long, any longer; sup., diūtissīmē, for the longest time. *

impūne, adv. [in- *poena, punishment], without punishment. 1.

- admirō, i, tr. [miror, wonder at], wonder at, be surprised at, admire. 1.

6. commissum (sc. quicquām ... esse), "that anything had been done."  

a se, "by them"; i.e. the Roman people.

quare timēret, "because of which they should be afraid." For mode see App. 220, c: G.-L. 621, 2: H.-B. 513, 2.


quod sī, "but if."


8. vellet: the subject is still populus Rōmānus.

num posse, "they could not, could they," or simply "could they." This is a principal verb, but not in a declarative sentence. For mode see App. 266, II:


quod, "the fact that." These are substantive quod clauses, in apposition with ininiurārum. In direct discourse such clauses employ the indicative: App. 248: G.-L. 524; 525, 1: A. 573: B. 299, 1, a: H.-B. 553, 1:H. 588, 2, 3.

eō = populo Rōmānō.

11. quod .. admirārentur are substantive quod clauses, subjects of pertinēre.


12. sē intulisse, "that they [the Helvetii] had inflicted."

eōdem pertinēre, "tended to the same result."
pertinère. Cónsuēsse enim deōs immortālēs, quō gravius hominēs ex commūtātiōne rērum doleant, quōs prō scelere eōrum ulciscī velint, his secundīorēs interdum rēs et diūturnīōrem impūnitātem concēderē. Cum ea ita sint, tamen, si obsīdes ab ipsis sibi dentur, uti ea quae pollicēantur factūrōs intellegat, et si Haeduīs dē iniūriis quās ipsis sociisque eōrum intulerint, item si Allobrogibus satisfaciant, sēsē cum ipsis pācem esse factūrōrum. Dīvīcō respondit: Ita Helvētiōs a maiōribus suis institūtōs esse uti obsīdes accipere, nōn dare, cōnsuerint;

13. cōnsuēscō, -suēscere, -suēvi, -suēstum, intr. [suēscō, become used], become accustomed; pf. (App. 198. 1. a), be accustomed, be wont; cōnsūetūs, pf. part. as adj., accustomed, usual, wonted. *

- enim, conj., in fact, really; for; sed enim, but in fact, however. *

14. commūtātiō, -ōnis, f. [commūtātō, change], a changing, change. 2.

- dolēō, 2, intr., feel pain, be distressed or annoyed, grieve. 2.

- scelus, -eiris, n., crime, wickedness. 1.

- secundus, -a, -um, adj. [sequor, follow], following, next, second; favorable, successful, prosperous; secundō flāmine, down the river. *

15. interdum, adv. [dum, while], in the meantime; at times, sometimes. 2.

- diūturnus, -a, -um, adj. [dīa, long], long. 1.

16. impūnitās, -tātis, f. [in- poena, punishment], impurity, freedom from punishment. 1.

- pollicēor, 2, tr. and intr. [prō- liceo, bid, offer], hold forth, offer, promise, pledge. *

19. satisfacēo, -facere, -feci, -factum, intr. [satis, enough + faciō, make], make or do enough for; give satisfaction, satisfy; make amends, apologize, ask pardon. 2.

21. instituo, -stituere, -stitūi, -stitūtum, tr. and intr. [statuō, set up],

15. secundīorēs rēs, "a considerable degree of prosperity"; diūturnōrem, "quite long." The comparative may often be rendered by such words as "too," "rather," "quite," all of which imply comparison with some unexpressed standard.

16. concēdere depends on cōnsūēsse. cum sint, by itself, might be either causal or adversative. Notice that the tamen which follows shows which it is: App. 239: G.-L. 587: A. 549: B. 309, 3: H.-B. 539: H. 598.


18. si Haeduīs: sc. satisfaciant.

ipēs: i.e. the Haeduī.

19. sēsē: i.e. Caesar.
eius rei populum Rōmānum esse testem. Hoc responsō datō discessit.

15. Posterō diē castra ex eō locō movent. Idem facit Caesar equitātumque omnem ad numerum quattuor milium, quem ex omnī prōvincia et Haeduis atque eōrum sociis coāctum habēbat, praemittit quī videant quās in partēs hostēs iter 5 faciant. Quī cupidius novissimum agmen insēctūtī aliēnō locō

set up or put in order, draw up; train, educate; procure, prepare; build, construct; begin, determine, decide upon, adopt; institutus, pf. part. as adj., usual, customary; finished, in addition to definitions above. *

accipīō, -cipere, -cēpī, -cēptum, tr. [ad-+cāpiō, take], take or receive to one’s self, accept; experience, suffer; learn, hear, take. *

22. testis, -īs, m. and f., witness. 2.

respōnsum, -ī, n. [respondeō, answer], reply, answer. 2.

23. discendō, -cēdere, -cessāri, -cessum, intr. [cōcēdō, go], go away, depart, retire; leave (especially with ab or ex). *

1. posterus, -a, -um, adj. [post, after], after, following, next; in m. pl. as noun, posterity; sup., postremus or postumus, last. *

moveō, movēre, movēi, movētum, tr., set in motion, move; affect, influence; with castra, move camp from one place to another, or break camp. *

2. equitātum, -ātus, m. [equitō, ride; equus, horse], cavalry, horsemen. *

4. praemittō, -mittere, -misī, -misum, tr. [mittē, send], send before or in advance. *

5. cupidō, adv. [cupidus, desirous], desirously, eagerly. 2.

agmen, -inis, n. [agō, move], a moving body; a marching column; army; in agmine, on the march; primum agmen, the van; novissimum or extrēmum agmen, the rear. *

Insequor, -sequi, -secutus sum, tr. and intr. [sequor, follow], follow up or after, follow close upon, pursue. *

aliēnus, -a, -um, adj. [alius, other], of or belonging to another, another’s; strange, alien, unfamiliar; unfavorable; foreign to the purpose; aēs aliēnum, debt; aliēnissimī, entire strangers. 4.

(Loire) and march down its valley.

2. equitātum: see Inf. 48.


4. qui videant: a purpose clause, qui is plural, agreeing with the collective noun equitātum.

quās ... faciant, “in what direction the enemy were marching.” faciant: mode? App. 263: G.-L. 467: A. 573; 574: B. 500, 1, a: H.-B. 534, 3, III; 587, b: H. 649, II.

5. cupidius: cf. note on 14, 15.

cum equitātū Helvētiōrum proelium committunt; et pauci dē nostris cadunt. Quō proelīō sublātī Helvētiī, quod quingentis equitibus tantam multitudinem equitum prōplerant, audācius subsistere nōn numquam et novissimō agmine proelīō nostrōs lacesserē coœpērunt. Caesar suōs a proelīō continēbat ac satis habēbat in praesentia hostem rapīnis, pābulātiōnibus, populātiōnibusque prohibēre. Ita diēs circiter quindecim iter fēcērunt, uti inter novissimum hostium agmen et nostrum

6. pauci, -ae, -a, adj. (used rarely in sing.), few; as noun, few persons or things. *
7. cadē, cadere, cecidī, cāsum, intr., fall; fall in battle, be slain, die. 3. quingenti, -ae, -a (D), card. num. adj. (quinque, five-+centum, hundred), five hundred. 3.
8. eques, -itis, m. [equus, horse], a horseman, a rider; pl., cavalry. Then (as originally serving on horseback), a knight (one of the moneyed class at Rome, next in rank to the senate). Also, a knight (of Gaul, of a corresponding class). *
9. subsistō, -sistere, -stiti, ——, intr. [sístō, stand], halt, make a stand; be strong enough, hold out. 1.
10. lacesseō, -ere, -ivi, -itum, tr., arouse, harass, provoke, irritate, attack. *
10. coeplī, coepisse (App. 86 and a); tr., began, commenced, undertook; coeptus, pf. part., begun, commenced. *
11. praesentia, -ae, f. [praesēns: prae-sum, be present], presence; the present moment; in praesentiā, for the present; then. 1.
12. rapina, -ae, f. [rāpiō, seize], plunder; pl., plundering. 1.
13. pābulātiō, -ōnis, f. [pābulor, forage], getting fodder, foraging. 1.
14. populātiō, -ōnis, f. [populor, ravage], ravaging, pillaging. 1.
15. circiter, adv. [circus, circle], about, near. *
16. quindecim (XV), card. num. adj., in-decl. [quinque, five+-decem, ten], fifteen. *

large an army or met so strong an enemy. His army was outnumbered by an enemy whom the Romans had long dreaded. Defeat meant the total destruction of his army. Nothing was lost by postponing the battle. Therefore he wisely decided to wait until he could choose his own time and place.

12. ita utī, “in such a way that,” introduces a result clause.
primum non amplius quinis aut senis milibus passuum
15 interesset.

16. Interim cotidiē Caesar Haeduōs frumentum quod essent
publicē polliticē fāgitāre. Nam propter frigora, quod Gallia
sub septentriōnibus, ut ante dictum est, posita est, nōn modo
frumenta in agrīs mātūra nōn erant, sed nē pābuli quidem satis

14. amplus, -a, -um, adj., of large extent, spacious, large; illustrious, splendid, noble; generous, magnificent; am-
plus, comp. as noun, more, a greater number, a greater distance. *
quinī, -ae, -a, distr. num. adj. [quīn-
que, five], five each, five at a time, five. 1.
seīn, -ae, -a, distr. num. adj., six each, six. 1.

15. intersum, -esse, -ful, intr. [sum, be. App. 66], be or lie between, intervene; be present at, take part in; impera-
t, interest, it concerns, it is important; there is a difference or an interval; magnī interest, it is of great impor-
tance. 3.
1. interim, adv., meanwhile, in the meantime.
2. cotidiē, adv. [quot, how many+diēs, day], daily, every day.
3. publicē, adv. [publicus, public],

14. primum: sc. agmen.
amplius is the subject of interest.
quinis aut senis, “five or six [each day].”
milibus: case? App. 139: G.-L. 388:
A. 406: B. 217, 1: H.-B. 418, d: H. 471

THIRD REFERENCE:
Ablative of place

Chap. 16-20. Caesar learns that Dunmorix is treacherously thwarting his plans, but pardons him.

Chap. 16. The Haedui fail to furnish supplies to Caesar.
1. interim: i.e. during the fifteen days of marching.

Haeduōs frumentum: for the two objects see App. 125, a: G.-L. 339, a: A. 386:
B. 178, 1, a: H.-B. 383, footnote: H. 411.
quod essent polliticē, “which [as he said] they had promised.” This subor-
publicē, in the name of the state, on behalf of the state. 2.
-fāgitā, i, tr., demand. 1.
frigus, -oris, n., cold weather, cold;
pt., frigora, cold seasons. 1.
3. pōnō, pōnere, posuī, posītum,
tr., place, put, place over; lay down, set
aside; station, post; regard, consider;
make, build; with castra, pitch; pas-
se., be situated; with in and abl., depend on,
in addition to above meanings. *
modo, adv. [modus, measure], with measure or limit; only, merely; even, just, at least, but; of time, just now, recently; nōn modo . . . sed etiam, not only . . . but also. *
4. mātūrus, -a, -um, adj., ripe;
early. 3.
pābulum, -I, n. [cf. pāscō, feed], fodder, provender. 2.
quidem, adv., indeed, at any rate, at

2. fāgitāre = fāgitābat. Note that its subject is a nominative. See App. 281: G.-L. 647: A. 463: B. 333: H.-B. 566:
H. 601.
3. sub septentriōnibus, lit. “under the northern stars” = “toward the north.”
4. frumenta: the plural means grain standing in the fields.
mātūra nōn erant: it was now late in June.
pābuli: for the cavalry horses and
magna cópia suppetébat; eó autem fruímentó quod flúmine s
Ararí návibus subvertexerat propéterá útí minus poterat, quod iter
ab Ararí Helvétii áverterant, a quibus discédere nólébat.
Diem ex dié dúcere Haedúi; cónferrí, comportári, adesse
dícere. Ubi sé diútius dúci intelligévit et diem instáre quó dié
frúmentum milítibus mětiri oportéret, convocátis eórum in
principibus, quórum magnam cópiam in castris habébat, in
his Diviciácé et Liscó, qui summó magistrátui praeerat, quem

least, truly; on the other hand; ně... quidem, not even. *
6. subvehó, -vehère, -vexi, -vectum, tr. [vehó, carry], bring or carry
up; convey. 1.
7. ávertó, -vertere, -verti, -versum, tr. [vertó, turn], turn away from or
away, turn aside, turn back, repulse; pf. part. as adj., with back turned. *
nóló, nólle, nólul, — (App. 83), tr. and intr. [nō- + voló, wish], not wish,
be unwilling; refuse; imp. nōli or nōlles, with inf. (App. 219), do not. *
8. cónferró, cónférre, contúll, collá-
tum, tr. [feró, bring]. App. 81], bring or
gather, collect, carry, bring; crowd together; ascribe to; put
off, defer; compare; sé cónférre, be-
take one’s self, take refuge. *
comportó, 1, tr. [portó, carry], carry
together, collect, bring. *
adsum, adesse, affiúl, intr. [sum, be.
App. 77], be near or present, be at hand,
appear. 3.
9. instó, -stáre, -stiti, -státum, intr.
[stó, stand], stand upon or near, be at
hand, press on; threaten. 4.
10. mětior, mětiri, měnsus sum, tr.,
deal or measure out, distribute. 2.
convocó, 1, tr. [vocó, call], call to-
gether, summon, assemble. 4.
12. Liscus, -ī, m., Liscus (lis’kús), a
chief magistrate of the Haedúi. 4.
summus, -a, -um, adj. [sup. of supe-

pack animals. The cattle of the Hel-
vetii had swept the country clean.
5. fruímentó útí: case? App. 145:
flúmine: case* App. 144: G.-L. 389:
6. návibus, "in ships," is an ablative
of means.
iter áverterant: see map facing p.
42.
8. diem: accusative of duration of
time.
dúcere, "put him off," is an historical
indefinite.
cónferrí, comportári, adesse (sc. frúmentum) are the objects of the
historical indefinite dúcere.
9. ubi intelligéxit: mode? App. 237:
H. 602.

sé diútius dúci, "that he was being
put off too long."
quó dié, "on which." Cf. 6, 1.
10. fruímentum mětiri oportéret, lit.
"for him to measure out grain was
right"—"he had to distribute grain." This
was done twice a month. oporté-
ret: subordinate clause in indirect
discourse. Its subject is fruímentum
mětiri.
convocátis principibus, "summoning," etc. Remember that the ablative
absolute must not be translated literally.
12. Diviciácé et Liscó: in oppo-
sition with principibus.
summó... praeerat, "held the high-
est office."
quem vergobretum: for the two ob-
jects see App. 123: G.-L. 310; A. 398:
vergobretum appellant Haeduî, qui creâtur annuus et vitæ necisque in suós habet potestătem, graviter eós acúsat, quod, cum neque emi neque ex agris sūmī posset, tam necessāriō tempore, tam propinquīs hostibus, ab ipsis non sublevōtūr; praeassertim cum magnā ex parte eorūm precibus adductus bellum suspēperit, multō etiam gravīus quod sit dēstitūtus queritur.

17. Tum dénum Liscus orātiōne Caesaris adductus quod

**rans**, high. App. 44, highest, very high; the highest part of, the top of; pre-eminent, greatest, chief, supreme; all. *prae summum, esse, -fī, intr. [sum, be. App. 77], be before over, be in command of, rule over, be at the head of; praešēns, pres. part. as adj. present, in person; for the present. *prae summum, esse, -fī, intr. [sum, be. App. 77], be before over, be in command of, rule over, be at the head of; praešēns, pres. part. as adj. present, in person; for the present. *13. **vergobretus**, -1, m., vergobret (vēr'gō-brēt), the title of the chief magis- trate of the Haeduī. 1.

créō, 1, tr., create; elect, choose, appoint. 1.

**annuus**, -a, -um, adj. [annus, year], yearly. 1.

**vita**, se, -i, [cf. vīvē, live], life; manner of living, living. 4.


potestās, -tātis, f. [potēns, powerful], ability, power, authority; control, sway, rule; chance, opportunity, possibility; potestātem facere, grant permission, give a chance. *

- accūsō, 1, tr. [ad⁺-causa, cause, case], bring a case or charge against; blame, censure, accuse. 2.

- 15. emō, emere, ēmī, ēmptum, tr., take; buy, purchase. 2.

- 16. propinquus, -a, -um, adj. [prope, near], near, neighboring, close at hand; pl. as noun, relatives. *

- sublevō, 1, tr. [levō, lift], lift from beneath, lift or raise up, support; assist, aid; lighten, lessen. 3.

- 17. praeassertim, adv., particularly, especially. *

- prex, precisus, f. (in sing. only in dat., acc., and abil.) [precūr, pray], prayer, entreaty; imprecation. 2.

- 18. dēstitū, -stituere, -stitul, -stitūtum, tr. [statuō, set up], set or place aside, forsake, desert. 1.

- 19. querōr, queri, questus sum, tr. and intr., complain, bewail, lament. *

- 1. tum, adv., then, at this or that time; then, secondly; then, also; cum... tum, both... and, not only... but also. *

- dénum, adv., at length, at last, finally. 3.

14. in suōs, "over his fellow-citi- zens."

quod nōn sublevōtūr, "because [as he said] he was not aided." This is another case of implied indirect discourse: cf. l. 1, and see App. 244: G.-L. 541: A. 540, 2: B. 286, 1: H.-B. 585, 2, c: H. 649, 1.

15. posset: sc. frumentum.

16. tempore may be either ablative absolute or ablative of time; hostibūr is an ablative absolute.

17. With praeassertim, cum is almost always causal.

magnā ex parte, "in great part."


**Third References:**

- Ablative of the way (route)
- Ablative with ulla, etc.

Chap. 17. Liscus tells Caesar that a powerful faction among the Haeduī is working against the Romans.

1. Supply id as the antecedent of quod and the object of prōpōnit.
The direct form of the indirect discourse in this and the following chapters will be found after Book VII.

The Haelus claimed the leadership among the Gallic states. See Int. 20.

sint, "if they could no longer hold." The Haelus claimed the leadership among the Gallic states. See Int. 20.

7. neque (sc. sc.) dubitare, "nor did they doubt"; i.e. they said "we do not doubt."


ānā: the adverb.
10 consilia quaeque in castra geruntur hostibus ennuntiari. Hocs a se coerceri non posse; quin etiam, quod necessari o rem coactus Caesaris ennuntiari, intellegere sepse quanto id cum pericul o fecerit, et ob eam causam quam diu potuerit tacuisse.

18. Caesar hac oratione Liscum Dumnorizem, Diviciaci fratrem, designari sentierbat; sed, quod pluribus praesentibus eas res iactari nolebat, celeriter concilium dimittit, Liscum retinet. Quaerit ex solo ea quae in conventu dixerat. Dicit liberius atque audacius. Eadem secert o ab aliis quaerit; reperit esse vera: Ipsum esse Dumnorizem, summ a audacia,

11. coerceo, 2. tr. [arceo, shut up], shut up completely, restrain, check. 1.

necessari o, adv. [abl. of necessarius, necessary], necessarily, of necessity, unavoidably. *

12. quantus, -a, -um, adj. [cf. quam, how? as], (1) interroge., how much? how great? how large? what? quantum, as adv., how much? (2) rei, as much as, as; quantum, as adv., as much as, as; quanto... tanto [with comparatives], the... the. *

2. designo, 1. tr. [signo, mark], mark out; mean, indicate. 1.

sentio, sentire, sensi, sensum, tr., perceive, be aware of, notice; experience, undergo; realize, know; decide, judge, sanction, adhere to. 4.

3. iacto, 1. tr. [freq. of iacto, throw], throw or hurl repeatedly, toss about; talk about, discuss. 2.

celeriter, adv. [celer, swift], quickly, rapidly, speedily. Comp., celerius; sup., celerime (App. 40). *

10. Supply ea as the antecedent of quae and as one of the subjects of ennuntiari.

11. se: i.e. Liscus, the chief magistrate.

12. coactus, "under compulsion." quanto... fecerit is an indirect question, the object of intellegere.

Chap. 18. Liscus tells Caesar of the power of Dumnorix, and that he favors the Helvetii.

concilium, -ii, n., gathering, assembly, council. *

dimitt o, -mittere, -missi, -missum, tr. [mitt o, send], send in different directions, send away or off, dismiss; break up; let go, let slip, let pass, give up, lose. *

4. retineo, 2. tr. [re-+teneo, hold], hold back, detain, keep; restrain, hinder; detain forcibly; seize; retain, preserve, maintain. *

quaer o, quaerere, quaesivi, quaesitum, tr. and intr., seek or look for; inquire, ask, ask or inquire about. *

solum, -a, -um, gen. solius (App. 32), adj., alone, only; the only. *

conventus, -us, m. [convenio, come together], a coming together, meeting, assembly; court. 1.

5. liber o, adv. [liber, free], freely, without restraint, boldly. 1.

secert o, adv. [secern o, separate], separately, privately, secretly. 2.

6. reperio, reperire, reperiri, repertum, tr. [re-+pario, procure], pro-

2. pluribus praesentibus, "when many were present."

4. ex solo, "from him in private." Most verbs of asking may take two accusatives (cf. 16, 1), but the person is more commonly expressed by the ablative with a preposition: App. 125, a: G.-L. 3°9, a, R. 1: A. 396, a: B. 178, i: a: H.-B. 393, c: H. 411, 3.

6. reperit esse vera, "he learned that this was the truth"; explained by
magnā apud plēbem propter liberalitātem grātiā, cupidum rērum novārum. Complūres annōs portōria reliquaque omnia Haeduōrum vectigālia parvō pretiō redempta habēre, propertēa quod illō licente contrā licēri audeat nēmō. His rēbus et suam rem familiārem auxisse et facultātēs ad largiendum magnā comparāsse; magnum numerum equitātūs suō sūmpτū semper alere et circum sē habēre; neque sōlum domī, sed etiam apud
cure; find: find out, discover, ascertain; devise. *

vērus, -a, -um, adj., true; n. as noun, the truth; vērī similis, likely, probably. 4.

audācia, -ae, f. [audāx, bold], boldness, daring, courage; presumption, effrontery. 1.

7. liberālitās, -ātis, f. [liber, free], freedom in giving, etc.; generosity. 2.

8. portōrium, -ri, n., toll, tariff on imports or exports. 2.

9. vectigal, -ālis, n. [vectigālīs, tributary], tax, tribute; pl., revenues. 2.

prētium, -ri, n., price. 2.

redimō, -imere, -emī, -emptum, tr. [redemō, buy], buy back; buy up, purchase. 3

10. liceor, 2, intr., bid (at an auction). 2.

contrā, adv. and prep. with acc.: (1) as adv., against him or them; on the other hand; contrā atque, contrary to what; (2) as prep., against, contrary to; opposite, facing. *

audeō, audēre, ausus sum (App. 74), intr., dare, risk, venture. *

nēmō, acc. nēminem, m. and f. [ne- homō, man], no man, no one, nobody. *

11. familiāris, -e, adj. [familia, household], personal, private; as noun, intimate friend; rés familiāris, personal property, estate. 4.

augeō, augēre, auxi, auctum, tr., increase, augment, enhance, add to. 3.

largior, 4, tr. [largus, large], give largely or freely; bribe. 1.

12. sūmpτus, -u, m. [sumō, spend], expense. 1.

semper, adv., always, ever, continually. 3.

13. aliō, alere, aliū, alīum, tr., nourish, feed, support; promote, foster, encourage. 4.

the indirect discourse which follows. 

ipsum esse Dumnoriagem, “that Dumnorix was the very man” or “that it was, in fact, Dumnorix.” By putting together what is said of Orgetorix in 4, 5, 6, and the following description of Dumnorix we are able to appreciate the extraordinary power of some of the Gallic nobles.


portōria... redempta habēre: instead of collecting the duties and taxes by its own agents, the state farmed them; i.e. it sold at auction the privilege of collecting them. The successful bidder collected all he could, paid to the state the amount of his bid, and pocketed the difference.


10. iliō licente, “when he bid.”


finitimās civitātēs largiter posse, atque huius potentiae causā 15 mātrem in Biturīgibus homīnī illīc nōbilissimō ac potentissimō collocāsse, ipsum ex Helvētiīs uxōrem habēre, sorōrem ex mātre et propinquās suās nuptum in aliās civitātēs collocāsse. Favēre et cupere Helvētiīs propter eam affinitātem, odisse etiam suō nōmine Caesarem et Rōmānōs, quod eōrum adventū potentia 20 eius dēminūta et Diviciācus frāter in antiquum locum grātiāe atque honoris sit restitūtus. Si quid accidat Rōmānīs, summam in spem per Helvētiōs rēgīnī obtinēndī venīre; imperiō populi Rōmānī nōn modo dē rēgnō, sed etiam dē eā quam habeat grātiā dēspērare. Reperīebat etiam in quaerendō

14. largiter, adv. [largus, large], largely, freely, much; largiter posse, to have great influence. 1. potentia, -ae, f. [potēns, powerful], power, authority, influence. 2. māter, -āris, f., mother; mātres familias, matrona. 3. Biturīges, -um, m. (Cde), the Biturīges (bītū-ri'-jēz). 1. illic, adv. [ille, that], in that place, there. 1. collocō, 1, tr. [con+locō, place], place, set, station; arrange; nuptum collocāre, to give in marriage. 1. uxor, -ōris, f., wife. 3. soror, -ōris, f., sister. 2. nutō, nutēre, nupel, nuptum, intr., veil one’s self for the marriage ceremony, marry. 1. favēre, favēre, favī, faultum, intr., favor. 1. cupiō, cupere, cupīvi, cupītum, tr. and intr., long or be eager for, desire; wish well to, favor. 1. affinitās, -tātis, f., alliance by marriage, relationship. 2. odī, odisse (App. 86), tr., pf. with meaning of preter., hate, detest. 3. dēminūtō, -minuere, -minul, -minūtum, tr. [minuō, lessen], lessen, diminish, impair. 1. antiquus, -a, -um, adj. [ante, before], former, old, ancient. 2. honōs, -ōris, m., honor, regard, glory, distinction; honorable position, office. 3. restitūre, -stītuere, -stītu, -stītum, tr. [re+stātuō, set up], set up again, rebuild, renew, restore. 4. dēspērō, 1, intr. [spērō, hope], despair, be hopeless, lack confidence; dēspēratōs, as part., from transitive meaning, despaired of; as adj., despairing. 1. Helvētiīs: indirect object with verbs meaning to favor. 19. nōmine: ablative of cause. 20. dēminūtō: sc. sit. 21. si quid: why quid? App. 174: G.-L. 315: A. 810; b: B. 91; 5: H.-B. 276; 1: H. 186. summam in spem venīre, “he entertained the highest hopes.” 22. imperiō, “under the sovereignty”: case? App. 142, b: G.-L. 300: B. 231: H.-B. 423; 1: H. 474; 1.
Caesar, quod proelium equestre adversum paucis ante diebus esset factum, initium fugae factum á Dumnorige atque eius equibus (nam equitáti quem auxilió Caesarí Haeduí miserant Dumnorix praerat); eórum fugá reliquum esse equitátem perterritum.

19. Quibus rébus cognítis, cum ad hás suspicio néns certissimae rès accéderent, quod per finés Sêquanórum Helvétios tráduxisset, quod obsídés inter eós dandós cúrásset, quod ea omní nón modo iniusstú suó et civitátes, sed etiam inscientibus ipsís fécisset, quod á magistrátu Haeduórum

25. equester, -tris, -tre, adj. [exes, horseman], of or belonging to a horseman, equestrian, of cavalry, cavalry. * adversus, -a, -um, adj. [pf. part. of advertó, turn to], turned to or against; opposite, fronting; adverse, unfavorable; unsuccessful; adversó fúmine, up the river; in adversum ós, full in the face. *

29. perterréo, 2, tr. [terréo, frighten], frighten thoroughly, terrify greatly. *

1. cognóscé, -nóscere, -nóvī, -ni-

tum, tr. [co-(g) nóscé, learn], learn, ascertain; study, investigate; pf., I have learned, I know (App. 198, 1, a). *

2. accédó, -cédere, -cessi, -cessum, intr. [addédeo, go], approach, draw near to, arrive at, come to; be added; ac-
cédébat, it was added. *

4. iniusstú, abl. of iniussus, -ús, m. [lúbeó, order], without command or order. 1.

5. inscienst, -entis, adj. [in + sciéns, knowing], not knowing, unaware, ignorant. 1.

25. quod ... esset factum, "as to the fact that an unsuccessful cavalry engagement had been fought," etc. "as to the ... engagement which," etc. See 15, 5-7.

daucis ante diébus, lit. "before by a few days" = "a few days before." diebus is an ablative of degree of difference, with the adverb ante.

27. auxilió Caesarí, "as an aid to Caesar." For the two datives see App. 119: G.-L. 356, 3: A. 382, 1: B. 191, 2, b; H.-B. 360, b: H. 433, 2.

Third References:
Contracted verb forms
Descriptive ablative

Chap. 19. Caesar consults Divicía-
cus about the punishment of his brother.

1. cum certissimae rès accéde-

rent, "since the most clearly proven facts were added." These facts are stated in the following quod clauses, which are in apposition with rès. For tense see App. 202; 208: G.-L. 506; 510; 511: A. 482, 1, 2; 483: B. 266, B; 267: H.-B. 476: H. 198; 543.


3. quod ... cúrásset, lit. "that he had taken care of hostages to be given between them" = "that he had caused hostages to be exchanged." éós = Hel-
vétiós et Sêquanós.


4. suó = Caesaris.

5. ipsís: i.e. Caesar and the Haeduí
accūsārētur, satis esse causae arbitrābatur quārē in eum aut ipse animadvertēret aut civitātem animadvertēre iubēret. Hīs omnibus rēbus ūnum repugnābat, quod Diviciāci frātris summum in populum Rōmānum studium, summam in sē voluntātem, ēgregiam fīdem, iūstitiam, temperantiam cognōverat; nam nē eius suppliciō Diviciāci animum offendor et verēbātur. Itaque priusquam quicquam cōnārētur, Diviciācum ad sē vocāri iubet et, cotidiānis interpretibus remōtis, per C. Valerium Trūcillum, principem Galliae prōvinciae, familiārem suum, cui summam omnium rērum fīdem habēbat, cum eō
War with the Helvetii, B.C. 58

Colloquitur; simil cum commonefacit quae ipsō praesente in conciliō de Dumnorīgē sint dicta, et ostendit quae sēparātim quisque de eō apud sē dixerit. Petit atquehortātur ut sine eius offensio animi vel ipse de eō causā cognitā statuat, vel civitātem statuere iubeat.

20. Diviciācus multis cum lacrimis Caesarem complexus obsecrāre coepit nē quid gravius in frātrem statueret: Scīre sē illā esse vēra, nec quemquam ex eō plūs quam sē dolōris capere, propertē quod, cum ipse grātiā plūrimum domī atque in reliquā Galliā, ille minimum propter adulēscentiam posset, 5

16. colloquor, -loquī, -loquētus sum, intr. [con-+loquor, speak], speak with, converse, confer, have a conference.

simul, adv. at once, at the same time, thereupon; simul... simul, both... and, partly... partly; simul atque, as soon as. *

commonefaciō, -facere, -feci, -factum, tr. [monēō, remind+faciō, make], remind forcibly. 1.

17. sēparātum, adv. [sēparā, separate], separately, privately. 2.

18. petō, -ere, -ivi or -ii, -ītum, tr. and intr., seek, hunt for, aim at, make for, attack, go to, direct one's course to or toward; seek to obtain, strive after; ask, request, beseech. *

hortor, 1, tr., exhort, encourage, incite, urge strongly. *

19. offensio, -onis, f. [offendō, hurt], offense. 1.

1. lacrima, -ae, f., tear. 2.

complector, -plecti, -plexus sum, tr. [plectō, fold], embrace, clasp, enclose. 1.

2. obsecrō, 1, tr. [sacer, sacred], implore, entreat, beseech. 1.

gravis, -a, adj., heavy, oppressive, hard, severe, serious; advanced (in years). *

sciolō, 4, tr., distinguish; know, understand. *

5. adulēscentia, -ae, f. [adulē-]

16. quae sint dicta, quae dixerit: indirect questions.

ipsō: i.e. Diviciacus.

13. ut... statuat, "that without wounding his [i.e. Diviciacus's] feelings he might either himself [i.e. Caesar] investigate the case and pass sentence on him [i.e. Dumnorix]."

Third reference:
Sequence of tenses

Chap. 20. At the earnest request of Diviciācus Caesar spares Dumnorīx, but he takes precautions for the future.

1. complexus: probably clasping Caesar's knees, for this was the ancient attitude of supplicant entreaty.


gravius, "too severe."

scīre: the indirect discourse depends on the idea of "saying," which is implied in obsecrāre. The direct form is given after Book VII.

3. nec quemquam, "and that no one."

eō: i.e. Dumnorīx.

capere, "felt."

4. ipse: i.e. Diviciacus. It is the subject of posset, to be supplied from the next clause.


5. minimum posset, "had very little influence." Supply cum from the preceding clause.
per sē crēvisset; quibus opibus ac nervis nōn sōlum ad minuendum grātiam, sed paene ad pernicīem suam āterētur. Sēsē tamen et amōre frāternō et existimātiōne vulgi commovēri. Quod si quid ei ā Caesare gravius accidisset, cum ipse eum locum amicitiae apud eum tônēret, nēminem existimātūrum nōn suā voluntāte factum; quā ex rē futūrum uti tōtius Galliae animī ā sē āverterentur. Haecc cum plūribus verbis flēns ā Caesare pectoret, Caesar eius dextram prēndit; cōnsōlātus rogat finem ārandi faciat; tantī eius apud sē grātiam esse ostendit.

cōns, youth), youthfulness, youth. 1.
6. crēsē, crēscere, crēvi, crētum, intr., grow or increase (in sēs, power, age, etc.), swell. 1.
ops, opis, f., help, aid; pl., wealth, resources; authority, influence, strength. 3.
nervus, -ī, m., sinew; sē pl., vigor, strength, power. 1.
7. minūō, minuere, minul, minūtum, tr. and intr. [minus, less], lessen, impair, diminish; settle (contrōversiās); minuente aestō, the tide ebbing. 3.
pernicēs, -ēs, f. (cf. mēx, death), ruin, destruction. 2.
8. amor, -ōris, m. [amō, love], love. 1.
frāternus, -a, -um, adj. [frāter, brother], brotherly, fraternal, of a brother. 2.
existimātiō, -ōnis, f. [existimō, estimate], judgment, opinion. 1.
vulgus, -ī, a., the common people, the multitude, the public, the masses; a crowd. 3.
12. verbum, -ī, a., word; pl., speech; entreaty; verba facere, plead. 3.
flēs, flēre, flēvi, flētum, intr., weep, shed tears, lament. 4.
13. dextra, -ae, f. [dexter, right; sc. manus], the right hand. 1.
prēndō, prēndere, prēndī, prēnum, tr., seize, grasp. 1.
cōnsōlōr, 1, tr. [sōlor, comfort], cheer, comfort. 1.
14. ērō, 1, tr. [ēs, mouth], speak; beseech, entreat. 3.

6. sē: i.e. Diviciacus. He said per mē, "by my help."
opibus: ablative with āterētur.
7. suum refers to Diviciacus.
8. sēsē: i.e. Diviciacus.
9. quod sī, lit. "as to which, if": quod is strictly an adverbal accusative, but with sī it has become a mere connective, and is translated "and," "but," "now," etc.
accidisset stands for an original future perfect.
ipse: i.e. Diviciacus.
eum, "such."
10. eum: i.e. Caesar.
11. suā refers to Diviciacus.
voluntāte: ablative of accordance.
futūrum (sc. ēsse) uti...āverterentur, lit. "it would be that...would be turned from him." This construction is the regular substitute for the future passive infinitive, which very rarely occurs. uti āverterentur is a substantive clause of result.
12. ā Caesare: the usual construction after verbs of asking, instead of a second accusative.
utī et reī publicae iniūriam et suum dolorem eius voluntāti ac 15 precibus condōnet. Dumnorigem ad sē vocat, frātem adhibet; quae in eō reprehendat ostendit; quae ipse intellegat, quae cīvitās querātur prōpōnit; monet ut in reliquum tempus omnēs suspicioēns vītēt; praeferita sē Diviciācō frātrī condōnāre dicit. Dumnōrigī custōdēs pōnit, ut quae agat, 20 quibuscum loquātur, scire possit.

21. Eōdem dīe ab explōrātōribus certior factus hostēs sub monte cōnsēdiisse mīlia passuum ab ipsīus castrīs octō, quālis

16. condōnō, 1. tr. [dōnō, give], give up; pardon, forgive. 2.  
adhibēō, 2. tr. [habeō, have], bring to, bring in, summon; employ, use. 4.  
17. reprehendō, reprehendere, reprehendē, -prehēnsum, tr. [re-+prehendō (=prēndō), seize], hold back; criticise, blame, censure. 1.  
moneō, 2. tr., warn, advise, instruct, order. 3.  
19. vītō, 1. tr., avoid, shun, evade, escape. 3.  
praestereō, -ire, -īrī, -itum, tr. and intr. (ēō, go. App. 84), go beyond, pass by, omit; praeferō, praeferēre, praeferētur, praeferērī, praeferētūm, praeferētūris, praeferētūrum. 2.  
20. custōs, -ōdis, m., guard, watchman, spy. 2.  
21. loquor, loquī, loquētur, loquētus sum, intr., speak, talk, converse. *  
22. cōnsīdō, -sidere, -sēdī, -sessum, intr. [sidō, sit down], sit down together, settle; take a position, halt, encamp. *  
ocōtō (VIII), card. num. adj., indecl., eight. *  
quālis, -e, interrog. adj., of what sort, kind, or nature? 2.  

15. utī condōnet: a result clause. voluntātī, "out of consideration for his wish," is indirect object of condōnet.


It was tactful of Caesar to make Diviciacus believe that Dumnorix was spared for his sake. In reality, however, Caesar had his hands full with the Helvetii and could not afford to stir up a revolt of the Haeduī in addition—a result which might easily have followed an attempt to punish their most popular noble. A few years later Caesar put Dumnorix to death for obstinate disobedience. See V, 7.

THIRD REFERENCES:  
Use of the indefinite quis  
Dative of reference  
Construction with verbs of asking, etc.  
Indirect question  
Chap. 21–22. The failure of a plan to attack the Helvetii.  
Chap. 21. Caesar plans a double attack on the Helvetii.  
Chapters 16–20 interrupted the narrative of Caesar’s pursuit of the Helvetii. The events of this chapter follow immediately after those narrated in chapter 15.  
1. sub monte: the exact location is unknown; it was only a few miles from the battlefield south of Bibracte. See map facing p. 42.  
2. mīlia: accusative of extent of space.  
quālis esset: indirect question, object of cognōscerēnt.
100 CAESAR'S GALLIC WAR, I, 21

esset nātūra montis et quālis in circuitū ascēnsus qui cognōscerent misit. Renūntiātum est facilem esse. Dē tertiā vigiliā T. Labiēnum, lēgātum prō prætōre, cum duābus legionibus et iis ducibus qui iter cognōverant summmum iugum montis ascendere iubet; quid sui cōnsili sit ostendit. Ipse dē quártā vigiliā eōdem itinere quō hostēs ierant ad eōs contendit equītātumque omnem ante sē mittit. P. Cōnsidius, qui rei militāris perītissimus habēbātur et in exercitū L. Sullae et posteā in M. Crassī fuerat, cum explōrātōribus praemptitur.

3. circuitus, -ūs, m. [circumvēō, go around], a going around; a winding path; circumference, circuit. 4. ascēnsus, -ās, m. [ascendō, climb up], a climbing up, ascending; approach, ascent. 2. praetor, -ōris, m., praetor; commander. 1.

dux, ducis, m. [ducō, lead], leader, guide, commander. *

7. ascendō, -scendere, -scendi, -scēnsum, tr. and intr. [adv:scendō, climb], climb up, ascend, mount, climb. 2.

9. P., abbr. for Pūblius, a Roman praenomen. 2.

Cōnsidius, -dī, m., Pūblius Cōnsidius (pūb'ī-lūs kōn-sīd'ī-lūs), one of Caesar's officers. 3.

10. militāris, -e, adj. [mīles, soldier], of a soldier, military, martial; rēs militāris, military matters, warfare, the science of warfare.

perītus, -a, -um, adj. [cē. experīor, try], tried, experienced, skilled; familiar with, acquainted with. 2.

Sulla, -ae, m., Lucius Sulla (lū'shyūs sūl'ā), the dictator; leader of the nobility; engaged in civiō war with Marius, leader of the popular party; lived from 138 B.C. to 78 B.C. 1.

11. posteā, adv. [post, after], after this, afterwards. *

Crassus, -I, m., Marcus Licinius Crassus (mār'kūs lī-sīn'ī-lūs krās'ūs), triumvīr with Caesar and Pompey. 2.

3. in circuitū, "in going around [behind] it."

qui cognōscerent misit, "he sent (men) to learn."

4. facilem esse: sc. ascēnsum.

dē tertiā vigiliā: see on 12, 7.

5. lēgātum prō prætōre, "lieutenant with the powers of a general"; i.e. he was temporarily given special independent powers. Labēnus was Caesar's most competent and most trusted officer. cum iis ducibus, "with those men as guides."

7. quid . . . sit, lit., "what is of his plan"="what his plan was"; namely, that Labēnus should take a position on the top of the mountain, in the rear of the enemy, and that he and Caesar

should attack them at the same moment. cōnsili is a possessive genitive, used predicatively.

dē quártā vigiliā: the fourth watch would begin at three A.M. when the nights were twelve hours long. As this was June, the nights were shorter, and the fourth watch began about two.

9. P. Cōnsidius . . . fuerat: Caesar states these facts about Cōnsidius to excuse his own ready acceptance of the latter's statements, as told in the next chapter.


11. in M. Crassī, "in (that) of Marcus
22. Primă lūce, cum summus mōns ā Labiēnō tenērētur, ipse ab hostium castrīs nōn longius mille et quingentis passībus, abesset, neque, ut posteā ex captīvīs comperit, aut ipsīus adventus aut Labiēnī cognitus esset, Ĉonsidius equō admissō ad eum accurrīt, dicit montem quem ā Labiēnō occupārī s voluerit ab hostibus tenērī; id sē ā Gallicīs armīs atque insignibus cognōvisse. Caesar suās cópiās in proximum collem subdūcit, aciem instruit. Labiēnus, ut erat eī praecēptum ā

1. lux, lūcis, f., light, daylight; primā lūce, at daybreak. 2.
2. captīvus, -ī, m. [capiō, take], captive, prisoner. 4.
3. comperīō, -perfēre, -perfērī, -perfērītum, tr. [parī, procure], find out with certainty, discover, ascertain. 3.
4. equus, -i, m., horse. 3.
5. admittō, -mittere, -misē, -missum, tr. [mitterī, send], admit; commit; incur; let go; give reins to (a horse). 3.
6. accurrō, -currēre, -currī or -currīrī, -currisum, intr. [ad+currō, run], run or hasten to. 2.
7. Gallicus, -a, -um, adj. [Gallia, Gaul], pertaining to Gaul or the Gauls, Gallic. 3.
8. subdūcō, -ducere, -ducēri, -ducērītum, tr. [dūcō, lead], draw or lead up; lead or draw off, withdraw; with nāvēs, haul up, beach. 3.
9. acīs, -ēs (old gen., aciū), f., sharp point or edge of a weapon; sharp or keen sight, glance; a line (as forming an edge), battle line; prīma, the van; media, the center; novissima, the rear. 3.

In such cases the word for “that” is never expressed in Latin.

THIRD REFERENCE:
Genitive with adjectives

Chap. 22. Caesar's plan is frustrated by a mistake of Ĉonsidius. 1. summus mōns, “the top of the mountain.” For the adjective in agreement, where we should expect a noun followed by a genitive, see App. 160: G.-L. 291, R. 2: A. 293: B. 241, 1: H.-B. 244: H. 497, 4.
2. ipse: i.e. Caesar.
4. ut, “as.”


cognitus esset: the force of cum still continues.
equō admissō, “at full gallop.”
7. Insignibus: the decorations on their helmets, shields, etc. See Plate II, 5-8.
8. aciem Instruit: Caesar concluded from the report of Ĉonsidius that Labienus had been defeated, and expected that the victors would immediately attack him.

ut...praecēptum, lit. “as it had been directed to him” “as he had been directed.” Intransitive verbs can not be used in the passive except impersonally. English idiom generally requires the personal construction in translation. Ėl: case? App. 116, c: G.-L. 217: A. 365: B. 187, II, 6: H.-B. 384, 2: H. 496, 3.
Caesar nē proelium committeret, nisi ipsius cópiae prope
10 hostium castra visae essent, ut undique ūnō tempore in hostēs
impetus fieret, monte occupātō nostrōs expectābat proelīque
abstinēbat. Multō dēnique diē per explōrātōrēs Caesar cognōvit
et montem ā suīs tenēri et Helvētiōs castra móvisse et Con-
sidium timōre perterritum quod nōn vidisset prō visō sibi
15 renūntiāvisse. Eō diē, quō cōnsuevōr intērvālō, hostēs sequitur
et mīlia passuum trīa ab eōrum castrīs castra pōnīt.

23. Postridiē eius diē, quod omnīnō biduīm supererat
cum exercītū frūmentum mētīrī oportēret, et quod ā Bibracē,

9. nisi, conj. [ne→al, if], if not, ex-
cept, unless. *

prope, adv. and prep. with acc. (1) As
prep., near, close to. (2) As adv., almost,
neatly; recently. *

11. impetus, -ēi, m., attack, onset,
charge; impetuosity; force; vehement. *

12. abstineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -ten-
tum, intr. [tenēō], hold, keep aloof
from, refrain; spare. 1.

dēnique, adv., and then, thereupon,
finally, at last; at least. 3.

14. timor, -ōris, m. [timeō, fear],
fear, alarm, dread. *

15. intervallum, -i, n. [vallūs, pal-
isade], the space between two palisades;
interval (of space or time); distance. *

1. postridiē, adv. [posterus, follow-
ing+diēs, day], on the day following,
the next day; postridiē eius diēi, on
the next or following day. *

biduīm, -i, n. [bis, twice+diēs, day],
space or period of two days, two days. 2.
supersum, -esse, -sui, intr. [sum, be
App. 77], be over or above; be left, re-
main, survive. *

2. Bibractē, -ae, n. (Cf), Bibractē (bi-
brāktē), the chief town of the Haediō. 2.
oppidō Haeduorum longē maximō et cōpiōssimō, nōn amplius milibus passuum xviī aberat, reī frumentāriae prōspiciendum existimāvit; itaque iter ab Helvētiīs āvertit ac Bibracte īre contendit. Ea rēs per fugitivōs L. Aemiliī, decurīōnis equitum Gallōrum, hostibus nūntiātur. Helvētiī, seu quod timōre perterritōs Rōmānōs discēdere a sē existimārent, eō magis quod prīdiē superiōribus locīs occupātīs proelium nōn comīssissent, sīve eō, quod rē frumentāriā interclūdī posse cōn-fiderent, commūtātō cōnsiliō atque itinere conversō nostrōs a novissimō agmine ἐνεσσὶ ac lacesere coeperunt.

3. cōpiōsus, -a, -um, adj. [cōpis, plenty], well supplied, wealthy. 1.
4. duodēvigintī (xviiiī), card. num. adj. [duo, two-; dē, from-+vigintī, twenty], eighteen. 4.
prōspiciō, -spicerē, -spexi, -spexī, -spicūrum, instr. [spēciō, look], look forward; look to beforehand, see to, provide for, take care. 1.
6. fugitivus, -a, -um, adj. [fugiō, flee], fleeing; as noun, runaway slave. 1.
Aemilius, -ī, m., Aemilius (ἐμιλίουs). 1.
decurio, -onis, m. [decem, ten], decurion, a cavalry officer in charge of a decuria, a squad of ten. 1.
9. prīdiē, adv. [diēs, day], on the day before. 3.
10. interclūdō, -clādere, -clāsi, -clāsum, tr. [claudō, shut], shut or cut off, separate, hinder; with itinerā, block. *
cōnfidō, -fidere, -fīsum, instr. [fīdō, trust. App. 74], trust completely, rely on, feel confident, hope; cōnīusius, pf. part. with present meaning, relying on. *
11. commūtō, 1. tr. [mātō, change], change or alter completely, change, exchange. 2.
convertō, -vertere, -verti, -ver-sūnum, tr. and intr. [vertō, turn], turn
eō magis quod, "all the more because." eō is an ablative of cause.
9. quod ... commississent: the Helvetii did not understand the reason for the failure of Caesar and Labienus to attack them on the previous day.
10. sīve eō, "or for this reason." interclūdī posse, "that (the Romans) could be cut off"; i.e. by being prevented from reaching Bibracte.
11. commūtātō cōnsiliō: if the Helvetii had held to their plan of march, they might have foiled Caesar. Their safety lay in avoiding battle, which they could do as long as they were in advance of him, on account of the rugged nature.
24. Postquam id animadvertit, cópiás suás Caesar m proximum collem subdúxit equitá tumque qui sustinēret hostium

1. postquam, conj. [post, afterwards]
2. sustinēō, 2, tr. and intr. [su(b)tenē, hold], hold up from below; hold

BATTLE WITH THE HELVETII. First stage, Chap. 24-25, 10.

a. Camp of the Romans on the night before the battle.
b. Camp of the Helvetii on the night before the battle.
c. Wagons of the Helvetii during the battle (24, 9).
d. Roman fortification (24, 8).
e. The Helvetii.
f. The Romans.

of the country. Their fatal mistake lay in thinking that they were strong enough to throw away this advantage.

ā novissimō agmine, "on the rear."

See on 1, 15.

THIRD REFERENCES:
Accusative of place to which
Implied indirect discourse
Passive periphrastic conjugation

1. animadvertit: mode and tense?
2. qui ... sustinēret: i.e. to check the skirmishers of the enemy and give Caesar time to form his lines. The cavalry was not expected to meet the main attack.
impetum misit. Ipsa interim in colle mediō triplicem aciem
instruīxīt legiōnum quattuor veteranōrum; in summō
iugō duo legiōnēs quās in Galliā citeriōre proximē cōnscripsērat et s
omnia auxilia collocārī, ac tōtum montem hominibus complērī,
et interea sacrīnās in ānum locum cōnserrī, et eum ab ipsis qui
in superiōre aciē cōnsiterant mūnīrī iussit. Helvētii cum
omnibus suis carrīs secūtī impediēnta in ānum locum
contulērunt; ipsī cōnfertissimā aciē, reiectō nostrō equitātū, phalangeta factā sub primām nostram aciem successerunt.

3. in colle mediō, "half-way up the
hill." For the meaning of the adjective
241, 1: H.-B. 244: H. 247, 4.
triplicem aciem: on the battle formation
of the Romans see Int. 37.

4. legiōnum quattuor veteranō-
344: B. 197: H.-B. 249. These
legions were the one which Caesar found in
Transalpine Gaul (cf. 7, 5), and the three
which he brought from their quarters
near Aquileia (cf. 10, 9).

5. quās ... cōnscripsērat: cf. 10,
8. Caesar dared not put these untrained
and untried troops in the fighting
lines.

6. auxilia: Caesar never expected
much of his Gallic infantry. See Int. 47.

8. mūnīrī, 4, tr., defend with a wall, fortify,
defend, protect; mūnitus, pp. part.
as adj., fortified, defended, protected.

9. impedimentum, -i, n. [impēdiō,
hinder], hindrance, obstacle, impediment;
pl., baggage, luggage (of an army),
baggage-train (including the draught
animals).

10. cōnfertus, -a, -um, adj. [pp. part.
of cōnferciō, crowd together], dense,
thick, compact.

11. phalanx, -ngis, f., a compact
body of troops, phalanx.

succeōdō, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessum,
instr. [sub- + cōdō, go], go or come under;
collocārī, complērī, cōnserrī, mūnīrī: all depend on iussit.
sarcīnās: see Int. 37.
sum: sc. locum.
ils ... cōnsiterant: i.e. the two new
legions.

9. in ānum locum: marked c on the
plan. Bits of Gallic pottery have been
found there.
come up to, come up, advance, be next to; succeed, take the place of; succeed, prosper. *

1. primum, adv. [primus, first], first, at first, in the first place, for the first time; cum primum, or ubi primum, as soon as; quam primum, as soon as possible, very soon. *

deinde, adv. [dē+inde, thence], thereupon, then, next. *

2. aequō, 1, tr. [aequus, equal], make even or equal, equalize. 1.

3. cohortor, 1, tr. [co+hortor, encourage], encourage greatly, cheer, animate. *

4. pilum, -ī, n., heavy javelin, pike. *

perfringō, -stringere, -frēgit, -frāc-

tum, tr. [frangō, break], break or burst through. 1.

disīcit, -iōre, -iōsi, -iectum, tr. [iacō, throw. App. 7], scatter, rout, disperse. 2.

5. gladius, -dī, m. sword. *

dēstringō, -stringere, -stringit, -strictum, tr. [stringō, bind tight], unbind, unsheathe, draw (gladius). 1.

6. pugna, -ae, f. [pugnō, fight], fight, battle, contest; genus pugnae, method of fighting. *

scūtum, -ī, n., shield, buckler; oblong, conveξ (9½×4½ ft.), made of wood covered with leather or iron plates, with a metal rim. *

7. ictus, -us, m., stroke, blow. 1.

trānsfīgō, -figere, -fixi, -fixum, tr.

2. aequōtō periculō, "by making the danger equal."

3. cohortātus suós: Caesar was a skillful orator (see Int. 23), and usually encouraged his men before battle by a short speech.

dē locō superiōre: see Int. 55.

4. pilis: see Int. 36, a.

5. gladiis: see Int. 36, b.


6. quod ... poterant is the subject of erat. For mode see App. 248: G.-L. 554; 555, 1: A. 572: B. 299, 1, a: H.-B. 552, 1: H. 566, II, 3.

plāribus ... colligātīs: remember that the shields overlapped.


Chap. 25. The Helvetii fight bravely, but are forced to retreat.

1. suō: sc. equō remotō.

omnium: i.e. of the higher officers, not of the cavalry. Caesar wished in part to encourage his men by showing that the officers shared their danger, and in part to prevent some timid tribune from setting an example of flight. See Int. 41.
neque  giọng  neque sinistra impedita satis commodé pugnare poterant, multi ut diú iactati brachii præoptarent scutum. manu emissere et nudo corpore pugnare. Tandem vulneribus deposi et pedem referre et, quod mons suberat circiter mile passuum spatiō, eō sē recipere coepérunt. Captō monte et succēdentibus nostris, Bōii et Tulingi, qui hominum milibus

dare manus, yield; an armed force, troop, band, company. * 
emittō, -mittere, -mīs, -missum, tr. [mittere, send], let go, send out or forth, release; hurl, discharge; drop. 2. 
nudus, -a, -um, adj., naked, unclothed, bare; exposed, unprotected. 1. 
corpus, -orūs, s., body; person; a (dead) body. *
tandum, adj., at last, at length, finally; in interrog. clauses to add emphasis, as quid tandem, what, pray? what then? 2. 
vulnus, -oris, s., a wound. *
defessus, -a, -um, adj. [pf. part. of défēscor, grow weary], wearied, exhausted, faint. 3. 
referō, referre, retellī, relātum, tr. [re-ferō, bear. App. 81], bear, carry, or bring back, report; pedem referre, go back, retreat; grātiām referre, show one's gratitude, make a requital. *
subsum, -esse, -ful, intr. [sum, be. App. 77], be under or below; be near or close at hand. 2. 
eō, adv. [old datives of is], thither, there (in sense of thither), to the place (where, etc.), to them (it, him, etc.). *
tain was near at hand, (separated) by a distance of about a mile"="there was a mountain about a mile away." passum: case? App. 100: G.-L. 365, 2: A. 345, b: B. 203, 2: H.-B. 445: H. 440. 3. 
spatiō: ablative of degree of difference. 
eō: the adverb.
captō monte, "when they had reached the mountain."
qui ... claudēbant: they had formed the van of the Helvetic army, and became the rear when the line of march was reversed. They had proba-
circiter XV agmen hostium claudēbant et novissimis praesidiō erant, ex itinere nostrās ab latere apertō aggressī circumvenire,

14. claudō, claudere, claudiō, clau- sum, tr., shut, close; agmen claudere, close the line, bring up the rear. 4. 
15. latūs, -āris, -ārum, side; wing or flank of an army. *

apertus, -a, -um, adj. [pf. part. of aperiō], open, exposed; ab latere apertō, on the unprotected flank. *
circumvenīō, -venire, -vēnī, -veniō, -vēn- tum, tr. [vēnīō, come], come or get

**Battle with the Helvetii. Second stage, Chap. 25, 10, through Chap. 26.**

a. Camp of the Romans on the night before the battle.
b. Camp of the Helvetii on the night before the battle.
c. Wagons of the Helvetii during the battle (24, 9).
d. Roman fortification (24, 8).
e. The Helvetii.
f. The Romans.
g. The Boii and Tulingi.

bly been separated from the Helvetii by a wagon train, which they had been obliged to pass on the road. This accounts for their coming up so late in the battle.

15. ex itinere: i.e. they went straight from their march into the battle, without a halt.

ab latere apertō: i.e. the right flank, for their shields protected the soldiers’ left sides. The plan shows that the left flank was the nearer to the Boii and
et id cōnspicāti Helvētii, qui in montem sēsē recēperant, rūrsus īnstāre et proelium redintegrāre coeppērunt. Rōmānī conversa signa bipertitō intentione: prima ēt secunda aciēs, ut victīs ac submōtīs resisteret; tertia, ut venientēs sustinēret.

26. Ita ancipītī proelīō diū atque ācriter pugnātum est. Diūtiūs cum sustinēre nostrōrum impētūs nōn possent, alterī sē, ut coeperant, in montem recēperunt, alterī ad impedimenta et carrōs suōs sē contulērunt. Nam hōc tōtō proelīō, cum ab

around, surround, cut off, beset; betray, defraud. *

16. cōnspicor, 1, tr. [spēō, look], observe, descry, perceive. 3.

17. rūrsus, adv. [for reversus, from revertō, turn back], again, back, anew; in turn. *

redintegrō, 1, tr. [red+-integrō, make whole], make whole again, renew, restore, revive. *

18. signum, -l., n., mark, sign, signal, watchword; signal for battle, standard, ensign; ab signis discēdere, withdraw from the ranks; signa inferre, advance to the attack; signa conversa inferre, face about and advance to the attack; signa ferre, advance on the march; direct the attack; signa convertere, face or wheel about; ad signa convenire, join the army. *

Tulingi, but they came up in the rear, trying to work their way around (circuitvenire) to the more advantageous position. circuitvenire depends on cœpērunt, to be supplied from l. 17.

18. conversa... intulērunt, lit. "carried forward in two directions their turned standards" = "faced about and advanced in two directions." In reality only the third line faced about. signa: see Int. 44.

primē et secunda aciēs; tertia (sc. aciēs): in opposition with Rōmānī.

19. victīs ac submōtīs = Helvētīs. venientēs = Boīs et Tulingōs.

THIRD REFERENCES:

Descriptive genitive
Ablative of manner
Substantive quod clause

bipertitō, adv. [bis, twice+-partior, divide], in two parts or divisions, in two ways. 1.

19. vincō, vincere, viol, victum, tr., conquer, overcome, vanquish; prevail; have one's way or desire. *

submoveō, -movēre, -móvi, -móatum, tr. [moveō, move], move away, drive away, dislodge. 2.

resistō, -sistere, -stītī, —, intr. [re+-sistō, stand], stand back, remain behind, halt, stand still; withstand, resist, oppose. *

1. anceps, ancipitis, adj. [ambō, both+-caput, head], two headed, with two sides or fronts, double. 1.

ācriter, adv. [ācer, sharp], sharply, keenly, fiercely, vigorously. Comp. ācrīus; sup. ācerrīmē (App. 40). *

Chap. 26. The Helvetii are routed and flee northwards. Caesar follows.

1. ancipītī: i.e. against the Helvetii on one side and the Boi and Tulingi on the other.

pugnātum ēst, "they fought." For translation see note on 22, 8.

2. alterī... alterī, "the one body [the Helvetii]... the other [the Boi and Tulingi]."

3. ut coeperant: see 25, 12.

4. nam: this sentence gives the reason for Caesar's statement that the enemy withdrew, instead of fleeing in disorder.

cum pugnātum sit: an adversative clause. Note that the perfect subjunctive is an exception to the rule of sequence of tenses.

ab hōrā septimā, "from about noon."
5 hōrā septimā ad vesperum pugnātum sit, àversum hostem vidēre nēmō potuit. Ad multam noctem etiam ad impedimenta pugnātum est, propertē quod pro vāllō carrōs obiēcerant et ē locō superiōre in nostrōs venientēs tēla coniciēbant, et nōn nūlli inter carrōs raedāsque matarās ac trāgulās subiciēbant nostrōsque vulnerābant. Diū cum esset pugnātum, impedimentis castrisque nostrī potiti sunt. Ibi Orgetorīgis filia atque ūnus ē filiis captus est. Ex eō proeliō circiter hominum milia cxxx superfuērunt eāque tōtā nocte continenter iērunt; nūllam

5. hōrā, -ae, f., hour. *The Roman hour was the twelfth part of the day or night (reckoning between sunrise and sunset), and hence varied according to the season.* vesper, -erī, m., evening; sub vesperum, towards evening. 

6. nox, noctis, f., night; media nox, middle of the night, midnight; multā noce, late at night. 

7. vāllum, -ī, n. [vālō, palisade], wall or rampart of earth set with palisades; entrenchments, earthworks. *obiciō, -icere, -iōcī, -iectum, tr. [iaciō, throw. App. 7], hurl, throw, cast; put; put together logically, conjecture; in fugam conicere, put to flight. *

9. raedā, -ae, f., wagon with four wheels. 

matara, -ae, f., Celtic javelin. 

trāgula, -ae, f., a javelin or dart used by the Gauls. 

subiciō, -icere, -iōcī, -iectum, tr. [iaciō, hurl. App. 7], hurl or put under; throw from beneath; place below; subject to, expose to. 

10. vulnerā, i, tr. [vulnus, a wound], wound. 

13. trigintā (XXX), card. num. adj., indecl. [trēs, three], thirty. *the destruction of the Tigurini, and of course by natural deaths on the journey, especially among the children and the aged.

8. coniciēbant, “kept throwing.” The imperfect here denotes repeated action. 

The seventh hour began at noon, and in such expressions the Romans probably reckoned from the beginning of the hour. 

7. prō vāllō, “as a rampart.” ē locō superiōre: i.e. from the tops of the wagons. 

8. coniciēbant, “kept throwing.” The imperfect here denotes repeated action. 

12. captus est agrees with the nearer subject. 

milia cxxx superfuērunt: according to chap. 29 the original number was 368,000. If both statements are correct the slaughter in this battle was terrible, though we must remember that the original number had been reduced by the destruction of the Tigurini, and of course by natural deaths on the journey, especially among the children and the aged. 


nūllam... pervēnērunt: the map facing p. 43 shows the direction of this flight. Of course no individual traveled every day and every night. There was only a panie-stricken mob, under no leadership, every member of which rested or moved on at his own pleasure, so that as a whole it was in ceaseless motion. Tonneerre is about a hundred miles north of the battlefield, and only the strongest could have traveled so far,
partem noctis itinere intermissō in finēs Lingonum diē quārtō pervēnērunt, cum et propter vulnera militum et propter sepul-
ćūram occisōrum nostrī trīduum morātī eōs sequī nōn potuis-
sent. Caesar ad Lingonēs litterās nūntiōsque misit nē eōs
frūmentō nēve alīā re iuvārent; qui si iūvissent, sē eōdem
locō quō Helvētiōs habitūrum. Ipse trīduō intermissō cum
omnibus cōpiis eōs sequī coēpit.

27. Helvētiī omnium rērum inopia adductī lēgātōs dē
dēdītione aedum misērunt. Quī cum eum in itinere con-
vēnissent sēque ad pedēs prōiēcissent suppliciterque locūti
flēntēs pācem petissent, atque eōs in eō locō quō tum essent
suum adventum expectāre iussissent, pāruērunt. Eō postquam

14. partem: accusative of duration of
time.

diē quārtō: by the Roman method of
reckoning, the day of the battle counted
as the first day. We should say "in
three days."

15. cum: causal.

17. nē iuvārent, "ordering them"
not to assist." The subjunctive stands
for an imperative of the direct discourse,
though it may also be called a substau-
tive volitive clause: App. 307: G.-L. 652:
A. 588: B. 316: H.-B. 534, 2; 588: H.
662.

18. iūvissent stands for a future
perfect indicative in the direct form.

14. intermittō, -mittere, -misit,
-missum, tr. and intr. [mittō, send],
send between; intervene, separate; abate,
cease, discontinue; delay, neglect, omit;
let pass. *

Lingonēs, -um, m. (B), the Lingones
(ling'go-nēz). 4.

15. sepultūra, -ae, f., burial. 1.

16. trīduum, -I, n. [trēs, three +
dīēs, day], three days. *

mōror, i. tr. and intr. [mora, a delay],
delay, hinder; tarry, linger. *

17. littera, -ae, f., a letter of the
alphabet, a written sign, mark, or charac-
ter; in pl., letters of the alphabet; let-
ter, epistle. *

nāntius, -tī, m., messenger; mes-
sage, news, report. *

18. nēve (neu) (App. 188, 3), conj.
[nē + ve, or], and not, nor. 3.

iuvō, iuvāre, iūvi, iūtum, tr., aid,
assist, help. 3.

1. inopia, -ae, f. [inops, needy],
need, want, poverty, lack; want of pro-
visions, hunger. *

2. dēdītō, -ōnis, f. [dēdō, surren-
der], capitulation. *;

3. prōiciō, -icere, -iēcit, -iectum,
tr. [iaciō, throw. App. 7], throw forward
or away; throw, cast; reject, give up;
sē prōicerē, cast one's self; jump. 4.

suppliciter, adv. [supplex, supplic-
iant], as suppliants, humbly. 1.

5. pāreō, 2, intr. [cf. pāriō, bring
sē . . . habitūrum: i.e. he should
treat them as enemies.

19. quō Helvētiōs: sc. habēret.

THIRD REFERENCE:
Commands in indirect discourse

Chap. 27. Surrender of the Hel-
vetti. Six thousand escape.

2. quī cum, "when they."

4. essent: implied indirect discourse.

Caesar said quī nunc estis, "where you
the Helvetii as a whole, not the envoys
now are."

5. iussisset: supply Caesar as the
subject.

postquam pervēnit: mode and tense?
Caesar pervenit, obsidēs, arma, servōs quī ad eōs perfugissent poposcit. Dum ea conqueruntur et conferuntur, nocte intermissā, circiter hominum milia vi eius pāgi quī Verbigenus appellātur, sīve timōre perterritī nē armīs trāditis suppliciō afficerentur, sīve spē salūtis inducī, quod in tantā multitūdine dēditiciōrum suam fungam aut occultāri aut omnīnō ignōrāri posse existimārent, primā nocte ē castris Helvētiōrum ēgressī ad Rhēnum finēsque Germanōrum contendērunt.

28. Quod ubi Caesar rescit, quōrum per finēs ierant, hīs forth), appear; obey, yield to, be subject to. 1.
6. servus, -i, m., slave, servant. 1. perfugiō, -fugere, -fugi, -fugītum, intr. [fugiō, flee], flee for refuge, take refuge; desert. 1.
7. poscō, poscere, poposci, —, tr., ask, demand, request, require. 3. conquirō, -quirere, -quisīvi, -quisītum, tr. [quarea, search], seek for carefully, search for, hunt up. 2.
8. sex (VI), card. num. adj., indecl. six. ♠
8. Vercingetorix, -i, m. (Cgh), Vercingetorix (vēr-bingē-tōō-nūs), a canton of the Helvetii. 1.
9. trādō, -dere, -divi, -ditum, tr. [trānsdō, give], give over, give up, surrender, deliver; intrust, commit; hand down, transmit; teach, communicate; recommend. ♠

perfuīgissent: implied indirect discourse. Caesar said qui ad eōs perfugērunt, "who have fled to you."
7. dum ea conqueruntur, "while these were being sought out." For mode and tense, see App. 234, a: G.-L. 570: A. 556: B. 293, 1: H.-B. 571: H. 538, 4.
ea=obsidēs, arma, servōs.
9. timōre nē suppliciō afficerentur, "by the fear that they would be punished"; lit. "be treated with punishment." For the meaning of nē, see App. 226, b: G.-L. 550, 1, 2: A.

perterritī agrees with milia, but is masculine because the idea of men is prominent.
THIRD REFERENCES:
Adjectives with partitive meaning
Clauses introduced by postquam, etc.

Chap. 28. The six thousand are re-taken and put to death. The others are sent back to their homes.
1. resceić = rescīvi.
hīs is the antecedent of quōrum and the indirect object of imperāvit.
ut iis facerent, "to provide them with."

8. ipsōs: i.e. the Helvetii and their allies.

ipsōs restituere is the object of iussit. The object of iubeō is regularly an accusative and infinitive, while the object of imperō is regularly a substantive volitive clause, as in 1. 2.

9. ea maximē ratio, "chiefly for this reason," is explained by the quod clause.

13. provinciae Allobrogibusque, "the province and (especially) the Allo-

2. si vellent: implied indirect discourse. Caesar said si vultis, "if you wish."

sibi: dative of reference. It refers to Caesar.

3. in...habuit: i.e. he had them put to death. They had broken a military agreement.

4. in dēditōnem accēpit: this act made them subjects of Rome.


quod ēgregiā virtūte erant cogniti, ut in finibus suis  col-
locārent, concessit; quibus illi agrōs dedērunt quōsque postea
in parem iūris libertātisque condicionem atque ipsi erant
recēpērunt.

29. In castrīs Helvētiōrum tabulae repertae sunt litteris
Graecīs cōnfectae et ad Caesarem relātae, quibus in tabulis
nōminātīm ratiō ĉōnfecta erat, quī numeros domō exisset eōrum
qui arma ferre possent, et item sēparātīm quot puerī, senēs,

16. pār, paris, adj., equal, like, similar; equal to, a match for; with words of
tabula, -ae, -i, board; tablet; list. 2.

2. Graecus, -a, -um, adj., of or belonging to the Greeks, Greek, Greecian;
pl. as noun, the Greeks. 1.

3. nōminātīm, adv. (nōminō, name), by name; expressly; in detail. 3.

4. quot, adj., indecl. (1) interrogr., how many? (3) rel., as many as, the number
puer, -erī, m., boy, child, son; in pl., children (of both sexes); a puerīs, from
senex, seniās, adj., old; as noun, old man. 1.

broges”; for the Allobroges were a part of the province.
Bōiōs is the object of collocārent. It is put first for the sake of the emphatic
contrast with Helvētiōs, Tulingōs, Latobrigōs, in 1. 5.

Haedui: indirect object of concessit.

14. ēgregiā virtūte, “(men) of very great courage”: a descriptive ablative.

ut collocārent is the object of concessit. The Boii had had no fixed home,
as is shown by 5, 11, 12. The map facing p. 42 shows where they were settled by
the Haedui. The Haedui wished to strengthen their frontier against invasions
by neighboring states, just as Rome wished the Helvetii to guard her
frontier against the Germans.

15. quibus, quōs: the antecedent is Bōiōs.

16. parem... atque ipsi erant, lit. “equal... as they themselves were
(in)” = “the same... as they themselves enjoyed.”

THIRD REFERENCE:
The locative

Chap. 29. Enumeration of the Helvetii and their allies.

1. tabulae, “lists,” written on wax tablets. The tablets used by the Romans
were like folding slates, but made entirely of wood, with the inner surfaces
thinely coated with wax. They wrote on this wax with a pointed stylus.

litteris Graecīs: Gallic words were written in Greek characters, the Gauls
having no alphabet of their own. The Greek alphabet was known to the Gauls
through their intercourse with the Greek colony, Massilia, and was used by
the Druid priests.

2. quibus in tabulis, “in which.”

3. ratiō, “an account.”

4. quī possent: mode? App. 230:
G.-L. 631, 2: A. 555: B. 283, 1: H.-B. 521, 1:
H. 569.

puerī, senēs, mulierēsque are sub-
jects of exisset, to be supplied from ex-
isset. Note that this use of -quē is an
exception to the statement of the note
on 1, 3.
WAR WITH THE HELVETII, B.C. 58

mulierēaque. Summa erat capitum Helvētiōrum milium s<br>cclxiii, Tulingōrum milium xxxvi, Latobrigōrum xiv,<br>Rauracōrum xiii, Bōiōrum xxxii; ex his, qui arma ferre<br>possent, ad milia nonāgentā duo. Summa omnium fuērant ad<br>milia cclxviii. Eōrum qui domum rediērant cēnsū habitō,<br>ut Caesar imperāverat, repertus est numerus milium c et x.<br>

5. mulier, -ēris, f., woman; wife. *<br>summa, -ae, f. [summus, highest],<br>the main thing or point, sum total, aggre¬<br>gate, the whole; general manage¬<br>ment, control, direction; summa imper¬<br>ī, the chief command. *

caput, capitii, n., the head (of men<br>and animals); person, individual; mouth<br>of a river); capitii poena, capital<br>punishment. *

6. quattuordecim (XIV), card. num.<br>adj., indecl., fourteen. 2.

8. nōnāgentā, card. num. adj., indecl.<br>ninety. 1.

9. redeō, -īre, -ī, -itum, intr. [red¬<br>-ēō, go. App. 84], go or turn back, re¬<br>turn; come; fall to, descend; be re¬<br>ferred. *

cēnsus, -ūs, m., enumeration. 1.

5. summa . . . cclxiii, ltt. "the<br>total was (i.e. consisted) of 263,000 of<br>heads of the Helvetii"="the total was<br>263,000 Helvetii, etc."

6. cclxiii = ducentōrum sexāgitā<br>trium.

XXXVI = trigintā sex.

7. cclxviii = trigintā octō.

BOOK I, CHAPTERS 30 TO 54. WAR WITH<br>ARIOVISTUS

The complete success of Caesar's campaign against the Helvetii at<br>once established his prestige in Gaul. Representatives from most of<br>the states came to beg his aid against their common enemy, Ariovistus, a<br>German king who had established himself in Gaul. It was still early<br>in July, and there was time for another campaign that summer. Caesar<br>willingly accepted the task, for if ever he was to become master of Gaul<br>he must first put out of his way this rival conqueror; and in any case<br>it was most important that the Germans should be kept to the east of the<br>Rhine. Yet the Germans were no mean antagonists, and Caesar<br>was ready to make some concessions rather than fight them. He first<br>proposed to Ariovistus that they settle their differences in friendly<br>conference, but he met a haughty refusal. Determined to bring the<br>king to terms before he should be joined by other German tribes,<br>Caesar marched against him with all speed.
During a few days' halt at Vesontio the soldiers heard such fearful tales of the Germans that they were on the point of mutiny. By a masterly speech Caesar quieted their fears and aroused their enthusiasm to the highest pitch; and at once he led them on toward the enemy. Never again during the Gallic campaigns did his soldiers give him trouble.

Impressed by Caesar's activity, Ariovistus in his turn now proposed a conference; but when they met he replied boastfully to Caesar's demands, and the interview was broken off by an attack of the German guard. Caesar refused to meet Ariovistus a second time, but sent two representatives in his place. These Ariovistus threw into chains. The negotiations were thus finally broken off.

At once Ariovistus marched past Caesar's camp, keeping up on the slopes of a mountain where he was safe from attack, and boldly established his camp in such a way as to command the road by which Caesar had come, and by which his provisions were to follow. Caesar immediately offered battle, but the Germans were not ready to fight. Five days later Caesar marched back past the German camp and fortified and garrisoned a small camp to protect the way for his provisions. The Germans were unsuccessful in an assault on this small camp.

At last Caesar determined to force a battle, and he marched straight at the German camp. As this was not fortified, Ariovistus was obliged to lead out his army and draw it up against the Romans. Caesar in person led his right wing, which was successful; his left, on the contrary, was beaten back. The reserves, hurrying to this spot, decided the contest. The Germans broke and fled to the river Ill, a branch of the Rhine, so closely pursued that only a few, including, however, the king, escaped to the other bank.

In the two campaigns of this one year important results were achieved. The Rhine for the first time became the frontier of the Roman possessions; the tide of barbarian invasion was rolled back for five hundred years; the destiny of Gaul as a future dependency of Rome was fixed; and the Roman's traditional fear of the Gauls and the Germans was dispelled.
EXPLANATION OF CAMPAIGN MAP

Brown indicates Roman possessions when Caesar entered Gaul. Red indicates states which Caesar conquered. Blue indicates the states which submitted without fighting. Compare all these with the map facing page 42.

Crossed sabers indicate the battlefield. Colonel Stoffel’s identification of it (Guerre de César et d’Arioviste) is very probable, and is indicated on this map.

30. Bellō Helvētiōrum cōnfectō tōtīus ferē Galliae lēgātī, principēs civitātum, ad Caesarem grātulātum convēnērunt: Intellcgere sēsē, tametsī prō veteribus Helvētiōrum iniūriis populi Rōmānī ab īs poenās bellō repetīset, tamen eam rem

2. grātulōr, 1, intr. [grātus, pleasing], express joy, congratulate, thank. 1.
3. tametsī, conj. [tamen, however +etsī, even if], although, though, notwithstanding. 1.
4. repetō, -petere, -petīvī, -petītum, tr. [re- + petō, seek], seek or ask again, demand back; with poenās, exact, inflict. 2.

Chap. 30-36. At the request of the Gallic states Caesar warns Ariovistus to cease encroaching on Gallic territory, but he receives a defiant reply.

Chap. 30. Deputations from the Gallic states congratulate Caesar and ask permission to hold a council.

1. tōtīus ferē Galliae: Gallia Celtica is meant. The blue color on the map facing p. 42 shows the part of Gaul from which onvoys may have come; but probably not all the states so colored were represented at this time.


3. Since there is a large amount of indirect discourse in 30-54, it is necessary to make a more detailed study of the construction than has been called for by the notes on 1-29. It is assumed that the following points are clearly understood by the student: the accusative and infinitive in principal declarative clauses; the subjunctive in principal imperative clauses; the subjunctive in subordinate clauses. The direct form of all long passages of indirect discourse is given after Book VII.

sēsē: the envoys said “we.” The reflexive pronoun sui or the corresponding possessive suus is regularly used in indirect discourse wherever a pronoun of the first person is changed to one of the third. In this use the reflexive is often called the indirect reflexive, in contrast with the direct reflexive, which refers to the subject of the clause in which it stands. App. 165: G.-L. 520; 531: A. 300, 2: B. 244, 1, II: H.-B. 302, 2: H. 504.

nōn minus ex úsū Galliae quam populi Rōmānī accidisse, propterēā quod ēō cōnsiliō floreatissimīs rébus domōs suās Helvētīī reliquissent, uti tōtī Galliae bellum ēnferrent impérioque potīrentur locumque domiciliō ex magnā cōpiā dēligerent, quem ex omni Galliā opportunāssimum ac fructuōsissimum iōdiçāssent, reliquāssque civitātēs stipendiāriās habērent. Petiērunt uti sibi conciliō tōtīs Galliae in diem certam indicere idque Caesaris voluntāte facere licēret: Sēsē habēre quāsdam rēs quās ex commūni consēnsū ab eō petere vellent. Eā rē permissā diem conciliō constiērunt et īure iūrando tributary; pl. as nouns, tributaries. 2.

5. āsūs, āsūs, m. [ātor, use], use, experience, practice, skill; service, advantage; need, necessity; āsūs est, there is need; āsūs esse or āsū ēsse, be of advantage or service; āsū venire, come by necessity; happen. *

6. flōrens, -entis, adj. [flōreō, flower], flourishing, prosperous, influential. 2.

8. domiciliō, -lī, m. [domus, house], residence, dwelling, home, domicile. 3.

9. opportunās, -ās, -ām, adj., fit, opportune, lucky, suitable; favorable, advantageous. *

10. stipendiāriōs, -ās, -ām, adj. [stipendium, tribute], paying tribute,

11. petiērunt uti sibi licēret, "they requested permission."

conciēliō: The envoys mentioned in 1.1 did not constitute this council. They issued a call for representatives from each state. The blue color on the map facing p. 117 indicates the part of Gaul from which envoys probably came to the council.

12. Caesaris voluntātēs: "with Caesar's consent." They did not wish Caesar to suspect that the council was for the purpose of making war on him. The request shows that they were impressed by Caesar's power, and may fairly be regarded as the first step in their submission to him.
WAR WITH ARIOVISTUS, B.C. 58

nē quis ēnūntiāret, nisi quibus commūnī cōnsiliō mandātum esset, inter sē sānxērunt.

31. Eō conciliō dimissō idem principēs civitātum qui ante fuerant ad Caesarem revertērunt petēruntque uti sibi sēcretō dē suā omniumque salūte cum eō agere licēret. Eā rē impetrātā sēsē omnēs fīlēs Caesari ad pedēs prōicērunt: Nōn minus sē id contendere et labōrāre, nē ea quae dīxissent ēnūntiārentur, quam uti ea quae vellent impetrārent, propertēa quod, si ēnūntiātum esset, summum in cruciātum sē ventūrōs vidērunt.

Locūtus est prō hīs Divīciācus Hæduus: Galliae totius factiōnēs esse duās: hārum alterius principātum tenēre Hæduōs, alterius Arvernōs. Hī cum tantopere dē potentātū

16. sanció, sancire, sānxi, sāntum, tr. [cf. saecer, sacred], make sacred, sanction; bind; sāntus, pf. part. as adj., sacred, inviolable; established. 2.
5. labōri, i, intr. [labor, toil], toil, work hard; be anxious, troubled, or per-

15. nē ēnūntiāret is the object of sānxērunt.

 nisi (illa) quibus mandātum esset, “except to those to whom they should be directed” (to disclose it). mandātum esset is impersonal. The pluperfect subjunctive stands for a future perfect indicative by implied indirect discourse, for the agreement was in effect “we will tell no one except those whom we shall have agreed upon.”

Chap. 31. They implore him to aid them against the German king Ario-
vistus.

1. eō conciliō dimissō: Caesar leaves it to be inferred from the fact that his permission was given (30, 14) that the council was held.

Idem principēs: when they had come to Caesar before (30, 2) they had had no authority to act for their stātes. Now the council had authorized them to ask for Caesar’s help.

3. dē . . . salūte, “for their own safety and (that) of all.”

4. Caesari ad pedēs, “at Caesar’s

plexed; labor, suffer, be hard pressed. 3.
7. cruciātus, -ās, m. [cruciō, torture; crux, cross], torture, torment. 8.
9. factiō, -ōnis, f. [faciō, make], party, faction. 1.
10. Arvernus, -i, m. (CDe), an Ar-

5. nōn minus, etc., “(saying) that they were no less urgent and anxious that . . . should not be reported, than that, etc.”

sē: cf. note on sēr, 30, 3.
quae dīxissent, “which they should say.”

7. si ēnūntiātum esset, “if reports should get out.” The verb is used impersonally. All the conditional clauses in this chapter employed the indicative in the direct form. ēnūntiātum esset stands for a future perfect and is a vivid future condition: App. 256: G.-L. 555: A. 516, a, c: B. 323, 1: H.-B. 579, a: H. 574, 1.

8. Galliae: Gallia Celtaica is meant.

9. factiōnēs: see Int. 29.

10. cum contenderent, “when they had fought.” We might expect the pluperfect, but the imperfect is used on the principle laid down for the imperfect indicative in App. 191, b: G.-L. 234: A. 471, b: B. 360, 4: H.-B. 485: H. 585, 1.
inter se multos annos contenderent, factum esse uti ab Arvernis Sequanisque Germani mercede arcesseruntur. Horum primae circiter milia xv Rhenum transisse; posteaquam agris et cultum et copiis Gallorum/hominis fieri ac barbari/admissent, traductos plurès; nunc esse in Gallia ad centum et viginti milium numerum. Cum his Haeduos eorumque clientés/semel atque) iterum armis contendisse; magnam calamitatem pulsos accipisse, omnem nobilitatem, omnem senatum, omnem equitatem amisisse. Quibus proeliiis calamitatibusque fractos, qui et sua virtute et populis Români hospitio atque amicitia plurimum ante in Gallia potuissent/coactos esse Sequanis obsidés dare, nobilissimós civitates, et iūre iūrandó civitatem obstringere sése neque obsidés repetituros neque auxilium à

vernian; pl., the Arverni (AR-ver’ni), possibly the Arverni. 3.

tantopere, adv. [tantis, so great + opus, work], so greatly, so earnestly. 1.

potentátem, -ás, m. [potens, powerful], chief power, supremacy. 1.

12. mercés, -ódis, f., pay, hire. 1.

arcessé, -ere, -ívi, -ítaxt, tr., summon, send for, invite. *

primó, adv. [primus, first], at first, in the first place. *

13. posteaquam, adv. [postea, afterwards + quam, than], after. 4.

14. ferus, -a, -um, adj., wild, savage, fierce. *

barbarus, -a, -um, adj., foreign (to Greeks and Romans), uncivilized, barbarous; pl. as noun, savages, barbarians. *

adamō, 1, tr. [amō, love], love strongly, covet. 1.

15. nunc, adv., now, at present, at this time. 2.

16. semel, adv., once, a single time; ut semel, as soon as. 2.

17. iterum, adv., again, a second time; semel atque iterum, again and again. *

18. frangó, frangere, frégr, frac- tum, tr., break, wreck; crush, discourage. 2.

20. hospitium, -ti, n. [hospes, host or guest], the relation of host and guest; friendship, hospitality. 2.

11. factum esse uti, "it had come to pass that." The perfect infinitive, factum esse, stands for factum est of the direct form, as contendere (l. 5) stands for a present indicative, and as ventúros (l. 7) stands for a future indicative. For the uses of the infinitive tenses in indirect discourse, see App. 305: G-L. 580; 581: A 584: B 570, 1, a, b, c: H-B. 472, a: H. 617; 618; 619; 620.

12. mercéde: the Germans were at first simply hired soldiers. This was fourteen years before Caesar came to Gaul.

14. adamássent = adamséssent. It stands for the perfect indicative of the direct form.

15. esse, etc., "They were in Gaul to the number of, etc."?

16. pulsós accipisse, "as they were beaten, they had suffered."?

18. omnem . . . amisisse: this was an exaggeration, for the nobles and the cavalry of the Haedu were prominent in some of the campaigns of the Gallic war.

20. qui, "although they."
populō Rōmānō implōrātūrōs neque recūsātūrōs quōminus perpetuō sub illōrum diciōne atque imperiō essent. Ūnum sē esse ex omni civitāte Hāedūorum qui adducī nōn potuerit ut iūrāret aut liberōs suōs obsidēs daret. Ob eam rem sē ex civitāte profugisse et Rōmam ad senātum vēnisse auxilium postulātum, quod sōlus neque iūre iūrandō neque obsidibus tenērētur. Sed peius victōribus Sēquanīs quam Hāedūis victīs ac·cidisse, /propterēa quod Ariovistus, rēx Germānōrum, in eōrum finibus consēdisset tertiamque partem agri Sēquanī, qui esset optimus tōtiūs Galliae, occupāvisset et nunc dē alterā parte tertia Sēquanīs dēcēdere iubēret, propterēa quod paucis

24. implōrō, 1, tr. [in + pōrē, call out], beseech, entreat, implore. 3. recūsō, 1, tr. and intr., refuse, reject; object to, make objections, complain; with periculum, shrink from. * quōminus, conj. [quō, so that+mi·nus, not], so that not, that not; from. 2. perpetuō, adv. (perpetuus, continuous), continuously, constantly; for ever. 1. dīciō, -ōnis, f., dominion, authority, rule, sway. 3. iūrō, 1, tr. and intr. [lūs, right], take oath; swear. 1. profugō, -fugere, -fugi, -fug-


25. ānum sē esse, "that he was the only one." ēōs is Divictiacus. Cf. note on ēōs. 30, 3.

26. qui potuerit: mode? App. 230: G.-L. 631, 1: A. 585, b: B. 283, 1, 3: H.-B. 631, 1, a, b: H. 581, 5. So far in this chapter all the subjunctives have been imperfects and pluperfects, in accordance with the rule for sequence of tenses; for the indirect discourse depends on an historical tense, locutus est, 1, 8. But in potuerit we have an instance of representatio; i.e. the tense of the direct form is retained in the indirect: App. 270, a: G.-L. 664, n.: A. 585, b, n.: B. 518: H. 644, 1.

29. postulātum: the supine. His request for assistance was made three years before this time, and was unsuccessful. Cicero met him in Rome and speaks of him with admiration.

30. peius ac·cidisse, "a worse fate had befallen."

32. tertiam partem: this was probably an exaggeration. The part taken by Ariovistus corresponds pretty well with upper Alsace, on the Rhine, and is colored red on the map facing p. 117.

33. alterā, "a second."

34. paucīs mēnsibus ante, lit. "before by a few months" = "a few months before." mēnsibus is an ablative of degree of difference.
mēnsibus ante Harūdem milia hominum xxiv ad eum vēnissent, quibus locus ac sēdēs parārentur. Futūrum esse paucis annis uti omnēs ex Galliae finibus pellentur atque omnēs Germānī Rhēnum trānsirent; neque enim cōnferrendum esse Gallicum cum Germānōrum agrō, neque hanc cōnsuētūdinem vicītus cum illā comparandam. Ariovistum autem, ut semel Gallōrum cōpiās proelīō vicerit, quod proelium factum sit ad Magetobrigam, superbē et crūdēlēter imperāre, obsidēs nōbilissimī cuiusque liberōs poscere et in eōs omnia exempla cruciātūsque ēdere, sī qua rēs (nōn ad nūtum aut ad voluntātem eius) facta sit. Hominem esse barbarum, irācundum, temerārium; nōn posse eius imperia diūtius sustinēri. Nisi quid in Caesare

35. Harūdēs, -um, m. (Ch), the Harudes (ha-rū'dēz), a German tribe. 3.
36. sēdēs, -is, f. (sedēs, sit), seat, chair; residence, abode, settlement. 4.
39. cōnsuētūdō, -inis, f. (cōnsuēscō, become accustomed), habit, custom, practice; mode of life. *
vitōs, -īs, m. (vivō, live), living, mode of life; provisions, food. 1.
40. comparō, 1, tr. [par, equal], place in comparison, compare. 1.
41. Magetobriga, -ae, f. (Cf), Magetobriga (mājē-tōb'rī-ga), a Gallic town

36. futūrum esse uti omnēs pellentur, lit. "it would be that all would be expelled" = "all would be expelled." The direct form was omnēs pellentur. As the future indicative must be rendered by the future infinitive, one might expect pulsum iri; but this form of the future passive infinitive is very rare and the paraphrase found in the text is the usual method of expressing the future passive infinitive: App. 505, b: G.-L. 531: A. 569, 3, a: B. 270, 3, a: H.-B. 472, c: H. 619, 2.
37. omnēs [ex]: i.e. all the Gauls.
38. Gallicum: ac. agrum.
39. hanc = Gallicam.

38. victōs: note the quantity of i, and compare victus, the perfect participle of vincō.
41. vicerit: from this point on to the end of the chapter representaatio is employed. See note on potuerit, I. 26.
proelium: this final and decisive battle was fought two years before Caesar came to Gaul. It is probable that the Sequani had joined forces with the Haedui in an effort to expel Ariovistus.
43. cuiusque: the singular forms of quisque, "each," with superlatives have the force of "every" or "all." exempla, "punishments."
44. si facta sit: this condition stands for an original si facta est. See note on l. 7, and App. 253: G.-L. 595: A. 515; 518, b: B. 302, 1, 3; H.-B. 579: H. 574, 4.
46. quid auxill, "some help."


dēmittō, -mittere, -mīsi, -mīssum, tr. [mittō, send], send, thrust, or let down; sink; bow; sé dēmittere, come or get down, descend; sé animō dē-mittere, lose courage; dēmissus, pf. part. as adj., low. 1.

terra, -ae, -e, earth, land, soil, ground; region, district; terrae (pl.) and orbis terrārum, the world. 3.

intuerī, 2, tr. [tueor, look], look at. 1.

5. mīrōr, 1, tr. and intr., wonder or marvel at; wonder, be astonished. 1.

6. tristitia, -ae, -e, sadness. 1.

permaneō, -manēre, -māni, -mān-


48. ut domō émigrent, etc., "(namely) leave home, etc."


54. dētérēre nē trādūcātur: for construction see note on essēnt, 1. 24.

Chap. 32. The desperate condition of the Sequani.

2. magnō fītū: Caesar often mentions the demonstrative manners of the Gauls.

auxiliūm petere: the Gauls failed to see that they were simply changing masters in appealing to Caesar against Ariovistus.

5. quae causa ēset: an indirect question depending on mirātus.
CAESAR'S GALIC WAR, I, 32

Cum ab his saepius quae reret neque ullam omnino vocem exprimere posset, idem Diviciacus Haeduus respondit: Hoc esse miseriiorem et graviorem fortunam Sequanos quam reliquorum, quod soli ne in occulto quidem quern neque auxilium implorare auderent/absentisque Ariovisti crudelitatem, velut si coram adisset, horrentem, propter eam quoquore tamen fugae facultas daretur, Sequani vero, qui intra fines suos Ariovistum recipissent, quorum oppida omnia in potentiae eius essent, cuncte cruciatus esset perferendi.

33. His rebus cognitis Caesar Gallorum animos confirmavit pollicitusque est sibi eam rem curae futuram: Magnam se habere spem et benefici suum et auctoritate adductum

6. respondere, permanere: historical infinitives.
7. quaeret: a pluperfect would seem more natural.
8. hoc: ablative of cause.
11. absentis: "even when absent." velut si adesset: mode and tense?
12. tamen: "at any rate": I.e. though they could not resist Ariovistus.

Chap. 33. Caesar decides to under-
WAR WITH ARIOVISTUS, B.C. 58

Ariovistum finem iniuriae factum. / Hac oratione habitum concilium dimisit. Secundum ea multae res eum hortabantur quare sibi eam rem cogitandum et suscipiendam putaret; in primum, quod Haeduos, fratres consanguineosque saepè numerò à senatu appellatios, in servitute atque dicione videbat Germanorum teneri, eorumque obsidés esse apud Ariovistum ac Sequanós intellegébat; quod in tantò imperiò populii Römāni turpissimum sibi et rei publicae esse arbitrabantur. Paulatim autem Germanos consuccedere Rhenum transire et in Galliam magnum eorum multitūdinem venire populò Rōmāno periculōsum vidēbat; neque sibi homines feròs ac barbaros temperaturōs existimabat quin, cum omnem Galliam occupavisserant, ut ante Cimbri Teutonicum fécissent, in provinciaem exirent atque inde in Italiam contendere, praesertim cum Sequanós.

5. secundum, prep. with acc. [sequor, follow], along; in the direction of; besides, in addition to. 3.
6. cogitò, 1, tr. and intr. [co-agitō, consider], consider thoroughly or carefully, ponder, reflect; think, purpose, plan. 3.
11. turpis, -a, adj., ugly, unseemly; shameful, disgraceful, dishonorable. 2.
Teutoni, -ōrum or Teutones, -um, m., the Teutons (tū'tō-nē). 4.

Germans to get gradually in the habit of crossing and . . . to come . . . (was) dangerous,” etc.

13. periculōsum: see Int. 3.
14. sibi: indirect object of temperaturōs. It refers to homines, the subject of the clause in which it stands; it is therefore the direct reflexive: App. 165: G.-L. 500: 521: A. 300, 2: B. 244, 1, II: H.-B. 202, 2: H. 504.

Paulatim, etc., “he saw that for the
Caesar's Gallic War, I, 34

\(\text{\textsection 34. Quam ob rem placuit ei ut ad Ariovistum lēgātōs mitteret qui ab eō postularent ut aliq...}

\textit{mātūrē, adv. [mātūrus, ripe],
early, speedily, soon. 3.

occurrō, -currere, -currī, -currum,
intr. [ob-currō, run], run in the way of,
meet; happen upon; go to, come to;
oppose, counteract; occur. *

spirēs, -ūs, m. [spīrē, breathe],
breath, air; in pl., haughtiness, pride. 2.

arrogantia, -ae, f. [arrogāns, arrog-
ant], arrogance, haughtiness, presumption, insolence. 2.

placeō, 2, intr. [cf. plācō, appease],
please, satisfy; often imperp.,

seem good to one, hence, decide, resolve,
determine. 2.

exterque, utraque, utrumque,
adj. [uter, which of two], each of two,
either of two; both. *

colloquium, -quī, n. [colloquor, talk together],
talking together; conference, parley, interview. *

opus, indecl. noun, n. [cf. opus,
work, deed], need, necessity; opus est,
it is necessary, there is need, the thing needed being expressed either by the nom. or abl. (App. 146.) *

Rhodanus dīvidērēt, "only the Rhone separates." Caesar's statement of the reasons for espousing the cause of the Gauls is candid and convincing. No doubt the enterprise fell in with his bold and ambitious spirit; but it appealed also to the statesman and lover of his country. Gaul must certainly yield to the barbarism of the German or the civilization of the Roman. No half-way ground was possible.

quibus rēbus occurrentūm, "that he must face this danger." Since occurrō is an intransitive verb it cannot be used in the passive except impersonally:

Chap. 34. Ariovistus haughtily rejects Caesar's proposal to confer with him.

1. ad Ariovistum: he was somewhere in the country he had taken from the Sequani. Cf. note on 31, 32.
ventūrum fuisse; si quid illē sē velit, illum ad sē venire oportēre. Praeterea sē neque sine exercitu in eās partēs Galliae venire audēre quās Caesar possideret, neque exercitu sine magnō commētū atque mōlimento in ūnum locum contrahere posse. Sibi autem mīrum vidēri quid in suā Galliā, 10 quam bellō vīcisset, aut Caesarī aut omnīnō populō Rōmānō negotiē esset.

35. His responsīs ad Caesarem relātīs iterum ad eum Caesar lēgātōs cum his mandātīs mittit; Quoniam tantō suō populique Rōmānī beneficiō affectu, cum in consulātū suō rēx atque amicus sē senātū appellātus esset, hanc sibi populōque

7. praeterea, adv. [praeter, beyond], beyond this, besides, furthermore.

8. possideō, -sidēre, -sēdi, -sessum, tr. [sedeō, sit], occupy, hold, possess. 2.

9. commētātus, -ätis, m. [commētus, go back and forth], trip, voyage; supplies, provisions. *

mōlimentum, -ĭ, n. [mōlōris, exert one's self], effort, difficulty. 1.

contrahō, -trahere, -trāxi, -tractum, tr. [trahō, draw], draw or bring together, assemble, collect; draw into smaller compass, contract. 1.

10. mirus, -a, -um, adj. [miror, wonder at], strange, astonishing; mirum in modum, surprisingly. 2.

12. negotiōnum, -ūnum, n. [negō+tiōnum, leisure], concern, business, undertaking; trouble, difficulty, labor; negotiōnum dare, employ, direct; quid negotiō, what business; nihil negotiō, no difficulty. *

2. mandātum, -ī, n. [mandō, command], charge, injunction, order, command; message. *

quoniam, conj. [quom=cum, since +iam, now], since now, since, inasmuch as, because, whereas. 4.

3. consulātus, -ätis, m. [cōnsul, consul], consuls, consulship. 1.

which Arloviustus assumes that Caesar has conquered.

10. mirum: predicate adjective with vidēri; "it seemed strange."

quid Caesarī negotiō esset, lit. "what of business there was to Caesar" = "what business Caesar had"; an indirect question, subject of vidēri. Caesarī is a dative of possessor.

omnīnō, "in general."

Chap. 35. Caesar demands that Arloviustus cease his oppression of the Gaules.


The German was shrewd enough to estimate the beneficiō at its true value.

4. quoniam (I. 2) hanc grātiām re-
5 Rōmāno grātiam referret, ut in colloquium venire invitātus gravārētur neque de commūni rē dicendum sibi et cognōscendum putāret. Haec esse quae ab eo postulāret: primum, nē quam multitūdinem hominum amplius trāns Rhēnum in Galliam trādūceret; deinde, obsidēs quōs habēret ab Haeduīs redderet. Sēquaniāque permitteret ut quōs ipsī habērent voluntāte eius reddere illis licēret; nēve Haeduōs iniūriā laisseret, nēve /his sociisque eōrum/bellum inferret. Si ita fēcisset, sibi populoque Rōmāno perpetuam grātiam atque amicitiam cum eo futūram; sī nōn impetrāret, sēsē, quoniam M. Messālā M.

5. invitō, 1, tr., invite, summon; allure, persuade. 2.
6. gravor, 1, intr. [gravīs, heavy], be unwilling. 1.
8. amplē, adv. [amplus, large], largely; comp., amplius, more, farther. *
9. reddō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, tr. [red-+dō, give], give back, return, restore; give something due; make or cause to be, render. *
13. perpetuus, -a, -um, adj., continuous, uninterrupted; permanent, lasting, continual; whole, entire; n. as noun in phrase in perpetuum, forever. 3.

ferret, ut, “since he made this requital, that.” The direct form given after Book VII represents Caesar’s words to his envoys, in which Ariovistus was spoken of in the third person. It would also be possible to give the form in which the message was to be repeated to Ariovistus, in which he would be addressed in the second person. In the latter case referret stands for referre, “you make.”

7. haec esse quae, “these were (the things) which.”

nē trādūcerēt: as addressed to the envoys the direct form was nē trāducēt, “that he shall not bring,” a substantive volitive clause, in apposition with haec. As addressed to Ariovistus it would be nōli trāducēre, “do not bring.”

10. Sēquanisique . . . licēret, “and grant permission to the Sequani to return with his [Ariovistus’s] approval those [hostages] whom they [the Sequani] had [from the Haedui],” lit. “permit that it be allowed.” illi = Sēquaniās.


14. si nōn impetrāret, “if he [Caesar] should not obtain (such assurances).”

sēsē: the direct form would be ego, if expressed at all. It is the subject of nagīstōrum, 1. 18; but, because the sentence is so long, the subject is repeated in it, 1. 17.

WAR WITH ARIOVISTUS, B.C. 58

Pisone censibus senatus censuisset uti quicumque Galliam
praeviamam obtineret, quod commodo rei publicae facere posset,
Haeduos ceterosque amicos populi Romani, defenderet, se
Haedorum iniurias non neglecturum.

36. Ad haec Ariovistus respondit: Iusesse bellii ut qui
vicissent iis quos vicissent quem ad modum vellent imperarent;
item populum Romanum victis non ad alterius praescriptum,
sed ad suum arbitrium imperare consuessa. Si ipse populo
Romano non praescriberet quem ad modum suo iure uteretur,
non oportere se (et populo Romano) in suo iure impediri.
Haedus sibi, quoniam bellli fortunam temptasset et armis
congressi ac superati essent, stipendiarii esse factos.

15. censeo, censere, censul, censum, tr., think, decide (acc. and inf.);
propose, advise, vote (ut and subj.); propose, vote for (acc.). 1.

16. commodum, -i, n. [commodus, convenient]; convenience, interest, advantage. 2.

18. neglego, -legere, -lexi, -lexum, tr. [neg-+lego, choose, regard],
not heed, disregard, neglect. *

2. praescriptum, -i, n. [praescribo, order], order, dictation, command. 1.

4. arbitrium; -ri, n. [arbiter, umpire]; decision or judgment (of the arbiter); opinion, discretion, pleasure. 1.

5. praescribo, -scribere, -scripti, -scriptum, tr. [scribo, write], write
beforehand; order, direct, prescribe, dictate to. 3.

8. congredor, -gredi, -gressus
sum, intr. [gradior, step], meet, encounter; meet in battle; join (peacefully). *

15. senatus censuisset: this decree of the senate was the only result of the
entreaties of Diviciacus (cf. 31, 28), and
no governor had paid any attention to it, as Ariovistus very well knew.

16. quod . . . posset, "so far as he
could do it in accordance with the inter-
ests of the state"; a common formula
in decrees of the senate.

18. neglecturum: tense? App. 205:
G.-L. 530: 531: A. 581: B. 270, 1, a: d, c;
H.-B. 473, a: H. 617; 618; 619; 620. *

Chap. 36. Ariovistus responds de-
nantly.

1. ut imperarem: a substantive
volitive clause, in apposition with ius.

vicissent, vicissent, vellent might
all have been indicative in the direct
form, but would probably be attracted
into the subjunctive.

iis: indirect object of imperarem.

3. ad alterius praescriptum, "in
accordance with the dictates of anyone
else."

4. ipse: direct form, ego. The
reflexive cannot be used to replace a pro-
noun of the first person (cf. note on
sed. 30, 3) when a nominative is re-
quired, because it has no nominative.

Usually no pronoun is used; but if there
is emphasis, as here, ipse is used.

5. quem . . . uteretur, "how they
should exercise their rights."

6. non oportere se impediri, "he
[Ariovistus] ought not to be hampered."

7. sibi: dative with the adjective
stipendiariae.
Caesarem iniūriam facere, qui suō adventū vectigālia sibi dēteriōra faceret. Haeduīs sē obsidēs redditūrum nōn esse, neque his neque eōrum sociis iniūriā bellum illātūrum, si 'in eō manērent quod convenisset' stipendiumque quotannis penderent; sī id nōn fēcissent, longē iīs frāternum nōmen populi Romānī āfutūrum. Quod sībi Caesar dēnuntiāret sē Haeduōrum iniūriās nōn neglēctūrum, nēminem sēcum sine suā pernicē contendisse. Cum vellet, congrēderētur: intel·lectūrum quid invictī Germānī, exercītātissimī in armīs, quī inter annōs xiv tēctum nōn subīssent, virtūte possent.

37. Haec eōdem tempore Caesar mandāta referēbantur,

10 dēterior, -īus, comp. adj. (App. 43), worse, less. 1.
12. manēō, manēre, mānē, mān·sum, intr., remain, continue, abide, stay. 2.
stipendium, -di, n., tax, tribute. * quotannis, adv. [quot, as many as + annus, year], every year, yearly. 2.
13. pendō, pendere, pependī, pēn·sum, tr., weigh, weigh out; weigh out money, pay, pay out; with poenās, suffer. 2.
14. dēnuntiō, 1, tr. [nuntiō, announce], announce, give or send notice, declare, threaten. 1.
17. quid, interro. adv., why? with posse, how? e.g. quid Germānī possent, how strong the Germans were. * invictus, -a, -um, adj. [in–victus, conquered], unconquerable, invincible. 1.
exercitātus, -a, -um, adj. [pf. part. of exercītō, train or practice well], well trained, skilled, versed. 2.

9. qui faceret may be translated by a causal clause, "since he, etc.," but the indicative was probably used in the direct form. Apparently the presence of Caesar had given hope to the Haeduī and had made them less careful in paying their tribute to Ariovistus.
neque ... neque, "but ... not ... or."
13. in ... convenisset, lit. "should remain in that which had been agreed upon" = "adhered to the terms which had been agreed upon."
18 fēcissent stands for a future perfect indicative.
longē ... āfutūrum, "the name of brothers of the Roman people would be of little value to them."
15. sēcum, suā: sēcum is the indirect reflexive, referring to Ariovistus, suā is the direct reflexive, referring to nēmi·nem. Cf. notes on 30, 3 and 6.
16. cum vellet, congrēderētur,"let him come on when he liked."
18. inter, "during."

Chap. 37–41. Caesar marches into the country of Ariovistus, checking a panic on the way.

Chap. 37. Because of this reply and further complaints of the Gauls, Caesar marches toward Ariovistus.

1. eōdem tempore: the reply of Ariovistus and the complaints of the Gauls reached Caesar at the same time. It was now about the beginning of August.
et légati ab Haeduis et à Tréveris veniébant: Haedui questum quod Harūdēs, qui nüper in Galliam trānsportātī essent, finēs eōrum populārentur: Sēsē nē obsidibus quidem datīs pācem Ariovistī redimere potuisse; Tréverī autem, pāgōs centum & Suēbōrum ad ripās Rhēnī cōnsēdisse, qui Rhēnum trānsire cōnārentur; his praesse Nasuam et Cimberium frātrēs. Quibus rēbus Caesar vehementer commōtus mātūrandum sībi existimāvit, nē, si nova manus Suēbōrum cum veteribus cópiis Ariovistī sēsē coniūnxisset, minus facile resistī possēt. Itaque rē frūmentāriā quam celerrīme potuit comparātā magnīs itineribus ad Ariovistum contendit.

38. Cum tridūi viam prōcessoisset, núntiātum est eī Arío-

2. Trévīr, -erī, m., one of the Treveri; pl. Tréverī (Brīgī), the Treveri (trēvīrī-rī). *
3. trānspōrtō, 1, tr. [portō, carry], carry across or over, bring over, convey, transport. *
4. Suēbus, -a, -um, adj. of or pertaining to the Suebi, Sueban; pl. as noun, Suēbi, (Bhī), the Suebi (swē′ bi), a powerful people of central Germany, consisting of several independent tribes, the modern Swabians. *
5. Nasu, -ae, m. Nasu (nāsh′ū-a), a leader of the Suebi. 1.
6. Cimberius, -ri, m., Cimberius (sim-bē′ ri-us), a leader of the Suebi. 1.
7. vehementer, adv. [vehemēnus, violent], violently, severely, strongly, very much, greatly. 4.
8. coniungō, -iungere, -iunxi, -iunctum, tr. [iunĝō, join], join with or together, connect, unite, bind. *
9. prōcēdō, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessum, intr. [cēdō, go], go forth or forward, proceed, advance. *
10. magnīs itineribus: cf. Int. 54. Caesar intended to strike Ariovistus before he could effect a junction with the Suebi. He started from the country of the Lingones, where he had received the surrender of the Helvetii and where his army had been encamped near Tonnerre pending the result of his negotiations with Ariovistus. See map facing page 117.

Chap. 38. Caesar occupies Veson-tio.
1. tridūl: descriptive genitive. The descriptive genitive must ordinarily be modified by an adjective; but tridūl = trium diērum.

The three days' march was east from Tonnerre (see map facing p. 117), and
vistum cum suis omnibus cópiás ad occupandum Vesontiōnem, quod est oppidum maximum Séquanórüm, contendere triduique viam à suis finibus prōcessisse. Id nē accideret magnopere sibi praecavendum Caesar existimābat. Namque omnium rērum quae ad bellum ūsī erant summa erat in eō oppidō facultās, idque nātūrā loci sic mūniēbātur ut magnam ad dūcendum bellum daret facultātem, propterea quod flūmen Dūbis, ut circinō circumductum, paene tōtum oppidum cingit; reliquum spatium, quod est nōn amplius pedum sescentōrum, quà flūmen intermittit, mōns continet magnā altitūdine, ita ut rādicēs eius montis ex utrāque parte ripae flūminis contin-

2. Vesontiō, -onis, m. (Cf) Vesontio (vē-sōn'shēō), the chief town of the Sequani, situated on the Doubs, modern Besançon. 2.
3. praeaveō, -avěre, -āvi, -avētum, intr. [aveō, guard against], guard against before hand, take precautions. 1.
4. namque, conj. [nam, for], for. 3.
5. sic, adv., so, thus, in this manner; sic... ut, so... that; so... as. *
6. Dūbis, -is, m. (Cf)g, the (river) Dubis (dū'bis), now the Doubs. 1.
circinnus, -i, m. [circus, circle], a pair of compasses. 1.
circumnācō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -dūctum, tr. [dūcē, lead], lead or draw around. 2.
cingō, cingere, cūnxi, cinctum, tr., encircle, surround, invest, encompass; man (a wall). 1.
7. sescenti, -ae, -a, (DO), card. num. adj. [sex, six], six hundred. *
8. rādix, -ūis, f., root; in pl. with montis or collis, foot, base. 1.
conteingō, -tingere, -tīgī, -tēctum, tr. and intr. [tangō, touch], touch, reach; extend to; befall, happen to. 2.

brought Caesar to the point where his route turns to the southeast.
nuntiātum est: this report that Arliōvistus was marching toward Vesontio proved false. Probably it grew out of the fact that Arliōvistus had got his army together for the purpose of marching north to help the Suebi. Cf. note on 37, 6.
3. quod agrees in gender with oppidum, although its antecedent is masculine. A subject pronoun often agrees in gender with a predicate noun.
4. id: i.e. the capture of Vesontio.
5. summa facultās, “a very great supply.”
6. ut, “as if.”
paene cingit: i.e. the river makes a loop, the two sides of which (according to Caesar) are at one point only 600 feet apart. The neck of land at this point is very high. The town lies within the loop. A wall encloses both the town and the high neck of land.
7. spatium: object of continet.
nōn... sescentōrum, “of not more than six hundred feet.” pedum is a descriptive genitive: why is not the ablative used after the comparative? App. 139, b: G.-L. 396, R. 4: A. 407, c: B. 217, 3:
8. quà flūmen intermittit, “where the river does not flow.”
magnā altitūdine: descriptive ablative.
9. rādicēs is the object of contingent, ripae its subject.
WAR WITH ARIOVISTUS, B.C. 58

133

gant. Hunc mūrus circumdatus arcem efficit et cum oppidō coniungit. Hūc Caesar magnis nocturnis diurnisque itineribus contendit occupatōque oppidō ibi praeedium collocat.

39. Dum paucōs diēs ad Vesontiōnem rei frumentāriae commeātusque causā morātur, ex percontātiōne nostrōrum vocibusque Gallōrum ac mercātōrum, qui ingenti magnitudine corporum Germanōs, incrēdibilī virtūte atque exercitātiōne in armīs esse praedīcābant (saepē numerō sēsē cum his congressōs nē vultum quidem atque aciem oculōrum dicēbant ferre potuisses), tantus subitō timor omnem exercitum occupāvit ut nōn mediocrēt omnium mentēs animōsque perturbāret. Hic

18. circumdō, -dare, -dedi, -datum, tr. [dō, put], put around, encompass, surround. 1.

arcēs, f., citadel, fortress, stronghold. 1.

facēs, -ōrēs, -ōrē, -ōstum, tr. [ex
+facēō, make], make or do completely, complete, accomplish, construct; make, cause, bring about, render. *

14. hūc, adv. [old form for hucus from hici], to this place, hither, here; against these, to these. *

nocturnus, -a, -um, adj. [nox, night], at night, nocturnal, nightly. 1.

diurnus, -a, -um, adj. [diēs, day], of the day, by day, daily. 1.

2. percontātiō, -ōnōs, f., inquiring, inquiry. 1.

3. ingēns, -entis, adj., enormous, huge, vast, large. 2.

magnūtūdō, -ūnis, f. [magnus, great], greatness, great size, size, extent; statūre (corporum); violence (venti); severity (poenae); magnitūdō animi, courage. *

4. exercitātiō, -ōnōs, f. [exercitō, freq. of exercēō, exercise], exercise, training; practice, experience. *

5. praedīcō, 1. tr. [dicō, proclaim], proclaim publicly or before others; declare, report, tell of. 3.

6. vultus, -ūs, m., countenance, looks. 2.

7. subitō, adv. [subitus, sudden], suddenly, unexpectedly, of a sudden. *

8. mediocrēt, adv. [mediocris,

18. hunc (mostem) is the object of
efficit, arcēm is a predicate accusative:

14. hūc contendit: he turned from his eastward march to the southeast.

nocturnis: Caesar very rarely marched at night, but if the report about Ariovistus had been true, Ariovistus would have been much nearer Vesontio than Caesar was, and only the most extraordinary effort could have enabled Caesar to arrive first.

Chap. 39. Fear of the Germans causes a panic in the Roman army.

rel ... causā: Caesar was always careful about his supplies. In this case he had no doubt arranged for supplies along his intended line of march, but he had suddenly changed the direction of his march, and therefore failed to meet his convoys. Consequently he now had to make new arrangements.

3. vocibus, "replies.”
magnūtūdō, virtūte, exercitātiōne: descriptive ablatives.
primum ortus est à tribūnīs militum, praefectis, reliquisque
qui ex urbe amicitiae causā Caesarem secūti nōn magnum in
rē militāri ūsum habēbant; quōrum alius alīa causā illātā,
quam sibi ad proficiscendum necessāriam esse diceret, petēbat
ut eius voluntāte discēdere licēret; nōn nūlli pudōre adducti,
ut timōris suspiciōnem vitārent, remanēbant. Hī neque vultum
fingere neque interdum lacrimās tenēre poterant; addīti in
tabernāculis aut suum fātum querēbantur aut cum familiāribus
suīs commūne periculum miserābantur. Vulgō tōtīs castrīs
testāmenta obsignābant. Hōrum vōcibus ac timōre paulātīm
etiam iī qui magnum in castrīs ūsum habēbant, militēs cen-
turiōnēsque quīque equitātūi praeerant, perturbābantur. Quī

moderē, moderate: nōn mediocrī-
ter, in no small degree. 1.

mēns, mentis, f., the thinking fac-
culty, mind, intellect; thought; disposi-
tion, feelings; mentēs animōsēque,
minds and hearts; aliēnātā mente,
beret of reason. 4.

perturbō, 1, tr. [turbō, disturb], dis-
trub greatly, throw into confusion, em-
barrass, disturb; alarm, terrify. *

9. tribūnus, -1, m. [tribus, tribe].
tribune, a magistrate elected by the people
voting in tribes, to defend the interests of
the plebs; tribūnus militum, or mili-
tāri, a military tribune. *

praefectus, -1, m. [praefęcio, place
over], overseer, prefect, commander,
officer, captain (usually of cavalry). 4.

13. pudor, -ōris, m. [pudet, it
shames], shame, sense of shame; sense

of honor. 2.

14. remaneō, -manēre, -mānsi,
-mānsum, intr. [re-+-maneō, remain],
stay or remain behind, remain. *

15. fingō, fingere, finxī, factum, tr.,
form, imagine, devise, invent. 2.

16. tabernāculum, -1, n., tent. 1.

fātum, -1, n. [fāri, to speak],
fate, lot. 1.

17. miseror, 1, tr. [miser, wretched],
bewail, lament over, deplore. 1.

vulgō, adv. [vulgora, the crowd], com-
monly; everywhere. 2.

18. testāmentum, -1, n. [testor, be
a witness], will. 1.

obsignō, 1, tr. [signō, mark], seal,
sign and seal. 1.

19. centuriō, -ōnis, m. [centum, a
hundred], centurion, the commander of
the century, the sixtieth part of a legion. *

number with alius. Mode? App. 230:
G. L. 631, 2: A. 535; B. 283, 1: H.-B. 521, 1;
a: H. 591, 1.

14. vultum fingere, "control their
features," so as to look unconcerned.

17. tōtīs castrīs: why is there no
preposition? App. 151, b: G.-L. 388: A.
499, 2: B. 228, 1, 6: H.-B. 436, a: H. 485,
2.

19. centuriōnēs: who were appoint-
ed especially for their bravery.

20. qui ex his, "(those) of them
who."
WAR WITH ARIOVISTUS, B.C. 58

sē ex his minus timidōs existimārī volēbant, nōn sē hostem verērī, sed angustiās itineris et magnitudinem silvārum quae intercēderant inter ipsōs atque Ariovistum, aut rem frumentāriam, ut satis commod supportārī posset, timēre dicēbant. Nōn nūlli etiam Caesarī nūntiābant, cum castra movēri ac signa ferī iussisset, nōn fore dictō audientēs militēs neque propter timōrem signa lāturōs.

40. Haec cum animadvertisset, convocātō cōnsiliō omniunque ērdinium ad id cōnsilium adhibītī centuriōnibus, vehementer eōs incūsāvit: Prīnum, quod aut quam in partem aut quō cōnsiliō dōcerentur sibi quærendum aut cōgitandum putārent. Ariovistum sē cōnsule cupidissimē populi Rōmānī s

21. timidus, -a, -um, adj. [timeō, fear], fearful, frightened, timid, cowardly, afraid. 1.
24. supportō, 1. tr. [sub+portō, carry], carry or bring up from beneath; bring, convey; supply, furnish. 4.
26. dictum, -i, n. [pf. part. of dicō, say], saying, remark; command; dictō audiēns, obedient. 1.

22. angustiās itineris: the valley of the Dubhs is narrow and very rough, and if Ariovistus had really been marching toward them it would have given opportunity for ambushes.


26. cum iussisset: indirect discourse for cum iusseris, “when you shall have ordered,”=“when you order.” The clause depends on what follows, not on nūntiābam.

fore=futūrōs esse.
neque signa lāturōs, “and would not advance.” See Int. 44.

Chap. 40. Caesar encourages his officers.
1. omnium ērdinium: to the ordinary council of war only the centurions

audiō, 4. tr., hear, hear of; dictō audiēns, obedient. *
2. ārdō, -āns, m., row, tier, layer; rank, line of soldīares; arrangement, order; degree, rank; prīmi ērdīnēs, centurions of the first rank. *
3. incūsāvit, 1. tr. [causa, cause or case], bring a case or charge against; censure, upbraid, blame. 2.

of the first rank were admitted (Int. 43). This, however, was a special gathering of all the officers to listen to Caesar’s speech.

3. incūsāvit: this implies a verb of saying, and what follows is in indirect discourse. The tactful and self-reliant combination of rebuke and encouragement makes the speech very effective. Military discipline demands severe punishment for mutiny, but this speech prevented open mutiny and served Caesar’s purpose better than punishment. There was never again any sign of mutiny in the Gallic war.

4. dōcerentur: subjunctive in an indirect question.

sibi . . . cōgitandum, “that they ought to inquire or consider.” The grammatical subject is the clause aut . . . dōcerentur.

5. sē cōnsule: in the preceding year. sē and the other reflexives through 1.9
amicitiam appetisse; curr hunc tam temerē quisquam ab officiō discessūrum īūdicāret? Sibi quidem persuādēri, cognitīs suis postulātīs atque aequitātē condicionūm perspectā, cum neque suam neque populī Rōmānī grātiam repudiātūrum. Quod si iō furōre atque āmentiā impulsus bellum intullisset, quid tandem verērentur? aut curr dē suā virtūte aut dē īpsiūs diligentiā desperārent? Factum ēius hostis pōricalum patrum nostrōrum memoria, cum Cimbriās et Teutōnīs ā C. Mariō pulsiā non minōrem laudem exercitus quam ipsa imperatōr meritus vide-

4. appetō, -petere, -petiv(-petīt), -Itum, tr. and intr. (ad+petō, seek), seek for, aim at, encroach upon; approach, be near. 3.

curr, interroq. and rel. adj., why, for what reason; for which reason, wherefore. 4.

temerē, adv., rashly, blindly, without good reason. 2.

officium; -i, n., service, allegiance, duty; official duty, business; esse, manēre, or permanēre in officio, to remain faithful. 5.

8. postulātum, -i, n. [postulō, demand], demand, claim, request. 4.

aequitās, -tātis, f. [aequus, equal], equality; fairness, equity; animi aequitās, contentment. 1.

perspicio, -spicere, -spexi, -spectum, [fr. speciē, look], look or see through, view, examine, inspect; perceive, realize, learn, find out, ascertain. *

9. repudiō, 1, tr., reject. 1.

10. furor, -ōris, m., rage, frenzy, madness. 2.

āmentiā, -ae, f. [mēns, mind], bewildement of mind, foily, insanity. 1.

impellō, -pelle, -pulī, -pulsīm, tr. [in+pellō, drive], drive or urge on, incite, instigate, impel. 3.

11. diligentiā, -ae, f. (diligēns, careful), carefulness, heedfulness, painstaking, care. 4.

13. c., abbr. for praenomen Gālius (gā'yūs). *

Marius, -ri, m., Gaius Marius (gā'yūs mā'ri-ūs), the conqueror of the Cimbri and Teutons. 1.

14. laus, laudis, f., praise, commendation, praise, honor, laud. 1.


through, view, examine, inspect; perceive, realize, learn, find out, ascertain. *

9. repudiō, 1, tr., reject. 1.

10. furor, -ōris, m., rage, frenzy, madness. 2.

āmentiā, -ae, f. [mēns, mind], bewildement of mind, foily, insanity. 1.

impellō, -pelle, -pulī, -pulsīm, tr. [in+pellō, drive], drive or urge on, incite, instigate, impel. 3.

11. diligentiā, -ae, f. (diligēns, careful), carefulness, heedfulness, painstaking, care. 4.

13. c., abbr. for praenomen Gālius (gā’yūs). *

Marius, -ri, m., Gaius Marius (gā’yūs mā’ri-ūs), the conqueror of the Cimbri and Teutons. 1.

14. laus, laudis, f., praise, commendation, praise, honor, laud. 1.


īpsiūs: i.e. Caesar’s; suā could have been used here as the indirect reflexive, but it would be confusing because it has just been used as the direct reflexive. The use is something like that of īpsi in 36, 4.

12. periculum, “a test.”


Māriō: cf. Int. 5.

14. vidēbātur: no satisfactory explanation can be given for the retention of this indicative in a subordinate clause of indirect discourse.
WAR WITH ARIOVISTUS, B.C. 58

bātur; factum etiam nūper in Ætalian servilī tumultū, quōs it tamen aliiquid usus ac disciplīna quam a nobis accēpissent sublevārent. Ex quō iūdicārī posse quantum habēret in sé bonī cōnstantīa, propterea quod, quōs aliquamdiu inermēs sine causā timuissent, hōs postea armātōs ac victōrēs superāssent. Dēnique hōs esse eōsdem Germānōs quibuscum sæpe numerō 20 Helvētīi congressī nōn sōlum in sui, sed etiam in illōrum finibus, plērumque superārint, quī tamen parēs esse nostrō exercitui nōn potuerint. Si quōs adversum proelium et fuga Gallōrum commovēret, hōs, si quærerent, reperire posse, diūturnitāte bellī dēfatigātī Gallīs, Ariovistum, cum multōs 5

mendation; renown, popularity, glory.
3. imperātor, -ōris, m. [imperō, command], commander-in-chief, general. *
15. servilis, -is, adj. [ervus, a slave], or like a slave, servile.

tumultus, -ōs, m. [tumēō, swell], uproar, confusion, disorder, tumult; uprising, insurrection. 2.
16. disciplīna, -ae, f. [discō, learn], learning; discipline; instruction; system. 2.

ego, mel (App. 51), first pers. pron., I; pl. nos, we, us, etc. *
18. cōnstantia, -ae, f. [cōnstō, stand firm], firmness, steadfastness. 1.

15. factum: sc. esse periculum.

servīlī tumultū: the insurrection of the gladiators under Spartacus in 73-71 B.C. Many of the gladiators and slaves who joined the uprising were Germans.

quōs: the antecedent is implied in the adjective servīlī, which is equivalent to servōrum.

17. quantum boni, "how great an advantage."

18. inermēs: a part of Spartacus's band was at first armed only with stakes; yet they won victories and thus secured arms.

20. quibuscum Helvētīi congressī

aliquamdiu, adv. [aliquis, some + diū, long], for some time. 1.

inermis, -e, adj. [in- + arma, arms] without arms or weapons, unarmed. 3.
19. armō, i. tr. [arma, arms], arm, equip; pass., arm one's self; armātus, p.f. part., as adj., armed; armātī, as noun, armed men. *

22. plērumque, adv. [plērusque, the greater part], for the most part, mostly, generally; again and again, very often. *

25. diūturnitās, -ātīs, f. [diūturnus, long], long duration. 2.

dēfatigō, i. tr. [fatigō, weary], completely weary, fatigue, tire out, exhaust. 1.


24. quīl: the antecedent is Helvetii. The argument is that since the Helvetii have beaten the Germans and the Romans have beaten the Helvetii, the Romans can beat the Germans.

23. proelium: the battle at Magetobriga; see 51, 41.

menses castris se ac paludibus tenuisset / neque sui potestatem fecisset, / desperantês iam dê pugnâ et dispersos subitâ adortum
magis ratione et consilio quam virtute visisse. Cui rationi contra homines barbaros atque imperitos locus fusisset, hac nê
ipsam quidem sperare nostrâs exercitus capi posse. Qui suum
Timorem in rei frumentariae simulatio nem angustiâque itineris
conferrent / facere arroganter, cum aut dê officio imperatôris
despareâre aut praescribere videre rentur. Haec sibi esse curae:
frumentum Séquanos, Leucos, Lingonês subministrâre, iamque
esse in agris frumenta matûra; dê itinere ipsis brevi tempore
iudicaturis. Quod non fore (dicto audientes) neque signa lâtûrì
dicantur, nihil sê eâ re comoverì; scire enim, quibuscumque
exercitus dicto audientis non fuerit, aut male re gestâ fortunam
defuisse aut aliquo facinore compertò avâritiam esse convictam;

26. palus, -ûdis, f., marsh, morass, swamp. *
27. dispersîs, -spergere, -speræ, -spermum, tr. [spergo, scatter], scatter, disperse. 3.
29. imperitus, -a, -um, adj. [in-eritus, experience], inexperienced, unskilled, ignorant. 4.
31. simulâtio, -ônis, f. [simulā, make like], simulation, pretense, deceit, disguise. 3.
32. arrogator, adv. [arrogâns, arrogant], arrogantly, presumptuously. 1.
34. Leuci, -ôrum, m. (Btg), the
Leuci (lû’si). 1.
subministrâ, 1, tr. [ministrâ, wait upon], furnishe, supply, give.
35. brevis, -e, adj., short, brief, transitory; brief, in a short time. *
38. malus, malus, bad, badly, ill, adversely. Comp., peius; sup., pessimè. 1.
39. dosum, desesse, dêsui, —, intr.
[suim, be. App. 66], be wanting, be absent from, fail. *
facinus, -noris, n. [facio, do], deed; misdeed, outrage, crime. 2.

26. sui potestatem, "a chance at
him."
27. desperantès, dispersos agree
with an implied éâs which is the object
of adortum and refers to the Gauls.
28. rationi: translate with hâo in
next line, and omit here.
29. hâo . . . posse, "not even (Ar-
iovistus) himself hoped that our armies
could be caught by this stratagem."
31. rei . . . simulâtio ném, "a pre-
tense about the supplies." rei is an ob-
jective genitive.
32. dé . . . desperâre, "to lack con-

fluence in the general's attention to his
duties."
35. matâra: it was now August.
36. quod . . . dicantur, "as to the
statement that they would not obey his
orders or advance." quod: translation?
App. 248, a: G.-L. 525, 2: A. 573, a: B. 299,
37. quibuscumque . . . convictam,
lit. "that to whomsoever an army had
not been obedient, (to them) either
fortune had failed or avarice had been
proved." This must be turned into
English.

41. Hāc ērātīōne habitā mirum in modum conversae sunt omnium mentēs summaque alacritās et cupiditās belli gerendi illāta est, prīncepsque decima legiō per tribūnōs militum ei grātiās ēgit, quod dē sē optimum iūdicium fēcisset, sēque esse ad bellum gerendum parātissimam cōnfīrmat. Deinde s

avāritia, -ae, f. [avārurus, greedy], greed, covetous-ness. 1.
convincō, -vincere, -vici, -victum, tr. [vincō, conquer], conquer completely; prove. 1.

40. innocentiā, -ae, f. [innocēns, innocent], integrity. 1.
fēlicitās, -tās, f. [fēlix, happy], happiness, success, good fortune. 1.

41. longus, -a, -um, adj., long, distαnt; of long duration; tedious. *

42. repraesentō, 1. tr. [re-+praes-ēns, present], make present; do at once. 1.

43. utrum, conj. [uter, which of two], whether; utrum... an, whether... or; utrum... necne, whether... or not. 3.

44. an, conj., used to introduce the second member of alternative questions, or, or rather. *

45. decimus, -a, -um, ord. num. adj. [decem, ten], tenth. *

46. praetōrius, -a, -um, adj. [praetor, commander], praetorian, belonging to the general. 2.
cohors, -tis, f., cohort. *

47. indulgeō, -dulgeō, -dlusī, —, intr., be indulgent to, favor. 1.
praecipuē, adv. [praecipuus, especial], especially, particularly. 1.

1. modus, -i, m. measure, quantity, size; manner, method, style; eius modī, of such a kind, such; abl., modē, with gen., in the character of, like. *

2. alacritās, -tās, f. [alacer, lively], liveliness, ardor. 3.

40. innocentiam, “fair dealing,” not “innocence”; opposed to avāritiām.
What the soldiers would object to would be the general’s keeping too large a share of the booty for himself.

perpetuā vitā, “throughout his life.”

41. quod... repraesentātūrum, “he would do at once what he had intended to put off, etc.”


46. praetōriam cohortem, “his body-guard,” which would naturally be composed of the bravest troops.

Chap. 41. The panic is checked and the army advances.

4. grātiās ēgit, “expressed its thanks.”
CAESAR'S GALLIC WAR, I, 42

reliquiae legiones/cum tribunis militum et primorum ordinarum
centurionibus ejusunt, uti Caesaris satisfecerent: Sed neque
quam dubitasse neque timuisse neque de summa bellii sumum
iudicium, sed imperatoris esse existimavit. Eorum satis-
factione accepta et itinere exquisito per Diviciacum, quod ex
Gallis eum maximam fidem habebat, ut milium amplius quin-
quingintarum circuitu, locis apertis exercitum ducerat, de quarta
vigilia, ut dixerat, profectus est. Septimō diē, cum iter nōn
intermitteret, ab explōrātōribus certior factus est Ariovistō
cōpiās ad nostrīs milīa passuum quattuor et vigintī abesse.

42. Cognitō Caesaris adventū Ariovistus lēgātōs ad eum
mittit: Quod anteā de colloquiō postulāsset, id per sē fieri

8. umquam, adv., at any time, ever;
neque . . . umquam, and never, never.
2.
9. satisfactio, -onis, f. (satisfacio,
give satisfaction), satisfaction; excuse,
apology. 1.

6. cum tribunis ēgérunt uti, "arranged with the tribunes that" or "beg-
ged the tribunes to."

8. neque dē . . . existimāvisse,
"and that they had not thought that
the decision regarding the conduct of
the war was theirs, but (knew that it
was) the commander's."

10. itinere . . . Diviciacum ut . . .
duceret, "having sought a route, with
the help of Diviciacus . . ., in order
that he might march his army through
open country, (though) by a circuit
of more than fifty miles."

ex Gallis, "of (all) the Gauls."
11. el. case? App. 115. a: G.-L. 346,
n. 5: A. 367, a, n. 2: H.-B. 362, footnote
3, b.

milium quinquagintā is a de-
scriptive genitive. Why not an ablative
after the comparative? App. 139, b: G.-L.
296, R. 4: A. 407, c: B. 217, 3: H.-B. 416, d:
H. 471, 4.

12. circuitū: he passed around to
the north of the broken country in the
valley of the Dublia near Vesontio (see
map facing p. 117), and then marched
straight on. The distance marched
around the bend was fifty miles.

13. ut dixerat: cf. 40, 42.
septimō diē: the seven days' march
brought him to the battlefield indicated
on the map facing p. 117. Ariovistus,
who had probably been marching north-
ward (cf. note on 37, 6), had learned
that Caesar was marching toward him,
and had turned back to meet Caesar. At
this time he was not far from Stras-
burg.

cum . . . intermitteret: i.e. he did
not allow the day of rest which was
usually given about every fifth day. Cf.
Int. 54.

Chap. 42-47. Negotiations with
Ariovistus are fruitless.

Chap. 42. Ariovistus asks for a
conference, under conditions which
Caesar grants.

2. postulāsset: sc. Caesar.
id . . . licēre, "that . . . might be
done as far as he was concerned." id is
the antecedent of quod.
licēre, quoniam propius accessisset, sēque id sine periculō facere posse existimāret. Nōn respuit condicionem Caesar iamque eum ad sānītātem revertī arbitràbatur, cum id quod sānte potenti dēnegāset ultrō pollicērētur, magnumque in spem veniēbat, prō suīs tantīs populique Rōmānī in eum beneficiis, cognitis suis postulātīs, fore utī pertināciā désisteret. Diēs colloquio dictus est ex eō diē quintus. Interim saepe cum lēgātī ultrō citrōque inter eōs mitterentur, Ariovistus 10 postulāvit/nē quem peditem ad colloquium Caesar addīceret: Verērī sē nē per insidiās ab eō circumvenirētur; uteque cum equitātū veniēret; ālia ratioē sēsē nōn esse ventūrum. Caesar, quod neque colloquium interposita causā tolli volēbat neque salūtem suam Gallōrum equitātū committere audēbat, com- 15 modissimum esse statuit, omnibus equīs Gallis equitibus pertināciā, -ae, f. [pertineō, hold through or fast], obstinacy, stubbornness, pertinacity. 1. citrō, adv., hither; ultrō citrōque, back and forth. 1. pedes, peditis, m. [pēs, foot], foot soldier; pl.: infantry, foot. 3. interpōnō, -pōnere, -posui, -positum, tr. [pōnō, place], place between, interpose; allege; cause; fidem interpōnere, pledge. 4. commodus, -a, -um, adj. [modus, measure], in full measure; convenient, suitable, satisfactory. 3. A. 589, 3, 4: B. 270, 3, 4: H.-B. 472, c: H.-B. 619, 2.

detractís, eó legiōnāriōs militēs legiōnis decimae, cui quam maximē confidēbat, impōnere, ut præsidium quam amicissimum, si quid opus factō esse, habēret. Quod cum fieret, non irrīdiculē quidam ex miliibus decimae legiōnis dixit plus quam pollicitus esse Caesarem facere; pollicitum sē in cohortis praetōriāe locō decimam legiōnem habitūrum, ad equum rescribere.

43. Plānitiēs erat magna et in ea tumulus terrēnus satis grandis. Hic locus aequum ferē spatium a castrīs utrīusque aberat. Eō, ut erat dictum, ad colloquium vēnērunt. Legiōnem Caesar quam equis vexerat passibus ducentīs ab eō tumulo

17. détrahō, -tráxi, -tractum, tr. [trahō, draw], draw off or away, withdraw, take off, remove. 4. legiōnārius, -a, -um, adj. [legiō, legion], relating to a legion, legionary. 4.
18. impōnē, -pōnere, -posuit, -positum, tr. [in-pōnō, place], place upon, set on, put or impose on; mount. 4.
20. irrīdiculē, adv. [in-ridiculus, witty], without wit, unwittily. 1.
23. rescribō, -scribere, -scripsī, -scriptum, tr. [re-scribō, write], write again; transfer. 1.


20. nōn irrīdiculē, "wittily."
21. pollicitum ... rescribere: the soldier said, in substance, "After promising only to make us his body-guard, Caesar is actually making us cavaliers." The pun is based on the double meaning of ad equum rescribere, namely, (1) to transfer to the cavalry, a part of the

army looked down upon by the legionary soldiers, and (2) to knight, i.e. raise to a high rank in Roman society. "Cavalier" means either "cavalry man" or "knight."

Chap. 43. At the conference Caesar repeats his previous demands.

1. erat, "there was." The hill was about twelve miles north of the battlefield, and has been identified with considerable certainty.
2. spatium: accusative of extent of space.
3. ut erat dictum, "as had been agreed."
4. equis, "on horseback."
passibus, intervallis: ablatives of degree of difference with ab, "away from."
cōnstituit. Item equitēs Arioquistā pari intervālō cōnstitērunt. Arioquistus ex equis ut colloquerentur et praeter se dēnōs ad colloquium addūcerent postulāvit. Ubi eō ventum est, Caesar iniciēō orātiōnis sua senātūsque in eum beneficia commemorāvit, quod rēx appellātus esset a senātū, quod amicus, quod mūnera amplissima missa; quam rem et paucis contigisset et prō magnīs hominum officiis consuētēs tribui docēbat; illum, cum neque adītum neque (causam postulando) īustam habēret, beneficiō ac liberalitātē suā ac senātūs eae praemīa consēcūtum. Docēbat etiam quam veterēs quamque īustae causae necessitūdinis ipsī cum Haeduīs intercēderent, quae senātūs consultā quotiēns quamque honōrificā in eōs facta essent, ut omnī tempore tōtius Galliae principātum Haeduī tennissent, prius etiam quam nostram amīcitiam appetissent. Populi Rōmānī hanc esse

6. dēnī, -ae, -a, distr. num. adj. [decem, ten], ten each, ten at a time, by tens. 1.
9. mānus, -eris, m., duty, service, task; present. 1.
11. docēō, docēre, docui, doctum, tr., show, teach, instruct; inform. *
12. adītus, -ās, m. [adēō, go to], approach, means of approach, right of approach, access. *
īustus, -a, -um, adj. [Īūs, right], in accordance with law or right, lawful, valid, just, fair; proper, regular; with funera, appropriate. 4.

5. cōnstitērunt: distinguish carefully between cōnstitō and cōnstitūō.
6. ex equis, "on horseback." Cf. l. 4: in that line the horses are the means by which the soldiers are brought to the hill; in this they are the places from which the conversation goes on.
10. missa: sc. essent. The three quod clauses are substantive clauses in apposition with beneficia, and the subjunctive is due to implied indirect discourse.
12. adītum: i.e. to the senate.

13. praemium, -mi, n., distinction, prize, reward. *
15. cōnsultum, -i, n. [cōnsulō, take counsel], result of deliberation; decree, enactment, decision. 1.
quotiēns, adv. [quot, how many], (1) interrog., how many times? how often? (2) rel., as often as 1.
16. honōrificus, -a, -um, adj. [honōs, honor + faciō, make], conferring honor. 1.

14. ipsīs . . . intercēderent, "existed between them [the Romans] and the Haeduī." intercēderent: subjunctive in an indirect question.
16. in sēs, "in their behalf." ut, "how," introducing an indirect question.
17. Galliae: i.e. Celtic Gaul; but we have learned in 31, 8 that even there their supremacy had always been disputed.

prius . . . quam = priusquam. The subjunctive which it introduces is due to the indirect discourse.
cōnseūtūdinem, /ut sociōs atque amīcōs nōn modo suī nihil /dēperdere, sed grātiā, dignitāte, honōrē(auctōrēs vellet esse; /quod vērō ad amicitiam populi Rōmānī attulissent, iūdī iūs ēripī quis pati posset? Postulāvit deinde eadem quaē lēgātīs in mandātīs dederat: Nē aut Haeduīs aut eōrum sociis bellum inferret; obsidēs redderet; si nūllum partem Germanōrum sō comum remittere posset, at nē quōs amplius Rhēnum trānsīre paterētur.

44. Arioŭstus ad postulāta Caesaris paucā respondit, dē suī virtūtibus multa praedicāvit: Trānsīsse Rhēnum sēsē nōn suā sponte, (sed rogātum et arcessitūm a Gallis), nōn sine magnā spē magnīisque praemīis domum propinquoque reliquisse; sēdēs habēre in Galliā ab ipsis concessās, /obsidēs ipsōrum voluntāte datōs; stipendium capere iūre bellī quod victōrēs victīs impōnere cōnseūrint. Nōn sēsē Gallīs, sed Gallōs sibi bellum intulisse; omnēs Galliē civitātēs ad sē

20. dēperdē, -perdere, -perdīdī, -perditum, tr. [perdē, destroy], destroy utterly; forfeit, lose. 2. dignitās, -tātis, f. [dignus, worthy], worthiness, dignity, merit, rank. 3. auctūs, -a, -um, adj. [př. part. of augeō, increase], increased, advanced, 1.
21. afferō, afferre, attulli, allātum, tr. [ad-ferō, carry. App. 81], bring, take or carry to, present; occasion, cause; bring forward, allege; report. 3.
25. remittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, tr. [re-mittō, send], send or despatch back, return, restore, remit; release, relax, give up; remissus, pė part. as adj., mild. * at, conj., but, at least. *

19. ut vellet, ”to wish” ; a substantive clause of result, in apposition with hanc consulūtūdinem.
sui, ”of their own” ; the neuter of suus, used as a noun.
20. sed auctōrēs esse, ”but rather to be advanced.”
grātiā, etc.: ablatives of specification.
22. quis posset: the direct form was quis possit, ”who would be able?” and the subjunctive is retained in the indirect discourse.
23. dederat: as stated in chap. 35.

Chap. 44. Arioŭstus justifies his own course and makes counter demands and proposals.
3. rogātum et arcessītūm: the participles may be translated by a causal clause.
â Gallīs: cf. 81, 11.
5. ab ipsis: sc. Gallīs.
6. iūre: ablative of accordance.
7. cōnseūrint: the tenses in the early part of this chapter are due to reprezentatio.
oppugnandum vénisse ac contrá sē castra habuisse; eās omnēs cópiās ā sē ūnō proeliō pulsās ac superātās esse. Si iterum 10 experirī velint, sī iterum parātum esse dēcertāre; si pāce ūtī velint, iniquum esse dē stipendiō recūsāre, quod suā voluntāte ad id tempus pependerint. Amicitiam populi Rōmānī sibi ornāmentō et praesidīo, nōn dētrimentō esse oportēre, atque sē hāc spē petisse. Si per populum Rōmānum stipendium remittātur et dēditicii subtrahantur, nōn minus libenter sēsē recūsātūrum populi Rōmānī amicitiam quam appetierit. Quod multitūdīnim Germanōrum in Galliam trādūcat, id sē sui mūniendī nōn Galliae impugnandae causā facere; eius rei testimonium esse/quo nisi rogātus nōn vēnerit/et quod bellum nōn intulerit, sed dēfenderit. Sē prius in Galliam vēnisse quam populum Rōmānum. Numquam ante hoc tempus exercitum populi Rōmānī Galliae prōvinciae finibus ēgressum. Quid sībi vellet? Cūr in suās possessionēs veniret? Prōvinciam
26. sicut or sicuti, adv. [sic, so+ut-(1), as], so as; just as, as; just as if. 1.

27. interpellō, 1. tr., interrupt, hinder. 1.

31. contentiō, -onis, f. [contentō, strive, straining, struggle, contest, dispute. 1.

33. suspicor, 1. tr. [suspiciō, suspect], suspect, distrust; surmise. *

simulō, 1. tr. [similis, like], make like; pretend. 2.

34. opprimō, -primere, -pressi,

-pressum, tr. [ob+premō, press down, oppress; overwhelm, overpower, destroy; fall upon, surprise. 4.

35. dēdō, -ducere, -ducit, -duc-, tr. [ducō, lead], lead down or away, withdraw; bring, conduct, lead; influence; launch (ehips); give in marriage. *

regiō, -onis, f. [regō, keep straight], line, direction; quarter, region, country, territory, place; è regione, with gen., opposite. *

26. hanc Galliam, "this (part of) Gaul." He claims that his right of possession in the land near the Rhine is as clear as that of the Romans in the Roman province.

ut ... oportēret, "just as there ought to be no yielding to him." The direct form of the conditional sentence was probably oportest, si faciam, lit. "it would be right if I should make.

This is a less vivid future condition: App. 357: G-L 506: A. 516, 2, B: B. 308: H-B. 507: H. 576. Such a condition has the same form in indirect discourse as a vivid future condition, and can be distinguished only by the sense of the passage

27. quod diceret, "as to the fact that he said," or "as to his statement."

29. imperitum rērum, "ignorant of political matters."


Haeduōs ... ἂν σέ esse: Arlovistus here lays his finger on the weak point in Caesar's argument; for in fact the alliance of the Haeduı̂s and the Romans had been mere words until now when it suited Caesar's purpose to consider it binding.

32. dēbēre sē suspicāri, "he had a right to suspect."

33. simulātā amicitia, "although he made a pretense of friendship" toward Arlovistus.

quod, "inasmuch as."

35. sēsē ... amicō habitūrum, "he would regard him (Caesar) not as a friend."

38. Sēquaniās habuissent auxiliō populi Romānī usōs esse. / (Dēbēre sē suspicāri) simulātā Caesarem amicitia, quod exercitum in Galliā habeat, suī opprimendī causā habēre. Quī nisi dēcēdat atque exercitum dēducat ex his regionibus, sēsē illum nōn prō amicō, sed prō hoste habitūrum. Quod si eum interfēcerit,
multis sese nobilibus principibusque populi Romani gratum esse facturum; id se (ab ipsis) per eorum suntios compulsum habere, quorum omnium gratiam atque amicitiam eius morte redimere posset. Quod si decessisset et liberam possessionem Galliae sibi tradidisset, magnis se illum praemio remuneraturum et quacumque bella geri vellet sine ulli eius labore et periculoso confecturum.

45. Multa a Caesar in eam sententiam dicta sunt, quarum negotiis desistere non posset: Neque suam neque populi Romani consuetudinem pati uti optimam meritum socios desereret, neque se iudicare Galliam potius esse Ariovistum quam populi Romani. Bellum superatos esse Arvernios et Rutenios a Q. Fabio 5

37. gratus, -a, -um, adj., pleasing, agreeable, acceptable. 1.
40. liber, -era, -erum, adj., unrestrained, free; undisputed. 1.
41. remuneror, i, tr. (re+muneror; present), repay, reward. 1.
42. labor, -oris, m., toil, effort, striving; labor, hardship. *
1. sententia, -ae, f. [sentio, think], way of thinking, opinion, sentiment; purpose, design, scheme, plan; decision, resolve; verdict; sentence. *
3. bene, adv. [bonus, good], well, rightly, successfully. Comp., melius; sup., optimam. 2.

despero, -serere, -serui, -seratum, tr. [desero, entwine, join], disjoin; abandon, desert, forsake; desertus, pf. part. as adj., deserted, solitary. 3.
4. potius, adv. [comp. of potius, able], rather. 2.
5. Ruteni, -orum, m. (DEde). the Ruteni (rug-tēni).
Q., abbr. for Quintus, Quintus (kwint-ĭus), a Roman praenomen. *

Fabius, -blis, m. Quintus Fabius Maximus (kwintĭ tus fīs blĭs māk'al-mūs), victor over the Gauls, 121 B.C. 1.

37. multis . . . facturum: as the head of the democratic party, Caesar had made many bitter enemies in the aristocratic party, especially during his consulship. It is entirely possible that some of them had indicated to Ariovistus their desire to have him put out of the way.

38. id compulsum habere differs very slightly from id compersisse, "had found this out." This means "he possessed this as a thing fully ascertained": App. 218. 6: G.-L. 235: A. 497, 6: B. 337, 6: H.-B. 605, 5: a: H. 640, 2.

Chap. 45. Caesar insists on Roman rights in Gaul.

1. in eam sententiam, quări, hit, "to this effect, why" = "to show why." quări possit is an indirect question.
3. pati uti desereret, "allowed him to abandon." patior is usually followed by an infinitive instead of an ut clause.

5. superatos esse: in the year 121, at the time when the Allobroges were conquered. As this was fifty years before Ariovistus had entered Gaul, it disposed of the claim (44, 21) that Ariovistus had come into the country before the Roman people.
Maximō, quibus populus Rōmānus ignōrisset neque in prōvinciam redēgisset neque stipendium imposuisset. Quod si /antiquissimum quoque tempus/spectāri oportēret, populi Rōmānī iūstissimum esse in Galliā imperium; si iūdicium 10 senātūs observāri oportēret, liberam dēbēre esse Galliam, quam bellō victam/suis légibus úti/voluisset.

46. Dum haec in colloquiō geruntur, Caesarī nūntiātum est equitēs Ariovisti propius tumulum accēdere et ad nostrōs adequitāre, lapidēs tēlaque in nostrōs conicere. Caesar loquendi finem fēcit sēque ad suōs recept/suisque imperāvit 5 nē quod omnīnō tēlum in hostēs rēicerent. Nam etai sine ēllō periculō legiōnis dēlēctae cum equitātū proelium fore/videbatur, tamen committendum nōn putābat ut (pulsis hostibus)dici posset eōs ab sē/per fidem in colloquiō/circumventōs. Postea-

6. Maximus, -ī, m., Quintus Fabius Maximus (quīn’ťūs fā’blūs māk’śīmūs), victor over the Gauls, 121 B.C. 1.

ignōscē, -nōscere, -nōvi, -nōtum, intr. [in-+(g) nōscēns, knowing: nōscō], forgive, pardon. 3.

7. redigō, -igere, -āgit, -āctum, tr. (red-+āgō, put in motion), bring back, bring under; render, make; reduce. *

10. observō, i, tr. (servō, give heed), observe, mark, watch; regard, obey; celebrate. 1.

3. adequō, i, ēd. [equitā, ride; equus, horse], ride up. 1.

lapis, -idis, m., stone. *

5. etai, conj. (et+ai, if), even if, although. *

6. neque ... redēgisset: the intransitive ignōvis set governs the dative, quibus; but redēgisset is transitive and we must supply quōs; quibus is needed again with imposuisset. The Arverni and Ruteni lay on the other side of the Cevennes Mountains, which formed a natural frontier for the Roman province: this was the real reason for the forbearance of the Romans.

8. antiquissimum quoque tempus, lit. “each most ancient time”= “priority of time.”

11. légibus: ablative with ūn.

voluisset: sc. senātūs as the subject.

Chap. 46. An attack by the German cavalry breaks up the conference.


5. quod: the adjective form of the indefinite pronoun.

6. legiōnis dēlēctae, “to his picked legion”; the genitive cannot always be translated by “of.”

7. committendum ut dicit posset, lit. “that it ought to be permitted that it could be said”=“that he ought to permit it to be said.”

pulsis hostibus, “after the defeat of the enemy.”

8. per fidem, “because of their confidence (in Caesar’s honor).” This is equivalent to saying “treacherously.”
quam in vulgus militiae elatum est/qua arrogantia in colloqui
ariovitius usus/omni Galliis Romanis interdixisset, impetumque
ut in nostris eius equites fecissent/eaque rei colloquium diri-
misset, multo maior alacritas studiumque pugnandi maius
exercitu inuestum est.

47. Bicuó post Ario vitus ad Caesarem légátos misit:
Velle se de iis rebus quae inter eos agi coepérne neque perfectae
essent ago cum eo; uti aut iterum colloqui diem constiteret
aut, si id minus vellet, ex suis légátis aliquem ad se mitteret.
Colloquendi Caesari causa visa non est, et eo magis, quod pridie
eius diei/Germanii retinéri non potuerant quin tela in nostris
conicerent. /Légatum ex suis séssé magnó cum periculó ad eum
missurum et hominibus feris objecturum existimabat. Com-
modissimum visum est C. Valerium Procillum, C. Valerii Cabúri

10. interdícó, -dicere, -dixi, -dic-
tum, intr. [dixi, say], prohibit, exclude,
forbid, interdict; aqua atque igni in-
terdícere, forbid the use of fire and
water, banish. 1.

11. dirimó, -imere, -emí, -émp-

9. qua arrogantia usus, “using
what arrogance” = “with what arro-
gance. It is often well to translate
usus in this way.

10. omni ... interdixisset, “had
forbidden the Romans all Gaul.” Galliis
is an ablative of separation. Romanis
is the indirect object.

11. ut, “how,” introduces both
feciissent and dirimisset. It would more
naturally precede impetum.

Chap. 47. Ario vitus requests a
second conference, but seizes the
envoys sent by Caesar.

1. bicuó post, “on the following
day.” The literal meaning is “after-
wards by two days,” but the Latin
writer counts the day of the interview
as one, the next day as the second. In
case the meaning is proved by
1. 5.

2. quae agi coepérne essent, “which
had begun to be discussed,” or better,
tum, tr. [emó, take], take apart, inter-
rupt, break off. 1.

13. início, -icere, -icéi, -iectum, tr.
[inicó, hurl. App. 7], throw into or upon;
put or place on; inspire, infuse. 3.

9. Procillus, -I, m., Gaius Valerius
procilli.

“which they had begun to discuss.”
The passive forms of coepi are used
when the dependent infinitive is in the
passive voice.

3. uti constiteret: a substantive
clause, the object of an implied verb of
asking.

4. légátis, “legates,” not “envoys.”
Ario vitus wished to confer with an
officer of the highest rank, if Caesar
should refuse a second personal inter-
view.

5. colloquendi ... est, “Caesar
saw no occasion for a conference.”

pridie eius diei is only a fuller ex-
pression for pridie, and has the same
meaning.

6. retinéri quin conicerent, “be
kept from casting.” For construction
see App. 233, c: -G-L. 554: A. 558: B. 205,

8. commodissimum visum est, “it
seemed best.” The subject is millere,
l. 15.
filium, / summâ virtûte et hûmânîtûte adulêscentem, / cuius pater à C. Valerio Flaccō civitâtē dônâtus erat, et propter fidem et propter linguae Gallicae scientiam, / quà múltâ iam Arioistus longinquâ cônsuetûdine ûtêbâtur; et quod in eō peccandī Germânīs causa nôn essêt, ad eum mittere, et ûnā M. Mêtium, / qui hospitîo Arioistī ûtêbâtur. Hīs mandâvit ut quae diceret Arioistus cognóscoerent et ad sē referrent. Quōs cum apud sē in castris Arioistus cônspexisset, exercitū suō præsente con-

Proclīlus (gă/yus vă-iĕr'ī-us prō-sīl'us), a Gauî. 2.

Caŭrūs, -ı, m., Gaius Valerius Cau-
rus (gă/yus vă-iĕr'ī-us kă-bū'rūs), a Gauî who possessed ëomân citizenship; / father of C. Valerius Proclīlus and C. Valerius Domnītūrus. 1.

10. adulêscoēs, -entis, m. [pres.
part. of adulēscō, grow up], youth, young man. 4.

11. Flaccōs, -ı, m., Gaius Valerius Flaccus (gă/yus vă-iĕr'ī-us flăk'/ ūs), Governor of Gaul, 83 B. C. 1.

12. scientia, -ae, f. [sciō, know].

knowledge, science, skill. 4.

13. longinquus, -a, -um, adj. [lon-
gus, long], far off, distant, remote; long, long continued. 2.

pecō, 1, intr. sin, transgress, do wrong. 1.


17. cônspicō, -spicere, -spexi, -spectum, tr. [speciō, look], look at, observe, descry, perceive. *

conclāmō, 1, intr. [clāmō, cry out], shout or cry out, call aloud. 2.

18. speculor, 1, intr. [ct. speciō, look], spy. 1.

19. catēna, -ae, f., chain, fetter. 3.

11. civitâtē dônâtus erat, "had
been granted citizenship."

et . . . et (l. 12) . . . et (l. 13), "both
and . . . and."

12. quà múltâ ûtêbâtur, "which
Arioistus spoke fluently."

13. in eō, "in his case."

14. Germânīs; dative of possessor.

15. hospitīo, "guest-friendship."

This is an awkward rendering, but as
we no longer recognize such a relation-
ship we have no name for it. In its
simplest form it bound two men, resid-
ing in different states, to give hospis-

tality or render other services to each
other whenever occasion arose. A simi-
lar relationship might exist between a
man and a state, or between two states.
The obligation was peculiarly binding
and sacred.

17. conclāmāvit, etc.: Arioistus
was angry at his failure to secure an in-
terview with either Caesar or one of
Caesar’s legates.

18. an is not to be translated. The
full thought is something like “is it for
anything else, or, etc.” By such an
ellipsis of the first alternative an not
frequently introduces a simple question,
though its proper place is in the second
alternative of a double question.

cônantēs, “while they were attempt-
ing.”
WAR WITH ARIOVISTUS, B.C. 58

48. Eōdem diē castra prómōvit et milibus passuum sex a Caesaris castris sub monte cōnsādit. Postridē diēus diēi praeter castra Caesaris suās cōpiās trādūxit et milibus passuum duōbus ultrā eum castra fēcit eō cōnsiliō, uti frūmentō commeātūque qui ex Sēquanīs et Hāedūis supportārētur Caesarem interclāderet. Ex eō diē diēs continuōs quinque Caesar prō castrīs suās (cōpiās prōdūxit) et aciem instructam habuit, ut vellet Ariovistus proeliō contendere, eī potestās nōn dēesset. Ariovistus hīs omnibus diēbus exercitum castrīs continuāt, equestri proeliō cotidiē contendit. Genus hoc erat pugnae 10

Chap. 48-54. After some maneuvering Caesar forces Ariovistus to give battle and destroys the German host.

Chap. 48. Ariovistus marches past Caesar's camp. The German cavalry tactics.

1. milibus: ablative of measure of difference. Ariovistus had been twenty-four miles north of Caesar's camp.

2. sub monte: at the foot of the Vosges Mountains.

postridē diēus diēi = postridē. Cf. note on 47, 5.

praeter castra: see the plan, p. 153. Ariovistus marched on high ground along the foothills of the mountains, so that Caesar could not safely attack him as he passed the Roman camp.


interclāderet: Ariovistus did not encamp on the road which the convoys of provisions would have to take, for he preferred a safer position on the hills; but he was near enough to the road to cut off the supplies if they tried to pass.

6. prō castrīs: this was the favorite position for a battle, since the camp formed a place of refuge if the Romans should be defeated (Int. 49). Although Caesar could not tempt the Germans to fight him in this position, he at least encouraged his men by making it clear that the Germans were not anxious to fight them.

7. aciem ... habuit, "kept his line drawn up."

ut dēesset: a purpose clause, although nē is regularly used in negative purpose clauses instead of ut nōn. Here nōn belongs closely with the verb. nōn dēesset, lit. "might not be lacking"= "might be offered him."

8. vellet: implied indirect discourse, for the thought in Caesar's mind was si vult, "if he wishes."


10. proeliō: cf. references on castrīs, l. 9.

genus ... exercuerant, "the kind ... was as follows."
quò sē Germānī exercuerant. Equitum milia erant sex, totidem numerō peditēs vēlcissimī ac fortissimī, quōs ex omni cōpiā singulī singulōs suae salūtis causa délēgerant; cum his in proeliis versābantur, ad eōs sē equitēs recipiēbant; hi, sī quīd erat dūrius, concurrebant; sī qui graviōre vulnerē acceptō equō décidērunt, circumsistēbant; sī quō erat longius prō-deundum aut celerius recipiendum, tanta erat hōrum exer-citātiōne celeritās ut iūbis sublevātī equōrum cursum adaequārent.

49. Ubi eum castrīs sē tenēre Caesar intellēxit, nē diūtius commēātū prohibērētur, āltera eum locum quō in locō Germānī

---

numero: ablative of specification, with totidem.

13. singularis singulōs délēgerant, lit. "individuals had chosen individuals" = "had chosen, each for himself."


   hi... concurrebant, "if there was anything too hard (for the cavalry to accomplish), the infantry ran to their aid."

15. qui: the substantive indefinite pronoun, instead of the more usual quis.

16. quō: this adverb, like the pronoun quis, is used as an indefinite after si, nisi, nē, and num.
cônsiderant, circiter passüs sescentōs ab iīs, /castris idōneum locum délegit; aciēque triplici instructā ad eum locum vēnit. Primam et secundam aciem in armīs esse, tertiam castra mūniire iussit. Hic locus ab hoste circiter passüs sescentōs, utī dictum est, aberat. Eō circiter (hominum sēdecim milia expedita) cum omnī equitātū Ariovistus misit, quae cópiae nostrōs perterrērent et mūniōne prohibērent. Nihilō sētius Caesar, ut ante cōstituerat, duās aciēs hostem prōpulsāre, tertiam opus 10

3. idōneus, -a, -um, adj., suit- able, adapted.
9. sētius, adv., less, otherwise; nihii-
10. prōpulsō, 1, tr. [freq. of prō-

---

BATTLE WITH ARIOVISTUS.

a, Large Roman camp.
b, Small Roman camp.
c, Camp of the Germans.
d, The Roman legions.
e, The German infantry.
f, The Roman auxiliaries.
g, The Roman cavalry.
h, The German cavalry.

3. castris: dative with the adjective idōneum.
4. aciē triplici: see Int. 56. Usually the army marched in column; but on this occasion it had to expect an attack at any moment, and therefore it marched in battle formation.

5. in armīs: to repel the expected at-
tack.
perficere iussit. Munitis castris duas ibi legiones reliquit et partem auxiliorum, quattuor reliquas in castra maiora reduxit.

50. Proximo die/ instituto suo/ Caesar ex castris utrisque copiis suas eduxit, paulumque a maioris castris progressus aciem instruxit, hostibusque pugnandi potestatem fecit. Ubi nemo tum quidem eos prordire intelluxit, circiter meridiē exercitum in castra reduxit. Tum déumum Ariovistus partem suarum copiarum quae castra minora oppugnaré misit. Adcurtutrimque/ usque ad vesperum/ pugnatum est. (Sólis occasū) suas copias Ariovistus/ multi et illātis et acceptis vulneribus in castra reduxit. Cum ex captivīs quaerēt Caesar quem ob rem Ariovistus proeliō non decertāret, hanc reperiebat causam, quod apud Germanōs ea consuetūdō esset, ut mātrēs familiae

pellō, drive forward), drive back, repel; ward off. 1.
2. paulum, adv. [paulus, little], a little, somewhat, slightly. *
prōgressōri, -gregōri, -gressōsum, intr. [gradior, step], step or go forward, advance, proceed, go. *
4. meridīēs, -ēī, m., [for medium, middle, -diēs, day], the middle of the day, midday, noon; the south. 1.
7. utrimque, adv. [uterque, each of two], on each side, on both sides. 2.
usque, adv. (1) of place, all the way to, even to, as far as; (2) of time, up to, till; with ad, until. 3.

12. reliquās: sc. legionēs.
reduxit: although Caesar's forces were divided, he had regained the control of the communications and was in a position to fall upon Ariovistus's flank if he should attack either of the Roman camps.

Chap. 50. Ariovistus unsuccess fully attacks the smaller camp. Caesar learns that he wishes to postpone the decisive battle.

1. institutō: ablative of accordance.
2. paulum... progressus: Caesar had failed to secure a battle in the position most favorable to himself (see 48, 4, and note); therefore he now offered battle in a position equally favorable to both armies.
7. utrimque pugnatum est, "both sides fought."
9. quam ob rem, "why," is here interrogative and introduces an indirect question.
10. proelio: see note on castris, 48, 9.
decertāret: i.e. fight a general and decisive battle.
11. quod ea consuetūdō esset, "that there was this custom," is a substantive quod clause in appositive with hanc causam. The subjunctive is due to implied indirect discourse.
ut declarārent: a substantive clause of result in apposition with ea consuetūdō.

mātrēs familiae: Tacitus tells us that the Germans ascribed prophetic powers to their women. He describes the lots (sortitus, 1, 12) as twigs, cut into small pieces, marked, and scattered on a white cloth. Three of them were picked up at random, and an examination of the marks (runes) disclosed the will of the gods.
WAR WITH ARIOVISTUS, B.C. 58

12. sors, sortis, f., lot, chance, fate; casting or drawing of lots.
13. necne, conj. [nec, nor—ne], or not.
14. si contendissent, "if they should fight." contendissent stands for a future perfect of the direct form.
15. novam lūnam: this fell on Sept. 18.

Chap. 51. Caesar compels Ariovistus to prepare for battle.

2. quod...visum est, "(a garrison) which seemed to be sufficient."

3. multitudine: ablative of specification.
4. pró, "in comparison with."
5. necessario: the Germans did not entrench their camps. As Caesar was evidently about to attack them, and as there was no room for a battle-line in their camp, they had to come out. Caesar probably had to make the attack uphill, but there was a great advantage in forcing the enemy to fight at a time when they believed they could not conquer.

7. generātim, etc.: about 150 years later, Tacitus speaks thus of the Germans: "And what most stimulates their courage is, that their squadrons or battalions, instead of being formed by chance or by a fortuitous gathering, are composed of families and clans. Close by them, too, are those dearest to them, so that they hear the shrieks of women, the cries of infants. They are to every man the most sacred witnesses of his bravery—they are his most generous applauders. The soldier brings his wounds to mother and wife, who shrink not from counting or even demanding them, and who administer both food..."
paribus intervallis, Harūdēs, Marcomannōs, Tribocōs, Vangionēs, Nemetēs, Sedusīōs, Suēbōs, omnemque aciem suam raedis et carris circumdedērunt; nē qua spēs in fugā relinquerētur. Eō mulierēs imposuērunt, quae ad proelium proficīscēntēs militēs (passis manibus) flentēs implōrābant, nē sē in servitūtem Rōmānīs trāderent.

52. Caesar singulīs legiōnibus singulōs lēgātōs et quae insufficient praefecit, utī eōs testēs suae quisque virtūtes habēret; ipse a dextrō cornū, quod eam partem) minimē firmam hostium esse animadvertēr at, proelium commīsit. Ita nostri àcriter in hostēs signō datō impetum fēcērunt, itaque hostēs repente celeriterque prōcurrērunt, ut spatium pilā in hostēs coniiciendi nōn darētur. Rējectīs pilīs comminus gladiās pugnātum est. At Germānī, celeriter ex consuētūdine suā phalanget factā, impetūs gladiōrum excēpērunt. Reperti sunt complūrēs nostri quī in phalanget

8. Marcomanni, -ōrum, m. (Bl), the Marcomanni (mæˈkænəˈmænə). 1. Triboci, -ōrum, m. (Bgh), the Triboci (tribˈō-si). 2. Vangiones, -um, m. (Bgh), the Vangiones (vænˈʒi-o-nēz). 1. Nemetēs, -um, m. (Bl), the Nemetes (nēˈmetēz). 1. Sedusii, -ōrum, m. (Bh), the Sedusii (sēˈdu-si). 1. 12. pandō, pandere, pandi, passum, tr., spread or stretch out, extend; passis capillis, with disheveled hair; passis manibus, with outstretched hands. 2. quaestor, -ōris, m. [quaerō, and encouragement to the combatants." (Church and Brodribb's translation of the Germania). 8. intervallis: ablative of attendant circumstance. 10. circumcedērunt: i.e. on the rear and both flanks. 11. eō, "on them," is the adverb. Chap. 52. A fierce battle is fought. 1. singulīs...praefecit: i.e. each of the six legions was put under the command of either the quaestor or one seek), a quaestor (kwēˈs-tōr), one of a class of officers in charge of the public revenues or the finances of the army. 3. dexter, -tra, -trum, adj., on the right, right. 4. cornū, -ās, n., horn; (of an army) flank, wing. * 5. repente, adv. [repēns, sudden], suddenly, unexpectedly. 2. prōcurrō, -currere, -currī, -currum, intr. [currō, run], run or rush forward, rush out, charge. 1. comminus, adv. [manus, hand], hand to hand, in close contest. 1. excipīō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, tr. and intr. [capiō, take], tr., take up, of the five legates. See Int. 38, 39. 8. eam partem: i.e. the enemy's left wing. 5. signō datō: by trumpeters. itaque = et ita. 6. pilā...coniiciendi: on this and other details of the battle see Int. 55. 7. rējectīs, "throwing aside." The pilā were intended only for casting, and were useless in a hand-to-hand encounter. 8. phalanget: on this formation sce 24, 11, note. 9. in phalanget insilīrent: i.e.
WAR WITH ARIOVISTUS, B.C. 58

Insilīrent et scūta manibus revellere αслед Sayn vorf us. 10
Cum hostium aciēs α sinistrō cornū pulsa atque in fugam
coniecta esset, α dextrō cornū vehementer multitūdine suōrum
nostrem aciem premēbant. Id cum animadvertisset P. Crassus
adulēscēns, quī equitātūi praeerat, quod expeditior erat quam
ī qui inter aciem versābantur; tertiam aciem labōrantibus nos-
trīs subsidiō misit.

53. Ita proelium restitūtum est, atque omnēs hostēs terga
vertērunt nec prius fugere dēstītērunt quam ad flūmen Rhēnum
milia passuum ex eō locō circiter quinque pervēnērunt. Ibi

the soldiers leaped on the roof of shields. If the Romans had been able to begin the battle with the customary volley of javelins, this solid array of shields would have been broken up as it was in the battle with the Helvetii, 25, 3-10. Insilīrent: subjunctive in a clause of characteristic.

11. cum, "though." α sinistrō cornū, "on the left wing," which was the weakest part of the German line.

14. expeditōr, "freer to act." Crassus and the cavalry were posted behind the Roman left wing (see plan, p. 153), out of the way of the German cavalry, for whom they were no match. They were taking no part in the battle, but were waiting to pursue the enemy when the legions should win the victory.

15. tertiam aciem: as usual, this was being held in reserve for just such an emergency.

labōrantibus nostrīs subsidiō, "to the assistance of our hard-pressed men."

Chap. 53. The Germans are routed. Caesar’s envoys are rescued.

1. terga vertērunt: the line of wagons (51, 9) might hinder their flight, but could not entirely prevent it. It is possible, too, that during the battle the Germans had advanced so far that there was space enough for flight between the wagons and the German line.

2. flūmen Rhēnum: as the Rhine is much more than five miles from the battlefield, it is probable that the Ill river is meant, and that Caesar mistook it for the Rhine.
perpauci aut viribus confisi transecreunt aut intribus
inventis/sibi saltem reperrerunt; in his fuit Ariovistus, qui
nauiculam deligatam ad ripam nactus ea profugiit; reliquis omnès
consecuti equitis nostri interfecerunt. Duae fuerunt
Ariovisti uxores, una Sueba natione, quam domó secum
duxerat, altera Norica, regis Vociionis soror, quam in Galliä
duxerat, quae fratre missam; utraque in ea fugä periiit. Fuerunt
duae filiae: hærum altera occisa, altera capta est. / C. Valerius
Procillus, cum a custodibus in fugä trium catēnis vincit
traheretur, in ipsum Caesarem hostès equitātū insequentem
incidit. Quae quidem res Caesarī nōn minorem quam ipsa
victoria voluptatem attulit, quod hominem honestissimum
prōvinciae Galliae, suum familiarem et hospitem, ereptum ex
manibus hostium sibi restitutum vidēbat, neque eius calamitāte

4. transecre, 1. intr. [trans-nō, swim],
swim across. 1.
5. iventrē, -venire, -vēni, -ventum, tr. [veniō, come], come upon,
find, meet with; find out, learn. 2.
6. nāviculae, -ae, f. [dim. of nāvis,
ship], small boat, skiff. 1.
dēligō, 1. tr. [ligō, bind], bind or tie
down, fasten, moor. 2.
nanciscor, nancisci, nactus sum,
tr., get, obtain possession of; meet with,
find. *
8. nātiō, -ōnis, f. [nāscor, be born],
race, tribe, people, nation. *
9. Vociō, -ōnis, m., Vociio (vōk'-
shō), a king of Noricum. 1.
10. pereō, -ire, -ii, -itum, intr. [ēō,
go. App. 84], be destroyed or killed,
perish. 2.
12. triē, -ae, -a, distr. num. adj.,
three each; three, triple. 1.
vinciō, vincire, vinxi, vincitum, tr.,
bind. 1.
13. trabō, trahere, trāxi, tractum,
tr., drag, drag along. 1.
14. incidō, -cidere, -cidit, —, intr.
[cadō, fall], fall into or upon; fall in
with; happen, arise. 2.
15. voluptās, -tās, f. [volō, wish],
what one wishes; pleasure, delight, en-
joyment. 2.
honestus, -a, -um, adj. [honōs,
honor], honorable, worthy, distinguished,
eminent. 1.
16. hospes, -itis, m., host, enter-
tainer; guest, friend; stranger. 1.
7. duae uxōres: among the Germans
polygamy was permitted in the case of
the nobles only.
8. nātiōne: ablative of specification.
10. duxerat: “had married”; while
duxerat in l. 9 means “had brought.”
13. Insequentem, “who was following.”
17. neque . . . dēminuerat, “nor
had Fortune, by injury to Procillus,
WAR WITH ARIOVISTUS, B.C. 58
159

dē tantā voluptāte et grātulātiōne quicquam fortūna dēminuerat. Is sē praesente dē sē ter sortibus cōnsultum diēbat utrum ignī statim necārētur an in aliud tempus reservārētur; sortium benevoliō sē esse incolumem. Item M. Mētius repertus et ad eum reductus est.

54. Hoc proeliō trāns Rhēnum nūntiātō, Suebī qui ad ripās Rhēnī vēnerant domum revertī coeptūrunt; quōs Ubīi, qui proximi Rhēnum incolunt, perterritōs insecūti magnum ex iis numerum occidērunt. Caesar, ūnā aestāte duōbus maximis bellis cōnfectis, mātūrius paulō quam tempus annī postulābat, in hiberna in Sēquanōs exercitum dēdūxīt; hibernīs Labīēnum praeposuit; ipse in citeriōrem Galliām ad conventūs agendōs profectus est.

18. grātulātiō, -ōnis, f. [grātular, express joy], expression of joy, congratulation, rejoicing. 1.
19. ter, num. adv. [cf. trēs, three], three times. 1.

cōnsulō, -ere, -ul, -tum, tr. and intr.; tr., take counsel, consult, consider; intr. with dat., take counsel for, study the interests of, take care of; spare. 1.
20. statim, adv. [stō, stand], as one stands, hence, forthwith, immediately, at once. *
neō, 1. tr. [nex, death], put to death, kill, murder. 2.

lessened in any degree Caesar's great satisfaction and rejoicing"; lit. "les-

sed any thing of," quicquam being the direct object.
19. sē praesente, "in his presence."

cōnsultum: sc. esse.
20. necārētur: this is an indirect question, but the subjunctive is not due
to that fact: App. 210; 263: G.-L. 265; 467:
A. 444; 575, b: B. 277; 300, 2: H.-B. 508: H.
659, 4.

Chap. 54. The fate of the Suebi.
Arrangements for the winter.
1. quì ... vēnerant: cf. 37, 5.


5. mātūrius paulō: in the latter half of September. The army needed
rest after such arduous labors.
6. in Sēquanōs: probably in Vesontiō. The quartering of the army on
Gallic soil signified Caesar's intention
to assume a protectorate over Gaul, and
thus brought about the Belgic uprising of the following year.
7. ad conventūs agendōs, " to hold
the provincial courts." This was a part
of his duty as governor of the province.
Moreover he wished to be as near Rome
as possible in order to keep in touch
with affairs there.
BOOK II. WAR WITH THE BELGAE

Caesar's first year of fighting had brought central Gaul under Roman control (see map facing p. 117), and this fact was made clear to the Gauls when Caesar kept his army through the winter in Vesontio; for no Roman army had ever before been stationed north of the Province. The Belgae, fearing that they would be attacked next, formed during the winter a league of defense, and levied a force of nearly three hundred thousand men, which they massed not far from the southern frontier. Early in the spring Caesar moved against them. At his approach the Remi, ambitious to gain supreme power in Belgium as the Haedui had in central Gaul, came to terms with him and furnished him valuable information regarding the strength of the allied army. At first he did not venture to attack with his much smaller army an enemy so noted for daring and warlike skill as the Belgae. Therefore he chose a strong position on the Axona (Aiêne) river, and sent a force of the Haedui under Diviciacus to ravage the territory of the Bellovaci, hoping by this means to break up the army of the enemy. The Belgae made an unsuccessful assault upon Bibrax, a town of the Remi, and then encamped before Caesar's position on the Axona. A little skirmishing discouraged the badly organized and poorly fed Belgic army. The men of each state went off to defend their own territory, all falsely promising to come to the rescue of whichever state Caesar should first attack. Caesar was thus left free to deal with the states one at a time.

Sweeping through western Belgium he quickly received the submission of the Suessiones, the Bellovaci, and the Ambiani. No doubt the neighboring states too sent envoys of peace, though they are not mentioned. The eastern tribes, however, still remained unconquered and defiant. Forming a second and closer union, the Nervii, the Viromandui, and the Atrebates assembled a numerous army in the forests near the Sabis (Sambre) river, and planned to surprise and destroy the legions while separated on the march. When the Roman van reached the stream and began to fortify a camp, the enemy suddenly burst out of the coverts near by and fell upon it; Caesar was taken unawares. So fierce was the conflict and so great the danger that he seized a shield and fought in the foremost rank. After long uncertainty, Roman tactics and discipline prevailed. The enemy lost
heavily, especially the Nervii, who made the last desperate stand and were slain almost to a man.

The battle of the Sabis was decisive. Only the Atuatuci dared to raise a brave but ineffectual opposition. They were quickly subdued, and on account of an attempt at treachery were sold into slavery. The conquest of Belgium was complete, with the exception of the Morini and the Menapii, who were not attacked and who sent no envoys. With his customary moderation Caesar was content with a general disarmament and the furnishing of hostages. The treacherous Remi were raised to supreme power in Belgium, and were thus firmly attached to the Roman interest.

Meanwhile, the states of northwestern Gaul had submitted to Publius Crassus, Caesar’s legate, apparently without fighting.

This is one of the most interesting of the Gallic campaigns in its presentation of the strong qualities of the Roman leader. His tactical skill, celerity of movement, energy, and courage are seen at their best. Yet the surprise at the Sabis was due to his failure to observe the most common rules of prudence in the presence of the enemy. That it was not a disastrous defeat must be attributed chiefly to the excellence of his soldiers.
EXPLANATION OF CAMPAIGN MAP

For the meaning of the colors, see the explanation of the campaign map for I, 1-29, facing p. 42.

The same territory is colored red as in the campaign map for I, 30-54, facing p. 117. In addition, the Nervii, the Viromandui, the Atrebates, and the Atuatuici are colored red, for they seriously fought with Caesar.

Most of the rest of Belgium is colored blue, though it is hard to decide between blue and red for some of the states. Although all the states had promised to send quotas to the great army which melted away before Caesar at the Atona, we cannot be sure how many did so; and it can hardly be said that Caesar won the submission of the several states by defeating that army. The Suessiones prepared to fight, but did not do so. The Bellovaci and the Ambiani did not even prepare to fight. Therefore these three states are colored blue. The states which are not mentioned must in general have sent embassies of submission; but the Morini and the Menapii are left uncolored, because in III, 28 we are told that they had never sued for peace.

The northwestern states mentioned in chap. 34 are colored blue. Crassus went to them with only one legion, and the events of Book III make it certain that one legion could not have defeated those states in battle. Evidently they submitted without fighting.

The battle-fields on the Atona and on the Sabis are as certain as they well can be. The site of the town of the Atuatuici is very uncertain. The one indicated on the map is Mont Falhize, championed by Von Gölner (Caesars Gallischer Krieg, pp, 90 ff.). Caesar does not tell us that the town was on a river; but all the other sites which have been suggested are open to more serious objections.
Campaign Map for Book II
LIBER SECUNDUS.

1. Cum esset Caesar in citeriore Galliâ, ita uti suprâ dêmônstrâvimus, crêbri ad eum rûmôres afferebantur, litterisque item Labiënî/certior fiêbat/omnês Belgas, quam tertiam esse Galliae partem dixeramus/contrâ populum Rômânûm coniûrâre obsidêseque inter sê dare. Coniûrandi hâs esse causás: primum, quod verêrentur hê omni pâcâtâ Galliâ ad eós exercitus noster addúcerêtur; deinde, quod ab nôn nûllis Galliis/solicitârentur,

1. suprâ, adv. and prep. with acc. (1) as adv., before, previously; (2) as prep. with acc., above; before. *
2. crêber, -bra, -brum, adj., thick, close, repeated, numerous, frequent, at short intervals. Comp. crêbrior; sup., crêberrimus (App. 40).
3. rûmors, -ôris, m., hearsay, report, rumor. 2.
4. afferô, afferre, attulli, allâtum, tr.

Chap. 1. The Belgae form a league against Caesar.

1. citeriore Galliâ: Caesar's province south of the Alps; now northern Italy.

dêmônstrâvimus: in I, 54. Caesar uses the rhetorical we. Caesar the writer is spoken of in the first person, Caesar the general in the third.

3. Labiënî: as commander of the winter quarters, he of course sent regular reports to Caesar on all matters of importance.

certior fiêbat, "was informed from time to time." The imperfect of repeated action.

Belgâs: see Int. 28.

quam . . . dixeramus, "who, as I said, are a third part of Gaul." quam refers to Belgâs, but agrees in gender and number with the predicate noun partem. The pluperfect dixeramus is occasionally used in such statements instead of the more common perfect.

4. coniûrâre, "were forming a league," not "conspiring." The Belgae were not rebelling, for they had never been subject to Rome. Caesar had no scruples about conquering them, but he did not treat them as rebels.

6. quod verêrentur: a substantive quod clause, in apposition with causâtâ. The subjunctive is due to indirect discourse.

omnê . . . Galliâ, "now that all Gaul had been brought under control." Galliâ here refers only to Celtic Gaul. See Int. 28.

7. solicitârentur: the indirect discourse still continues, but stops at this point. Apparently Labienus reported the two reasons for the action of the Belgae, but Caesar himself supplies the three reasons why Celtic Gauls instigated a rising of the Belgae.
CAESAR'S GALLIC WAR, II. 1

partim qui, ut Germānōs diūtius in Galliā versāri nōluerant, ita populi Rōmāni exercitum hiemāre atque inveterāscere in Galliā molestē ferebant; partim qui mōbilītāte et levitāte animī novīs imperiis studēbant, ab nōn nūllis etiam, quod in Galliā ā potentiōribus atque iis qui ad condūcendōs homīnēs facultātēs habēbant vulgō régna occupābantur, qui minus facile eam rem imperiō nostrō consequī poterant.

8. partim, adv. [acc. of pars, part], partly, in part; partim...partim, some...others. 4.

versō, I, tr., turn; deal with; pass. as deponent, turn one’s self; be, remain; engage in; fight. *

9. inveterāscō, -veterāscere, -veterāvī,-veterātum, intr., grow old; become established. 1.

10. molestē, adv., with annoyance;

molestē ferre, be annoyed. 1.
mōbilītās, -tātis, f. [mōbilis, movāble], movableness, activity, speed; changeableness, fickleness, inconstancy. 2.

levitās, -tātis, f. [levis, light], lightness; fickleness, restlessness. 1.

13. vulgō, adv. [vulgus, the crowd], commonly; everywhere. 2.

8. partim qui, "some of whom"; i.e. the opponents of all foreigners.

10. partim qui, "others of whom." mōbilītāte et levitāte: Caesar often speaks of these qualities as characteristic of the Gauls.

11. ab nōn nūllis (sollicitārentur): a third class, such men as Orgetorix (I, 2), Cætiscus (I, 3), and Dumnonir (I, 18).

12. ad...hominēs, "for employing mercenaries."

13. qui...poterant: see Int. 29, end. Of course this power of the nobles would be held in check by a strong government like that of the Romans.


* These grammar references are as far as possible duplicates of those given in the notes on each of the first 39 chapters of Book I. They are given for the convenience
2. His nuntiis litterisque commotus Caesar duas legiones in
citeriore Galliae novas conscripsit et inita aestate, in ulteriorum
Galliam qui deduceret. Q. Pedius legatum misit. Ipsa, cum
primum pabuli copia esse inciperet, ad exercitum venit. (Dat
negotium Senonibus reliquisque Gallis qui finitimae Belgiae erant
util ea quae apud eos gerantur cognoscant sequere de his rebus
certiorem faciant. Hi constanter omnibus nuntiaverunt manum
coegi/exercitum in unum locum conducii. Tum vero dubitandum

Chap. 2–4. Caesar marches to Belgium and gets information from the
Remi.

Chap. 3. Caesar makes preparations and moves against the Belgae.

1. duas legiones: Caesar now had eight legions, numbered consecutively
from VII to XIV, approximately 32,000
legionary soldiers. In addition he had auxiliary cavalry and infantry, on
whom, however, he placed little reliance. See Int. 32, 33.

2. inita aestate, "after the beginning
of warm weather." Aestas included
more than our summer, and the
time here meant is spring.

in ulteriorum Galliam: i.e. to join
the other legions in Vesontio. See map
facing p. 163.

3. qui (eae) deduceret, "to take
them."
cum primum: in June. Cum primum
usually takes the indicative.

6. geratur: Caesar said ea quae ger-
untur cognoscite, "find out what is being
done." geratur is the subjunctive
of implied indirect discourse: App. 273:
G.-L. 628: A 592, 3; note: B. 333: H.-B.
533, 1, a: H. 619, 1.

7. manus coegi, "that armed bands
were gathering."

8. dubitandum (sibi esse) quin pro-
ncisceretur, lit. "that it ought to be
hesitated by him that he should set out",
= "that he should hesitate to set out."
When dubitab means "hesitate" it is usu-
ally followed by the infinitive. See App.
239, d: G.-L. 565, 2, R. 3: A. 558, a, n. 2:

of teachers who begin the study of Caesar with Book II. References are given three
times for each of the most common principles of syntax, in order that it may be
studied and twice reviewed.
nōn existimāvit quīn ad eōs proficiscerētur. Rē frūmentāriā 10 comparātā castra movet diēbusque circiter quīndecim ad finēs Belgārum pervenit.

3. Eō cum dē imprōvisō/ celeriusque omnium opiniōne vēnisset, Rēmī, quī proximi Galliae ex Belgis sunt, ad eum lēgātōs Icīcum et Andēbrogium, primūs cīvitātīs, misērunt, qui

1. imprōvisus, -a, -um, adj. [im- + prōvisus, foreseen; prōvideō], unforeseen, unexpected; dē imprōvisō, unexpectedly, suddenly. 1.

opinīō. -ōnis. f. [ opinor, think], way of thinking, opinion; impression, expectation; reputation; opinīō timōris, impression of cowardice. *

2. Rēmus, -a, -um, adj., belonging to or one of the Remi; pl. as nouns, Rēmī, m. (Bef.), the Remi (rē’mī). *

3. Icīcius, -īci, m., Icīcius (ikt’shyūs), a chief of the Remi. 3.

Andēbrogioi, -ūs, -ūl, m., Andēbrogioi (dē-br∅’jyūs). 1.

B. 298, b: H.-B. 521, 3, b; 586: H. 565, 1; 607, 1.

10. ad finēs: it was about 145 miles to the boundary of the Remi; but Caesar probably passed the boundary and nearly reached Durocortorum, their capital, in the fifteen days. See map facing p. 162, and Int. 54.

Chap. 3. The Remi submit to Caesar.

1. eō: the adverb.

omnia opinīōne, lit. “than the opinion of all," = "than any one had expected.”

2. Rēmī: a Belgian state, of appar-

ently only moderate strength, which saw an opportunity to increase its power by treacherously deserting its fellow states. In reward for its services Caesar made it the leader of a confederation, and it remained constantly faithful to him.

proximī . . . Belgis, “the nearest of the Belgae to Gaul”; i.e. at the point where Caesar entered the Belgian frontier.

ex Belgis: the ablative with dē or ex is often used instead of the partitive genitive.

3. quī dierent: purpose. The rest


dicerent sē suaque omnia in fidem atque potestātem populi Rōmānī permittere; neque sē cum reliquis Belgis cōnsēnisse, neque contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrāsse, parātōque esse et obsidēs dare et imperāta facere et oppidīs recipere et frumentō cēterisque rebus iuvāre; reliquis omnēs Belgīs in armīs esse, Germanōsque qui cīs Rēnum incollant sēsē cum his coniūnxisse; tantumque esse eōrum omnium furōrem ut sē Suessiōnes quidem, frātrēs cōnsanguineōsque suōs, qui eōdem iūre et īsdom lēgibus ūtāntur, īnum imperiūm īnūmque magistrātum cum ipsīs habeant, dētērrēre potuerint quīn cum his cōnsentīrent.

5. permittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -mīsūm, tr. [mittō, send], give up or over, surrender; entrust, commit; permit, allow. *
6. cōnsentīō, -sentīre, -sēnīsī, -sēnīsūm, intr. [sentīō, feel], think together; agree, combine. 2.
7. imperātum, -ī, m. [imperō, command], command, order. 2.
8. cēteri, -ae, -ā, adj., the rest of, of the chapter is in indirect discourse. The direct form is given after Book VII.
4. sē is the object of permittēre. Another sē must be supplied as its subject; "that they entrusted themselves and all their possessions," etc.
5. neque neque neque que, "(and) not . . . and not . . . and."

6. coniūrāsse: form? App. 72: G.-L. the remainder; as noun, the rest, remaining, others. 4.
9. cis, prep. with acc., on this side of. 2.
10. coniungō, -iungere, -iunxī, -iunctum, tr. [iungō, join], join with or together, connect, unite, bind. *
furō, -ōris, m., rage, frenzy, madness. 2.
11. Suessiōnes, -um, m. (Be), the Suessiones (swēs"l'-ōnēs). *
7. esse: infinitive in indirect discourse. dare, facere, recipere, and in-sūre depend on parātōs.
10. sēsē: do not translate.
11. ut: with potuerint.
Suessiōnes: object of dētērrēre.
13. dētērrēre quīn, "prevent from.'
4. Cum ab iis quaeque civitatis quantaeque in armis
essent et quid in bellis posse, sic reperiébat: Plérosque Belgas
esse ortos a Germanis, Rhenumque antiquitatem traductos propter
locis fertilitatem ibi consedisse, Gallosque quae ea loca incolerent
expulisse, solosque esse qui patrum nostrorum memoriain omnibus
Galliis vexata, Teutonis eimbróisque intra suos fines ingredi
prohibuerint; qua ex re fieri uti eorum rerum memoria magnam
sibi auctoritatem magnosque spiritus in re militari súmerent.
Dénúmerò eorum omnia, sè habère explorata Rémi dicebant,
propterea quod propinquitatisibus affinitatisibus conjuncti,
quantam quisque multitudo in communi Belgárum concilió

2. quid, interrogo. adv., why? with
posse, how? e.g. quid Germani pos
sent, how strong were the Germans.
sic, adv., so, thus, in this manner;
sic... ut, so... that; so... as.
plérque, -aque, -aque, adj. pl.,
very many, the most of; as noun, a great
many, very many.
3. antiquitas, adv. [antiquus, an
cent], from early or ancient times; long
ago, anciently.
4. fertilitas, -tatis, f. [fertilis,
productivus], productiveness.
5. expelle, -pellere, -pul, -pul
sum, tr. [pelli, drive], drive out or
forth, expel.
6. Teutoni, -orum or Teutonis,
um, m., the Teutoni (tutóni) or Teu
tones (tutó-nex).

Cimbrí, -órum, m., the Cimbri (simbrí).
Intrá, prep. with acc. [inter, between]
within, inside; into.
Ingrédior, -grédi, -gressus sum,
intr. [gradior, go], go or come into, en
ter.
Spiritus, -ús, m. [spír, breathe],
breath, air; m. pl., haughtiness, pride.
Explóéro, 1. tr., search or find out,
investigate, spy out, reconnoiter.
Propinquitás, -táts, f. [prop
pinquus, neighboring, near], nearness,
vicinity; relationship.
Commóngnis, -e, adj., common,
general; res communis, the common
interest.

6. Teutonis Cimbrosque: on this
invasion see Int. 27.
Ingrédior prohibuerint, "prevented
from entering." Caesar always uses
the infinitive after prohibeó, instead of
the subjunctive with se or quominus.
Prohibuerint was subjunctive in
the direct form. See App. 230, b: G.-L.
631, 3: A. 535, b: B. 283, 2: H.-B. 591, 1:
H. 591, 1.
Dé numeró: i.e. the numerical
strength of the Belgian army.
Omnia... explórita. "that they
had ascertained everythinę." See re
ferences at the end of the chapter.
Quisque: i.e. each delegate.
ad id bellum pollicitus sit, cognòverint. / Plurimum inter eós Bellovacês et virtūte et auctōritātē et hominum numerō valēre; hōs possese cōnāficere armāta milia centum; pollicitōs ex eō numerō élēcta milia sexāgintā, tōtīusque bellī imperium sibi postulāre. Suessionēs suōs esse finitimōs; finēs lātissimōs ferācissimōsque agrōs possidēre. Apud eōs fuisse rēgem nostra etiam memoriā Diviciācūm, tōtius Galliae potentissimun, qui cum magnae partis hārum regiōnūm tum etiam Britanniae imperium obtinuerit; nunc rēgem Galbam; ad hunc propter iūstītiam prūdentiamque summam tōtius bellī omnium voluntātē dēferri; oppida habēre numerō xii; pollicēri milia armāta quinquāgintā;

18. Bellovacē, -ōrum, m. (Bde), the Bellovaci (bē-lovā-sī). *
14. armō, 1, tr. [arma, arms], arm, equip; pass., arm'ōne's self; armātus, pf. part. as adj., armed; armāti, as noun, armed men. *
15. eligō, -igere, -ēgī, -ēctum, tr. [legō, choose], choose or pick out, select; eligō, pf. part. as adj., picked (men, etc.). 1. sexāgintā (LX), card. num. adj., indecl. [sex, six, sixty]. 1.
postulō, 1, tr., request, ask, demand; require, necessitate. *
16. ferāx, -ācis, adj. [ferō, bear], productive, fertile. 1.
17. possidēo, -sidēre, -sēdi, -sessum, tr. [sedēō, sitī, occupy, hold, possess. 2.
rex, rēgis, m., king. *
18. Diviciācūs, -i, m., Diviciacus, (div-i-shē-ā-kūs), a chief of the Suessiones. 1.

12. pollicitus sit: an indirect question, and therefore subjunctive in the direct form.
plurimum: compare note on quid, 1. 2.
14. armāta milia centum, lit. “one hundred armed thousands,” = “one hundred thousand armed men.”
pollicitōs: supply esse.
16. suōs: i.e. of the Remi; see map.
17. possidēre: supply eōs (Suessionēs) on the subject.

19. regiō, -onis, f. [regō, keep straight], line, direction; quarter, region, country, territory, place; ē regiōne, with gen., opposite. *
Britannia, -ae, f. (Aabcd), Britannia (brī-tān′i-a), better Britain, Great Britain (England and Scotland), never Britanny. *
20. nunc, adv., now, at present, at this time. 3.
Galba, -ae, m., Galba (gāl′ba), a king of the Suessiones. 2.
21. prūdentia, -ae, f. [prūdens, foreseeing], prudence, foresight. 1.
dēferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātum, tr. [ferō, carry. App. 81], bring from or down, carry, take; report, disclose; bring before, refer; bestow, confer; délatūs (sometimes), falling; coming by chance. *
22. quinquāgintā (L), card. num. adj., indecl., fifty. 3.

18. Diviciācūm: of course not the Haeduan mentioned in Book I. cum . . . tum, “not only . . . but also.”
19. partis and Britanniae both depend on imperium.
Britanniae: not the whole of Britain, but only parts lying opposite the Belgian coast. This is the first notice of Britain in Latin literature.
21. summam: the noun; not the superlative adjective.
totidem Nervios, qui maximē feri' inter ipsōs habeantur longissimēque absint; quindecim milia Atrebātēs, Ambiānōs decem milia, Morinōs xxv milia, Menapiōs vii milia, Caletīs x milia, Veliocassēs et Viromandūs totidem, Atuatucōs xix milia; Condūsīs, Eburōnēs, Caeōsīs, Caemānōs, qui ūnō nōmine Germānī appellantur, arbitrāri ad xl milia.

23. totidem, indecl. adj. [tot, so many], just as many, the same number. 3.

Nervius, -a, -um, adj. (AeT), of the Nervii; m. sing. as noun, one of the Nervii; m. pl. as noun, the Nervii (nērv'i-i).

* ferus, -a, -um, adj., wild, savage, fierce. *

24. Atrebās, -bātīs, m. (Ae), an Atrebaticī; pl., the Atrebates (āt'ür-rē-bā'tēs).

* Ambiānī, -ōrum, m. (ABd), the Ambiani (ām'bi-ā'nī). 2.

25. Morinī, -ōrum, m. (Ae), the Morinī (mōr'i-nī). *

Menapī, -ōrum, m. (Afg), the Menapī (mē-nā'pī-i). *

23. Nervios: with this and the following proper nouns supply pollicēri.

maximē feri: the superlative.

longissimē absint: i.e. from the southern frontier. But the map shows that they were no more distant than the Morinī and the Menapī.

23. Germānī: these tribes were very


5. Caesar Rêmòs cohortātus liberāliterque (órātione prósequitus) omnem senātum ad sé convenire principumque liberōs obsidēs ad sé addūcī inssit. Quae omnia ab his diligenter ad diem facta sunt. Ipsē Diviciācūm Haedum magnopere cohortātus/docet quantopere rei publicae/commūnis salūtis intersit 5 manūs hostium distinēri, nē cum tantā multitūdine ūnō tempore cōnfligendum sit. Id fieri posse, sī suās cōpiās Haeduī in finēs Bellovacōrum intrōduxerint et eōrum agrōs populāri coeperint. His datīs mandātis eum ā sé dīmittit. Postquam

1. liberāliter, adv. [liber, free], graciously, generously, kindly. 3.
prosequor, -sequi, -sectus sum, tr. [sequor, follow], follow, accompany; pursue; with orātione, address. 3.
3. diligenter, adv. [diligēns, careful], carefully; with exactness, pains, or care. 4.
5. docēō, docēre, docuī, doctum, tr., show, teach, instruct; inform. * quantopere, adv. [quantus, how much + opus, work], (1) interrog., how greatly? how much? (2) rel., as much

likely really Germans who had settled in Gaul just as Ariovistus tried to do.
apPELLANTUR: the indicative shows that this is an explanation by Caesar, not a quotation from the Remi.
arbitrāri (pollisōri), "they (the Remi) thought the Condrusi . . . promised."

Chap. 5-8. The armies approach each other.

Chap. 5. Caesar sends the Haeduī to ravage one state, and himself marches to meet the whole Belgian army.

5. quantopere: interrogative. Explain the mode of intersit.
commūnis salūtis: i.e. of both Haeduī and Romans. Caesar poses as the champion of Gallic as well as Roman interests.
intersit . . . distinēri, lit. "the bands of the enemy to be kept apart concerned," = "it concerned . . . that the bands of the enemy be kept apart." The clause manūs . . . distinēri is the subject of the impersonal verb intersit.

6. nē cōnfligendum sit, lit. "that it might not have to be fought," = "that they might not have to fight." The verb is used impersonally, but English idiom will not allow an impersonal translation.

7. id: i.e. keeping the bands of the enemy apart. The sentence id . . . coeperint is in indirect discourse, depending on docēt, l. 5.
in finēs Bellovacōrum: the Bellovacēi were no doubt angry because they had not obtained leadership of the league (see 4, 15 and 20), and the ravaging of their territory would probably draw them away home.

8. intrōduxerint, coeperint: perfect subjunctive in indirect discourse, for future perfect indicative of the direct form.
omnes Belgarum copias in unum locum coactas ad se venire neque iam longe absesse ab iis quos miserat exploratoribus et ab Remis cognovit fliumen Axonam, quod est in extremis Remorum finibus, exercitum traducere maturavit atque ibi castra posuit. Quae res et latus unum castrorum ripis fluminis muniebat, et post eum quae erant tutta ab hostibus reddebat, et commenstus ab Remis reliquisque civitatis ab sine periculo ad eum portari possent efficiabat. In eo flumine possi erat. Ibi prae sidium poni et in altera parte fluminis Q. Titurius Sabinum legatun cum sex cohortibus reliquit. Castra in alitudi-
nem pedum XII vallö fossaque duodëviginti pedum müniri socii iubet.

6. Ab his castris oppidum Römörum nömine Bibrax aberat mília passuum octo. Id ex itinere magnó impetü Belgae oppugnáre coeperunt. Aegré eö dié sustentátiäm est. Gallórum eadem atque Belgárum oppugnátiäm est hæce. Ubi circumiectá multitudine hominum tōtis moenibus undique in mūrum lapides iaci sunt mūrusque défensōribus nūdātus est, testūdine factā

1. Bibrax, -otis, f. (Be), Bibrax (bi-bræks), a town of the Remi. 1.
3. sustentō, 1, tr. and intr. [freq. of sustineō, hold up], hold up, sustain, maintain; hold out; endure, withstand. 2.
4. oppugnátiō, -onis, f. [oppugnō, storm], a storming, besieging, siege, assault, attack; plan or method of storming. 2.
   circumiectō, -icere, -isci, iectum, tr. [iacciō, throw. App. 7], throw, set, or place around. 1.
5. moenia, -ium, a. pl., defensive walls, city walls, ramparts, bulwarks, fortifications, defenses. 3.
   lapis, -idis, m., stone. *
   iaciō, iacere, iaciē, iactum, tr., throw, cast, hurl; (of an agger), throw up, construct. *
6. défensōr, -oris, m. [défendō, defend], defender, protector; (means of) defense. *
   nūdō, 1, tr. [nūdus, bare], strip, uncover, make bare, expose. 3.
   testūdō, -inis, f., tortoise; shed; a testudo, a column of men, holding their shields overlapped over their heads. 1.

20. duodëviginti pedum: i.e. in width. When Caesar mentions only one dimension of a trench he always means the width. The depth was about ten feet.

Chap. 6. The Belgae assault a town of the Remi.
1. nömine: ablative of specification.
   Bibrax: see map facing p. 163.
2. ex itinere: i.e. without stopping to make camp.
3. sustentátiäm est, lit. "it was held out"; but translate personally.
   eadem atque Belgárüm, "(which is) the same as (that) of the Belgae." See atque in the Vocabulary. In such expressions Latin never uses a word for "that."
4. hæce, "as follows."
   circumiectā: this ablative absolute is best translated by a clause; "when a great number has been thrown around . . . and stones have begun, etc."
5. coepti sunt: why not coeptüm?


succeudunt mūrumque subruunt. Quod tum facile fìebat. Nam cum tanta multitūdō lapidēs ac tēla conicerent, in mūro consis-
tendi potestās erat nūlli. Cum finem oppugnandi nox fēcisset, Iccius Rēmus, summā nōbilitāte et grātiā inter suōs, qui tum oppidō praecerat, ūnus ex iis qui lēgātī dē pāce ad Caesarem vēnerant, nūntiōs ad eum mittit: Nisi subsidium sibi submittā-
tur, sēsē diūtius sustinēre non posse.

7. Eō dē medīa nocte Caesar, īsdem ducibus ūsus quī

7. subruō, -ruere, -ruī, -rutum, tr. [ruō, fail], cause to fall from beneath, overthrow; dig under, undermine. 1.
12. subsidium, -di, n. [subsideō, sit near or in reserve], sitting in re-

serve; reserve force, reserves; help, aid, assistance. *
submittō, -mittere, -mīsi, -missum, tr. [mittō, send], send up, send, send to the assistance of. *

See App. 86, a: G.-L. 175, 5, a: A. 206, a: B. 133, 1: H.-B. 199, 2: H. 299, 1,
testūdine: see Plate III, 3, facing p. 34.
8. conicerent agrees with the meaning, not the grammatical form, of the collective noun multitūdō.
10. summā, "(a man) of the highest." *

444. ūnus is here used as a noun in apposition with Iccius.
12. submittātur: the subjunctive here stands for a future indicative of the direct form. nūntiōs mittit implies "saying."
Chap. 7. Failing to take the town, the Belgae march against Caesar.
1. sē: to Bibrass.
Īsdem ducibus ūsus, "employing the same persons as guides."

2. milia: case? App. 130: G.-L. 335:
impētū: case? App. 142: G.-L. 399:
429, 2.
6. coeptī sunt: mode and tense?
8. conicerent: mode? App. 240, 242,
a: G.-L. 579, II, a: 586: A. 546: B. 288, 1,
b: H.-B. 534: H. 600, II.


As explained under II, 1, each of the most common principles of synt x is referred to three times in the n. tes on Book II. At the end of the chapter in which the third reference to any construction has been given, attention is called to the fact; and if the pupil has not yet mastered the construction he should do so at once.

Third References:
Subject of infinitive
Ablative of time
Narrative cum clause
Infinitive in indirect discourse
nuntii ab Iciō vēnerant, Numidās et Crētēs sagittāriōs et funditōrēs Balearēs subsidiō oppidānis mittit; quōrum adventū et Rēmis cum spē défēnsiōnis studium prōpugnandī accessit, et hostibus sādēm dē causā spē potiundī oppidi discessit. Itaque paulisper apud oppidum morātī agrōsque Rēmōrum dēpopulāti, omnibus vicēs aedificiisque quō adire potuerant incēnsis, ad castra Caesaris omnibus cōpiis contendērunt; et ā milibus passuum minus duōbus castra posuērunt; quae castra, ut fūmō

2. Numidae, -ārum, m., the Numidae (nü′ml-dē), better the Numidians, a people of North Africa, in modern Algiers.

Crētēs, -um, m., the Cretes (krō′tēs), better, Cretans, nationes of the island of Crete. 1.

sagittāriōs, -ri, m. [sagitta, an arrow], Bowman, archer. 3.

3. funditōrēs, -ōris, m. [funda, a sling], slinger. 4.

Baliāris, -e, adj., Balearic (bāl′ē-ar′ik), i.e. coming from the islands Majorca and Minorca. 1.

mittit: the auxiliaries probably entered the town on the south side, where the slope of the hill was very steep. The Belgae could not attack effectively on that side and would be likely to leave it unguarded.

quōrum adventū, "at their arrival"; an ablative of time, but with a suggestion of cause as well.

et...et, "not only...but also."

cum spē défēnsiōnis, "along with the hope of (making a successful) defense."

hostibus discessit, lit. "went away for the enemy" = "left the enemy." hostibus is a dative of reference. As the idea here is one of separation, it may be called a dative of separation.

potiundī: the older form of the gerundive, for potiundī. How can potissi, an intransitive verb, have a gerundive?

oppidānus, -a, -um, adj. [oppidum, town], of or pertaining to a town; in pl. as noun, townspeople, inhabitants of a town. 2.

defēnsiō, -onis, f. [défendi, defend], a defending, defense. 1.

prōpugnō, 1, intr., fight for, defend; rush out to fight, attack. 1.

paulisper, adv. [paulus, little], for a short time, for a little while. 3.

adeō, -ire, -ii, -itum, tr. and intr. [adō, go. App. 84], go to, approach, visit; assail, attack. *

fūmus, -i, m., smoke. 1.

3. mittit: the auxiliaries probably entered the town on the south side, where the slope of the hill was very steep. The Belgae could not attack effectively on that side and would be likely to leave it unguarded.

quōrum adventū, "at their arrival"; an ablative of time, but with a suggestion of cause as well.

et...et, "not only...but also."

cum spē défēnsiōnis, "along with the hope of (making a successful) defense."

hostibus discessit, lit. "went away for the enemy" = "left the enemy." hostibus is a dative of reference. As the idea here is one of separation, it may be called a dative of separation.


6. morātī, dēpopulātī: as morār and dēpopulāre are deponent verbs, their perfect participles have active meanings; therefore they agree with the subject of contendērunt. But as incēnsus is passive in meaning, the idea "having burned their villages" must be expressed by the ablative absolute.

7. quō: the adverb.

8. a...duōbus, "less than two miles away"; i.e. from Caesar's camp. ab is here used adverbially; mittis is the ablative of degree of difference, the comparative minus not affecting the construction. See App. 139, 6: G.-L. 296, R. 4: A. 407, c: B. 217, 3: H.-B. 416, d: H. 471, 4.

9. ut, "as."
atque ignibus significābātur, amplius milibus passuum octō in lātitūdinem patēbant.

8. Caesarō primō et propter multītūdinem hostium et propter eximiam opinionem virtūts proeliō supersedēre statuit; cotidiē tamen equestribus proelīis, quid hostis virtūte posset et quid nostri audērent, periclitābātur. Ubi nostrōs nōn esse inferiōres intellēxit, locō prō castrīs ad aciem instruendam

10. signiō, 1. [signum, sign- faciō, make], make signs; show, indicate, signify. 4.
   1. primō, adv. [primus, first], at first, in the first place. *
   2. eximius, -a, -um, adj. [eximō, take out], taken from the mass; hence choice, eminent. 1.
   3. supersedeō, -ēre, -sēdi, -sessum, intr. [sedeō, sit], sit above, be above, be superior to; refrain from. 1.
   4. pericēlitor, 1. tr. and intr. [periculum, trial, danger], try, test; be in danger or peril. 1.

milibus: ablative after the comparative amplus. The references on l. say only that plum, minus, amplus, and longus are not necessarily followed by the ablative.

Chap. 8. Caesar fortifies his position and prepares for battle.

1. multītūdinem: if the states sent the quotas promised in chap. 6, the total was 265,000 men; but probably not all were sent.

2. opinionem virtūts, "reputation for valor."


proelīis: ablative of separation.

nostri: especially the Gallic cavalry. The Belgae were thought to be better fighters than the Celtic Gauls.

5. The following description is less clear than most of Caesar's descriptions of places, so that it cannot be understood without constant reference to the plan. The camp and trenches were discovered in the course of excavations made at the order of Emperor Napoleon III. The ridge on which the camp lay is about two miles in length, extending

1: H.-B. 809; 610; 613, 1: H. 623; 626.


THIRD REFERENCES:

Possessive genitives
Direct object
Ablative absolute
nātūrā opportūnō atque idōneō, quod is collis ubi castra posita erant paululum ex plānitiē ēditus tantum adversus in lātitūdinem patēbat quantum loci aciēs īnstrūcta occupāre poterat, atque

6. opportūnus, -a, -um, adj., fit, opportune, lucky, suitable; favorable, advantageous. *
   idōneus, -a, -um, adj., fit, suitable, adapted. *
7. paululum, adv. [paulus, little], a very little. 

plānitiēs, -ēs, f. [plānus, level], level, ground, plain. 
ēditus, -a, -um, adj. [pf. part. of ēdō, give out, raise up], elevated, lofty. 

BATTLE ON THE AXONA

nearly east and west. The camp was at the east end, facing west. The Roman army was drawn up along the ridge, facing north. Therefore the front of the camp was the west side, looking toward the battle line; but the front of the hill was the north side, looking toward the enemy. Caesar calls the north and the south slopes of the hill its latera.

locō opportūnō, "since the place was suitable." The ablative absolute here has a causal meaning.

prō castrīs: i.e. to the west of the camp.

6. collis is the subject of patēbat, habēbat, and redībat. 
7. tantum . . . poterat, lit. "extended so much opposite (to the enemy) as of space a line drawn up could fill" = "was as wide on the side facing the enemy as a battle line could extend." 
   in lātitūdinem: i.e. from the camp to the west end of the hill. Perhaps we should call this the length of the hill.
8. locī: we should expect this partitive genitive to limit tantum rather than quantum.
ex utrāque parte lateris dēictūs, habēbat et in fronte lēniter
10 fastigātus paulātum ad plānītiem redibat, ab utrāque latere
eius collis trānsversam fossam obdūxit circiter passuum od et
ad extrēmās fossās castella cōnstituit ibique tormenta collocāvit,
nē, cum aciem instrūxisset, hostēs, quod tantum multūtūnde
pōterant, ab lateribus pugnatēs suōs circumvenire possent.

Hoc factō, duābus legiōnibus quās proximē cōnscripserat in
castrīs relictis, ut, sī quō opus esset, subsidiō dūci possent, reli-

9. uterque, utraque, utrumque,
adj. [uter, which of two], each of two,
either of two; both. *
dēictus, -ās, m. [dēiclō, cast down],
declivity, slope, descent. *
frōns, frontis, f, forehead; front. 3.
lēniter, adv. [lēnis, smooth], softly,
smoothly, gently, gradually. 2.

10. fastigātus, -a, -um, adj., slop-
ing. 1.
paulātum, adv [paulus, little], little
by little, by degrees, gradually. *

11. trānsversus, -a, -um, adj.
[trānsvertō, turn across], turned
across, cross. 1.

obdūcē, -dūcere, -dūxi, -ductum,
tr. [dūcē, lead], lead towards; extend,
dig. 1.

12. tormentum, -i, n. [torqueō,
twist], means of twisting; an engine for
hurling missiles, e.g. catapulta and ballis-
ta; windlass, hoist; device for torturing,
hence, torment, torture. 3.

16. quō, adv. [old dat. case of qui,
who, which], (1) interrogr., whither? to
what place? (2) rel., to which, to whom;
to where, whither; toward which;
where, wherein; (3) indef., to any place,
anywhere. *
opus, indecl. noun, n. [cf. opus,
work, deed], need, necessity; opus est,
it is necessary, there is need, the thing
needed being expressed either by the nom.
or the abl. (App. 140). *

9. ex... lateris, lit. “at each end
of the side” = “at each end”; i.e. the
east and west ends of the hill. utrāque
parte alone might mean either the ends
or the sides. As latus means one of the
long sides of the hill, utrāque parte lateris
must mean the ends.
in fronte: i.e. the northern slope.

10. ab utrāque latere, “on each
side”; i.e. on the northern and southern
slopes.

11. trānsversam, “at right angles”
to the ridge. The plan shows that one
tranch ran from the camp to the Miette,
the other from the camp to the Axona.

12. extrēmās: i.e. the outer ends.
tormenta: see Int. 63.

13. instrūxisset: implied indirect
discourse for the future perfect, for Ca-
esar’s thought was “that I may not be
surrounded when I shall have drawn up
my line.”

14. ab lateribus, “on the flanks.”
The trenches protected only the right
flank of the army, but the left was su-
ciently protected by the Miette.

15. quās... cōnscripserat: cf. 2,
1. These legions were not sufficiently
disciplined to be brought into the battle
unless it were necessary.

16. quō: the adverb; supply dūci;
“If there should be need of their being
led anywhere.”

subsidiō: dative of purpose.
WAR WITH THE BELGAE, B.C. 57

quás sex légionés pró castris in aciē cónstituit. Hostēs item suās cópiās ex castris éductās instruxérunt.

9. Palūs erat nōn magna inter nostrum atque hostium exercitum. Hanc sī nostri trānsīrent, hostēs expectābant; nostri autem, sī ab illis initium trānsēndi fīserit, ut impeditōs aggrederentur pārāti in armīs erant. Interim proelīo equestri inter duās aciēs contendēbātur. Ubi neutrī trānsēndi initium sī faciunt, secundiōre equitum proelīo nostri Caesār suōs in castra redūxīt. Hostēs prōtīnus ex eō locō ad flūmen Axōnam contendērunt; quod esse post nostra castra dēmōnstrātum est. Ibi vadis repertīs partem suārum cópiārum trādūcere cōnāti sunt, eō cōnsiliō, ut, sī possent, castellum cui praerēt Q. Titūrius lėgātus expugnāreāt pontemque interseciderent; sī

1. palūs, -ūdis, f., marsh, morass, swamp. *
5. neuter, -tra, -trum (gen. -trīus, dat. -trī, adj.  used as noun [ne- + uter, which of two], neither; in pl., neither side, neither party. 1.

Chap. 9-11. The Belgae return home without risking a decisive battle.

Chap. 9. Not venturing to attack Caesār, the Belgae attempt to pass him by a ford.

1. palūs erat, "there was a marsh"; i.e. the marshy ground along the Miete.
3. sī . . . fīserit, "if they should begin to cross." The clause depends on ut aggrederentur, and the subjunctive is due to implied indirect discourse; for Caesār’s thought was "I will have my men ready to attack if they shall begin." impeditōs: i.e. by crossing the marsh.

6. faciunt: historical present, for the more usual perfect after ubi.

7. prōtīnus, adv. [tenus, as far as], continuously; forthwith, immediately. 1.

11. intersecindō, -scindere, -scidī, -scissum, tr. [scindō, cut, destroy], cut through, cut in two; destroy. 1.

8. contenērunt: Caesār did not see this movement, probably because of an intervening forest.

9. vadis: the probable location of these fords is shown in the plan by crossed sabres.

10. eō cōnsiliō, ut, etc., "with this design, to storm, if they could, etc."

possent: implied indirect discourse for the future indicative; for they thought "we will storm if we shall be able." But praerēt is indicative, because it is an explanation added by Caesār, not a part of their thought.


6. nātūrā: case? App. 149: G.-L. 397:


THIRD REFERENCE:
Ablative of means
minus potuissent, agrōs Rēmōrum populārentur, qui magnō nobis ūsui ad bellum gerendum erant, / commeātūque nostrōs prohibērent.

10. Caesar certior factus ab Titūriō omnem equītātum et levis armātūrae Numidās, funditōrēs sagittāriōisque pontem trādūcit atque ad eōs contendit. Ācriter in eō locō pugnātum est. Hostēs impeditōs nostrī in flūmine aggressi magnum 3 eōrum numerum occidērunt; per eōrum corpora reliquōs audācissimō trānsire cōnantēs multitudine tēlōrum repulērunt; primōs, qui trānsierant, equitātū circumventōs interfēcērunt. Hostēs ubi et dē expugnandō oppidō et dē flūmine trānseundō

18. ego, mei (App. 51), first pers. pron., 1; pl. nōs, we, us, etc. *

19. āsūs, -ās, m. [itor, use], use, experience, practice, skill; service, advantage; need, necessity; āsūs est, there is need; āsūl esse or āsūb esse, be of advantage or service; āsū venire, come by necessity, happen. *

20. levis, -e, adj., light (in weight), slight; light-minded, fickle, inconstant.

21. armātūra, -ārō, f. [armō, arm], armor, equipment; levis armātūrae, light-armed. 2.

12. minus, "not," as is usual after ei. potuissent stands for a future perfect indicative of the direct form. populārentur, prohibērent: in the same construction as expugnārent.

Chap. 10. The Belgae are repulsed at the ford and decide to return home.

1. equītātum: the cavalry and light-armed troops were not equal to the legions in fighting power, but they could get to the ford more quickly.

2. in eō locō: i.e. at the ford.

3. nostrī is the subject of occidērunt, repulērunt, and interfēcērunt.

4. ubi introduces interdērunt, vidērunt, and coeptī.

300; 301: A. 281; 283: B. 160, 1, 2; H.-B. 316, 317, 2: H. 353.


THIRD REFERENCES:

Apposition
Dative with adjectives
Ablative of cause
 PURPOSE clauses
spem sè fefellerse intellèxerunt neque nostròs in locum iniqui-
òrem prògredi pugnandi causa vidèrunt, atque ipsòs rès in
frumentària désicere coepìt, conciliò convocàtò còstituèrunt
optimum esse domum suam quemque revertì, et, quòrum in
finès primum Romàni exercitum intròdùxissent, ad eòs défen-
dendòs undique convenìrent, ut potius in suís quam in aliènis
finibus désertàrent et doméstìcis còpiis rei frumentàriàs úter-
entur. Ad eàm sententiam cum reliquis causis haec quoque
ratìò èòs dèdùxit, quod Diviciàcum atque Haeduòs finibus
Bellovacòrùm appropinquàre cognòverant. His persuàdèrì ut

désertò, 1, intr. [certò, contend], fight to the end, fight out, struggle
fierce or earnestly, vie, contend. *
doméstìcus, -a, -um, adj. [domus, house], belonging to the home, domes-
tic; in of one’s own land. 1.

tenentìa, -ae, f. [sentiì, think], way of thinking, opinion, senti-
ment; purpose, design, scheme, plan; decision, resolve; verdict; sentence. *

appropinquà, 1, intr. [ad + pro-
pinquus, near], come near or close, ap-
proach.

fallò, fallere, fefeller, falsum, fr.,
deceive, cheat, disappoint. 2.
iniquus, -a, -um, adj. [in+-aequus,
even, just], uneven; unjust, unfair; un-
favorable, disadvantaged. *

prògrediò, -gerdi, -gressus
sum, intr. [gradior, step], step or go
forward, advance, proceed, go. *
déscìdiò, -scere, -scì, -sectur, 
tr. and intr. [facìó, make], fail, desert,
fall away, revolt. *
potius, adv. [comp. of potìs, 
able], rather. 2.

ubi . . . intellèxèrunt, lit. “when
they saw that their hope about the town
to be taken . . . had disappointed them”
= “when they saw that they were dis-
appointed in their hope of taking the
town.”

neque = et nòm.

prògrediò: i.e. the le-
gions would not descend the hill to the
Mittle.

ipsòs: the enemy. It requires
thorough organization to supply so large
an army. Caesar’s superiority to the
Gallic leaders is always evident in this
matter no less than on the battle field.
He sometimes marched into the heart of
a hostile country, where it is hard to
see how he secured supplies; but we hear
only once of a failure to keep his army
well fed.

còstituèrunt has two objects,

(1) optimum esse, “that it was best” (in-
direct discourse), and (2) (ut) cooennìentì,
“to assemble” (a substantive volitive
clause).

intròdùxissent: implied indirect
discourse for the future perfect indica-
tive. Their thought was “let us assem-
bly to protect those into whose territory
the Romans shall have led.”

cum, “in addition to.”

Diviciàcum . . . appropinquàre:
in accordance with Caesar’s directions.
See 5, 7.

finibus: indirect object of the com-
pound verb appropinquàre.

his persuàdèrì nòm poterat,
lit. “it could not be persuaded to these.”

Turn into English. It will be remem-
bered that the Bellovaci had reason to
be lukewarm in their allegiance to the
confederation. See note on 5, 7.
diānus morārentur neque suis auxilium ferrent nōn poterat.

1. Eā rē cōnstituā secundā vigiliā magnō cum strepitū
ac tumultū castris ēgressī nūlō certō ārdine neque imperiō,
cum sibi quisque primum itineris locum peteret et domum
pervenīre properaret, fēcērunt ut cōnsimilis fugae profectiō
5 vidērētur. Hāc rē statim Caesar per speculātōres cognītā

19. neque = et nōn.

Chap. 11. The Belgae are pursued with great slaughter.

1. secundā vigiliā: i.e. during the second quarter of the night. As
the nights were short, this would be between
ten and twelve.


18. cogōnerant: construction?
App. 248: G.-L. 523, n. 1; 524; 525, 3: A.
572: B. 290, 1: H.-B. 549; 552, 1: H. 588, 1, 3.

1, 2: A. 367: B. 187, II, a, b: H.-B. 362,
364, 2: H. 426, 2, 3.


THIRD REFERENCES:
Predicate adjectives Indirect object
Partitive genitives Ablative of agent
Gerund Gerundive
Two objects with compound verbs
Substantive volitives (purpose) clauses
Clauses with ubi, postquam, etc.
Dependent clauses in ind. discourse
Insidiās veritus, quod quā dē causā disœderent nōndum per-
spexerat, exercitum equitātumque castris continuat. Primā
lūce cōnfīrmātā rē ab expōrātōribus, omnem equitātum, qui
novissimum agmen morārētur, praesīsit. His Q. Pedium et
L. Aurunculeium Cottam lēgātōs praeōcit. T. Labiēnum lēgātum cum legiōnibus tribus subsequi iussit. Hī novissimōs
adHORTARĪT ad multa milia passuum prōsecūtī magnam multī-
dīnem eōrum fugientium concīdēreunt, cum ab extrēmō agmine
ad quōs ventum erat cōnsīstere fortiterque impetum nos-
trōrum militum sustinērent, prōrēs, quod abesse ā periculō vidērentur neque āūlā necessitate neque imperiō cōntinērentur,
exaudītō clāmōre perturbātīs ordīnibus omnēs in fugā sibi
praesidium pōnerent. Ita sine āūlō periculō tantam eōrum

6. perspiciō, -spicere, -specti, -spectūm, tr. [speciō, look], look or see
through, view, examine, inspect; per-
ceive, realize, learn, find out, ascer-
tain. *
10. Aurunculeius, -i, m., Lucius
Aurunculeius Cotta (lū'shyūs aw-rūŋ-g'-
kū-lē'yūs cōt'a), one of Caesar's lieuten-
ants. 5.
11. subsequor, -sequi, -secūtus
sum, tr. and intr. [sequor, follow], fol-
low closely, follow up or on, follow. *
13. fugiō, fugere, fugī, fugītum, tr.
and intr. [fugiō, flight], intr., flee, run
away, escape; tr., shun, avoid. 4.
14. fortiter, adv. [fortis, brave],
bravely, stoutly, courageously. *
43), former, previous, prior, first; pl. as
nouns, those in front. 9.
16. necessitās, -tās, f. [necesse, necessary], necessity, constraint, need.
2.
17. exaudī, 4, tr. [audīō, hear],
hear (from a distance). 1.
clāmor, -ōris, m. [clāmō, cry out],
outcry, noise, din, clamor. *
perturbātō, 1, tr. [turbō, disturb], dis-
turb greatly, throw into confusion, em-
barrass, disturb; alarm, terrify. *

6. quod perspexerat: a causal
clause.
7. castris, "in camp"; but the ab-
sence of in shows that the construction
is means, not place.
8. quī morārētur, "to delay"; a pur-
pose clause.
11. lēgātum: see Int. 38.
subsequi: the legions could not over-
take the fugitives, but if the latter
stopped to resist the cavalry the legions
could make short work of them.
13. fugientium, "in their flight."
sum ... cōnsīstere, "since (those)
in the rear, whom (our men) had overtak-
en, would stop." cōnsīstere, sustinērēnt,
and pōnerent are imperfects of repeated
action: all through the day the cavalry
kept overtaking bodies of the enemy,
who were killed in the manner described
in the text.
14. ventum erat is impersonal, but,
as usual, the translation must be per-
sonal.
15. prōrēs, "(but) those [of the en-
emy] in advance."
quod vidērentur neque cōntinē-
374: G.-L. 663, 1: A. 593: B. 334, 1: H.-B.
539: H. 659.
16. neque ... neque, "and ... not
... nor."
multitudinem nostrī interfecerunt quantum fuit dieī spatium; sub occasum sólis sequi dēstiterunt sēque in castra, ut erat imperātum, recēperunt.

12. Postridīē diē Çæsār, priusquam sē hostēs ex terrōre ac fugā reciperent, in finēs Suessiōnum, qui proximi Rēmīs erant, exercitum dūxit et magnō itinere ad oppidum Noviodūnum contendit. Id ex itinero oppugnāre cōnātus, quod vacuum ab défēnsōribus esse audiēbat, propter lātitūdinem fossae mūrique altitudinem paucīs défēndentibus expugnāre

19. quantum ... spatium, lit. "as was the length of the day" = "as the length of the day permitted."

Chap. 12-15. The Suessiones, the Bellovaci, and the Ambiani surrender to Çæsār.

Chap. 12. Çæsār takes the chief town of the Suessiones.

1. priusquam recipiēnt: mode? App. 236, b: G.-L. 577: A. 551, b: B. 393, 1, b: H.-B. 507, 4, b: H. 606, 2. Now that Çæsār had broken up the combination of states, it only remained for him to subdue them one by one.


3. magnō itinere: about 28 miles. Çæsār recrossed the Axona and marched along its south bank. See map facing p. 128.

4. ex itinere: i.e. before making camp and without letting the soldiers rest, although they were tired after their unusually long march (Int. 54). Çæsār wanted to take the town before its garrison could be reinforced. On this method of taking towns see Int. 60.

6. paucīs défēndentibus, "although there were but few defenders"; absolute with adversative meaning.


THIRD REFERENCES:

Subjective genitive
Ablative of separation
Ablative of accompaniment
Ablative of manner
Indirect question.
nón potuit. Caesar muniítis vineáüs agere quaæque ad oppug-
nandum úsui erant comparäre coepit. Interim omnis ex fugá
Suessiônnum multitudó in oppidum proxímá nocte convénit.
Celeriter vineáüs ad oppidum áctis, aggere iactó turribusque in
cónstitútis, magnitúdine operum, quae neque viderant ante
Galli neque audierant, et celeritáte Rómanórum permótí
légátús ad Caesarem dē deditiône mittunt et, petentibus Rómis
ut conservárentur, impetrant.

13. Caesar, obsidibus acceptís prímís civitátes atque ipsíus
Galbæ régis duóbus filiís armáisque omnibus ex oppidó tráditis,
in deditiônem Suessiônnes accipit exercitumque in Bellovacós
dúcit. Qui cum sé suaque omnia in oppidum Bratuspantium
contulissent, atque ab eō oppidó Caesar cum exercitú circiter
milia passuum quinque abesset, omnés maiórés náút ex oppidó

7. vineás, -ae, f. [vinum, wine], vine arbor, hence, a shed for the defense of a besieging party. 4.
10. agger, aggeris, m., material for earthworks, earth; embankment, mound; rampart. *
turris, -is, f., tower. *
11. magnitúdo, -inis, f. [magnus, great], greatness, great size, size, extent; stature (corporum); violence (venti); severity (poenae); magnitúdo-
12. celerités, -tátis, f. [celer, swift], swiftness, quickness, speed. *
14. cónservávō, i, tr. [servō, save], save, spare, protect; observe, maintain. *
6. nátus, -ās, m. [nāscor, be born], birth; maiórés náút, greater by birth, elders. 3.

7. vineás agere, "to move up the vineae." See Int. 62, d.
quaæque, "and (those things) which." 3.
úsul: dative of purpose.
9. in oppidum: they probably entered from the north by crossing the Axona. There may have been a bridge which Caesar had not had time to destroy.
10. aggere turribusque: see Int. 61.
13. petentibus Rémis: on the relations between the Remi and the Suessi-
one(nes) obtained their request." The verb is used absolutely.

Chap. 13. Caesar marches against the Bellovaci, who sue for peace.
1. obsidibus, "as hostages"; in apposition with prímís, which is used as a noun, and with filiís.
2. Galbae: who had been head of the league; see 4, 20.
3. Bellovacós: the strongest Belgian state. For the direction of his march see map facing p. 162.
6. ex oppidó: is ex needed with this verb? See 11, 2.

14. cónservárentur: tense? App. 302; 263; 204, b: G.-L. 509, 1, 3, 1, a; 510:
A. 483; 488; 483, c: B. 287; 288, 3; H.-B. 476, 491, 1, 2: H. 544; 544; 54d.
14. impetrant, "they [the Suessi-
THIRD REFERENCE:
Historical present
egressi manūs ad Caesarem tendere et vōce significāre coeptum, sēsē in eius fidem ac potestātem venire neque contra populum Rōmānum armīs contendere. Item, cum ad oppidum accessisset castraque ibi pōneret, puerī mulierēsque ex mūrō passis manibus suō more pācem ab Rōmānis petiērent.

14. Prō his Diviciācus (nam post diessum Belgārum dimissis Haeduōrum cōpiēs ad eum revertērat) facit verba: Bellovacōs omni tempore in fidē atque amicitīā civitātīs Haeduae fuisse; impulsōs ab suīs principibus, qui dicerent Haeduōs a Caesare in servitūtem redāctōs omnēs indignitātēs contumēliaque perferre, et ab Haeduīs défécisse et populō Rōmānō bellum intulisse. Qui eīs cōnsili principēs fuissent, quod

7. tendō, tendere, tetendi, tentum or tēnsum, tr., stretch, stretch out, extend; stretch a tent, pitch; encamp. 1. vōx, vōcis, f., voice, tone; outcry, cry; word; pl., words, language, seriously translated according to context, as entreaties, complaints, tales, etc. *

11. pandō, pandere, pandi, passum, tr., spread or stretch out, extend; passīs capillus, with disheveled hair; passīs manibus, with outstretched hands. 2.

1. diessus, -ās, m. [discēdō, depart], departure, withdrawal, absence.

4. impleō, -pellere, -pull, -pulsum, tr. [in + pellō, drive], drive or urge on, incite, instigate, impel.

5. redigō, -igere, -ēgī, -āctum, tr. [red- + agō, put in motion], bring back, bring under; render, make; reduce. *

indignitās, -ātīs, f. [indignus, unworthy], unworthiness; outrage, disgrace.

7. vōce significāre: the Romans did not understand the language, but did understand their meaning. sēsē ... contendere depends on this expression.

10. puerī, "children," both boys and girls.

ex mūrō, "on the wall." The Romans thought of the entreaties as coming "from the wall."


1. diessum: i.e. the breaking up of the great army at the Axōna.

3. omni tempore fuisse, "had always been." Diviciācus claims the Bellovacī as members of the league which was headed by the Haeduī. See Int. 29.

4. impulsōs ... et défécisse et intulisse, "that they [the Bellovacī] instigated ... had both revolted and made."

5. redāctōs perferre, "had been reduced ... and were enduring."

7. qui, "those who." The unexpressed antecedent is the subject of pro-fūgitisse.


THIRD REFERENCES:
Ablative of specification
Coordinate relatives
intellegérent quantum calamitátem civitátis intulissent, in
Britanniam profúgisse. Petere nón sōlum Bellovacós sed etiam
pró his Hæduós ut suá cléméntiá ac mánsuétúdine in eós 10
útatór. Quod sì fécerit, Hæduórum auctóritátem apud
omnés Belgás amplificátorum; quórum auxiliis atque opibus,
sí qua bella inciderint, sustentáre cónsuerint.

15. Caesar honóris Diviciáci atque Hæduórum causá sésé
eós in fidem receptúrum et cónservatúrum dixit, et, quod erat
cívitas magna inter Belgás auctóritáte atque hominum multi-
túdine praestábát, sæcentós obсидés pospocit. His tráditis
omnibusque armis ex oppidó collátis, ab eó locó in finés 5
Ambiáñórum pervénit, quí sē suaque omnia sine morá dédide-

9. profugiō, -fugere, -fugi, -fugi-
tum, intr. [fugió, flee], flee, flee from,
run away, escape. 4.
10. cléméntiá, -ae, f. [clémens,
gentle], gentleness, kindness, mercy,
clemency. 2.
mánsuétudó, -inis, f. [mánsustus,
tame], gentleness, clemency, compas-
sion. 2.
12. amplificō, 1, tr. [amplus, large
+fació, make], extend, enlarge, increase,
expand. 1.
13. incidō, -cidere, -cidi, —, intr.
[cadó, fall], fall into or upon; fall in
with, meet; happen, arise. 2.
4. sæcenti, -ae, -a (DO), card. num.
adj. [sex, six], six hundred. *
6. mora, -ae, f., delay. 3.
dédó, -dere, -didi, -ditum, tr. [dó,
give], give up or over, yield, surrender;
devote; sè déderé, submit, surrender.
*

8. quantum intulissent: indirect
question.
9. Britanniam: the relations be-
tween the Belgae and the Britons appear
to have been rather close. See 4, 19.
10. suá, "his usual."
11. quod sì fécerit, "if he should do
this." The direct form meant "if you
shall have done this."
12. quórum: the antecedent is Bel-
gás.
13. qua: the usual form of the ne-
ter plural, nominative and accusative,
when quis is used as an indefinite.

Chap. 15. Caesar accepts the sur-
render of the Bellovací and the Ambi-
ni. The character of the Nervii.
1. honóris causá, lit. "for the sake
of the honor of" = "in deference to."
2. eós, i.e. the Bellovací, is the ob-
ject of receptúrum et cónservatúrum (esse).
3. multítúdine: ablative of specifi-
cation.
6. Ambiáñórum: see map facing p.
162.

429, 1.
11. utátor: tense? App. 202; 203;
270, a: G.-L. 509, 1; 510; 654, n.: A. 483;
488; 566, b: B. 267; 318: H. 542; 544; 644, 1,
131, 1: A. 181, a: B. 116, 1: H.-B. 163, 1:
H. 238.

THIRD REFERENCES:
Dative with compound verbs
Ablative with litor, etc.
runt. Eōrum finēs Nervīi attingēbant; quōrum dē nātūrā mōribusque Caesar cum quaereret, sic reperiēbat: Nūllum aditum esse ad eōs mercātōribus; nihil patī vīni reliquārumque rērum ad lūxuriam pertinentium īnferī, quod his rēbus relanguēscere animōs et remittī virtūtem existimārent; esse hominēs ferōs magnaeque virtūtis; incerpitāre atque incūsāre reliquōs Belgās, quī sē populō Rōmānō dēdīdissent patriamque virtūtem próliēcissent; cōnfirmāre sēśe neque lēgātōs missūrōs neque ālum condīciōnem pācis acceptūrōs.

16. Cum per eōrum finēs trīduum īter fēcisset, inveniēbat ex captīvis Sabīm flūmen ā castrīs suīs nōn amplius milia


9. aditus, -ās, m. [adeō, go to], approach, means of approach, right of approach, access. *
vinum, -ī, n., wine. 2.
10. lūxuria, -ae, f., luxury, high living. 1.
11. relanguēscō, -ēscere, -langni, —, intr. [re-=]langescō, become weak], become weak or enfeebled. 1.
remittō, -mittere, -mītēr, -misum, tr. [re-=]mittō, send], send or despatch back, return, restore, remit; release, relax, give up; remissus, pf. part, as adj., mild. *
12. increpā, 1, tr. [freq. of increpō, chide], chide, blame; make sport of, taunt. 2.
incūsō, 1, tr. [causa, cause or case], bring a case or charge against; censure, upbraid, blame. 2.
13. pātrius, -a, -um, adj. [pater, father], fatherly; ancestral. 1.
1. invenīō, -venire, -vēnī, -ventum, tr. [venīō, come], come upon, find, meet with; find out, learn. 2.
amplīō, ado. [amplius, large], largely; comp., amplius, more, farther. *

7. quōrum, "their."
8. nūllum ... mercātōribus, "that traders had no access to them."
9. patī, "that (they) allowed."
vinī, rērum: partitive genitives with nihil.
10. quod existimārent: causal clause in indirect discourse.
13. dēdīdissent, próliēcissent: may have been subjunctive in the direct form.

14. cōnfirmāre sēśe neque missūrōs, "they declared that they would neither send."

Chap. 16-28. Caesar narrowly escapes defeat by the Nervīi, but secures their submission after almost entirely destroying their army.
Chap. 16. The Nervīi encamp at the Sābis, prepared for battle.
2. Sābis: note the accusative in -im.
passuum x abesse; tràns id flūmen omnēs Nerviōs cōnsēdiisse adventumque ibi Rōmānōrum expectāre unā cum Atrebātibus et Viromanduīs, finitimīs suis (nam his utrisque persuāserant uti eandem belli fortūnam experīmentur); expectāri etiam ab iis Atuatucōrum cōpiās atque esse in itinere; mulierēs quīque per aetātem ad pugnam innūtilēs vidērentur in eum locum coniēcisse quō propter palūdēs exercitui aditus nōn esset.

17. Hīs rēbus cognītīs explōrātōrēs centurīōnēsque praemittit qui locum idōneum castrīs dēliant. Cum ex dēditiciis Belgis reliquisque Gallis complūrēs Caesarem secūtī unā iter facerent, quidam ex hīs, ut posteā ex captūris cognitum est, eōrum diērum consuetūdīnem itineris nostri exercītūs perspectā, nocte ad Nerviōs pervēnērunt atque his dēmonstrārunt inter

For the course of the river see map facing p. 162.


3. tràns flūmen: i.e. on the southern bank. For the exact location see plan, p. 191.

5. finitimīs: in apposition with Atrēbātibus et Viromanduīs. See map.

6. abīs: i.e. by the Nerviī.

7. quīque, "and (the men) who."

8. eum locum quō, "a place to which."

9. coniēcisse: as subject supply ēōs, referring to the Nerviī.

War with the Belgae, B.C. 57

6. experīor, -perīrī, -pertus sum, tr., prove, try, test, experience. *
3. aetās, aetātis, f., period of life, age. 2.

innūtilis, -e, adj. [in- + nūtilis, useful], useless, worthless; disadvantageous. 2.
1. centurīōs, -ōnis, m. [centum, a hundred], centurion, the commander of the century, the sixtieth part of a legion. *

4. quidam, quaedam, quiddam and quidam, quaedam, quoddam, indef. prom. (App. 63 and b), a certain one, some one; a certain, some, a; a kind of. *

5. consuetūdīnēs, -inis, f. [cōnsuēscō, become accustomed], habit, custom, practice; mode of life. *


Chap. 17. The Nerviī plan to surprise Caesar.

2. ex ... Gallis: equivalent to a partitive genitive.

3. Caesarem ... facerent, "had joined Caesar and were marching along with him."

5. eōrum ... exercītūs, "our army's usual order of march during those days." Both diērum and exercītūs depend on itinerīs. On the order of march see Int. 68.

6. inter singulās legiōnēs, "between every two legions."

War with the Belgae, B.C. 57


Third References:
Indirect object with intransitive verbs

Dative of possessor
singulās legiōnēs impedimentōrum magnum numerum intercīdere, neque esse quicquam negōti, cum prima legiō in castra vēnisset reliquaeque legiōnēs magnum spatiōn abessent, hanc sub sardinōs adorīri; quā pulsā impedimentisique direptis, futūrum ut reliquae contra consistoriē non auditionē. Aduvābat etiam eōrum consiliō quī rem deferēbant, quod Nervii antiquitus, cum equitātū nihil possent (neque enim ad hoc tempus ei rei student, sed quicquid possunt pedestribus valent cōpiis), quō facilium finitīmōrum equitātūm, si praedandi causā ad eōs vēnissent, impedīrent, teneris arboribus incisīs atque

10. diripīō, -ripere, -ripul, -rep- tum, tr. [rāpō, setē], rend or tear asunder; plunder, pillage. 1.
11. adiuvō, -iuvāre, -iuvērō, -iuvē-tūm, tr. [iuvō, aid], aid, help, assist; contribute to; support. 1.
14. quisquis, quicquid, indef. (or generalizing) rel. pron. (App. 60, a), whoever, whatever. 1.
pedester, -tris, -tre, adj. [pēs, foot], on foot, pedestrian; pedestrēs cōpiās, infantry. *
15. praedō, 1, tr. [praeda, booty], make booty, plunder, rob, despoil. *
16. tener, -era, -erum, adj., tender.

arbor, -oris, f., tree. 2.
incidō, -cidēre, -cīdi, -cīsum, tr. [caedō, cut], cut into. 1.

7. impedimentōrum: see Int. 46. numerum, "amount." Caesar is thinking of the number of pack animals.
8. neque ... negōti, "and that it would be [lit. was] no trouble."
castra, "camping-ground."
9. vēnisset, abessent: indirect discourse for the future perfect and the future, respectively. The direct form meant "when ... shall have come and ... shall be distant."
spatiōn: accusative of extent of space.
10. sardīnīs: see Int. 37.
11. futūrum (esse) ut, "the result would be that." This clause is connected with the preceding by a relative, so that it appears to be a subordinate clause in indirect discourse. Why is the infinitive used instead of the subjunctive?
adiuvābat: the subject is the clause quōd ... effecerant; "the fact that the Nervii had made, etc., assisted."

14. el rel: i.e. cavalry.
quicquid ... cōpiis, "whatever strength they have consists in infantry."
16. vēnissent: implied indirect discourse for the future perfect indicative. Their thought was "that we may check the cavalry if they shall have come."
teneris ... interiectis: a row of young trees was planted around a field; their trunks were partly cut through (incise) and their tops bent over (inflexīa). The tops would then continue growing slowly, and many branches would spring out from the sides of the trunk below the cut (crescis ... ēндīs). In all thin spots bramble bushes were planted (rubís ... interiectis).
inflexīs, crēbrisque in lātitūdinem rāmis ēnātīs, et rubīs sentibusque interiectīs, effēcerant ut īnstar mūrī hae saepēs müni menta praeberent quō nōn modo nōn intrārī, sed nē perspicī quidem possēt. His rēbus cum iter agminis nostrī 20

17. rāmus, -I, m., branch, bough. 1. ēnāscor, -nāscī, -nātus sum, intr. [nāscor, be born], be born from; spring up. 1.
rubus, -I, m., bramble. 1.
sentis, -is, m., briar. 1.
18. intericiō, -icere, -icēr, -icērum, tr. [iacīō, hurl. App. 1], throw or hurl between; put or place between; interiectus, pf. part. as adj., lying between, intervening, interspersed; mediocrī

interiectō spatiō, not far away. 4.
instar, a., indect., likeness; with gen., like. 1.
saecps, -is, s., hedge. 2.
münilentum, -I, a. [müniō, fortify], defense, fortification. 1.
19. praebeō, 3, tr. [praæ + habeō, hold], hold out, offer, furnish, present. 3.
intrō, 1, tr., go or walk into, enter, penetrate. 1.

Battle on the Sabis

18. effēcerant ut praeberent, "they had made these hedges furnish."
19. quō . . . possēt: a clause of characteristic. Translate personally, "into which one not only could not penetrate, but could not even see."
impediriētur, nōn omittendum sibi cōnsilium Nervii existimā-
vērunt.

18. Loci nātūra erat haec quem locum nostrī castrīs
dēlegerant. Collis ab summō aequālíter dēclīvis ad flūmen
Sabim, quod suprā nōmināvimus, vergēbat. Ab eō flūmine
parī acclīvītāte collis nāscēbātur adversus huic et contrārius,
s passūs circiter ducentōs īnfimus apertus, ab superīōre parte
silvestris, ut nōn facile intrōrus perspicī posset. Intra eās
silvās hostēs in occultō sēsē continēbant; in apertō locō secun-

21. omissō, -mittere, -misi, -missum, tr. [ob+mittere, send], let go or
fall, drop; give up, neglect, disregard. 1.

2. aequālíter, adv. [aequālis, equal; aequus, equal], equally, evenly. 1.

dēclīvis, -ē, adj. [clīvis, a slope], sloping downward, declining; n. pl. as
nouns, slopes. 2.

3. nōminō, 1, tr. [nōmen, name],
call by name, name, mention. 1.

4. acclīvītās, -tātis, f. [acclīvis, ascending], ascent, slope. 1.

nāscor, nāsci, nātus sum, intr., be
born or produced; rise, spring up, be
reared; be found. 3.

Chap. 18. Description of the battle
field.

1. haec, "as follows."
locum: omit in translation.
nostri: i.e. the scouts and centurions
who had been sent on ahead; 17, 1.

2. collis: north of the river. See
contrārius, -a, -um, adj. [contrā,
against], lying over against, opposite,
facing; ex contrāriō, on the contrary. 3.

6. silvestris, -e, adj. [silva, forest],
of a wood, wooded; in a wood or forest. 1.

intrōrus, adv. [intrō, within+vers-
sus, pr. part. of vertō, turn], within, on
the inside. 1.

7. occultus, -a, -um, adj., covered,
hidden, concealed, secret; n. as noun,
a hidden place, an ambush. 2.

secundum, prep. with acc. [sequor,
follow], along; in the direction of; be-
sides, in addition to. 3.

plan, p. 191.

summō, "the top"; the ablative sin-
gular of summus, used as a noun.

4. collis: south of the river.

5. passūs . . . apertus, "at the
bottom bare of trees for two hundred
paces."

2. dēligant: tense? App. 202; 203;
204, b: G.-L. 509, 1, 2, 1, a; 510: A. 468;
483; 485, e: B. 267; 268, 3: H.-B. 478; 491,
1, 2: H. 543; 544; 546.

6. dēmōnstrārunt: form? App. 72:
G.-L. 131, 1: A. 181, a: B. 116, 1: H.-B.
163, 1: H. 238.

11. audērent: mode? App. 229, b:
G.-L. 553, 3: A. 560, 2: B. 297, 2: H.-B.
521, 3, a: H. 571, 1.

12. quod effecerant: construction?
App. 248: G.-L. 524; 523, 3: A. 572: B. 299,
dum flumen paucae stationes equitum videbantur. Fluminis erat altitudine pedum circiter trium.

19. Caesar equitatu praemissae subsequebatur omnibus copiis; sed ratiō ordineque agminis aliter se habebat ac Belgae ad Nervios detulerant. Nam quod hostibus appropinquabat, consuetudine sua Caesar sex legiones expeditas ducebat; post eas totius exercitus impedimenta collocatur; inde duae legiones, quae proximae conscriptae erant, totum agmen claudebant praesidiisque impedimentis erant. Equites nostri cum funditobribus sagittariisque flumen transgressi cum hostium equitatu proelium commisierunt. Cum se illi identidem in silvis ad suos recipierunt ac rursus ex silva in nostris impetum facerent, neque nostrī longius quam quem ad finem porrecta loca aperta pertinere

sum, tr. [gradior, step], step over, cross. 1.
9. identidem, adv. [Idem, the same], repeatedly. 1.
11. porrige, -rigere, -rēxi, -rēctum, tr. [prō+regō, keep straight], extend; porrectus, pf. part. as adj., extended, in extant. 1.

dōque is thought of as a single idea, almost "method of arrangement."
4. expeditas, "without baggage"; whereas the Nervii had been told that each legion would be separated from the next by a long train of baggage.
5. legiones... conscriptae erant: as the enemy was known to be in front, Caesar did not expect these legions to be attacked. The same legions were left in camp at the Axona; 8, 15.
10. recipierent, facerent, "kept retiring, kept making."
11. longius... finem, "than the limit to which." Our idiom would lead


THIRD REFERENCES:
Place to which
Descriptive ablative
Adjectives with partitive meaning
nēbant cēdentēs insequī audērent, interim legionēs sex quae
primae vēnerant opere dimēnsō castra mūnire coepercunt. Ubi
prima impedimenta nostri exercitūs ab ipsis in silvis abditī
latēbant visa sunt, quod tempus inter eōs committendi proeli
convenerat, ut intrā silvās aciem ordinēsque constituerant
atque ipsis sēsē confirmāverant, subitō omnibus cōpiis prōvo-
lāvērunt impetumque in nostrōs equitēs fēcērunt. His facile
pulsīs ac prōturbātīs, incrēdībilī celeritāte ad flūmen dēcūr-
rērunt, ut paene ūnō tempore et ad silvās et in flūmine hostēs
vidērunt. Eādem autem celeritāte adversō colle ad nostrā
castra atque eōs qui in operē occupāti erant contendērunt.

20. Caesarī omnia ūnō tempore erant agenda: vexillum

12. cēdō, cēdere, cessī, cessum, intr., go; go away; give way, yield,
retreat. 2.
13. dimētiō, -mētīri, -mēnus sum, tr. [mētīri, measure], measure out or
off. 2.
15. lateō, -āre, -ul, intr., escape
notice, lurk, lie concealed or hidden. 2.
17. subitō, adv. [subitus, sudden],
suddenly, unexpectedly, of a sudden. *

us to expect ad finem, ad quem, but the
antecedent is attached into the relative
clause.

porrēcta pertinēbant, lit. "extended
stretched out"="extended." The whole
clause quem ... pertinēbant means "to
the edge of the woods."

12. cēdentēs; sc. eōs; i.e. the enemy.
13. dimēnso: this is one of a few
depenent verbs whose perfect participles
have a passive meaning.
14. prīma impedimenta, "the head
of the baggage train."
15. quod tempus, "the time which."
16. convenerat, "had been agreed
upon."

ut ... ipsī sēsē confirmāverant,
"as ... they had pledged each other

4. consūtūdine: case? App. 142, a:
414, a: H. 475, 3.
6. praesidiō impedimentīs: con-

prōvolō, 1, intr. [volō, fly], fly or rush
forth. 1.
19. prōturbō, 1, tr. [turbō, disturb],
drive in confusion; dialodge. 1.

dēcurrō, -currēre, -currīrī, -curr-
sum, intr. [currō, run], run down, hury down. 4.

1. vexillum, -I, n., banner, flag,
standard. 1.

(to do).

20. ut vidēruntur: a result clause.
21. adversō colle, lit. "by way of
the hill facing them" = "up the hill."
For the case of colle, see App. 144: G.-L.
22. operē: i.e. of fortifying the
camp.
The attack was a complete surprise.
The Roman scouts had not done their
work properly, and Caesar himself ap-
ppears to have been careless in not keep-
ing a part of his men under arms while
the enemy were so near.

Chap. 20. The critical position of
the Romans, and the value of their
discipline.

1. Caesarī omnia erant aenda

389, 1: B. 191, 2, 3: H.-B. 360, 4: H. 433. 2

THIRD REFERENCES.

Double datives

Ablative of accordance.
prōpōndendum, quod erat insigne cum ad arma concurrī oportēret, signum tubā dandum, ab opere revocandi militēs, qui paulō longius aggeris petendi causā processerant arcessendi, aciēs instruenda, militēs cohortandi, signum dandum. Quārum rērum magnam partem temporis brevitās et incursus hostium impediēbat. Hīs difficultātibus duae rés erant subsidiō, scientia atque ūsus militum, quod, superiōribus proeliis exercitātī, quid fieri oportēret nōn minus commodē ipsī sibi praeścribere quam ab aliis docērī poterant; et quod ab opere singulisque legiōnibus singulōs lēgātōs Caesar discēdere nisi mūnītis castrīs

2. concurrō, -currere, -currī, -currīsum, intr. [currō, run], run or rush together; hurry, run, rush; run to the rescue; come, gather. 2.
3. tūba, -ae, f., trumpet. 1.
revocō, 1, tr. [re-, vocō, call], call back, recall; withdraw. 2.
4. paulō, adv. [paulus, little], a little, somewhat, slightly.*
prōcēdō, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessum, intr. [cēdō, go], go forth or forward, proceed, advance.*
arcessē, -ere, -invī, -itum, summon, send for, invite.*
6. brevītās, -tātis, f. [brevi-, short], shortness; brevity. 2.
incursus, -ūs, m. (incurrō, rush into or upon), attack. 1.
7. difficultās, -tātis, f. [dīficilis, difficult], difficulty, trouble, embarrassment.*
scientia, -ae, f. [scīō, know], knowledge, science, skill. 4.
8. exercitātūs, -a, -um, adj. [pātr. of exercītō, train or practice well], well trained, skilled, versed. 2.
9. praeścribō, -scribere, -scriptūs, scriptūm, tr. [scribō, write], write beforehand; order, direct, prescribe, dictate to. 3.

lit. "all things had to be done by Caesār" = "Caesar had to do everything."

 vexīllum: a red banner which was displayed in front of the general’s head-quarters.

3. prōpōndendum: supply erat. Similarly supply erat or erant with each of the future passive participles which follow.

3. signum: to form ranks.
qui, "(those soldiers) who."
4. paulō longius, "a little too far."
aggeris: here the materials for building the rampart, especially timber; for the sod and earth were taken from the trench on the spot. See p. 30, fig. 5.
arcessendi: by messengers.
5. signum: here the signal for the attack.
7. duae rés: explained by two appositives, first, scientia atque ūsus, "the theoretical and practical knowledge of the soldiers"; second, quod . . . vetuerat (l. 10), "the fact that Caesar had forbidden, etc."
vetuerat. 
Hic propter propinquitatem et celeritatem hostium nihil iam Caesaris imperium exspectabant, sed per se quae videbantur administrabant.

21. Caesar necessariis rebus imperatis ad cohortandos milites quam in partem fors obtulit decurrit, et ad legionem decimam devinit. Milites non longiore ortio cum cohortatus quam uti suaee pristinae virtutis memoriam retinirent nee perturbarentur animo hostiumque impetum fortiter sustinerent, quod non longius hostes aberant quam quo telum adigi posset, proeli committendum signum dedit. Atque in alteram partem item cohortandis causas profectus pugnantibus occurrit. Temp-

13. nihili: an emphatic non.
quae videbantur, "whatever seemed best."

1. ad . . . militis: with decurrit.
2. quam in partem = in eam partem in quam. Cf. note on 19, 11.

3. non longiore ortio quam uti, "with a speech no longer than (this:) that they should, etc."


deveniit, -venire, -veni, -ventum, intr. (veni, come), come down, go, come. 2.

longus, -a, -um, adj., long, distant; of long duration; tedious. *

6. adigo, -igere, -igil, -actum, tr. [ago, move], drive or bring by force, move; thrust, plunge, hurl (of weapons); bind (by an oath). *

8. occurrerit, -currere, -currir, -currum, intr. [ob + curr, run], run in the way of, meet; happen upon; go to, come to; oppose, counteract; occur. *

4. num: the regular expression for "and not" in substantive volitive (purpose) clauses.

6. quod aberrat: a causal clause, explaining signum dedit.

7. in alteram partem: the right wing. See plan.

8. pugnantibus occurrit, "befound (them already) fighting."
poris tanta fuit exiguitas hostiumque tam paratus ad dimicandum animus ut non modo ad insignia accommodanda, sed etiam ad galeas induenas scutisque tegimenta detrahenda, tempus defuerit. Quam quique ab opere in partem casu devinit quaeque prima signa conspexit, ad haec constiitit, ne in quae-rundis suis pugnand tempus dimitteret.

22. Instructo exercit magis ut loci natura deiecutusque collis et necessitas temporis quam ut rei militaris ratio atque ordo postulabat, cum diversae legiones aliae alia in parte hostibus

9. exiguus, scant. [exiguus, scant], scantiness, meagerness, shortness, want. *
dimicere, l. intr. [micere, brandish], fight, struggle, contend. 3.
ad accommodate, 1, tr., adjust or adapt to one’s self, fit or put on. 1.
galea, -ae, f., a leather helmet. 1.
induce, -duere, -dui, -datum, tr., put on; se induce, be impaled or pierced. 1.
tegmentum, -i., n. [tego, cover], a covering. 1.
detrahere, -trahere, -traxi, -tractum, tr. [trahere, draw], draw off or away, withdraw, take off, remove. 4.
desum, desesse, desui, —, intr. [sum, be. App. 66], be wanting, be absent from, fail. *
conspectus, -spicere, -spectum, tr. [specto, look], look at, observe, descry, perceive. *
diversus, -a, -um, adj. [pf. part. of diverso, turn in different directions], diverse, different; separate, remote. 3.

10. ad . . . accommodanda, “for fitting on their decorations”; especially on the helmets; see Plate I, facing p. 27. These insignia probably distinguished the legions.
galeas: these would be laid aside while the soldiers were working on the fortifications.
scutis: dative of separation.
tegmenta: leather coverings for the protection of the metal work of the shields.
defuerit: note the exception to sequence; App. 204, a: G.-L. 518: A. 485, c (incorrectly stated. The imperfect is much more common): B. 268, 6: H.-B. 478: H. 550.
quam in partem, “to whatever place.”

12. quaeque . . . conspexit, “and whatever standards he saw first.” On the importance of the standards see Int. 44.
suis: sc. signis.

Chapter 22. Caesar cannot plan the battle as a whole.
1. ut, “as.”
2. rel . . . ordó, lit. “the theory and arrangement of military matters” = “the theory of military tactics.” When he could, Caesar drew up his army in three unbroken lines, the third of which acted as a reserve force to meet emergencies.
3. cum . . . resisterent . . . impe-


570.

THIRD REFERENCES:
Objective genitive
Result clause
Clause of characteristic
resisterent, saepibusque dēnsissimēs, ut ante dēmōnstrāvimus, 5 interiectis prōspectus impedirētur, neque certa subsidia collo- cāri neque quid in quāque parte opus esset prōvidēri neque ab ūnō omnia imperia administrāri poterant. Itaque in tantā rērum iniquitāte fortūnae quoque ēventūs variī sequēbantur.

23. Legiōnis nōnae et decimae militēs, ut in sinistrā parte aciē cōnstiterant, pilēs ēmissīs cursū ac lassītūdine examinātōs vulneribusque cōnfectōs Atrebātēs (nam hīs ea pars obvēnerat) celeriter ex locō superiōre in flūmen compulērunt, et trānsīre

4. dēnsus, -a, -um, adj., closely set or packed, thick, dense. 3.
5. prōspectus, -ās, m. [prōspiciō, look forth], view, prospect; sight. 1.
6. prōvidērē, -vidēre, -vīdī, -vīsum, tr. [vīdēre, see], see beforehand, foresee; care for, provide. *
8. iniquitās, -tātis, f. [iniquus, unequal], inequality, unfairness; disadvantage. 2.
ēventus, -ās, m. [ēvenīō, turn out], outcome, issue, result, consequence. 3.
varius, -a, -um, adj., diverse, changing, various. 1.
1. nōnus, -a, -um, ord. num. adj., ninth. 2.

dirētur gives the reason for the main clause, neque . . . poterant.

diversae, lit. “separated” = “separately.”
aliae . . . parte, “some in one place, others in another.”
4. ante: see 17, 12-20.
5. interiecta, “which intervened.”
neque: the principal clause begins here.

certa, lit. “sure” = “so that they could be counted on.”
6. quid . . . esset: an indirect question, subject of prōvidērī (poterat).
7. in . . . iniquitāte, “in such a diversity of circumstances.”

2. cursus, -ās, m. [currō, run], running, speed; course, career; passage, voyage.
lassītūdō, -īnis, f. [lassus, weary], weariness, faintness, exhaustion, lassitude. 2.
exānīmō, 1, tr. [anīma, breath], deprive of breath, render breathless, exhaust; kill. 2.
obvenīō, -venire, -vēnī, -venērum, intr. [venīō, come], come to, happen upon, meet; fall to by lot. 1.
4. compellērē, -pellērē, -pullērē, -pullōsum, tr. [pelleō, drive], drive together, assemble, collect; force, compel. 1.

8. fortūnae: genitive limiting ēventūs.

Chap. 23. The left wing repulses the Atrebates, the center repulses the Viromandui, and the Nervii attack the right wing.
1. nōnae et decimae: these legions were commanded by Labienus.
pillīs: see Int. 36, a.
cursū: the Atrebates had run a mile, much of it uphill.
cursū . . . cōnfectōs: translate after Atrebātēs.
3. ea pars: the left wing of the Romans.


THIRD REFERENCE:
Cum causā
WAR WITH THE BELGAE, B.C. 57

24. Eòdem tempore equitès nostrî levisque armâtûrœ

cônantès inseçûtì gladiis magnum par tem eòrum impeditam interfécœrunt. Ipsi trânsire flûmen nòn dubitâverunt, et in locum iniûm progressi rûrsus resistantès hostês redintegrató proeliō in fugam coniécœrunt. Item aliâ in parte diversae duæ legiônès, ândecima et octâva, prôfligâtis Viromanduis, quibus-cum erant congressae, ex locô superiôre in ipsis flûminis rîpîs proeliâbantur. At tôtîs ferè castris à fronte et à sinistrâ parte nûdâtis, cum in dextró cornû legiô duodecima et nôn magnô ab eà intervâllô septima cônsitisset, omnês Nervîi cônfertissîmô agmine duce Boduognàtô, qui summam imperi tenêbat, ad eum locum contendërunt; quôrum pars ab aperto latere legiônès in circumvenîre, pars summum castrórum locum petere coepit.

9. ândecimus, -a, -um, ord. num. adj. [ândecim, eleven], eleventh. 1.
10. octâvus, -a, -um, ord. num. adj. [octô, eight], eighth. 1.
prôfligô, 1. â. [âfligô, strike], strike down; overcome; put to flight. 1.
11. proeliátor, i, instr. [proelium, battle], join or engage in battle, fight. 3.
12. dexter, -tra, -trum, adj., on the right, right. 4.
cornû, -us, n., horn; (of an army) flank, wing. *
duodecimus, -a, -um, ord. num. adj. [duodecim, twelve], twelfth. 2.

5. cônantès, "as they [the Atreba-tes] were trying." gladiis: see Int. 38, b.
impeditam, "while thus embarr-assed:" i.e. by crossing the river.
6. ipsî: the Romans of the left wing.
7. locum iniûm: up the hill south of the river. This gave the enemy the advantage of position.
resistantès hostês: object of condiô-runt.
8. aliâ in parte: the center.
diversae: i.e. separated from the other legions.
10. ex locô superiôre, "(having comedown) from their higher position."
12. nûdâtis: by the advance of the four legions already mentioned. See the plan.
13. nôn magnô intervâllô, "at no

great distance." Case? App. 142.
omnês Nervîi: 60,000 in number.
duçe Boduognàtô, "under the leadership of Boduognàtus." Ablative absolute.

summam: the noun.
15. ab aperto latere: the right flank; because the shields were carried on the left arm. The part which pushed on for the camp passed the Roman left flank. Others, of course, attacked in front.
16. summum . . . locum, lit. "the highest place belonging to the camp" = "the height on which the camp stood."

Chap. 24. The panic of the auxiliaries and the camp servants.
1. We expect Caesar to tell us at once of the fortunes of the 7th and 12th legions, but he pauses to give a vivid
pediēs, qui cum iis ūnā fuerant, quōs primō hostium impētū pulsōs dixeram, cum sē in castra recipierent, adversis hostibus occurrēbant ac rūrsus aliam in partem fugam petēbant; et 5 calōnēs, qui ab decumānā portā ac summō iugō collis nostrōs victōrēs flūmen trānsisse cōnspererant, praedandi causā ēgressi, cum responsor et hostēs in nostrīs castriis versāri vīdis- sent, praezipiēs fugae sēsē mandābant. Simul eōrum qui cum impedimentis veniēbant clāmor fremitusque oriēbatūr, aliique 10 aliam in partem perterritī ferēbantur. Quibus omnibus rēbus permōtī equītēs Trēveri, quōrum inter Gallōs virtūtis opinīō est singulāris, qui auxili causā ā civitāte missi ad Caesarem vēnerant, cum multītūdine hostium castra complērī, legiōnēs

2. pedes, peditis, m. [pēs, foot], foot soldier; pl., infantry, foot. 3.
5. calō, -ānis, m., a soldier’s servant, camp porter or follower. 3.
decumānus, -a, -um, adj. [decimus, tenth], of or belonging to the tenth; decumānus; decumāna porta, the rear gate (of the camp). 1.
porta, -ae, f., gate. *
6. victor, -āris, m. [vincō, conquer], conqueror, victor; as adj., victorious. *
7. respiciō, -spīcre, -spēxi, -spectum, tr. [re- + speciō, look], look back; look at, take notice of; consider, re-
gard. 1.
8. praecepta, -cipitis, adj. [caput, head], head foremost, headlong; steep, precipitous. 2.
9. fremitus, -ās, m., a confused noise, uproar, din. 2.
11. Trēvir, -eri, m., one of the Tревeri; pl. Trēveri (Bigh), the Treveri (trēv’ē-ri). *
12. singulāris, -e, adj. [singuli, one each], one at a time, one by one; single, alone; singular, remarkable, extraordinary, matchless. 2.

picture of the panic elsewhere, a panic which seemed to foretell the complete destruction of the Roman army.
levis armātīrae: a descriptive genitive. The reference is to the slingers and archers of 19, 7.
2. ills: the cavalry.
"fuerant: "before their repulse.
quōs pulsōs dixeram, lit. "whom I had said to have been routed" = "who, as I said, had been routed." quōs refers to both equītēs and pediēs. dixi would be more natural and more usual than dixeram.
3. adversis, "face to face." Evidently they had made a circuit and were entering the camp by the east gate just as the Belgae were entering by the west.
4. occurrēbant: note how the imperfects in the first part of the chapter describe a number of events, all going on at about the same time.
5. ab decumānā portā the camp was on the slope, so that the rear was higher than the front and gave a better view of the battle. But perhaps the fierce charge of the Belgae had something to do with their choice of position.
6. victōrēs, "as victors."
8. eōrum: the muleteers, not the rear guard of two legions.
11. virtūtis opinīō, "reputation for courage": an objective genitive.
13. cum: with vidissent.
premi et paene circumventás teneri, calónes, equités, funditóres, Numidás diversós dissipátosque in omnés partés fugere is vidissent, desperátis nostris rébus domum contendérunt; Rómanós pulsós superátosque, castris impedimentisque eórum hostés putitós cívitáti renuntiáverunt.

25. Caesar ab decimae legiónis cohortātióne ad dextrum cornú profectus, ubi suós urgérí signisque in unum locum collátís duodecimae legiónis cónfertós milités sibi ipsós ad pugnam esse impedimentó vidit, quártae cohortis omnibus centuriónibus occísis, signiferó interfecístó, signó ámissó, reliquárum cohortium omnibus féré centuriónibus aut vulnerátis aut

15. dissipó, 1, tr., spread on all sides, scatter, disperse. 1.
1. cohortátió, -onis, f. [cohortor, encourage]. encouragement, cheering. 1.
5. signýfer, -eri, m. [signum, standard + féró, bear], standard-bearer. 1.

16. desperátis, "despairing of." 
17. castrís: what deponent verbs govern the ablative?

Chap. 25. Caesar finds the 7th and 12th legions in desperate straits, and reanimates them by his valor.

1. Caesar: subject of processit (l. 15) and fúsiit (l. 16). This is an excellent Latin "period," with the subject first, the subordinate clauses in the middle, and the principal verbs toward the end. The sentence is not hard to understand in its Latin order, and is very effective; for the mass of subordinate clauses represents the impression made on Caesar when he saw all at once the many details of the fearful struggle. But it is hard to translate effectively, because such a sentence is intolerable in English. After the pupil thoroughly understands the sentence he should translate it very freely, breaking it up into a number of short sentences. Each of the following groups of words may be turned into a sentence, or two or more may be combined: Caesar... profectus; ubi... ur- géri; signis... vidit; quártae... ámissó; reliquárum... occísis; in his... possét; reliquis... vidére; hostés... instáre; et... possét; scéló... processit; centuriónibus... possent.

cohortátióne: cf. 21, 2.
2. ubi, "when"; with vidit, l. 4, which is repeated in l. 13.

urgérí: this and most of the other infinitives before the end of l. 12 depend on vidit. Other dependent ideas are expressed by the ablative absolute.
signís collátís: the position of the standards regulated the position of the cohorts. As the standards were now huddled together, the soldiers naturally crowded together.

3. sibi... impedimentó, lit. "were themselves for a hindrance to themselves for fighting" = "hindered one another in fighting."

4. quártae cohortis: this cohort had suffered especially, because it was stationed at the left end of the front line.

5. signó ámissó: regarded as a great disgrace.
occísus, in his primípló P. Sextíō Baculó, fortíssimō viró,
multís gravibusque vulneribus cónfictó, ut iam sē sustínère
nōn posset, reliquóes esse tardiórēs et nōn nūllo sûs ab novissimīs
désertō locō preelíō excédere ac tēla vítāre, hostēs neque à
fronte ex inferiōre locō subeuntēs intermissēre et ab utróque
latere īnstāre, et rem esse in angustō vídit neque ǔllum esse
subsidium quod submittī posset, scútō ab novissimīs militī
dētractō, quod ipse eō sine scútō vēnerat, in primam aciem
prōcessīt centuriōnisbusque nōminātīm appellātīs reliquōs
cohortātus militēs signa īnferre et manipulōs laxāre iussit, quō
facilius gladiīs ītū possent. Cuius adventū spē illātā militibus
ac redintegrātō animō, cum prō sē quisque in cōnspectū impe-

7. primíplōs, -ī, m. [primus, first + plūs, a century], the centurion of
the first century, chief centurion. 1.

Sextius, -tī, m., Publius Sextius Baculus (pūbˈlī-ús sēksesˈtī-ús bākˈū-lūs), a
centurion in Caesar's army. 2.

vir, virī, m., man; husband; a man
of distinction or honor; cf. homō, a hu-
man being as distinguished from the lower
animals. *

9. tardus, -a, -um, adj., slow, sluggish. 1.

10. déserō, -serere, -serul, -ser-
tum, tr. [serō, entwine, join], disjoin;
abandon, desert, forsake; désertus, pf.
part. as adj., deserted, solitary. 3.

excīdō, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessum,
intr. [cēdō, go], go out or away, with-
draw, retire. *

16. manipulus, -i, m. [manus, hand
+ pleō, fill], a handful (esp. of hay, about
a pole, anciently used as a standard), a
company (of two centuries, the third of a
cohort), maniple. 1.

laxāre, 1, tr., stretch out, extend, open.

18. imperātōr, -ōris, m. [imperō;
command], commander-in-chief, gen-
eral. *

vidit: simply repeats the vidit of l. 4.


scútō dētractō, "snatching a shield."

Here begins Caesar's action.
militē: dative of separation.

14. eō: the adverb.

16. signa . . . laxāre, "to advance
and (by so doing) to open out the ranks."
quō: cf. note on 17, 15.

17. spē . . . animō, "hope was in-
spired in the soldiers, and their courage
renewed."

18. prō sē, lit. "in proportion to
himself" = "to the best of his ability."
rātōris etiam in estrēmis suis rēbus operam nāvāre cuperet, paulum hostium impetus tardātus est.

26. Caesar cum septimam legiōnem, quae iūxtā cōnstitērat, item urgēri ab hoste vidisset, tribūnōs militum monuit ut paulātim sēsē legiōnēs coniungerent et conversa signa in hostēs inferrent. Quō factō, cum alii subsidium ferret, neque timērent nē āversī ab hoste circumvenirentur, audācius resistere ac fortius pugnāre coepērent. Interim militēs legiōnūm duārum quae in novissimō agmine praeśidiō impedimentis fuerant, proelīō nūntiātō, cursū incitātō, in summō colle ab hostibus cōnspiciebantur; et T. Labiēnus castrīs hostium potitus et ex locō superiore quae rēs in nostrīs castrīs gererentur cōnspicātus decimam legiōnem subsidii nostrīs misit. Qui cum ex equitūm et cālōnum fugā quō in locō rēs esset quantōque in periculō et castra et legiōnēs et imperātor versā-

19. opera, -ae, f. [opus, 'work'], work, exertion; service; pains, attention; dare operam, give attention, take pains. 1.

nāvō, 1, tr., do zealously or well. 1.

20. paulum, adv. [paulus, little], a little, somewhat, slightly. *

tardō, 1, tr. [tardus, slow], make slow, delay; hinder, check. 1.

1. iūxtā, adv. [iungō, join], next, near. 1.

2. tribūnūs, -ī, m. [tribus, tribe], tribune, a magistrate elected by the people, voting in tribes, to defend the interests of the plebs; tribūnus militum or miliāris, a military tribune. *

19. etiam . . . rēbus, "even in his own extreme danger."

Chap. 26. The 7th and 12th legions fight more successfully, and three other legions come to their rescue.

1. iūxtā: i.e. near the 12th legion, in whose ranks Caesar was fighting.

2. cōnstitērat, "had taken its position"

Distinguish carefully between cōnstitētō and cōnstituē.

3. tribūnōs: see Int. 41.

4. sēsē coniungerent: i.e. to close up the gap between them.

5. conversa signa inferrent, "to face about and attack." Of course only a part of the Romans were to face about. Probably the rear line faced a shout and the cohorts at the ends of the line wheeled half around. Thus an oblong would be formed, facing the enemy on every side.

6. cum . . . ferret, "since they protected one another."

7. quae . . . fuerant: cf. 19, 5.

8. proelīō . . . incitātō, "quickening their step on hearing of the battle."

9. tribūnās: at the rear of the Roman camp.

10. quae rēs gererentur: indirect question.

11. qui cum, when they"; i.e. the soldiers of the 10th legion.

12. quō in locō, "in what condition."
rētur cognōvissent, nihil ad celeritātem sibi reliqui fēcérunt.

27. Hōrum adventū tanta rērum commūtātiō est facta ut nostri, etiam qui vulneribus cōnfectī prōcubuissent, scūtīs inni xi proelium redintegrāre; cālōnēs perterritōs hostēs cōnspicātī etiam inermēs armātīs occurrerent; equītēs vērō, ut 5 turpitūdinem fugae virtūte délērent, omnibus in locīs pugnandō sē legiōnāriis militibus praeferrent. At hostēs etiam in extrēmā spē salūtis tantam virtūtem praestītērunt ut, cum primi eōrum cecidissent, proximī incipientes insisterent atque ex eōrum corporibus pugnārent; his dēlectīs et coacervātīs cadāveribus, qui 10 superessent ut ex tumulō tēla in nostrōs conicerent et pilā inter-

praēserō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, tr. [ferō, bear, bring. App. 81], place before, esteem above, prefer to with quam; praēferre sē aliquī, surpass. 1. 8. inceō, inceāre, inceuí, —, intr., lie; lie slain. 1. insīstō, -sisterē, -stītī, —, tr. and intr. [sīstō, stand], stand upon; stand firm, take a stand; press on, pursue; with rationēm, adopt, use. 4. 9. coacervāvō, 1. [acervō, heap up; acervus, heap], heap or mass together, pile one upon another. 1. cadāver, -eris, m. [cadō, fall], a fallen or dead body, corpse. 1. 10. tumulus, -ī, m. [tumēō, swell].

2. prōcumbō, -cumbere, -cubulī, -cubītum, intr. [cubō, lie down], lean forwards, fall down, lie down; be beaten down; incline. 2. 3. innitor, -ntī, -nīxus sum, intr. [nitor, rest on], lean upon. 1. 4. inermis, -e, adj. [in- + arma, arms], without arms or weapons, unarmed. 3. 5. turpitūdō, -inis, f. [turpis, disgraceful], disgrace. 1. dēleō, dēlēre, dēlēvī, dēlētum, tr., rub out, efface, destroy, annihilate. 1. 6. legiōnārius, -a, -um, adj. [legō, legion], relating to a legion, legonary. 4.

14. nihil . . . fēcérunt, lit. "made nothing of a remainder as regards speed" = "made all possible speed." This legion fell upon the rear of the Nervii.

Chap. 27. The Nervii are slain, fighting desperately.


cepta remitterent: ut nôn nêquíquam tantae virtútis hominês iūdicári débérret ausös esse tranśire látissimum flümen, ascendere altissimás ripās, subire iniquissimum locum; quae facilita ex difficillimi animi magnitúdō redégerat.

28. Hóc proelió factō et prope ad interneciónem gente ac nōmine Nerviōrum redáctō, maiōrēs nātū, quōs ūnā cum pueris mulieribusque in aequáriam ac palúdēs coniectōs dixerāmus, hác pugnā nūntiātā, cum victōribus nihil impeditum, victis nihil tātum arbitrārentur, omnium qui supererant cōnsensū lēgātōs ad Caesarem misērunt sēque ei dēdidērunt; et, in commemorātā cīvītātis calamitātē, ex sescentis ad trēs senātorēs, ex hominum milibus LX vix ad quingentōs quā arma ferre possent sēsē redáctōs esse dixerunt. Quōs Caesar, ut in miserōs ac supplicēs úsus misericordiā vidērētur, diligentissimē
conservavit suisque finibus atque oppidis uti iussit, et finitimis imperavit ut ab iniuriam et maleficium se suosque prohiberent.

29. Atuatuci, de quibus supra scripsimus, cum omnibus copiis auxiliis Nerviis venirent, hac pugna nuntiatae ex itinere domum reverturunt; cunctis oppidis castellisque desertis sua omnia in unum oppidum egregie natura munitorum contulurunt.

5 Quod cum omnibus in circuitu partibus altissimis rupes dieictaque habuerit, unae ex parte leniter acclivis aditus in latitudinem non amplius ducentorum pedum relinquevalatur; quem locum duplici altissimo muror munerant; tum magni ponderis saxa et praecutatas trabes in muror collocabant. Ipsi erant ex Cimbris Teutonisque pragnati, qui, cum iter in provinciam nostram atque Italiam facerent, iis impedimentis quae

misericordia, -ae, f. [miseros, pity + cor, the heart], pity, mercy, compassion. 1.
1. scribo, scribere, scripsi, scriptum, tr., write, record or make mention in writing. 1.
3. cunctus, -a, -um, adj. [for con-factus, joined together], all together, all. 1.
4. egregie, adv. [gregius, excellent], excellently, admirably, remarkably. 1.
5. rupes, -is, f., rock, cliff. 1.
acclivis, -e, adj. [ad + cillus, a slope], sloping upward, rising, ascending. 2.

8. duplex, -plicis, adj. [duo, two + plicae, fold], twofold, double. 2.
9. pondus, -eris, n. [cf. pendere, weight], weight. 1.

saxum, -i, n., rock, large stone. 2.
praecutatus, -a, -um, adj. [prae + cutare, sharpen at the end], sharp in front or at the end, sharpened, pointed. 3.

trahs, trahis, -e, beam, timber, pile. 3.
10. pragnatus, -a, -um, adj. [nascor, be born], born; descended, sprung. 1.

11. iussit, imperavit: the sentence illustrates well the contrasting constructions with these verbs. subeo regularly governs an accusative and infinitive; impero, the dative with ut and the subjunctive.

Chap. 29-33. Caesar subdues the Atuatuci.

Chap. 29. The Atuatuci take refuge in a stronghold. Their origin.

1. supra: in 16, 7.
cum venirent, "while coming." omnibus copiis: ablative of manner.
Such ablatives are often called "military accompaniment," but it is not logical to say that the Atuatuci came in company with themselves.

4. oppidum: for its probable loca-
tion see map facing p. 102.
5. quod cum, "although this town." ex ... partibus, "at all (other) points in its circumference," or simply "on all (other) sides."

7. ducentorum pedum: descriptive genitive, modifying aditus. The comparative minus has no effect on the construction; cf. note on mihi, 16, 2.

8. duplici muror: see plan, p. 207.
tum: at the time of Caesar's approach.
27.
sēcum agere ac portāre nōn poterant citrā flūmen Rhēnum dēpositis, custōdiam ex suīs ac præsidium sex mīlia hominum

12. agere ac portāre, "to drive and to carry"; for impedimentis here means "possessions" rather than "baggage," and includes cattle.
citrā: the west side.

13. custōdiam . . . reliquerant, lit. "had left along (with their possessions) a guard of their (men) and a garrison, six thousand men (in all)."
ūnā reliquerant. Hī post eōrum obitum multōs annōs ā finitimīs exagitāti, cum aliās bellum īnferrent, aliās illātum dēfenderent, cōnsēnsū eōrum omnium pāce factā hunc sibi domiciliō locum dēlēgerant.

30. Ac primō adventū exercitūs nostrī crēbrās ex oppidō excursionēs faciēbant parvulīsque proeliīs cum nostrīs contendēbant; posteā vāllō pedum x ii in circuitū x v milīrīm crēbrisque castellīs circummūnitī oppidō sēsē continēbant. Ubi s vineīs ac s aggere extructō turrim procul constituit vidērunt, primum irridēre ex mūro atque increpitāre vōcibus, quod tanta

14. obitus, -ās, m. [obēō, go to death], destruction. 1.
15. exāgītō, 1, tr. [agītō, freq. of agō, drive], drive out or away; disturb, harass. 2.
aliās, adj. [alius, another], at another place, elsewhere; at another time; aliās ... aliās, at one time ... at another. 4.
17. domicilium, -II, n. [domus, house], residence, dwelling, home, domicile. 3.
2. excūsīō, -ōnis, f. [excurrō, run forth], a running out or forth. sally,

sortīe. 1.
parvulus, -a, -um, adj. [dim. of parvus, little], small, insignificant, slight; parvula proelia, skirmishes; parvuli, children. 1.
4. circummūniō, 4, tr. [māniō, fortify], wall around; fortify, protect. 1.
5. extrūto, -struere, -struē, -strūctum, tr. [struō, build], build or pile up, rear, construct, build. 2.
procul, adv., afar off, from afar, in the distance, at a distance. 2.
6. irridēō, -ridēre, -risi, -risum, intr. [in-ridēō, laugh], laugh, jeer. 1.
8. pedum xii: in height.
XV milīrīm: supply pedum as a partitive genitive; “(of) 15,000 feet in circumference”; i.e. three miles. The plan shows that the wall did not cross the river, which itself forms a sufficient obstacle.
4. oppidō: ablatival of means, but to be translated as if an ablative of place.
5. vineīs, aggere, turrim: see Int. 61; 63, d. The vineae afforded shelter to the soldiers who made the agger. In this case the agger was intended only as a roadway up which to push the tower.

māchinātiō & tantō spatiō instituerētur: Quibusnam manibus aut quibus viribus praeertim hominēs tantulae statūrae (nam plērumque omnibus Gallis prae magnitūdine corporum suōrum brevitās nostra contemptui est) tantā oneris turrim in mūrō 10. sēsē posse colocāre cōndiderent?

31. Ubi vērō movēri et appropinquāre moenibus vidērunt, novā atque inūsītāta speciei commōti lēgātōs ad Caesarem dé pace misērunt, qui ad hunc modum locūtī: Nōn sē existimāre

7. māchinātiō, -ēnsis, -e (māchinor, contrive), a mechanical contrivance, machine, engine, derrick. 3.
8. tantās, -a, -um, adj. [dim. of tantus, so great], so small or little, so diminutive; trifling. 2.
statūra, -ae, f. (status; stô, stand), a standing upright; size or height of the body, stature. 1.
plērumque, adv. (plērusque, the greater part), for the most part, mostly, generally; again and again, very often.
praē, prep. with abl., before, in front of; on account of; in comparison with; in composition, before, at the head of, in front, very. 1.
10. contemptus, -ās, m. (contemnō, despise), contempt; an object of contempt. 1.
onus, -ēris, s., load, burden; weight, size. 4.
2. inūsītātus, -ās, -um, adj. (in- + āsītātus, usual), unusual, uncommon, strange, startling. 3.
speciēs, -ōsī, s. (speciō, see), seeing, sight; look, appearance, show, pretense. 4.
3. modus, -ī, m., measure, quantity, size; manner, method, style; elus modī, of such a kind, such; abl., modē, with gen., in the character of, like. *

7. a tantō spatiō, “so far away”; lit. “away by so great a distance,” 6 being used as an adverb. Cf. 7, 8.
8. hominēs: in apposition with the subject of cōnfidere:ent; “especially (as they were) men, etc.”
10. contemplātum est, “is an object of contempt.”


of the Gauls ignorantly supposed that the Romans would try to set the tower on the wall, for the only towers they knew of were built on walls.

Chap. 31. The Atuatuci propose a conditional surrender.
1. movēri, “that it [the tower] moved.”
3. locūtī: the rest of the chapter is in indirect discourse. nōn sē . . . possent: depends on locūtī; everything else, on dixērunt (16), “speaking as follows . . . said.” But it makes smoother English, to translate locūtī as locūti sunt and omit dixērunt, “spoke as follows.”

THIRD REFERENCE:
Ablative of degree of difference
Römānōs sine ope divīnā bellum gerere, qui tantae altitūdinis 5 māchinātiōnēs tantā celeritāte prōmovēre possent; sē suaque omnia eōrum potestāti permittere dixērunt. Ūnum petere ac dēprecāri: si forte prō suā clēmentiā ac mānsuētūdine, quam ipsī ab aliīs audirent, statuisset Atuatucōs esse cōnservandōs, nē sē armīs déspoliāret. Sibi omnēs fērē finitimōs esse init 10 micōs ac suae virtūtī invidēre; a quibus sē dēfendere trāditīs armīs nōn possent. Sibi praestāre, si in eōm cāsum dēdūce rentur, quamvis fortūnām ā populō Römānō patī, quam ab hīs per cruciātum interfici inter quōs domināri cōnssēssent.

32. Ad haec Caesar respondit: Sē magis cōnsuētūdine sua quam merītō eōrum civitātem cōnservāturum, sī prīusquam

4. dīvinus, -a, -um, adj. [dīvus, divine], of the gods, divine, sacred. 1.
5. prōmovēo, -movēre, -movī, -mō tum, tr. [movēo, move], move forward, advance, push forward. 2.
7. dēprecor, i. tr. and intr. [precor, pray], pray for deliverance from; beg off; implore, plead for. 2.
9. dēspoliō, i. tr. [spoliō, strip], deprive. 1.
10. invideō, -vidēre, -vidī, -visum, intr. [videō, see], look askance at; envy. 1.
12. quīvīs, quaevis, quidvīs, and quīvīs, quaevis, quodvīs, indef. pron. (App. 62), [qui, who+vis, you wish], whom or what you wish; any one, anything, any whatever, any. 3.
13. cruciātus, -ās, m. [cruciō, torture; crux, cross], torture, torment. * dominor, i. intr. [domīnus, master], be master, rule. 1.

4. qui possent, “since they could,” may have been subjunctive in the direct form; App. 245: G.-L. 633: A. 535, c: B. 283, 3: H.-B. 523: H. 592.
6. ūnum, “one favor”; i.e. nē... dēspoliāret.
7. si statuisset, “if he should decide.” The direct form used the future perfect indicative; lit. “if you shall have decided.”
prō, “in accordance with.”
quam audirent, “of which they kept hearing.”
9. nē dēspoliāret: the original form was probably nōtī dēspoliāre; App. 219; 267: G.-L. 271, 2; 652: A. 450; 588: B. 276; c: 316: H.-B. 501, 3, a, 2; 534, 2: H. 561, 1; 642.
sibi: with the adjective initīmicōs.
10. virtūtī: what verbs, transitive in English, govern the dative? trāditīs armīs, “if they should, etc.”
11. sibi praestāre, lit. “it was better for them” = “they preferred.”
final. “extremity.”
Chap. 32. The Atuatuci surrender unconditionally, but treacherously retain a part of their arms.
1. cōnsuētūdine: ablative of accordance.
2. merītō: ablative of cause.


Third References:
Passive periphrastic conjugation
Dative of reference
mūrum ariēs attigisset sē dēdidissent; sed dēditioṃis nūllam esse condicionem nisi armīs tràditīs. Sē id quod in Nerviis fēcisset factūrum, finitimisque imperātūrum nē quam dēditiœ civis populi Rōmānī iniuriam inferrent. Rē renūntiātā ad suōs, quae imperārentur facere dīxērunt. Armōrum magnā multi-tūdine dē mūrō in fossam quae erat ante oppidum iactā, sic ut prope summam mūrī aggerisque altitudinem acervī armōrum adaequārent, et tamen circiter parte tertia, ut postea perspec-tum est, cēlātā atque in oppidō retentā, portis patefactīs eō die pāce sunt āsī.

33. Sub vesperum Caesar portās claudī militēisque ex oppidō exīre iussit, nē quam noctū oppidānī ā militibus iniuriam acciperent. Illī ante initō, ut intellectum est, cōnsiliō, quod dēditioṅe factā nostrōs præsidia dēductūrōs aut dēnique indiligentius servātūrōs crēdiderant, partim cum iis quae reti-

3. ariēs, ariēs, m., a ram; battering-ram, a long beam for demolishing walls; one end of it was capped with iron in the form of a ram's head; brace, buttress. 2.

9. acervus, -i, m., a heap, mass. 1.

10. ādsequō, ā, ā, [sequō, make equal], make level with or equal to, equal; keep up with. 3.

11. cēlō, ā, ā, keep covered or hidden, secrete, conceal; in pass., escape observation, be unnoticed. 2.

11. patefaciō, -facere, -fēci, -factum, āre, [pateō, be open; faciō, make], make or throw open, open. 2.

5. indiligenter, adv. [indiligēns, careless], carelessly. 1.

servō, ā, āre, save, preserve; maintain.

3. ariēs: see Int. 63, c. Apparently in this case the battering-ram was hung in the lowest story of the tower.

attigisset, dēdidissent represent future perfect indicative of the direct form.

4. nisi armīs tràditīs: cf. 20, 11, note.
in, "in the case of."

5. factūrum...que imperātūrum, "he would do ... and would command" means "he would do ...; namely, he would command."

6. rē, "answer."

7. facere: we might expect a future infinitive; but the envoys return and say that the people are already executing his commands.

8. ante: i.e. on the side where the Romans were.

9. aggeris: the Roman agger, which had reached the trench.

11. portis patefactīs, "they opened the gates and."

12. pāce sunt āsī, "remained quiet."

Chap. 33. The Atuatuci make a night attack and are repulsed. They are sold as slaves.

2. nē quam: cf. references on 32, 5.
This care for the safety of the townsmen shows Caesar's intention of acting humanely.

4. præsidia, "the outposts" in the castella (30, 4) which guarded the Roman wall.

5. cum: with both āsī armīs and scūltīs.

nuerant et cēlāverant armis, partim scūtis ex cortice factīs aut
viminibus intextīs, quae subitō, ut temporis exiguitās postu-
lābat, pellibus indūxerant, tertiā vigiliā, qua minimē arduus ad
nostrās munitiōnes ascēnsum vidēbātur, omnibus cópiēs repente
ex oppidō eruptionem fēcērunt. Celeriter, ut ante Caesar im-
perāverat, ignibus significātiōne factā, ex proximis castellīs eō
concursum est, pugnātumque ab hostibus ita ācriter est ut ā
virīs fortibus in extrēmā spē salūtis, inīquō locō, contrā eōs
qui ex vāllō turribusque tēla iacerent, pugnārī dēbuit, cum in
15 ūnā virtūte omnis spēs salūtis cōnsisteret. Occīsis ad ho-
minum milibus quattuor reliqui in oppidum rēiecti sunt. Postridiē
eius diēī refrāctūs portīs, cum iam dēfenderet nēmō,
atque intrōmissūs militibus nostrīs, sectiōnem eius oppidī ūnī-

---

**keep; guard, watch; reserve. 2.**

*ōrēō, -dere, -dīdi, -ditum, tr., believe, suppose; entrust. 2.*

6. *cortex, -icis, m., f., bark. 1.*

7. *vīmen, -inis, n., a pliant twig, switch, osier. 1.*

*intexē, -textere, -textul, -textum, tr. [texēō, weave], weave in or together. 1.*

8. *pellīs, -is, f., a hide, a skin (either on or off the body of an animal); tent, made of hides. 4.*

*arduus, -a, -um adj., high, steep; difficult. 1.*

9. *repente, adv. [repēns, sudden], suddenly, unexpectedly. 2.*

10. *eruptūs, -onis, f. [ērumpē, break forth], a breaking out, bursting forth, sortie, sally.*

11. *significātiō, -onis, f., [significō, make signs], making of signs, signal; indication, intimation. 1.*

17. *refringō, -fringere, -frēgī, -frāctum, tr. [ērfrangō, break], break in or open; break, diminish. 1.*

18. *intrōmittō, -mittere, -missī, -missum, tr. [intrō, within + mittō, send], send or let in. 1.*

*sectūs, -onis, f. [sectō, cut], cutting; dividing of captured goods; booty. 1.*

*universalis, -a, -um, adj. [ānus, one+*

---

6. ex... intextis, "made of bark or of osiers woven together."

*quā: the adverb.

*minimē arduus: evidently the Roman wall was on rising ground. The desire to keep the wall on high ground accounts for its irregular course as shown on the plan.*

10. *imperāverat: therefore Caesar had foreseen the possibility of treachery.*

11. *ignibus, "by signal fires."

12. *concursum est, pugnātum est: translate personally.*

14. ut pugnārī dēbuit, lit. "as it ought to have been fought" = "as brave men ought to have fought."

*eōs: ut iacerent, "men who threw"; a clause of characteristic.*

15. *ūnā virtūte cōnsisteret, "depended on valor alone."*

*ad, "about," used adverbially.*

18. *sectiōnem: including the inhabitants as well as their possessions. The action was perfectly justifiable, according to ancient ideas, as a punishment for their treachery. Such methods were probably the only means by which he could have secured the respect of the Gauls.*
versam Caesar vēndidit. Ab iis qui ēmerant capitum numerus ad eum relātus est milium quinquāgentā trium.

34. Eōdem tempore ā P. Crassō, quem cum legiōne ūnā miserat ad Venetōs, Venellōs, Osismōs, Coriosolitēs, Esuvīōs, Aulercōs, Redonēs, quae sunt maritimae civitātēs Ōceanumque atingunt, certior factus est omnēs eās civitātēs in dicīōnem potestātemque populī Rōmānī esse redāctās.

35. Hīs rēbus gestis, omni Gallīā pācātā, tanta huius sellī ad barbarōs opinīō perlāta est uti ab iīs nātiōnibus quae trānscurrent.

19. vēndō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, tr. [vēnum, sale + dō, give], put to sale, sell, sell at auction. 3.

1. Crassus, -i, m., Publius Lēnius Crassus, one of Caesar's lieutenants. *
2. Venetī, -ōrum, m. (Cb), the Venetī (vēn'ē-tī). *
3. Venellī, -ōrum, m. (Bc), the Venellī (vē-nēl'i). *
4. Osismī, -ōrum, m. (Bb), the Osismī (ō-sis'mī), a Gallic people in modern Britany. 2.
5. Coriosolitēs, -um, m. (Bb), the Coriosolitēs (kō'rī-ō-sōl'i-tēz). 3.
6. Esuvīli, -ōrum, m. (Bcd), the Esuvīli (ē-sūv'i-li). 2.
7. Aulercī, -ōrum, m., the Aulercī (aw-lē'r-sī), a Gallic people divided into four branches. (1) Aulercī Ebuvōvices (ēb'ū-rō-vī'sēz), (Bd); (2) Aulercī Čenomānī (sē-nōm'ā-nī), (Bd); (3) Aulercī Brannovices (brān'nō-vī'sēz), location unknown; (4) Aulercī Diablīntēs (dī'ā-blīn'tēz), (Bc). 3.
8. Redonēs, -um, m. (BCc), the Redones (rēd'ō-nēz). 1.
9. maritimus, -a, -um, adj. [mare, sea], of the sea, sea; maritime, naval, on the sea; ōra, the sea shore. *
10. dīciō, -ōnis, f., dominion, authority, sway. 3.
11. barbarus, -a, -um, adj., foreign (to Greeks and Romans), uncivilized, barbarous; pl. as noun, savages, barbarians. *
12. nātiō, -ōnis, f. [nāscor, be born], race, tribe, people, nation. *

19. iīs qui ēmerant: slave dealers who were with Caesar constantly and who supplied the slave market at Rome. numerus . . . trium, lit. "the number was reported (to be) of 53,000" = "was reported as 53,000."

Chap. 34. The northwestern states submit to Crassus.
1. legiōne ūnā: this was the 7th, one of the two which had suffered most severely in the battle with the Nervi. Caesar must have sent Crassus immediately after that battle.
2. quae: agrees in gender with the predicate noun, civitātēs.
3. esse redāctās: they gave hostages without fighting. One legion could not have conquered these states, for we learn in the next book that it took Caesar himself and most of his army to do it.

Chap. 35. German envoys offer submission. Arrangements for the winter. A thanksgiving in Caesar's honor.
1. omni Gallīā: the map facing p. 162 shows that Caesar now controlled everything but Aquitania and two Belgic states.
2. opinīō, "impression."
3. quae incolerent: for mode see note on quī, 27, 2.
Rhēnum incoherent lēgātī ad Caesarem mitterentur qui sē obsidēs datūrās, imperātā factūrās pollicērentur. Quās lēgāti-
ēs ēnēs Caeser, quod in Italiam Illyricumque properābat, initā
proximā aestātē ad sē revertī iussit. Ipse in Carnutēs, Andēs,
Turonōs, quaeque civitātēs propinquae iīs locīs erant ubi
bellum gesserat legiōnibus in hiberna dēductīs in Italiam pro-
fectus est. Ob eāsque rēs ex litterīs Caesaris diērum quīnde-
10 cim supplicātiō dēcrēta est, quod ante id tempus accidit nūlī.

5. Illyricum, -I, n., Illyricum (I-ler'ik-um), Illyria, lying northeast of the Adri-
atic, forming a part of Caeser's province.
6. Carnutēs, -um, m. (BCde), the Carnutes (kār'nū-tēz).
Andēs, -ium, or Andī, -ōrum, m. (Cc),
the Andes (ān'dēz) or Andi (ān'di).
7. Turonī, -ōrum, m. (Cd), the Tu-

ronī (tū'rō-nī). 1.
10. supplicātiō, -ōnis, f. [sup-
plex, suppliant], public prayer to the
gods in thanksgiving for successes, hence
thanksgiving. 2.
dēcernō, -cernere, -crēvi, -crētum,
tr. [cernō, separate; decide], decide;
vote, decree. 3.

3. qui pollicērentur: a purpose
clause.
4. datūrās: feminine, because sē re-
fers to nāliōnibus.
5. initā proximā aestātē, "at the
beginning of the next summer." At
that time they had so far changed their
minds that only the Utīb sent hos-
tages.
6. in Carnutēs: with dēductīs.
7. quaeque civitātēs = et etsi civitātēs
quae.
8. in Italiam: i.e. Cisalpine Gaul.

He could not legally go outside of his
province, which included Cisalpine Gaul
and Illyricum.
9. ex, "in consequence of."
10. supplicātiō: a public thanksgiv-
ging, voted by the senate in honor of
a victory. The number of days was sup-
posed to be in proportion to the impor-
tance of the victory. Before this time
no more than twelve days had ever been
voted.
quod, "(an honor) which." The ante-
cedent is the preceding clause.
BOOK III. OPERATIONS IN THE ALPS, IN THE NORTHWEST, AND IN AQUITANIA

Since Rome was to possess Gaul, she needed to control the shortest route across the Alps—that which leads over the Great St. Bernard pass. Caesar accordingly sent Galba with one legion, in the autumn of 57, to subdue the mountain tribes which controlled that route. Having apparently accomplished this, Galba went into winter quarters in a little town at the foot of the northern slope of the mountains. Here he was attacked by an overwhelming force of mountaineers, whom, however, he succeeded in driving off after a sharp engagement. He then retreated to a less exposed position. The tribes were not thoroughly conquered, but as we hear of no further operations against them it is evident that they stopped molesting travellers.

In 57 the northwestern states had submitted to Crassus and had sent him hostages; but when he established winter quarters among them and began sending out officers to levy tribute of supplies, they grew weary of the yoke. Ignorant of the Roman resources and power, three states took the fatal step of arresting the officers sent to them. This virtual declaration of war was followed by the formation of a powerful league of the coast tribes between the Loire and the Seine. The Britannii, the Morini, and the Menapii sent men and ships to their aid.

As early as possible in 56 Caesar hastened to Gaul and gave orders for an extensive campaign. In order to prevent any effective co-operation on the part of his enemies, he divided his forces. Titus Labienus, with part of the cavalry, was sent toward the Rhine to check a possible uprising among the Belgae and to prevent the Germans from crossing. Quintus Titurius Sabinus went to the country of the Venelli to cut off communications between the eastern and the western portions of the confederacy. Publius Crassus marched into Aquitania to prevent help reaching the insurgents from that quarter. Caesar himself, with the assistance of a strong fleet under Decimus Brutus, undertook the conquest of the Veneti, the most powerful sea-board state and the forefront of the confederacy.

The Veneti skilfully utilized the advantages of their position. Their country was wild and barren and their strongholds were built on the ends of promontories which the tides cut off from the main land. Hence
supplies for the Roman army were obtained with difficulty and siege operations were greatly hindered. The Veneti, on the other hand, had control of the sea and could supply their towns at will with provisions and defenders, or if necessary could transport the garrisons to other places, leaving the foe only a barren victory. The Roman fleet would have prevented this, but it was kept away by stormy weather during most of the summer. When it finally appeared, the much superior fleet of the Veneti confidently sailed out to meet it; but Roman valor and ingenuity won the day. The destruction of their fleet forced the Veneti to submit. Their prominence in the revolt marked them out for severe punishment, as a warning to other Gallic states. Accordingly the senate was put to the sword and the people were sold as slaves.

The legates of Caesar were as successful as himself. Sabinus easily defeated Viridovix, the general in command of the land forces of the confederacy. Labienus overawed the Belgae. Crassus, after much fighting, subdued Aquitania. In all Gaul only the Morini and the Menapii had made no submission. Therefore Caesar marched against them; but after making strenuous efforts to reach the foe, in almost impenetrable forests and swamps, the approach of winter warned him to desist. Quartering his legions upon the conquered tribes, as in the previous winter, he proceeded to Italy.
EXPLANATION OF CAMPAIGN MAP

For the meaning of the colors, see the explanation of the campaign map for I, 1-29, facing page 42.

The same territory is colored red as in the campaign map for Book II, facing page 162. In addition, a narrow strip leading into the Alps, most of the northwestern states, and three states of Aquitania are colored red. In all these cases it is difficult to decide on the coloring.

It seems probable that Galba did not completely subdue the Nantuates, the Veragri, and the Seduni, but that he did secure the route through the Alps.

It seems probable that all the revolting states in the northwest had sent so large a proportion of their ships and men to help the Veneti, that the defeat of the Venetan fleet amounted to a defeat of all the states. Hence they are colored red. The Redones are not mentioned among the revolting states.

It is possible that all of Aquitania should be colored red; but it seems improbable that other states than the Sotiates, the Tarusates, and the Vocates were so largely represented in the armies defeated by Crassus as to make further resistance impossible. They are colored blue on the theory that they submitted only because they were discouraged by the fate of the states which did fight.

Caesar's army had probably been quartered along the Liger (Loire). Therefore the routes on this map begin at the point of the probable winter quarters farthest east, where Orleans now stands. Marching westward, he picked up another part of his army, and then probably collected the whole of it at the point on the map from which four lines diverge, which is now the site of Angers. From that point he sent out Labienus, Crassus, and Sabinus, and himself marched against the Veneti. From the Veneti Caesar marched against the Morini and the Menapii, and was probably joined on the route by Sabinus and Crassus.
LIBER TERTIUS.

1. Cum in Italiam proficiscerētur Caesar, Servium Galbam cum legiōne duodecimā et parte equitātūs in Nantuātēs, Veragrōs, Sedūnōsque mīsit, quī à finibus Allobrogum et lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō ad summās Alpēs pertinent. Causa mittendī fuit quod iter per Alpēs, quō magnō cum

1. Servius, -vi, m., Servius (sēr'vī-ūs), a Roman praenomen. 1.

Galba, -ae, m., Servius Sulpicius Galba (sēr'vī-ūs sūl-pish'yūs gāl'ba), one of Caesar's legates, and said to have been one of his assassins. *

Chap. 1-6. Galba is sent to secure a pass over the Alps. Although he defeats the mountaineers in battle, he dares not winter in the mountains.

Chap. 1. Galba is sent to secure a pass over the Alps. He occupies Ocotodorus.

1. cum... proficiscerētur: as stated in II. 35. Therefore the narrative given in the first six chapters of Book III belongs chronologically with Book II.

2. legiōne duodecimā: this was one of the two legions which had suffered most severely in the battle with the Nervī; cf. II. 25.

Nantuātēs, etc.: see the map facing p. 217.

3. mīsit: the pupil should notice carefully Caesar's use of the indicative tenses. The distinction between the imperfect and the perfect is difficult for English speaking people to grasp, but Caesar was as careful in their use as in the choice of modes and cases. Study App. 197, 198. Notice that in this chapter the perfect is used in every principal clause. Notice, too, that all but one of these perfects tell something that Caesar or Galba did; i.e. they all narrate events in the story.

4. pertinent: several of the subordinate verbs in this chapter are in the present tense, because they state facts which are still true at the time when Caesar is writing.

5. fuit: this might have been imperfect, for it is not an event in the story. Very few such perfects will be found in Caesar.

quod volēbat, "that he wished": a substantive quod clause, in apposition with causa. The imperfect does not narrate an event in the story, but describes something (Caesar's feelings) as going on at the time of a main act (Caesar's decision to send Galba). This is the most common use of the imperfect, and is called the descriptive imperfect.

iter per Alpēs: the route leading over the famous Great St. Bernard pass. For the other route used by Caesar see map facing p. 43.

periculō magnisque cum portōris mercātōrēs ire consuērant, patefieri volēbat. Huic permisit, sī opus essē arbitrārētur, utī in hīs locīs legiōnem hiemandi causā colocāret. Galba, secundis aliquot proelīs factīs/castellīisque complūribus eōrum expugnātīs/missīs ad eum undique légātīs/obsidibusque datīs et pāce factā, cōnstituit cohortēs duās in Nantuātibus colocāre et ipse cum reliquis eius legiōnis cohortibus in vicō Veragrōrum, qui appellātur Octodūrus, hiemāre; qui vīcus postus in valle, nōn magnā adiectā plānitiē, altissimīs montibus undique continētur. Cum hīc in duās partēs flūmine dividerētur, alteram partem eius vīci Gallis concessit, alteram vacuam ab his relictam cohortibus ad hiemandum attribuit. Eum locum vāllō fossāque mūnīvit.

9. aliquot, indecl. num. adj. [quot, how many], some, a few, several. 8.
14. vallēs, -Is, f., vale, valley. 2.
adiciō, -icere, -icī, -iectum, tr. [iaciō, throw. App. 7], throw to, throw up, hurl; add. 1.
19. attribū, -tribuere, -tribul, -tribūtum, tr. [ad + tribuō, assign], assign, allot. 2.

6. periculō: from the natives.
portōris, “tolls,” levied by the natives on all merchandise carried through their country.
7. arbitrārētur: implied indirect discourse. Caesar said arbitrārēris.
11. cohortēs duās: for the location of these cohorts, see map.
14. nōn . . . plānitiē, “with a little level ground adjacent.”
17. vacuam relictam, “left vacant.”
19. eum locum: the western half of the village.
2. Cum diēs hibernōrum complūris trànsissent /frūmentumque eō comportāri iussisset, subīta per explōrātorēs certior factus est ex ea parte vīcī quam Galliis concesserat omnēs noctū discississe montēisque qui impendērent ā maximā multitudine Sedūnōrum et Veragōrum tenēri. Id aliōquē de causīs acciderat, ut subītō Gallī bellī renovandī legiōnīsque opprimenda cōnsilium caperent: prīmum, quod legiōnem, neque eam plēnissimam, dētractīs cohortibus duābus et complūribus singillātīm, quī commeātūs petendi causā missī erant, propter paucitātem dēspiciēbat; tum etiam, quod propēr iniquitātem locī, cum ipsī ex montibus in vallem dēcurrerent et tēla consicerent, nē prīnum quidem impetum suum posse sustinerī existimābant. Accēdēbat quod suōs ab sē liberōs abstractōs obsidum nōmine dolēbant et Rōmānōs nān sōlum itinerum causā, sed etiam perpetuae possessionēs/ctūmina Alpium occu-

6. renovē, 1. tr. [re-+novus, new]. renew. 2. opprimō, -primere, -pressi, -pressum, tr. [ob + premō, press], press down, oppress; overwhelm, overpower, destroy; fall upon, surprise. 4. plēnus, -a, -um, adj. [pleō, fill], full, whole, complete. 3. singillātīm, adv. [singuli, one each], singly, one by one; individually. 1. paucitās, -tās, f. [paucus, few], fewness, small number. * abstrahō, -trahere, -trāxi, -tractum, tr. [trahō, draw], to drag away, carry away by force. 1. perpetuus, -a, -um, adj., continuous, uninterrupted; permanent, 

6. cōperator: a substantive clause of fact (result), in apposition with id. neque eam plēnissimam, "and that not at its full strength"; explained by the ablatives absolute which follow. complūribus singillātīm, "many men individually." cum dēcurrerent et consicerent, "when they should, etc.," is a part of the indirect discourse. They thought "when we shall run down...they cannot withstand, etc." accēdēbat quod, lit. "there was added that" = "a further reason was that" or "besides." liberōs abstractōs (esse), "that their children, etc." obsidum nōmine, lit. "under the name of hostages" = "as hostages." perpetuae possessionēs: se. causa.
pāre cañāriī/et ea loca finitimae provinciae adiungere sibi persuasum habēbant.

3. His nūntiis acceptīs Galba, cum neque opus hibernōrum mūnitiōnēisque/plēnē essent/perfectae neque de frūmentō reliquoque commeātū satis esset prōvisum, quod (déditione factā) obsidibusque acceptīs nihil de bellō timendum existimāverat, consiliō celeriter convocātō sententiās exquirēre coepit. Quō in consiliō, cum tantum repentī repertiō periculi praeter opinioōm accidisset ac iam omnia fērē superiōra loca multitudine armātorum complēta conspicerentur neque subsidiō veniri neque commeātūs supportāri interclūsis itineribus possent, prope iam despērātā salūte nōn nūllae eius modii sententiae dicebantur, ut impedimentis rectīs erūptionē factā isdem itineribus quibus eo pervēnissent ad salūtem contenterent./< Maiōri tamen partī

lasting, continual; whole, entire; n. as noun in phrase in perpetuum, forever. 3. culmen, -inis, a., top, ridge. 1. 16. adiungō, -iungere, -iānxi, -iāctum, tr. [iungō, join], join to, attach, unite; add. 1.

2. plēnē, adv. [plēnus, full], fully. 1. 5. exquirō, -quirere, -quisivi, -quisitum, tr. [quaerō, search], seek or search out, inquire, investigate. 2. 9. supportō, 1, tr. [sub + portō, carry], carry or bring up from beneath; bring, convey; supply, furnish. 4.

16. finitimae: the province bounded them on the west. See map. sibi persuasum habēbant: the clause Rōmānōs . . . adiungere is the object of habēbant, and persūsium is a predicate adjective in the neuter, agreeing with the clause; lit. "they had . . . persuaded to themselves" = "they were persuaded that."

Chap. 3. The Romans resolve to defend their camp. 1. opus hibernōrum: especially the making of huts. Although they were occupying part of a village, it cannot have been large enough to house all the soldiers. 2. essent perfectae agrees with the nearer subject, mūnitiōnēs. 3. esset prōvisum: translate personally.

4. nihil timendum (esse), "that he need have no fear." 5. consiliō: a council of war, composed of the tribunes and the centurions of the first rank. See Int. 42. 6. neque . . . veniri (posset), lit. "and it could not be come to their assistance." 10. eius modi, "to this effect." dicebantur: this narrates a new event in the story, so that the perfect might have been used; but the imperfect is used to express repeated action; App. 191, a: G.-L. 233: A. 470: B. 260, 2: H.-B. 484: H. 534, 3.

12. pervēnissent: implied indirect discourse. maiōri partī placuit, "the majority determined."
placuit, hoc reservatō ad extremum consiliō, interim rei eventum experiri et castra defendere.

4. Brevi spatio interiectō, vix ut iis rébus quae constituisissent collocandis atque administrandis tempus daretur, hostēs ex omnibus partibus signō datō decurrere, lapidēs gaesaque in vallum concerere. Nos trā primō integris viribus fortiter prósepugnāre nequeullum frustrā tēlum ex locō superiore mittere, et quaecumque pars castrōrum nūdāta défensoribus premī vidēbātur, eō occurrere et auxilium ferre; sed hoc superāri, quod diūturnitāte pugnae hostēs défessi proeliō excédēbant, aliī integris viribus succédēbant; quàrum rērum à nostris propter paucitātem fieri nihil poterat, ac non modo défessō ex

13. placeō, 2. intr. [cf. placē, appease], please, satisfy; often imper., seem good to one, hence, decide, resolve, determine. 2.
reservō, 1. tr. [re- + servō, save, keep], keep back, save up, reserve.
2.
1. brevis, -e, adj., short, brief, transitory; brevī, in a short time. *
4. integer, -gra, -grum, adj., un-
touched, intact, whole, unimpaired; fresh; rē integrā, before anything was done. 3.
5. frustrā, adv., without effect, in vain, to no purpose. 3.
6. quicumque, quaecumque, quocumque, indef. (or generalizing) rel. pron., whoever, whatever; Whosoever, whatsoever, any . . . whatever; everyone who, everything that. *
8. diūturnitās, -tātis, f. [diūturmus, long], long duration. 2.

Chap. 4. The mountaineers attack the camp in great numbers.

1. vix: placed before ut for emphasis.
rēbus . . . administrandis: the dative of the gerundive is not common.
4. integris viribus: ablative absolute, "while their strength was fresh."
5. ex locō superiore: the top of the rampart.
7. hoc superāri, quod, "they were overmatched in this, that."
8. excēdēbant, succēdēbant, "kept withdrawing, etc."; imperfects of repeated action.
9. integris viribus: descriptive ablative. Contrast the construction of the same words in 1. 4.
quārum . . . poterat, "while none of these things, etc."
10. poterat and dabātur are descriptive imperfects, describing a condition of things that went on all through the battle.
nōn modo défessō facultās dabātur, "not only was an opportunity not given to an exhausted man." H. 656, 3; "Nōn modo (or sōlum) nōn, sed nē . . . quidem means not only not, but not even, and nōn modo (sōlum), sed nē . . . quidem, has the same meaning when the verb standing in the second clause belongs also to the first."
pugnā excēndēndī, sed nē sauciō quidem eius locī ubi cōnstit-
erat relinquentī ac suī recipiēndi facultās dābatur.

5. Cum iam amplius hōris sex continenter pugnārētur, ac
nōn sōlum vīrēs sed etiam tēla nostrōs dēficerent, atque hōstēs
ācrius instārent, languidīōribusque nostrīs vāllum scindere et
fossās complēre coepissent, rēsque esset iam ad extrēmum per-
ducta cāsum, P. Sextī Baculus, primī pūlī centurīō, quem s
Nervīō proelīō complūribus cōnfectum vulneribus dīximus, et
ītem C. Volusēnus, tribūnus militum, vir et cōnsili magnī et
virtūtis, ad Galbam accurrunt atque ūnam esse ēspem salūtis
docent, si ēruptīōne factā extrēmum auxiliūm experīrentur.
Itaque convocātis centuriōribus celerer mīlitēs certiōrēs facit 10

11. sauciō, -a, -um, adj., wounded. 1.
3. languidius, -a, -um, adj., weak,
faint, sluggish. 1.
scindō, scindere scidī, scissum,
tr., split; tear down, destroy. 1.
5. pilī, -i, m., century of soldiers;
primus pilī, first century of a legion;
primi pilī centurīō, or prīmipilī,
the centurion of the first century, chief
centurion. 1.
6. Nervīō, -a, -um, adj. (Ner-
vius), of the Nervi. 1.
7. C., abbr. for praenomen Gālius
(gā'yus). *
Volusēnus, -ī, m., Gālius Voluse-
nus Quadrātus (gā'yūs völ"ü-sē'nūs
kwā-drā'tūs), a tribūne of Caesar's army,
afterward commander of cavalry. 4.

11. excēndēndī: gerund or gerundive?
locī relinquentī: gerund or gerundive?
12. suī recipiēndī: construction?
App. 291, a: G.-L. 428, R. 1: A. 504, c: B.

Chap. 5. As a last resort Galba de-
cides on a sortie.
1. cum pugnārētur, "when the bat-
tle had lasted." The imperfect sub-
junctive is to be translated on the same
principle as is laid down for the imper-
fect indicative in App. 191, b: G.-L. 234:
hōris: ablative after the comparative,
amplius; cf. note on mūlibus, II, 7, 10.
3. languidīōribus nostrīs, "as our
men grew weaker": ablative absolute.
5. cāsum, "extremity."
quem . . . dīximus: cf. II. 25, 7.
9. extrēmum auxiliūm, "their last
resource."

experīrentur: indirect discourse for
the future indicative.

10. mīlitēs certiōrēs facit, "he di-
rected the soldiers." This phrase is fol-
lowed by indirect discourse, as usual;
but all the verbs are in the subjunctive
mode, because they represent impera-
tives of the direct form.
paulisper intermitterent proelium ac tantummodo tēla missa exciperent sēque ex labōre reficerent, post datō signō ex castris ērumperent atque omnem spem salūtis in virtūte pōnerent.

6. Quod iussi sunt faciunt, ac subitō omnibus portis eruptiones factā neque cognōscendī quid fieret neque suī colligendī hostibus facultātem relinquunt. Ita committātā fortūnā eōs qui in spem potiundōrum castrōrum vēnerant undique circum-ventōs interficiunt, et ex hominum milibus amplius xxx/ quem numerum barbarōrum ad castra vēnisse cōnsūbat, plus tertia parte interfecit reliquōs perterritōs in fugam coniciunt ac nē in locis quidem superiōribus cōnsistēre patiuntur. Sic omnibus hostium cōpiās fūsīs armisque exūtīs sē in castra mūnitionēs-

11. tantummodo, adv., only.
12. excipiō, -cipere, -cēpi, -cep-tum, tr. and intr. [capiō, take]; tr., take up, catch, receive; take up (in turn); meet, withstand; reliefe (of soldiers in battle); intr., follow.

labor, -ōris, m., toil, effort, striving; labor, hardship.

refaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -fectum, tr. [re- + faciō, make], remake, repair; allow to rest; with sē, refresh one’s self, rest.

13. ērumpō, -umpere, -rupi-, ruptum, intr. [rumpō, break], break forth, more spirit on the offensive than on the defensive, partly because the enemy were taken by surprise, and partly because the Gauls always lacked persistence and ability to rally from a reverse.


circumventōs: translate by a coördinate clause.

5. ex milibus XXX depends on tertīā parte. Galba probably exaggerated the number in his report to Caesar, for those tribes cannot have had 30,000 soldiers.

9. arms: ablative of separation. The Gauls threw away their arms in their flight.
que suás recipiunt: Quoque proeliō factō, quod saepius fortūnam temptāre Galba nólebat atque alió sé in hiberna cōnsiliō vérissē meminerat, aliās occurrisse rēbus viderat/ maximē frumentī commeātūisque inopīa permōtus, posterō die, omnibus eius vicī sediciois incēnsis, in provincia revertedi contendit/ac nūllo hoste prohibente aut iter démorante incolumem legiōnem in Nantuātēs, inde in Allobrogēs perduxīt ibique hiemāvit.

7. His rēbus gestīs, cum omnibus dé causās Caesar pācātam Galliam existimāret,/ superātīs Belgīs, expulsīs Germānīs, victīs in Alpibus Sedūnīs, atque ita initā hiemē in Illyricum profectus esset, quod eās quoque nātiōnēs adire et regionēs cognōscere volēbat, subitum bellum in Gallīa coortum est. Eius bellī

12. memīni, -isse (App. 86), tr., re-
memory, bear in mind. 1.
15. démōrō, 1, tr. [mōrō, delay],
hinder, delay. 1.
incolumīs, -e, adj., unhurt, unin-
jured, safe and sound, unimpaired. 4.
3. hiēms, -mis, f., winter time,
winter. *

5. subitus, -a, -um, adj. [subēō,
come up, come by stealth], unexpected,
sudden.
coorīr,-orīr,-oritus sum, intr. [co-
+orīr, rise], arise, spring up, break out. 2.

10. quod ... nólebat: Galba felt that it would be foolish to court another attack by remaining in so dangerous a position. The complete victory which he had gained made it possible for him to retire with honor. Since Caesar never fought these tribes again, we may suppose that they were taught by this battle not to molest Roman travelers.

11. aliō cōnsiliō, “with one pur-
pose”; namely, to spend the winter there quietly.

12. allīs ... rēbus, “that he had met a different state of affairs”; namely, a dangerous battle.

15. in Nantuātēs: there, of course, he picked up the other two cohorts of his legion.

Chap. 7-11. The Aremoric states revolt, under the leadership of the Veneti. Caesar prepares a fleet for their subjugation, and takes measures to prevent a wide-spread uprising of Gaul.

The events of the preceding six chap-
ters occurred in the fall of 57. At this point the events of 56 begin.

Chap. 7. The Aremoric states revolt because Cassius demands supplies from them.

1. omnibus dé causās, “for every reason”; explained by the ablatives absolute superātīs ... Sedūnīs, which should be translated by causal clauses.

pācātam (esse) Galliam: this belief was premature, for it took Caesar seven more years to subdue Gaul thoroughly.

victīs Sedūnīs: cf. 1-6. The Seduni were the most important of the tribes there mentioned.

4. quod ... volērat: under Augustus, Caesar's successor, the Romans were obliged to conquer the tribes between the Adriatic and the Danube. No doubt Caesar foresaw this necessity and hoped to do the work himself, but Gaul kept his hands full.

8. Huius est civitātis longē amplissima auctōritās omnis ērae maritimae regiōnum eārum, quod et nāvēs habent Veneti plurīmās, quibus in Britanniam nāvīgāre cōnsuērunt; et scientiā atque ūrēm nautīcārum cēterōs antecēdunt, et in magnō impetū maris vāsti atque aperti paucae portibus interiectīs, quōs tenent ipsi, omnēs fērē qui eō mari ūtrī cōnsuērunt habent vectigālēs. Ab his fit initium retinendi/Sili atque

6. adulæscens, -entis, m. [pres. part. of adulæscō, grow up], youth, young man. 4.

7. mare, -is, n., sea; mare Oceanum, the ocean. *

8. praefectus, -I, m. [praēficē, place over.] overseer, prefect, commander, officer, captain (usually of cavalry). 4.

10. Terrasidius, -di, m., Titus Terrasidius (tī'tūs tēr'ā-sii-dī'ūs), a military tribune in Caesar's army. 2.

Trebius, -bi, m., Marcus Trebius Gallus (mārk'ūs têr'ē-bī'ūs gāl'īūs), a military tribune in Caesar's army. 2.

11. Velānius, -ni, m., Quintus Velānius (kwēn'tūs vē-lā'ī-nī'ūs), a military tribune in Caesar's army. 2.

Silius, -Ii, m., Titus Silius (tī'tūs sīl'i-ūs), a military tribune in Caesar's army. 2.


9. in finitimās civitātēs: especially the sea-board states of the northwest, called Aremoricān states. These had all submitted to Crassus in the fall; see II, 34.

Chap. 8. Led by the Veneti, the Aremoricān states arrest Roman envoys and form a league.

1. huius civitātis: the Veneti, who were last mentioned.

2. ōrae: partitive genitive, depending on amplissima.

regionum: depending on ōrae.

quod: belongs with habent, 1, 2; antecēdunt, 1, 4; and habent, 1, 7.

4. in magnō . . . interiectīs, "there being only a few harbors in that dangerous stretch (lit. great violence) of vast and open sea."

7. habent vectigālēs, "they treat
Velāniī, quod per eōs suōs sē obsidēs, quōs Crassō dedissent, recuperātūrōs existimābant. Hōrum auctoritāte finitimi ad-
ductī, út sunt Gallōrum subita et repentīna consilia, sēdam dē 10
causā Trebium Terrasidiumque retinent, et celeriter missīs
lēgātīs per suōs principēs inter sē coniurant nihil nisi communī
cōnsiliō actūrōs eundemque omnēs fortūnae exitum esse lātūrōs,
reliquāsque civitātēs sollicitant ut in eā libertāte, quam ā ma-
iōribus acēperint (permanēre quam Rōmānōrum servitūtem 15
perferre mālint.) Omni ōra maritimā celeriter ad suam senten-
tiam perductā commūnem lēgātōnem ad P. Crassum mittunt:
Si velit suōs recuperāre, obsidēs sibi remittat.

9. Quibus dē rebus Caesar ab Crassō certior factus, quod
ipse aberat longius, nāvēs interim longās aedificāri in flūmine
Ligerī, quod influit in Oceanum, rēmīgēs ex provin-ciā Institui,

9. recuperā, 1, tr., recover, regain.
13. exitus, -ūs, m. [exeō, go out], a
going out, exit, passage; issue, result, end. 2.
15. permaneō, -manēre, -mānī,
-mānsum, intr. [maneō, remain], stay
through or to the end, stay, remain;
continue, persist. 3.

as tributarīis”; i.e. the ship owners paid
a tax for the privilege of using the har-
bors.
ab . . . retinendi, lit. “a beginning
is made by these of arresting” = “they
began by arresting.”
9. finitimi: the Esuvii and the Cori-
lositates.
10. ut, “as,” almost “since.”
12. communē consiliō, “by common
agreement.”
13. actūrōs (esse), “that they would
do.”
14. ut permanēre quam perferre
mālint, “to prefer to remain (rather)
than to endure.”
15. acēperint: implied indirect dis-
course.
16. velit, remittat: the direct
form was si vis, remitte.

89], tr. and intr. [magis, more+volō,
wish], wish more or rather, prefer. 1.
2. aedificō, 1, tr. [aedēs, house+
faciō, make], build, construct. 1.
3. Liger, -eris, m. (Coe), the river
Liger (L'Jör), better the Loire. 1.
rēmex, -īgis, m. [cf. rēmus, oar]
oarsman, rower. 1.

Chap. 9. Caesar equips a fleet. The
Veneti make preparations to resist him.

2. aberat longius, “was too far off,”
to take command in person.
nāvēs longās: cf. Int. 64.
in flūmine Ligerī: on the map facing
p. 317, notice that there are three towns
along the Liger, connected by a line of
march. These were the winter quarters
of the army, and no doubt ships were
built at all of them.
3. ex provin-ciā: the Gauls were not
competent oarsmen, for their ships were
managed by sails, not oars; otherwise
oarsmen might have been secured from
the friendly maritime states, the An-
des and the Pictones.
Institui, “to be procured.”
nautas gubernatorisque comparati iubet. His rebus celeriter
administratis ipse, cum primum per annum tempus potuit, ad
exercitum contendit. Veneti reliquaque item civitates cognitates
Caesaris adventus, simul quod quantum in se facinus admisissent intellegabant, legatibus, quod nomen apud omnès nationes sanctu
inviolatumque semper fuisset, retentos ab se et
in vincula conciit, pro magnitudine periculi bellum parare
et maximè ea quae ad usum navium pertinent prövidère
instituunt, hoc maiore spé, quod multum nauta loci confidént-
abant. Pedestria esse itinera concisa aestuariis, navigatiónem
impeditam propter inscientiam locorum paucitatemque portu-
tum sciébant, neque nostrós exercitus propter frumenti inopiam
diútius (apud sè morári posse confidébant; ac iam ut
omnia contrá opiniónum acciderent, tamen sè plurimum návibus
posse, Rómani neque ullam facultatem habère návium neque
eorum locorum ubi bellum gestūrī essent vada, portús, insulās

4. nauta, -ae, m. [for návita; návis, ship], sailor. 1.
gubernator, -óris, m. steersman, pilot. 1.
7. facinus, -oris, n. [faciō, do], deed; misdeed, outrage, crime. 2.
9. sanctio, sancire, sánxi, sánctum, tr. [cf. saecur, sacred], make sacred, sanction; bind; sanctus, pf. part. as
adj., sacred, inviolable, established. 2.
inviolatus, -a, -um, adj. [in-violá-
tus, injured], uninjured; inviolate, sacred. 1.
13. navigatio, -ónis, f. [navigō, sail], sailing; navigation; voyage. 3.
14. inscientia, -ae, f. [insciéns, ignorant], ignorance. 3.
19. insula, -ae, f., island. *

5. cum primum . . . potuit: probably in May. For tense see App. 237: G.-L.
ad exercitum contendit: probably he went first to the most eastern town
indicated on the Liger (see map facing p. 317), and then marched west, thus
concentrating his army at Angers, where Crassus had spent the winter.
7. quantum . . . admisissent, "how great a crime they had committed"; an
indirect question.
8. légátos retentos (esse), "(namely),
that envoys had been arrested," explains facieus; syntactically it is indirect dis-
course after intellegebant.
quod nomen, "a name which"; i.e.
légātōs.
10. prō, "in proportion to."
12. hoc: ablative of cause, explained
by quod . . . confidēbant.
natūrā: case? App. 145, a: G.-L. 401,
13. pedestria itinera, "land routes."
14. impeditam (esse), "was difficult."
15. neque posse confidēbant, "and
they trusted that . . . would not be able."
16. iam, "even."
ut: translation? App. 247: G.-L. 608:
A. 527, a: H.-B. 532, 2, b: H. 566, II.
17. sè posse, sc. sciēbant.
18. facultatem, "supply."
19. locūrum, depends on vada. etc.
nōvisse; ac (longē aliam) esse navigātiōnem in conclusō mari atque in vāstissimō atque apertissimō Oceanō perspiciebant. His initis cōnsiliis oppida mūniunt, frūmenta ex agris in oppida comportant, nāvēs in Venetiām, ubi Caesarem primum bellum gestūrum cōnstābat, quām plūrimās possunt ēgūnt. Sociōs sibi ad id bellum Osismōs, Lexoviōs, Namnetēs, Ambillatōs, Morinōs, Diablintēs, Menapiōs asciscunt; auxilia ex Britannia, quae contrā eās regiōnēs posita est, ācessunt.

10. Erant haec difficultātēs belli gerendi quās suprā ostendimus, sed tamen multa Caesarem ad id bellum incitābant: inīriā retentūrum equitūm Rōmānōrum, rebellīō facta post dēditionem, dēfectīō datis obsidibus, tot civitātum consūratīō, in primīs nē hac parte neglēctā reliquae nātiōnēs sibi idem 5 licēre arbitrārentur. Itaque cum intellegēret omnēs fērē Gallōs novis rēbus studēre et ad bellum mōbiliter celeriterque

20. nōscō, nōscere, nōvi, nōtum, tr., learn, become acquainted or familiar with; nōvi, pf., have learned, hence, know; nōtus, pf. part. as adj., known, well known, familiar. 4. conclusō, -clūdere, -clūsi, -clūsum, tr. [claudō, close], shut up; conclusō sum mare, an inland sea. 1.

23. Venetiā, -ae, f., Venetiā (vēnē-shyā), the country of the Veneti. 1.

25. Lexoviō, -ium, m. (Bd), the Lexoviō (lēk-sō′vi-l). 4.

Namnetēs, -um, m. (Cc), the Namnetēs (nām′nē-tēz). 1.

20. aliam esse atque, "was different from (what it was)."

in conclusō mari: i.e. the Mediterranean, where the tides are very small.

23. in Venetiām: probably in the bay of Quiberon. See map, p. 283.

primum: the adverb.

25. Ambillatōs: their location is entirely unknown. The rest of the states should be looked up on the map.

Chap. 10. Caesar plans to prevent a spread of the uprising.

1. suprā: in chap. 9.

2. multa, "many considerations."

Ambillatōs, -ōrum, m., the Ambillatōs (ām′bī-li′a-tō). 1.

26. Diablintēs, -um, m. (Bc), the Diablintēs (di′a-blin′tēs). 1.

3. rebellīō, -onis, f. [rebellō, renew war], renewal of war, rebellion, revolt. 3.

4. dēfectīō, -onis, f. [déficiō, fall], falling away, desertion, revolt. 1.

5. nē, "the fear that.

Neglegō, -legere, -lēxi, -lēctum, tr. [neg-—legō, choose, regard], not heed, disregard, neglect. *

Mōbiliter, adv. (mōbilis, mov-
CAESAR'S GALLIC WAR, III, 11

excitāri, omnēs autem hominēs nāturā libertāti studēre/et condicionem servitūtis odisse/priusquam plūres civitātēs cōnspirārent/partiendum sibi ac lātius distribuendum exercitum putāvīt.

11. Itaque T. Labiēnum lēgātum in Trēverōs, qui proximi flūmini Rhēnō sunt, cum equitātū mittit. Huic mandat Rēmōs reliquōsque Belgās adest/etque in officiō continēat/Germanōsque, qui auxiliō à Belgis arcessitū dicēbantur, si per vim nāvibus flūmen trānsīre cōnentur, prohibēt. P. Crassum cum cohortibus legionāris et magnō numerō equitātūs in Aquītaniam proficiscī iubet, nē ex his nātiōnibus auxilia in Galliam mittantur ac tantae nātiōnēs coniungantur. Q. Titūrum Sabīnum lēgātum cum legiōnibus tribus in Venellōs, Coriosolītēs,

able], readily, easily. 1.
excitō, 1, tr. [citō, rouse], call forth, excite, animate, arouse; erect, construct (tōwērō); kindle (ārsē). 3.
cōnspirō, 1, intr. [spirō, breathe], combine, conspire. 1.
partiērō, 4, tr. [pars, part], part, share, divide. 1.
distribūō, -tribuerē, -tribulī, -tribuērum, tr. [tribuō, assign], assign, divide, distribute. 3.
officiō, -cī, n., service, allegiance, duty; official duty, business; esse, manēre, or permanēre in officiō, to remain faithful. *

8. autem, “moreover.”
cōnspirārent: translate this clause after the principal clause. The subjunctive was probably used in the direct form; App. 228, b: G.-L. 577: A. 551, b: B. 292, 1, b: H.-B. 507, 4: b: H. 605, 1.
partiendum (esse) sibi, lit. “must be divided by him” = “he must divide.” Remember that the future passive participle of deponent verbs is passive in meaning.
lātius distribuendum: so as to overawe several parts of Gaul at the same time.

Chap. 11. Accordingly he sends divisions of his army into various parts of Gaul, and himself marches against the Veneti.

flūmini: what other case may proximus govern? See note on 7, 7.
mittit: probably the various expeditions mentioned in this chapter all started from Angers. See map facing p. 217.

mandat adest: note the primary sequence after the historical present; cf. note on accurrunt, 8, 8. Note also the lack of a conjunction; App. 228, a: G.-L. 546, R. 2: A. 565, a: B. 295, 8: H.-B. 502, 3, a: H. 565, 4.

Rēmōs: this state had earned the hatred of the other Belgæ in the preceding year, and it may have needed support.

arcessitū: sc. esse.
cōnentur is a part of Caesar’s instructions to Labienus, and is therefore implied indirect discourse. But dicēbantur is not a part of the instructions, and is therefore indicative.

cohortibus legionāris: Roman soldiers, in contrast to the cavalry, which was Gallic.
in Galliam: i.e. Celtic Gaul.
WAR WITH THE VENETI, B.C. 56

Lexoviāisque mittit, quī eam manum distinendum cūret. D. Brūtum adulēsentem classī Gallicīisque nāvibus quās ex Pictonibus et Santoniā reliquisque pācātis regiōnibus convenire iussērat praeēcit; et cum primum posītīn Venetōs proficīscī iuβet. Ipsē eō pedestribus cōpis contendit.

12. Erant eius modi fērē sitūs oppidōrum ut posita in extrēmis lingulis prōmunturiāisque neque pedibus aditum habērent cum ex altō sē aestūs incitāvisset, quod bis accidit semper hōrārum XXXIII spatiō, neque nāvibus, quod rūrus minuente aestū nāvéā in vadis affictārentur. Ita utraque rē oppidōrum oppugnātiō impediēbātur; ac sī quāndō magnūtūdine operis

10. qui . . . cūret, "to see that that force be kept away." For the construction of distinendum, see App. 235, II. b: G.-L. 430: A. 500, 4: B. 337, 7, b: 2: H.-B. 612, III: H. 622.

11. classis, -is, f., fleet. *

Pictonēs, -um, m. (Ccd), the Pictones (pik'tō-nēz). 1.

1. situs, -ūs, m. [sinō, put down], situation, site, position. 1.

2. lingula, -ae, f. [lingua, tongue], a little tongue; a tongue of land. 1.

prōmunturium, -ri, n. [prōmineō, project], promontory, headland. 1.

3. aestūs, -ūs, m., heat; boiling, surging; tide; minuente aestū, at ebb tide. *

bis, sum. adv. [for duas, from duo, two], twice. 3.

5. afflētē, 1, tr. [freq. of afflēo, strike against, damage], damage greatly, shatter, injure; harass, distress. 2.

6. quāndō, indef. adv., ever, at any time. 1.


1. sitūs oppidōrum: see the small plan in the lower left hand corner of the map on p. 232.

extrēmis, "the end of."

2. pedibus, "on foot"; i.e. by land. At high tide the low ground between the towns and the mainland was overflowed.

3. sē incitāvisset, "had rushed in."

4. nāvibus: sc. aditum habērent.

5. in vadis affictārentur, "were stranded on the shallows." The subjunctive is due to attraction.

6. sī quāndō . . . cooperant, . . . deportābant, "whenever they began
forte superāti, extrūsō mari aggere ac mōlibus atque hīs oppidi moenibus adaequātis, suis fortūnis dēspērāre coeperant, magnō numerō nāvium appulsō, cuius rei summam facultātem habē-

7. extrūdō, -trūdere, -trūsi, -trūsum, tr. [trūdō, thrust], thrust or shut out. 1.
mōlēs, -is, f., mass; dike. 1

9. appellō, -pellere, -pull, -pullsum, tr. [ad+pellō, drive], bring to land; bring together. 1.

---

Operations Against the Veneti

... they would carry off, etc." dēpor-
tabant is an imperfect of repeated action, for they kept moving from town to town. coeperant is pluperfect because in each case they had begun to despair before they moved. Latin is more exact than English in its use of tenses of repeated action.
operis, "of the works"; explained by the following ablatives absolute.

7. extrūsō... adaequātis: apparently the Romans ran two parallel dykes from the mainland to the town, completing them at low tide, when the ground was dry. Thus the sea was shut out (extrūsō) from the space between the dykes, and the soldiers could work there continuously. The outer ends of these dykes (or of one of them) were built as high as the wall of the town, so as to serve as aggiers.
aggere ac mōlibus: ablatives of means.
8. fortūnis: indirect object. The ablative with dē is more common.
9. cuius rei: i.e. ships.
bant, sua Déportábant omnia séque in proxima oppida recipi-
èbant; ibi sé rúrsus isdem opportunitätibus loci défendébant.
Haec eó facilius magnum partem aestátis faciébant, quod nos-
trae nàvēs tempestätibus défıněbantur, summaque erat vástō
atque aperto mari, magnís aestibus, rāris ac prope nūllīs porti-
būs, difficulties nāvigandī.

13. Namque ipsōrum nāvēs ad hunc modum factae arma-
taeque erant: carīnae aliquantō plāníórēs quam nostrārum nā-
vium, quō facilius vada ac décessum aestūs excipere possent;
prōrē admodum ērēctae atque item puppēs ad magnitūdinem
flūctuum tempestätumque accommodātæae; nāvēs tōtae factae s
ex rōbore ad quamvis vim et contuméliam perferendam; trāns-

10. Déportō, 1. tr. [portō, carry],
carry off or away. 1.
11. oppor-tunitātis, -tātis, f. [oppor-
tānus, fit], fitness; fit time, opportu-
nity; advantage; with loci, favorable
situation or position; with tempora,
favorable opportunity. 2.
12. tempestās, -tātis, f. [tempus,
time], time, season; weather, usually
bad weather, storm, tempest. *

dētīnēō, -tīnēre, -tīnul, -tentum,
tr. [tēnēō, hold], hold off or back; hinder.
detail. 1.
14. rārus, -a, -um, adj., scattered,
far apart; in small detachments, a few
at a time; few. 1.
1. namque, conj. [nam, for], for. 3.
2. aliqun-tō, adv. [aliquntus, some],
somewhat, a little. 1.
12. partem: duration of time.
13. summa agrees with difficul-tātis.
vástō ... portibus: ablatives abso-
lute with causal meaning.

Chap. 13. Description of the ships of the Veneti.
1. namque introduces the reason for
the ability of the enemy’s ships to oper-
ate while the Roman ships were help-
lēss.
2. carīnae ... nāvium, “the bot-
toms (were) flatter than (those) of, etc.”
In such cases Latin never inserts a

plānus, -a, -um, adj., even, level,
flat, plain. 2.
3. décessus, -ús, m. [dēcēdō, de-
part], departure; ebb, fall (of the tides). 1.
4. prōrē, -ae, f., prov. 1.
admodum, adv. [modus, measure],
up to the measure; very much, very; with
num., fully; with neg., at all. 1.
ērigō, - rigere, -rēxi, -rēctum, tr.
[regō, direct], lift or raise; ērēctus, pf.
part. as adj., standing upright, high. 1.
puppis, -is, f., stern of a ship. 2.
5. flūctus, -ūs, m. [flōd, flow], flood,
billow, wave. 3.
accommodātus, -a, -um, adj. [pf.
part. of accommodō, adapt], fit, adapt-
ed, appropriate. 2.
6. rōbur, -oris, n., oak. 1.
trānstrum, -ī, n., cross-beam,
thwart. 1.

word for “those.”

3. quō: when is quō used in purpose
clauses?
excipere, “meet,” “encounter.”
They were less likely to strike bottom,
and if stranded they would not heel
over.
5. tōtae, “entirely.”
470.

quamvis: accusative of quisīs.
trānstra: these heavy timbers, set in
tra ex pedālibus in altītūdinem trabibus cōnfixa clāvis ferreis digiti pollicis crassitūdine; ancorae prō fūnibus ferreis catēnis revinctae; pellēs prō vēlis alūtaeque tenuiter cōnfectae, sive propter inopiam linī atque eius usūs inscientiam, sive eō, quod est magis vēri simile, quod tantās tempestātēs Oceāni tantōsque impētūs ventūrōrō sustinērī ac tanta onera nāvium regī vēlis nōn satis commodē posse arbitrabuntur. Cum hīs nāvibus nostrae classi eius modī congressus erat ut ūnā celeritāte et pulūrō rēmōrum praestāret, reliqua prō loci nātūrā, prō vī tempestātum illis essent aptīōra et accommodātiōra. Neque enim

7. pedālis, -ē, adj. [pēs, foot], of a foot in thickness or diameter. 1. cōnfigō, -figere, -fixī, -fixum, tr. [figō, fix]. fasten. 1. clāvus, -ī, m., nail, spike. 1. ferreus, -ūs, -um, adj. [ferrum, iron], of iron, iron. 2. digiti, -ī, m., finger; as measure of length, a finger's breadth, the 16th part of a Roman foot; digitus pollex, the thumb. 1. pollex, -īcis, m., the thumb, with or without digitus. 1. crassītūdō, -inis, f. [crassus, thick], thickness. 1. ancorae, -ae, f., anchor; in ancoris, at anchor. 1. fūnus, -ūs, m., rope, cable. 3. catēna, -ae, f., chain; fetter. 3. revinctō, -vincōrēs, -vincī, -vincu-

tum, tr. [re- + vincō, bind], bind back; fasten, bind. 2. vēlīum, -ī, n., covering, veil; sail. 3. alūta, -ae, f., soft leather. 1. tenuiter, adv. [tenuis, thin], thinly. 1. linum, -ī, n., flax; linen, canvas. 1. similis, -ēs, adj., like, similar. 1. ventus, -ī, m., wind. * rēgō, regere, rēxī, rēctum, tr., keep straight; guide, direct, control. 1. congressus, -ūs, m., [congre-
dior, meet], meeting, engagement, conflict. 1. pulsus, -ūs, m. [pellō, strike], stroke. 1. rēmus, -ī, m., oar. 4. aptus, -ās, -um, adj., fitted, suited, adapted. 1.

across the inside of the ship, strengthened the sides and helped them to withstand the Roman rōstra (I. 17). In Roman ships they were rowers' benches, but the Veneti had no rowers.


12. tanta onera nāvium, "such heavy ships." 13. nōn satis commodē, "not very well." 14. classēs: dative of possessor. ūnā celeritāte, "only in speed." 15. pulōrēmōrum, "in rowing"; i.e. "in having oars." In the battle which followed the fact that the Roman ships had oars was an immense advantage.

reliqua, "all other things." prō, "in view of." 16. illis: the ships of the enemy.
iis nostrae rōstrō nocēre poterant (tanta in iis erat firmitūdō), neque propter altitūdinem facile tēlum adīgēbātur, et sādem dē causā minus commodē cōpulis continēbantur. Accēdēbat ut, cum saevire ventus coepisset et sē ventō dedissent, et tempestātem ferrent facilius et in vadis cōnsisterent tūtius, et ab aestū relictae nihil saxa et cautēs timērent; quārum rērum omnium nostris nāvibus cāsus erat extimēscendus.

14. Complūribus expugnātīs oppidis Caesar, ubi intellēxit frustrā tantum labōrem sūmī, neque hostium fugam captīs oppidis reprimī neque iis nocēri posse; statuit exspectandam classem. Quae ubi convenīt ac primum ab hostibus visa est, circiter ccxx nāvēs eōrum parātissimae atque omnī genere armōrum órnātissimae profectae ex portū nostrīs adversae cōn-

17. rōstrum, -i, n. [rōdō, gnaw, consume], beak of a bird; beak or prow of a ship. 2.
noceō, nocere, nocui, nocitum, intr., injure, hurt; nocēns, pres. part. as noun, guilty person. 4.
firmitūdō, -inis, f. [firmus, strong], strength, firmness, solidity. 2.
cōpula, -ae, f., grappling-hook. 1.
saevis, -ire, -i, -itum, intr. [saevus, raging], rage; be fierce. 1.
tūtō, adv. [tūtus, 'safe'], safely, securely. 2.

22. cautēs, -is, f., refl. 1.
23. extimēscō, -timēscere, -timul, —, tr. [timēscō, incept. of timeō, fear], dread. 1.
reprimō, -primere, -pressi, -pressum, tr. [re-+premō, press], press or keep back, check, restrain. 1.
genus, -eris, n., descent, origin, race, class, tribe, family; kind, nature. *
örnō, 1, tr., adorn; furnish, supply; órnātus, pf. part. as adj., equipped, furnished, fitted out. 1.

Romans ruin the rigging of the hostile ships.

1. expugnātīs: by the method described in chap. 12.
6. armōrum, "equipment," including everything necessary for the defense and management of the ships during the battle.

nostrīs: sc. nāvibus.
cōnsistērunt, "took their position"; from cōnsistō. See the map on p. 232.
stiterunt; neque satis Bruto, qui classi praerat, vel tribunis militum centuriö nibusque, quibus singulae naves erant attributa, constabat quid agerent aut quam rationem pugnae insisterent. Rostro enim noceri non posse cognoverant; turribus autem excitatis tamem has altitudinem puppium ex barbaris navibus superabat, ut neque ex inferiori loco satis commodè tela adigit posseet et missa ad Gallis gravius acciderent. Una erat magnae usuil res praeparâtæ a nostris, falces praecutae insertae affixaeque longuriis non absimilis fœrma mûralium falcium. His cum funes qui antennâs ad mâlos destinabant comprehensâi adduc-

14. praeparó, 1, tr. [paró, prepare], prepare beforehand, provide. 1. falx, falca, f., sickle, pruning-hook; hook (for pulling down walls). 2. inseró, -serere, -serui, -serum, tr., insert, thrust in. 1. affigó, -figere, -fixi, -fixum, tr. [ad +figō, fix], fasten to. 1. longurus, -rí, m. [longus, long], a long pole. 2. absimilis, -e, adj. [similis, like], unlike. 1. fœrma, -ae, f., form, shape, appearance. 1. 


9. quid ... insisterent, "what to do or what plan of fighting to adopt." These are indirect questions, but the subjunctive would be used in corresponding direct questions; App. 310: G.-L. 265: A. 444: B. 277: H.-B. 508: H. 559 4.

10. rostrō: ablative of means. noceri: sc. navibus hostium; cf. references on neque ... posses, 1. 2. turribus excitâtis, "even when the towers were erected." These towers were erected on the fore and after decks. One appears in Fig. 12, Int. 64; but the sculptor represented it in miniature, so as to get it into the available space.

11. ex, "on."

12. neque ... et = et (both) nôna ... et. In translating, omit the first et.

mûralis, -e, adj. [mûrus, wall], pertaining to a wall, mural; mûralium, mural javelin, a heavy javelin to be thrown from the top of a wall. 1. antemna, -ae, f., sail-yard. 3. mûtus, -i, m., mast; pole, beam (upright). 1. dêstinó, 1, tr., fasten, secure; catch firmly; appoint, choose. 1. comprehendó, -prehendere, -prehendî, -prehensîum, tr. [prehendô, (prëndô), seize], grasp or lay hold of, seize, catch, arrest; take, catch (fire). 2.

13. missa, "those thrown." erat magnae ususul, "was very useful." In fact this device saved the day.

15. longuris: dative with insertae and affixae.

nôn ... falcium, "of a form not unlike (that) of mural hooks."

his ... coincidebant: the ships of the Veneti had each a single square sail, supported by a sail-yard. The sail was hoisted and held up by means of a rope (halyard) which ran from this sail-yard through a pulley at the top of the mast down to one side (gunwale) of the ship, where it was made fast. The Romans caught the halyard just above the gunwale and broke it, whereupon the sail fell.

his: i.e. hooks. Ablative of means.

tique erant, nāvigiō rēmis incitātō praeṛumpēbantur. Quibus abscissis antennae necessāriō concīdēbant, ut, cum omnis Gallicīs nāvibus spēs in vēlis armāmentīisque cōnsīstēret, hīs ēreptīs omnis ĩúsus nāvium ĩnō tempore ēripērētur. Reliquum erat certāmen positum in virtūte, quā nostri militēs facile superābant, atque eō magis, quod in cōnspectū Caesaris atque omnis exercitus rés gerēbātur, ut nūllum paulō fortius factum latēre posset; omnēs enim collēs ac loca superiōra unde erat propinquus dēspectus in mare ab exercitū tenēbantur.

15. Dēiectīs, ut dīximus, antennās, cum singulās bīnae ac ternae nāvēs circumstetant, militēs summā vī trànscedendere in hostium nāvēs contendēbant. Quod postquam barbāri fieri animadvertērunt, expugnātīs complūribus nāvibus, cum ēi reī nūllum reperīrētur auxiliūm, fugā salūtem petere contendērunt.

17. nāvigium, -gi, n. [nāvigō, sail], a sailing vessel, ship, craft. 2.
praerumpō, -rumpere, -rāpī, -ruptum, tr. [rumpē, break], break off, tear away; praeruptus, pf. part. as adj., steep, precipitous. 1.
18. abscondō, -oldere, -oldi, -olium, tr. [caedō, cut], cut or lop off, tear off or away. 1. concīdō, -oldere, -oldi, —, intr. [caedō, fall], fall down fall. 1.
19. armāmenta, -urum, n. [armō, arm], implements, gear; tackle or rigging of a ship. 2.
21. certāmen, -inis, n. [certō, strive], strife, struggle, contest, combat. 1.

18. quibus: i.e. ūnibus.
19. nāvibus, "of the ships"; a dative of reference modifying the whole clause, where a genitive might have been used instead; cf. Caesarī, I, 31, 4.
22. in cōnspectō, etc.: Caesar and his army were on the heights of St. Gildas; see the map on p. 238.
23. paulō fortius, "a little braver than usual."

22. factum, -i, n. [pf. part. of faciō, half noun, half participle], act, exploit, deed. 1.
25. dēspectus, -us, m. [dēspisiō, look down upon], a looking down, view. 1.
1. bīnī, -ae, -a, distrib. num. adj. [bis, twice], two each, two apiece, by twos. 3.
2. terrī, -ae, -a, distrib. num. adj. [ter, thrice], three each, three apiece. 1.
23. in cōnspectō, etc.: Caesar and his army were on the heights of St. Gildas; see the map on p. 238.
23. paulō fortius, "a little braver than usual."

Chap. 15. Almost all the ships of the Veneti are destroyed.
1. cum circumstetant: for mode see note on cum comprehēnēserat, 14, 15.
singulās . . . ternae, "two or three . . . each." Only the disabled Gallic ships were thus surrounded, for probably there were more Gallic ships than Roman.
3. quod, ēi reī: both refer to the statement in the first sentence, cum . . . contendēbant.
Ac iam conversis in eam partem návibus quó ventus ferébat, tanta subitó malacia ac tranquillitás extitit ut sé ex locó movere non possent. Quae quidem rès ad negotium consíciendum maximè fuit opportúna; nam singulás nostrí consortiátì expugnávérunt, ut perpancae ex omni numeró noctis interventú ad terram pervenirent, cum ab hórá feré quártá usque ad sólis occasum pugnárétur.

16. Quó proelió bellum Venétòrum tótiusque órae maritimae cónfectum est. Nam cum omnis iuventús, omnès etiam gravióris aétátis in quibus aliquid cónsili aut dignitátis fuit, eó convenerant, tum návium quod ubique fuerat in unum locum coègerant; quibus ámbissís, reliqui neque quó sé reciperent neque quem ad modum oppida défenderent habébant. Itaque sé suaque omnia Caesari dédiderunt. In quós eó gravius Caesár vindicandum statuit, quo diligentius in reliquum tempus à

7. | malacia, -ae, f. | a calm at sea. | 1. | tranquillitás, -étis, f., calmness, stillness; a calm. | 1. | existió, -istere, -stiti, —, intr. | [sistó, stand], stand or come forth, appear, arise; ensue. | 1. | cónsector, 1. tr. | [sector, freq. of sequeor, follow], follow eagerly, pursue, chase. | 4. | interventus, -ús, m. | [intervenió, come between], coming; aid. | 1. | terra, -ae, f. | earth, land, soil, ground; region, district; terrae (pl.) and orbis terrárum, the world. | 3. | usque, adv. | (1) of place, all the way to, even to, as far as; (2) of time, up to, till; with ad, until. | 3. | iuventús, -útis, f. | [juvenis, young], period of youth, from seventeen to forty-five years; the youth, the young men. | 1. | dignitás, -étis, f. | [dignus, worthy], worthiness, dignity, merit, rank. | 3. | ubique, adv. | [ubi, where], anywhere, everywhere. | 1. | vindíció, 1. tr. | assert authority, assert, claim; set free, deliver; inflict punishment. | 1. | in quibus ... fuit, "who had any advice or any rank." | eó: to the seat of war. | 3. | návium ... fuerat, "whatever [of ships] they had had anywhere." | 5. | quibus, refers to both men and ships. | neque ... habébant, "did not know where to take refuge, etc." For construction see note on quid ... insitient, 14, 9. | 7. | eó gravius, quó, lit. "more severely on this account, in order that" = "the more severely, etc." |
WAR WITH THE VENELLI, B.C. 56

barbaris iūs lēgātōrum/conservārētur. Itaque omni senātū necātō reliquōs sub corōnā vēndidit.

17. Dum haec in Venetīs geruntur, Q. Titūrius Sabinus cum iūs cópiis quās ā Caesare accēperat in finēs Venellōrum pervēnit. His praecerat Viridovix ac summam imperi tenēbat eārum omnium civitātum quae défecerant, ex quibus exercitum magnāsque cópias coegerat; atque his paucīs diēbus Aulerci Eruovicēs Lexoviique senātū suō interfectō, quod auctōrēs bellī esse nōlēbant, portās clausērunt sēque cum Viridovice coniūnxerunt; magnāque praeterea multitūdō undique ex Galliā perditōrum hominum latrōnumque convēnerat, quōs spēs prae-
dandi studiumque bellandī ab agricultūrā et cotidiānō labōre revocābat. Sabinus idōneō omnibus rébus locō castrīs sēsē

10. neō, 1. tr. [nec, death], put to death, kill, murder. 

11. corōnā, -ae, f., wreath, chaplet; ring, circle; sub corōnā vēndere, sell at auction. 1.

12. Viridovix, -icis, m., Viridovix, vī-ridō-vikis), a chief of the Venelli. 4.

13. Aulercī Eruovicēs, -um, m. (Bd), the Auleric Ebuvocices (aw-lēr'si šb'y-rō-viv'sēz). 1.

14. auctor, -ōris, m. [augeō, increase], one who produces, creates, or originates; promoter, instigator, adviser, author. auctōr esse, advise. 1.

15. praeterea, adv. [praeter, beyond], beyond this, besides, furthermore. *

16. perdō, -dere, -dīdī, -ditum, tr. [dō, give], give over, ruin; perditus, nī. part. as adj., desperate, ruined. 1.

17. latrō, -ōnis, m., freebooter, bandit, robber. 1.

18. agricultūra, -ae, f. [ager, land +colō, cultivate], cultivation of the land, agriculture. 3.


20. Sabinus: see 11, 8.

21. his paucīs diēbus, "a few days before"; i.e. before the arrival of Sabinus.

22. nōlēbant: the senators.

23. undique ex Galliā, "from all parts of Gaul"; not simply from the Aremorician states. This was the Romans' third year in Gaul, and the long-
contined war had unsettled everything.

24. idōneō... tenebat, "shut himself up in camp in a place suitable in all respects." Notice the three ab-
latives: rébus is an ablative of specification: locō is an ablative of place, App.
tenēbat, cum Viridovix contrā eum duōrum milium spatīō con-
sēdisset cotidiēque prōductīs cópiis pugnandī potestātem faceret,
ut iam nōn sōlum hostibus in contemptīōnem Sabinus venīret,
sed etiam nostrōrum milītum vōcibus nōn nihil carperētur;
tamtamque opinīōnem timōris praebuat ut iam ad vāllum 
castrōrum hostēs accēdere audērent. Id eā dē causā faciēbat,
quod cum tantā multītūdine hostium, præsertim eō absente 
quī summam imperī tenēret, nisi aequō locō aut opportūnitāte 
aliquā datā lēgātō dīmicumandō nōn existimābat.

18. Hāc cōnfīrmātā opinīōne timōris idōneum quendam 
hominem et callidum dēlēgit, Gallum, ex iis quōs auxili causā 
sēcum habēbat. Huic magnīs praemīsi pollicitātiōnibusque 
persuādet utī ad hostēs trānseat, et quid fieri velit ēdocet. Quī 
ubi prō perfugā ad eōs vēnit, timōrem Rōmānōrum prōpōnit, qui 
bus angustiīs ipse Caesar ā Venetīs premātur docet neque longius 
abesse quīn proxīmā nocte Sabinus clam ex castrīs exercitum

13. prōducō, -ducere, -ducī, -ducere. [ducō, lead], lead out or forth, bring forth; prolong, protract; produce; with cópiās, arrange, draw up. *
14. contemptō, -ēnīs, f. [contemnō, despise], disdain, contempt. 1.
15. carpō, carpere, carpsi, carpērum, tr., pluck: censure, jeer. at f. 1.
18. absēns, -entis, adj. [pres. part. of absum be absent], absent, at a distance. 2.
19. aequus, -a, -um. adj. even

level, equal; equitable, impartial, just; aequus animus, equanimity, composure. 3.
2. callidus, -a, -um, adj., shrewd. 1.
3. praemium, -mi, n., distinction, prize, reward. *
pollicitātiō, -ōnis f., [polliciēri, promise], promise, offer. 2.
4. ēdocēs, -docēre, -docui, -docū-
tum, tr. [docēō, teach], teach thoroughly, inform in detail, explain. 1.
7. clam, adv., secretly. 3.

Chap. 18. Sabinus tricks the enemy into attacking his camp.
2. Gallum, ‘a Gaul.’
ex īs, ‘(one) of those.’
5. prō perfugā, ‘pretending to be a deserter.’
6. docet has as objects the two substantive clauses quibus . . . premātur (indirect question) and abesse, etc. (indirect discourse).
neque . . . noctē, lit. ‘and that it was not farther off but that on the next night’ = ‘and that no later than the next night.’
édūcat et ad Caesarem auxili ferendi causā proficiscātur. Quod ubi auditum est, conclāmant omnēs occasīōnem negōtī bene gerendi āmittendum nōn esse, ad castra īri oportēre. Multae reās ad hoc consilium Gallōs horībantur: superiōrum diērum Sabinī cunctātiō, perfugae cōnfirmātiō, inopia cibāriōrum, cui reī parum diligenter ab iīs erat prōvisum, spēs Venetīcī bellī, et quod ferē libenter homīnēs /id quod volunt/ crēdent. His rēbus adductī nōn prius Viridovicem reliquōsque duōs ex con- ciliō dimittunt quam ab iīs sit concessum arma utī capiant et ad castra contendant. Quā rē concessā laetī, ut explōrātā victōriā, sarmentis virgultīisque collēctīs quibus fossās Rōmānōrum compleant, ad castra pergunt.

19. Locus erat castrōrum ēditus et paulātim ab īmō acclīvis circiter passūs mille. Hūc magnō cursū contendērunt, ut

9. conclāmō, 1. intr. [clāmō, cry out], shout or cry out, call aloud. 2. occāsīō, -ōnis, f. [occīdō, fall, happen], occasion, opportunity. 1. bene, adv. [bonus, good], well, rightly, successfully. Comp., melius; sup., optimē. 2.

12. cunctātiō, -ōnis, f. [cūnetor, delay], delaying, delay, hesitation, reluctance. 2. cōnfirmātiō, -ōnis, f. [cōnfirmō, assert], assurance. 1.

13. parum, adv. [parvus, little], little, too little, not sufficiently. 1.

Veneticus, -a, -um, adj., of the Venetian. 2.

14. libenter, adv. [libēns, willing], willingly, gladly, with pleasure. 2.

17. laetus, -a, -um, adj., joyful. 1. explōrātus, -a, -um, adj. [pf. part. of explōrō, search out], ascertained; sure, certain. 1.

18. sarmentum, -I, n., brushwood, fagōs. 1.

virgultum, -I, n., thicket, bush, brushwood. 1.

19. pergō, peregere, perrēxi, perrēctum, intr. [per + regō, keep straight], go on, proceed. 1.

9. negōtī ... gerendi, "of winning a victory."

10. īri oportēre, "(but) that they must go."

11. superiōrum diērum, "during the preceding days."

13. spēs ... bellī, "the hope of (a fortunate outcome) of, etc. The genitive is objective. They had not yet learned the result of the war.

14. quod ... crēdent: this substantive clause, like the preceding nominatives, is in apposition with rēs, l. 11.

15. prius quam ... concessum, "until they had granted them permission." The fate of the senate, 17, 6, no doubt helped the council to yield. Mode? App. 236, b: G.-L. 577, 2. n. 2: A. 551, b. n. 3: B. 293: H.-B. 607, 4. c: H. 605, 1.

17. ut ... victōriā, "as if victory were assured." 18. quibus ... compleant: a purpose clause.

Chap. 19. The enemy are routed and the states are forced to surrender. 1. ab imō, "from the bottom."
quam minimum spatium ad se colligendos armandosque Römânios dare tur, examinatique pervenérunt. Sabīnus suōs horstátus et cupientibus signum dat. Impeditis hostibus propter ea quae ferēbant onera, subitō duābus portis éruptiōnem fieri iubet. Factum est opportunitāte locī, hostium inscientiā ac dēfatigātiōne, virtūte militum et superiorum pugnārum exercitātiōne, ut nē ānum quidem nostrōrum impetum ferrent ac statim terga verterent. Quōs integrās viribus militēs nostrī consecūti magnum numerum eōrum occidērunt; reliquōs equitēs consecūtā paucīs quī ex fugā ēvaserant reliquērunt. Sic ēnō tempore et dē nāvālī pugnā Sabīnus et dē Sabīnī victoriā Caesar certior factus est, civitātēsque omnēs sē statim Titūriō dēdiderunt.

Nam ut ad bella suscipienda Gallōrum alacer ac prōmptus est animus, sic mollis ac minimē resistēns ad calamitātēs perferendās mens eōrum est.

20. Eōdem ferē tempore P. Crassus, cum in Aquitāniam per-
vēnisset, quae, ut ante dictum est, est tertia pars Galliae, cum intellegeret in iis locis sibi bellum gerendum ubi paucis ante annis L. Valerius Praecōninus légatus exercitū pulsō interfactus esset, atque unde L. Manlius prōcōnsul impedimentīs āmissīs 5 profūgisset, nōn mediocrum sibi diligentiam adhibentam intellegēbat. Itaque rē frumentāriā prōvisā, auxiliis equitātūque comparātō, multis prāterea virīs fortibus Tolōsā et Carcasōne et Narbōne, quae sunt civitātēs Galliae prōvinciae finitimae ēs regiōnibus, nōminātām ēvocātīs, in Sotiātīum finēs exercitum 10 intrōdūxit. Cuius adventū cognitō Sotiātēs magnīs cōpiās coāctīs equitātūque, quō plūrīmum valēbant, in itinere agmen nostrum adortī prīmum equestre proelium commiśserunt, deinde equitātū suō pulsō atque īnsequentibus nostrīs subitiō pedestrēs cōpiās, quās in convallēs in īndiēs collocāverant, ostendērunt. 15 Hī nostrōs disiectōs adortī proelium renovārunt.

4. Praecōninus, -i, m., Lucius Valerius Praecōninus (lū'ś'hyūs vā-lē' ri'-ūs prēk"ō-n'īnās), a Roman lieutenant in Gaul, before Caesar's time. 1.
5. Manlius, -ii, m., Lucius Manlius (lū'ś'hyūs mān'īl'-ūs), proconsul in 73 B.C. 1.
6. prōcōnsul, -is, m., a proconsul, one who at the close of his consulship in Rome became governor of a province. 1.
7. mediocris, -ore, adj. [medius, the middle of], middling, ordinary, moderate. 2.
8. diligentia, -ae, f. [diligēns, careful], carefulness, heedfulness, painstaking, care. 4.
9. Tolōsā, -ae, f. (Ed), Tolosa (tō-lō'sa), now Toulouse. 1.
11. Narbō, -onis, m. (Ec), Narbo (nār'bō), now Narbonne. 1.
12. ēvocō, 1, tr. [vocō, call], call forth or out, summon; ēvocātus, pf. part. as noun, reélisted veteran. 3.
13. Sotiātēs, -um, m. (D Ḳ for D), the Sotiates (sō-shē'-ō-tēz). 4.
14. convallīs, -is, f. [vallīs, valley], enclosed valley, defile. 1.

2. ante: see I. 1, 2.
3. paucis annis: twenty-two or twenty-three years before, in 78 or 79 B.C. Our knowledge of these events is very vague. Manlius, governor of the Gallic province, marched against Sertorius, who was in Spain, and was defeated by a lieutenant of Sertorius. The Aquitani seem to have stripped him of his baggage as he retreated. Nothing whatever is known of Praecōninus.
4. nōn mediocrēm, "unusual."
5. virīs: ablative absolute with ēvocātīs. These were retired veterans who were induced to serve again by high pay and special privileges. Tolōsā: place from which, with ēvocātīs.
6. civitātēs, "cities." finītīmas agrees with it.
7. his regiōnibus: Aquitania. The dañive depends on finītīmas.
8. quō: ablative of specification.
9. prīmum: the adverb.
10. disiectōs, "while scattered," in pursuit of the cavalry.
21. Pugnātum est diū atque ācriter, cum Sotiātēs superiōribus victōriis frētī in suā virtūte tōtius Aquītānīae salūtem posītam putārent, nostri autem quid sine imperātōre et sine reliquis legiōnibus adulēscentulō duce efficere possent perspici s cuperent; tandem condemnation vulneribus hostēs terga vertērunt. Quōrum magnō numerō interf ectō Crassus ex itinere oppidum Sotiātium oppugnāre coepit. Quibus fortiter resistentibus vineās terraeque ēgit. Illī aliās eruptione temptātā, aliās cuniculīs ad aggerem vineāsque āctīs (cuīus rei sunt longē 10 peritissimī Aquītānī, propterea quod multīs locīs apud eōs aerāriae sectūraeque sunt), ubi diligentia nostriōrum nihil hīs rēbus prōficī possē intellēxērunt, lēgātōs ad Crassum mittunt sēque in dédītōnem ut recipiēt petunt. Quā re impetrātā arma trādēre iussī faciunt.

22. Atque in eam rem omnium nostriōrum intentīs animīs,
aliä ex parte oppidi Adiatunnus, qui summam imperi tenēbat, cum DC dévōtis (quōs illi solduriōs appellat, quorum haec est condicio, ut omnibus in vitā commodis unā cum ills fruantur quorum sē amicitiae dēdiderint, si quid his per viam accidat, aut 5 eundem cāsum unā ferant aut sibi mortem consiscant; neque adhuc hominum memoriam repertus est quisquam qui, eō interfectō cuius sē amicitiae dévōvisset, mortem recūsāre), cum his Adiatunnus ēruptionem facere cōnātus, clamōre ab ea parte munitiōnis sublatō, cum ad arma militēs concurrissent vehemens terque ibi pugnātum esset, repulsus in oppidum, tamen utī sādem dēditiōnis condiciōne uestētur ā Crassō impetrāvit.

23. Armīs obsidibusque acceptīs Crassus in finēs Vocaēum

2. Adiatunnus, -I, m., Adiatunnus (Α’ θ’ α-θ’ α-θ’ α), the leader of the Soti-ates. 2.
3. dēvōeō, -vōere,-vōvi,-vōtum, tr. (vōeō, vow), vow away, consecrate, devote; dēvōtus, sf. part. as noun, a sworn follower. 2.
4. solduriōs, -rl, m., vassal. 1.
5. commodum, -I, n. (commodus, convenient), convenience, interest, advantage. 2.
6. fruor, frul, frūctus sum, intr. en-
7. joy. 1.
8. adhāt, adv. (hāt, hither), hither-
9. to, as yet. 1.
10. rectōs, 1, tr. and intr., refuse, reject; object to, make objections, complain; with periculum, shrink from.
11. vehemens, adv. (vehemens, violent), violently, severely, strongly, very much, greatly. 4.
12. Vocātēs, -um, m. (Dod.), the Vocates (vō-kā’tēz). 2.
13. quisquam: why is this the proper in-
15. dēvōvisset: cf. note on quōrum . . . dēdiderint, l. 5.
16. rectāre: subjunctive in a clause of characteristic.
17. cum his: this simply repeats cum DC dēvōtis, l. 3, after the long parenthesis.
18. tamen, “nevertheless”; i.e. in spite of his attempt to escape after surrend er. The offense was the same as that of the Atuatuci, II, 33, and might have been punished as severely.
19. sādem: i.e. the same as those who had not attempted to escape.
20. Chap. 23. The Aquitani assemble a large force. Crassus decides to give battle.
21. in finēs, etc.: see map facing p. 317.
et Tarusátium prefectus est. Tum vērō barbari commōtī, quod oppidum et nātūrā loci et manū mūnitum paucis diēbus quibus eō ventum erat expugnātum cognōverant, légātōs quōqueversus dimittere, confiūrāre, obsidēs inter sē dare, cópiās parāre coepērunt. Mittuntur etiam ad eās civitātēs légāti quae sunt citeriōris Hispaniciae finitimae Aquitāniae; inde auxilia ducēsque accessuntur. Quōrum adventū magnā cum auctōritāte et magnā cum hominum multitūdine bellum gerere cōnutantur. Ducēs vērō iī dēliguntur qui ūnā cum Q. Sertōriō omnēs annōs fuerant summamque scientiam rei militāris habēre existimābantur. Hī cōnsuētūdine populi Rōmānī loca capere, castra mūnīre, commeātibus nostrōs interclūdēre īnstituunt. Quod ubi Crassus animadvertit suās cópiās propter exiguitātem non facile dīducī, hostem et vagāri et viās obsidēre et castrī satis praesidī relinquere, ob eam causam minus commodē frūmentum commeātumque sibi supportāri, in diēs hostium numerum augēri, nōn cūntandum existimāvit quīn

2. Tarusātēs, -ium, m. (DEc), the Tarusates (tār’sā-tēz). 2.
3. oppidum: subject of expugnātum (esse).
4. quōqueversus, adv., in every direction, all around. 1.
10. Sertōrius, -ri, m., Quintus Sertōrius (kwīnt’ōs sēr-tō’ri-ōs) a partisan of Marius; after the death of the latter, he continued the war in Spain against the senatorial party, until murdered in 72 B.C. 1.
15. dīducē, -dūcere, -dūxi, -ducē, lead or draw apart; separate, divide. 1.
3. citeriōris Hispanicae: Spain between the Pyrenees and the Ebro.
5. finitimae agrees with quae and governs Aquitāniae.
6. auctōritāte, assurance.
8. ducēs, “as commanders.”
9. Sertōrius: as Sertorius was a Roman general of great ability and had organized his Spanish army after the Roman fashion, those who had served under him understood Roman tactics. But the result shows that it took more than Roman tactics to make a Roman general or army.
12. cōnsuētūdine: ablative of accordance.
13. loca capere, “to choose suitable positions.”
14. quod, “therefore”; conjunction, not pronoun.
15. nōn facile dīducī, “could not easily be divided.” This and the following infinitives, through augēri, depend on animadvertit.
18. nōn . . . décertāret, “he thought he must not delay to fight a de
pugnā dēcētāret. Hāc rē ad cōnsilium dēlātā, ubi omnēs idem sentire intellexit, posterum diem pugnae cōnstituit.

24. Primā lūce prōductis omnibus cōpiis, duplici aciē ĩnstitūtā, auxiliis in medium aciem coniectīs, quid hostēs cōnsili caperent expectābat. Illi, etsi propter multitudinem et veterem belli gloriām paucitātemque nostrōrum sē tūtō dimicātūrōs existimābant, tamen tūtius esse arbitrabantur obsessis viis commeātū interclūsō sine Ĺūlō vulnere victōriā potīri et, si propter inopiam reī frūmentāriāe Rōmānī sē sē recipere coepissent, impeditōs in agmine et sub sarcinis adoriri cōgitābant. Hoc cōnsiliō probātō ab ducibus, prōductis Rōmānōrum cōpiis sē sē castris tenēbant. Hāc rē perspectā Crassus, cum sua cūntātiōne atque opiniōne timōris hostēs nostrōs militēs alacrōrēs ad pugnandum effecissent, atque omnium vocēs audientur expectāri diūtius non oportēre quīn ad castra īrētur, cohnortātus suōs omnibus cupientibus ad hostium castra contendit.

25. Ibi cum alii fossās complērent, alii multis tēlis cons-

3. etāl, conj. [et + al, if], even if, although. *
8. cōgītō, i, tr. and intr. [co + agitō, consider], consider thoroughly or carefully, ponder, reflect; think, purpose, plan. 3.

19. cōnsilium, "a council of war."
20. pugnae: dative.

Chap. 24. Since the enemy refuses to meet him, Crassus attacks their camp.

1. duplīcī aciē: The Roman force was smaller than that of the enemy, and this arrangement made a longer front than the usual triple line.

2. auxiliis . . . coniectīs: the longer line of the enemy might be expected to turn both Roman flanks; therefore it was important that the wings consist of reliable Roman legionaries. Caesar never trusted the auxiliaries anywhere in the line.

4. sē . . . dimicātūrōs, "that it would be safe to fight."

5. tūtius esse, "that it was still safer."

7. coepissent: indirect discourse for the future perfect indicative.

8. impeditōs: both by their heavy bāggage (impēdāmenta) and by the diffi-
culty of fighting in marching order.

10. suā refers to the subject, hostēs.
11. opiniōne, lit. "impression" which they gave, = "appearance."
13. expectārī . . . oportēre, "that they ought not to delay longer."
14. omnibus cupientibus, "to the delight of all."

Chap. 25. The camp is vigorously defended, but Crassus learns that the rear is weak.

1. coniectīs, "by throwing."
iectis-défensóres valló múnițiōnibusque dépellerent, auxiliárès-
que, quibus ad pugnam nōn multum Crassus cōnfidēbat, 
lapidibus tēlisque subministrandīs et ad aggerem caespitibus 
comportandīs speciem atque opiniōnem pugnantium praebērent, 
cum item ab hostibus cōnstanter ac nōn timidē pugnārētur 
tēlaque ex locō superiore missa nōn frūstrā acciderent, equitēs 
circumītis hostium castrīs Crassō renūntiāvērunt nōn eadem 
esse diligentiā ab decumānā portā castra mūnīta facilemque 
adītum habēre.

26. Crassus equitum praeffectōs cohortātus ut magnis 
praemiis pollicitātiōnibusque suōs excitāreunt, quid fīeri vellet 
ostendit. Illī, ut erat imperātum, éductis iis cohortibus quae 
praesidiō castrīs relictaē intrītacē ab labōre erant et longīrē 
itinere circumductīs, nē ex hostium castrīs cōnspeci possent, 
omnium oculīs mentibusque ad pugnam intentīs, celerīter ad 
es quās dīximus mūniționēs pervēnērunt atque his prōrūtīs

2. dēpellē, -pellere, -pull, -pullu-
sum, tr. [pellē, drive], drive from or 
away, ward off. 1.

auxiliāris, -e, adj. [auxilium, aid], 
auxiliary; m. pl. as noun, auxiliary 
troops. 1.

4. subministrō, 1. tr. [ministrō, 
wait upon], furnish, supply, give. 3.
cæspes, -itis, m., a sod. turf. 1.

6. timidē, adv. [timidus, fearful], 
fearfully, cowardly, timidly. 1.

8. circumeō, -ire, -il, -itum, tr. 
[eō, go. App. 84], go or march around, 
traverse, visit. 1.

4. intritus, -a, -um, adj. [in- 
tritus, worn], unwearied. 1.

5. circumdictō, -ducere, -daxi, 
-ductum, tr. [dācō, lead], lead or draw 
around. 2.

7. prōrū, -ruere, -rul, -rutum, tr. 
[ruō, fall], overthrow. 1.

3. quibus: the dative, since with cōn-
fidō the dative (App. 115) is regularly 
used of persons, the ablative (App. 143, 
a) of things.

4. subministrandīs: to the legion-
ary soldiers.

ad aggerem, “for an agger.” The 
Romans were compelled to build a slop-
ing embankment in order to surmount 
the high wall of the Gallic camp.

7. ex locō superiore: the top of the 
rampart.

8. circumūtis castrīs, “having rid-
den around the camp.”

9. ab, “at.”

Chap. 26. The Romans capture the 
camp and cut down the fleeing 
enemy.

1. cohortātus ut excitāreunt, “urg-
ing . . . to stimulate.”

4. intrītacē ab labōre, “not worn 
out by fighting.” ab labōre is strictly 
an ablative of separation, as if Caesar 
had said “free from”; hence the pre-
position.

longīrē, “roundabout.”

prius in hostium castris cōnstitērunt quam planē ab his vidēri aut quid rei gerērētur cognōsci posset. Tum vērō clāmōre ab ea parte auditō nostrī reintelligence viribus, quod plērumque in spē victōris accidere consuēvit, acrius impugnāre coepērunt. Hostēs undique circumventī dēspērātī omnibus rēbus sē per mūnitionēs dēicere et fugā salūtem petere contendērunt. Quōs equitātūs apertissimis campīs cōnsectātus ex milium L numerō, quae ex Aquitāniā Cantabrisque convēnisse cōstābat, vīx quārtā parte relictā multā nocte sē in castra recēpit.

27. Hāc auditā pugnā maxima pars Aquitāniæ sēsē Crassō dēdidit obsideisque ultrō misit, quō in numerō fuērunt Tarbellī, Biggerriōnēs, Ptiāni, Vocātēs, Tarsātēs, Elūsātēs, Gātēs, Auscī, Garumnī, Sibusātēs, Cocoātēs; paucae ultimae nātiōnēs annī tempore cōnfissa, quod hiems suberat, id facere sī neglēxērunt.

8. planē, adv. [plānus, even, plain], plainly, clearly, distinctly. 1.
11. impugnā, 1. tr. [in + pugnā, fight], fight against, attack, assail. 2.
14. campus, -ī, m., plain, open space or country. 1.
15. Cantabri, -ārum, m. (Eab), the Cantabri (kānta'brī). 1.
2. ultrō, adv., to or on the farther side, beyond; of one's own accord, voluntarily, spontaneously, without provocation; besides, moreover; ultrō citrōque, back and forth. *
Tarbellī, -ārum, m. (Ec), the Tarbellī (tār-bē'li). 1.
3. Biggerriōnēs, -īmum, m. (Ecd), the Biggerriōnes (bi-jē'rō-ī'ō-nēz or bi'jē-rī'ō-nēz). 1.
Ptiāni, -ōrum, m. (Eca), the Ptiāni (ti'ānī). 1.
Elūsātēs, -um, m. (Ed), the Elūsates (ēl'ū-sā'tēz). 1.
Gātēs, -ī, m. (DEd), the Gātēs (gā'tēz). 1.
4. Auscī, -ōrum, m. (Ed), the Auscī aw'sī). 1.
Garumnī, -ārum, m. (Ed), the Garumnī (ga-ro'mīnī). 1.
Sibusātēs, -ūm, m. (Ec), the Sibusates (īb'ū-sā'tēz). 1.
Cocoātēs, -ūm, m. (De), the Cocoātes (kōk'ō-sā'tēz). 1.

8. prius . . . quam: see App. 238, c. vidēri: supply posse from posset.
9. quid rei gerērētur, “what was going on”; subject of posset.
10. nostrī: i.e. those who were attacking in front.
quod, “a thing which.” The antecedent is reintelligence viribus.
12. per, “over.”
14. campus: ablative of the way, not of place; therefore without a preposition.

ex . . . numerō depends on quārtā parte.
15. quae (mīlia) convēnisse is the subject of the impersonal cōnstābat, “who were known to have gathered.”
16. multā nocte, “late at night.”

Chap. 27. Nearly the whole of Aquitania submits.
4. paucae ultimae nātiōnēs, “only a few tribes, the most remote”; probably those living among the Pyrenees.
5. tempore: cf. note on quībus, 25, 3.
28. Eodem feré tempore Caesar, et saepe exacta iam aestas erat, tamen, quod omni Galliā pacata Morini Menapique supererat qui in armis essent neque ad eum umquam legatōs de pace misissent, arbitrātus id bellum celeriter con- fici posse, eō exercitum dūxit; qui longē aliā ratione ac reliqui Gallī bellum gerere coeperrunt. Nam quod intellegēbant max- imās natiōnis quae proeliiō contendissent pulsās superātāsque esse, continentēsque silvās ac palēdēs habēbant, eō sé suaque omnia contulērunt. Ad quārum initium silvārum cum Caesar pervēnisset castraque mūnīre instituissent, neque hostis interim visus esset, dispersās in opere nostris, subitō ex omnibus partibus silvāe ēvolāvērunt et in nostrōs impetum fēcērunt. Nostrī celeriter arma cēperrunt eōsque in silvās reppulērunt et com- plūribus interficess longius impeditōribus locīs secūti paucōs ex suis dépērdidērunt.

ultimus, -a, -um, adj., sup. [ultrā, beyond. App. 43], farthest, most distant or remote; as noun, those in the rear. 2.

1. exigō, -igere, -ēgi, -ēctum, tr. [agō, drive], finish, pass. 1.
2. umquam, adv., at any time, ever; neque . . . . umquam, and never, never. 2.
3. continēns, -antis, adj. [pres. part. of continēō, hold together], holding together; continuous, unbroken; neighboring; as noun, mainland, continent. *

11. dispersō, -spergere, -spers, -spersum, tr. [spargō, scatter], scatter, disperse. 2.
12. ēvolō, 1, intr. [volō, fly], fly or rush forth. 1.
15. dépérō, -perdere, -perdidi, -perditum, tr. [perdō, destroy], destroy utterly; forfeit, lose. 2.

Chap. 28-29. Caesar makes an unsuccessful attempt to subdue the Morini and the Menapii.

Chap. 28. The Morini take refuge in forests and swamps.

1. exacta, “past”; the participle used as an adjective.
2. omni Galliā: Gaul in general, including Aquitania and Belgium, though the same words in II, 1, 6, refer only to Celtic Gaul.
3. qui essent, misissent: a clause of characteristic.
4. eō, “against them.”
5. exercitum: on his march from the

Veneti he doubtless picked up Sabinus and his legions. See map facing p. 217.

qui, “but they.”
ac, “than” or “from”; cf. aliam alque, 9, 23.
7. contendissent: the mode is due only to indirect discourse.
9. initium, “edge.”
11. dispersis nostris: just as they had been surprised at the Sabine, II, 19 and 20.
13. complūribus: of the enemy.
14. longius, “too far.”
impeditōribus, “very difficult.”
29. Reliquis deinceps diebus Caesar silvas caedere instituit et, nē quis inermibus imprudentibusque militibus ab latere impetus fieri posset, omnem eam materiam quae erat caesa conversam ad hostem collocabant et pró vallō ad utrumque latus extruēbat. Incrēdibili celeritate magnō spatiō paucis 5 diebus confectō, cum iam pecus atque extrēma impedimentaā nostris tenērentur, ipsī dēnsiōres silvās penterent, eius modi sunt tempestātēs consēcūtae utī opus necessāriō intermittentūr et continuātiōne imbrium diūtius sub pellibus militēs continērī non possent. Itaque vāstātīs omnibus eorum agris, vicīs 10 aedificiisque incensūs Caesar exercitum réduxit et in Aulercis Lexoviisque, reliquis item civitātibus quae proximē bellum fēcerant, in hibernīs collocavit.

1. deinceps, adv., one after the other, in turn, successively. 1. caēdō, caedere, cecidī, caesium, tr., cut; kill, slay. 2. imprādēns, -antis, adj. [im- + prādēns, prudent], imprudent, off one's guard, unwary. 1. māteria, -ae, f., material; wood, timber. 4. pecus, -oris, n., cattle, a herd; usually small cattle, sheep; meat; flesh. 2. continuātiō, -ōnis, f. [continuus, continuous], continuance, succession. 1. imber, -bris, m., a rainstorm, rain. 1.

Chap. 29. Caesar ravages the country and withdraws to winter quarters.

2. nē quis impetus, "that no attack."

inermibus ... militibus: ablative absolute.

4. conversam ad hostem, "with their tops turned toward the enemy."

prō vallō, "to serve as a rampart."

Caesar cut a way through the forest, with this rampart on each side.

6. confectō, lit. "finished," = "cleared."

7. ipsi: the Morini themselves, in contrast with their animals and baggage.

9. sub pellibus: in winter the soldiers lived in huts.
BOOK IV. WAR WITH THE GERMANS. FIRST INVASION OF BRITAIN

The campaign of 55 B.C. is memorable in history as the occasion when the Roman arms were first carried beyond the Rhine and across the Channel. The map facing page 217 shows how completely Gaul had come under Caesar's control, either by conquest or by peaceful submission. But Caesar knew that his task was not yet finished. If the Rhine was to be the Roman frontier (Int. 3), the Germans must be taught to respect that frontier. And the unknown Britain, lying so near Gaul, tempted him. It might be worth conquering. If not, at any rate both Gauls and Britons must be shown that Britain could afford neither to send aid to Gaul nor offer refuge to Gauls who wished to escape from Caesar. Only when Caesar had shown that neither the Rhine nor the Channel could stop a Roman army, might he expect Gaul to rest quietly under the Roman yoke.

Two German tribes, the Usipetes and the Tencteri, had been driven out of their homes, far in the interior of Germany, by the Suebi. After wandering homeless for three years, they crossed the Rhine into the Gallic possessions of the Menapii and there spent the early months of 55. Nothing shows more clearly the lack of unity among the states of Gaul than the indifference with which the neighbors of the Menapii regarded this incursion of their hereditary foes. Some states even tried to repeat the mistake of the Sequani (I, 31), and invited the Germans to settle in their territory and make common cause with them against Caesar or the rest of Gaul. But Caesar interfered at once by marching against the Germans. Using as a pretext a treacherous attack by a small body of German cavalry, he made himself guilty of the most treacherous and indefensible act in his whole career. He arrested all their leaders, who had come to apologize for the attack and then surprised and slew almost the whole German host, men, women, and children. If the deed has an excuse it lies in the absolute necessity of teaching the other Germans never to invade Gaul.

Caesar decided to reinforce this terrible lesson by making the Germans fear for their own territory. The Sugambri, who had given refuge to the remnants of the Usipetes and the Tencteri, refused to give them up at Caesar's command. Moreover the Ubii begged Caesar's aid against
the Suebi. In the marvellously brief space of ten days he constructed a great bridge across the Rhine, over which he led his entire army. At the first news of his approach the Sugambri and the Suebi had retired into the safe depths of their vast forests. Since it was no part of Caesar's purpose to subjugate these peoples, he contented himself with ravaging the nearer possessions of the Sugambri. Satisfied with this demonstration of Roman power, he recrossed the Rhine and destroyed his bridge, after a stay of only eighteen days on German soil.

Caesar had neither time nor ships enough to attempt a real invasion of Britain this summer, nor could he learn by inquiry anything about the country and the amount of force needed for accomplishing his purpose there. Therefore he determined to devote the remainder of the summer to a preliminary expedition which would at least show him what preparations he must make for the next year. Taking only two legions he sailed to Deal from the nearest point in Gaul. A landing was effected only after a sharp struggle with the Britons. A few nearby tribes surrendered, but Caesar waited for the arrival of his cavalry before penetrating the interior. Just as the cavalry transports were approaching the island, a storm not only drove them back to Gaul but shattered the main fleet, which lay in an exposed roadstead. Caesar beat off an attack of the natives, repaired his ships, and sailed back to Gaul.

Before leaving for Britain, Caesar had received the submission of a part of the Morini. During his absence the remainder of his army harried the Menapii and the rest of the Morini. On the return voyage two ships were driven out of their course, and the men carried by them were attacked by the Morini. A vigorous raid at last caused the final submission of the Morini; but the Menapii still remained unconquered in their forests and swamps.
EXPLANATION OF CAMPAIGN MAP

For the meaning of the colors, see the explanation of the campaign map for I, 1-29, facing page 42.

The coloring in this map is the same as in the campaign map for Book III, facing page 217, except that the Morini and a part of the Menapii are colored red.

Every important geographical point in this year's campaigning is open to discussion. Holmes agrees with some other authorities in locating the battle with the Usipetes and the Tencteri near the junction of the Mosella and the Rhine, but his discussion is less fair than usual. His own arguments, carefully sifted, seem decisive for the location near the junction of the Mosa and the Rhine. If the battle is rightly located, there is no valid argument for locating the bridge elsewhere than at Bonn. Holmes seems to have proved that Wissant, not Boulogne, was the sailing point for Britain. The landing point in Britain must have been either near Deal or a considerable distance west of Deal, near Hythe; it is almost certain that it was near Deal. The map on page 294 gives in more detail the parts of Gaul and Britain which are involved in discussions as to the sailing and landing points.
LIBER QUARTUS.

1. Ea quae secuta est hieme, qui fuit annus Cn. Pompeiâ M. Crassô consulibus, Usipetês Germâni et item Tênterî magnâ cum multitūdine hominum flûmen Rhônum trânsierunt, non longè à mari quô Rhônum infuit. Causa trânsèndi fuit quod ab Suebîs complûrês annûs exagitatì bellô prêmèbantur et agricultûrâ prohibèbantur. Suebôrum gens est longè maxîma et bellicosissima Germâniorum omnium. Hi centum pâgos habère dicuntur, ex quibus quotannis singûla milia armâtórum bellandi causâ ex finibus éducunt. Relqui, qui domi mânse-

---

1. Cn., abbr. for Gnæus (nē'ûs), a Roman praenomen. 1.

Pompeius, -i, m. Gnæus Pompeius (nē'ûs pōm-pē'yûs), better, Pompey, triumvir with Caesar and Crassus in 60 B.C., defeated by Caesar at Pharsalia, and murdered in Egypt by Ptolemy, 48 B.C. 1.

2. Usipetês, -um, m., the Usipetes (û-sîp'ê-têz). 4.

Tênterî, -ôrum, m., the Tênterî (têngktê-ri). 4.

---

5. Suebûs, -a, -um, adj., of or pertaining to the Suebi, Suebian; pl. as noun, Suebî (Sbi), the Suebi (swê'bi), a powerful people of central Germany consisting of several independent tribes, the modern Swabians. *

3. quotannis, adv. [quot, as many as+annus, year], every year, yearly.

2.

9. manœ, manère, mânsî, mânsum, intr., remain, continue, abide, stay. 2.

Chap. 1-4. Two German tribes cross the Rhine. Description of the German tribes who are concerned in the following narrative.

Chap. 1. Two German tribes, expelled by the Suebi, cross into Gaul. The warlike character and training of the Suebi.

1. qui agrees with annus, though its antecedent is hieme; cf. quod, I, 38, 3, note.

qui . . . cónsulibus, "in the year when, etc."

Cn. Pompeiô, etc.: Pompey and Crassus were Caesar's associates in the First Triumvirate; Int. 11. Their election as consuls for the year 55 had been planned at a meeting with Caesar in the preceding spring. Caesar had been given his province for only five years, and he needed more time. These consuls secured another five years for him, and an important province for each of themselves.

4. non longè à mari, probably near Emmerich, a few miles above the point at which the Rhine divides to flow around the island of the Batavi. See map.

quô: the adverb.

8. singûla: i.e. a thousand from each canton.
10. **vicis, gen. (no nom.), change; only in the adv. phrase in vicem, alternately, in turn.** 1.

11. **remaneō, -manēre, -mānēi, -mānum, intr. [re- + manēō, remain], stay or remain behind, remain.** 1.

12. **sēparō, 1, tr. [sē- + parō, prepare], prepare apart; separate; sēparātus, pf. part. as adj., separate in.** 1.

14. **colō, colere, colui, cultum, tr., cultivate, dwell in; honor; worship.** 1.

15. **lāc, lactis, n., milk.** 1. **vivō, vivere, vixi, victum, intr., live; subsist on.** 2.

16. **vēnātiō, -ōnis, f. [vēnor, hunt], hunting, the chase.** 1. **cibus, -i, m., food.** 1.

17. **disciplīna, -ae, f. [discō, learn], learning; discipline; instruction, system.** 2. **assēfāciō, -facere, -feci, -factum, tr., accustom, train.** 2.

19. **immānis, -a, adj., huge, immense.** 1.

20. **frigidus, -a, -um, adj., cold.** 1. **vestitus, -ūs, m. [vestīō, clothe] clothing.** 1.

10. **illōs: i.e. those who are fighting.** **anno post, lit. "afterwards by a year," = "the following year."**

12. **ratiō atque āsus, "the (theoretical) training and practice in."**

**privātī . . . est: i.e. all the land belonged to the state, none to individuals. This is generally true of barbarous peoples.**

14. **frumentō, "on grain"; ablative of means with **vīvō.**

**maximam partem: case? App. 128, 5:**


15. **multumque . . . vēnātiōnibus, "are devoted to hunting.**

16. **quae res, "a practice which"; subject of **alīt and **effect.**

17. **quod . . . faciunt explains **liber-tātē.**

**ā pueris, "from boyhood."**

**nūllō officiō assēfācti, "trained by no service"; ablative of means.**

19. **hominēs: predicate accusative; "makes (them) men of, etc."**

**in eam . . . addūxērunτ, lit. "have brought themselves into this custom," = "have trained themselves to such hardiness."**

20. **locīs frigidissimīs, "though their climate is extremely cold"; ablative absolute.**

**vestītus depends on **quīquām.** On the choice of indefinites, see App. 177:**

praeter pellēs habērent quicquam, quārum propter exiguitātem magna est corporis pars aperta, et lavārentur in flūminibus.

2. Mercātōribus est aditus magis eō, ut quae bellō cēperint quibus vēndant habeant, quam quō āllam rem ad sē importāri désiderent. Quin etiam iūmentis, quibus maximē Gallī dēlectantur, quaeque impēnsō parant pretiō, Germāni importātis nōn úntuntur; sed quae sunt apud eōs nāta, parva atque dē-formia, haec cotidiānā exercitātiōne summī ut sint labōris efficiunt. Equestribus proelii saepe ex equis désiliunt ac pedibus proeliantur, equōsque ēōdem remanēre vēstīgiiō assuēfēcērunt, ad quōs sē celeriter, ĉum usus est, recipiunt; neque ēōrum mōribus turpīus quicquam aut inertius habētur quam ephippīs

22. lavō, lavāre, lāvr, lautum, tr., wash; in pass., bathe. 1.
3. désiderō, 1. tr., feel the lack of, miss, lose; desire, wish, wish for. 1.
4. délectō, 1. tr., delight; pass., delight in, take pleasure in. 1.
5. impēnsus, -a, -um, adj., expensive; with pretium, great. 1.
6. dē-forma, -e, adj. [forma, form], misshapen, deformed, unsightly. 1.
7. désiliō, -silire, -silu, -sūltum, fstr. [salō, leap], leap from or down, alight, dismount. 1.
8. vēstīgium, -gi, n. [vēstīgō, trace out], trace, track, footprint; spot, place; moment, instant. 2.
9. turpis, -e, adj., ugly, unseemly; shameful, disgraceful, dishonorable. 2.
10. ēnēs, -ertis, adj. [in-ēs, skill], without skill; unmanny, cowardly. 1.
11. ephippium, -pl, n., horse-cloth, riding-pad, saddle. 1.

21. habērent, lavārentur; translate by presents. The use of the imperfect illustrates the fact that the Romans usually regarded the perfect indicative (here addizērunt) as a secondary tense, even when it seems to us to refer to present time.

Chap. 2. Their freedom from luxury, and their cavalry tactics.
1. mercātōribus: dative of possessor.
2. habērent, "on this account, that they may have."
3. cēperint: subjunctive in implied indirect discourse.
4. quibus vēndant: a purpose clause. Supply some word like "persons" as the antecedent of quibus and the object of habērant.
5. quam quō désiderent, "than because they desire." Nōn quō with the subjunctive is used to rejet a reason. In this sentence magis quam takes the place of nōn. The meaning is "not because they want anything, but because they wish to sell."
6. iūmentis importātis nōn ãtu-tur: the important word is the participle importātis, as if he had said "they do not import the horses which they need."
7. quaeque = et quae.
8. haec: antecedent of quae (iūmenta).
Itaque ad quemvis numerum ephippiatorum equitum quamvis pauci adire audient. Vinum omninò ad sé importâri non patiuntur, quod eâ re ad laborem ferendum remolléscere hominès atque effeminâri arbitrantur.

3. Publicè maximam putant esse laudem quam lâtissimè à suis finibus vacâre agrós: hâc re significâri magnum numerum civitâtum suum vim sustinère non posse. Itaque (únâ ex parte) à Suèbis circiter milia passuum sescenta agri vacâre dicuntur. 5 Ad alteram partem succédunt Ubii, quorùm fuit civitás ampla atque flórens, ut est captus Germânôrum; iî paulò, quamquam sunt eiusdem generis, sunt cèteris húmârióres, propertea quod Rhénum attingunt multumque ad eós mercatóres venti- tant et ipsi propter propinquitâtêm Gallicis sunt móribus as- suèfacti. Hös cum Suèbì multis saepe bellis experti propter amplitúdinem gravitâtemque civitâtis finibus expellere non

11. ephippiátus, -a, -um, adj. (ephippium, saddle), using a saddle. 1.
12. quamvis, adv. [quam, as+vis, you wish], as you wish, however, very. 1.
13. remolléscē, -molléscere, —, —, intr., become weak, become enervated. 1.
1. laus, laudis, f., praise, commendation; renown, popularity, glory. 3.
5. Ubì, -ërum, m. (Aèbh), the Ubì (Ubîi). *
6. flórens, -entis, adj. [flóreō, flower], flourishing, prosperous, in-
fluential. 2.
7. húmânus, -a, -um, adj. [homō, man], natural to man, human; civilized, cultured, refined, cultivated. 1.
8. ventítô, 1, intr. [freq. of veniō, come], keep coming, resort; go back and forth, visit. 2.
11. amplitúdo, -inis, f. [amplus, large], wide extent, size; importance, consequence, dignity. 1.
gravitās, -tátis, f. [gravis, heavy], heaviness, weight; power. 1.
12. quamvis pauci, “however few (they may be).” Caesar does not exag-
gerate the strength of the German cavalry. In his seventh year in Gaul, when he had to face a revolt of the whole country, he hired a body of Ger-
man cavalry. In three decisive battles they saved the day for him.
Vinum: but we know from Tacitus that they drank great quantities of a kind of beer.
Chap. 3. Their treatment of the Ubii.
1. publicè, “for the state.”
2. vacâre agrós: subject of esse.
3. únâ ex parte: i.e. on the east of the Suebi.
4. sescenta: this must be a great exaggeration. Caesar had no personal knowledge of the interior of Germany.
5. ad alteram partem: i.e. the northwest. See map.
fiût, “was (once)”; i.e. before their feat by the Suebi.
6. paulò: with húmârióres.
10. cum, “although.”
multis . . . experti, “in spite of many attempts in numerous wars.”
WAR WITH THE GERMANS, B.C. 55

4. In eadem causâ fuérunt Usipètēs et Tēncteri, quos suprà diximus, qui complürēs annōs Suēborum vim sustinē- runt, ad extrēmum tamen agris expulsî et multis locis Germā- niae triennium vagāti ad Rhēnum pervĕnērunt; quâs régionês Menapii încolēbant. Hī ad utramque ripam flūminis agrōs, aedificia, vicīsque habēbant; sed tantae multitūdinis adventū perterriti ex ipsis aedificiis quae trans flūmen habuerant dēmigrā- vērunt, et cis Rhēnum dispositis præsidiis Germānōs trānsire prohibēbant. Illī omnia expertī, quōm neque vi contendere propter inopiam nāvium neque clām trānsire propter custōdiās 10 Menapiōrum possebant, revertērunt sē in suās sēdēs régionês simulāvērunt, et tridūi viam progressi rérūs revertērunt atque omni hóc itinere ûnā nocte equitātū confectō insciōs inopīnantēsque Menapiōs oppressērunt, qui dē Germānōrum diēssē per explōrātōrēs certōrēs facti sine metū trāns Rhēnum in suōs

12. humilis, -ae, adj. [humus, the ground], on the ground; low, humble, abject, weak. 1.
13. infirmus, -a, -um, adj. [infirmus, strong], not strong, weak, feeble. 2.
3. Germānia, -ae, f., Germania (jēr-mē'na), better, Germany, the country east of the Rhine. 1.
4. triennium, -ī, n. [trēs, three], three years. 1.
7. dēmigrō, 1, intr. [migrō, move, migrate], move from or away, emigrate, remove. 2.
11. sēdēs, -is, f. [sedēs, sit], seat, chair; residence, abode, settlement. 4.
12. simulā, 1, tr. [similis, like], make like; pretend. 2.
13. inscīō, -sūs, -um, adj. [scīō, know], not knowing, ignorant, not aware. 1.
15. metūs, -ūs, m. [metuō, fear], fear, dread, anxiety, apprehension; metū territūre, terrify; hōc metū = metē huius rei, from fear of this. 2.

Chap. 4. The stratagem by which the Germans crossed the Rhine.

1. in eādem causâ, "in the same condition"; i.e. of oppression by the Suebi. It is probable that the Usipetes and the Tencteri lived in or near the kingdom of Saxony, to the northeast of the Suebi.
2. suprā: in 1, 2.
6. multitūdinis: 450,000 persons, according to a later chapter.
7. trāns: on the German side. habuerant: before the arrival of the Germans.
9. vi contendere, "force a passage."
10. inopiam nāvium: the Menapi had, of course, taken all the boats with them.
13. equitātū: although cavalry are persons, they are thought of here as the means employed by the Germans.
vicōs remigrāverant. Hīs interfector nāvibusque eōrum occupātīs, priusquam ea pars Menapiōrum quae citrā Rhēnum erat certior fīret, flūmen trānsierunt atque omnibus eōrum aedificiis occupātīs reliquam partem hiemis sē eōrum cópiis so aluērunt.


16. remigrō, 1, intr. [re-+migrō, move], move back, return. 2.
1. infirmītās, -tātis, f. [infirmus, not strong], weakness; fickleness, inconstancy. 2.
2. mōbilīs, -e, adj. [moveō, move], changeable. 1.
3. viātor, -ōris, m. [via, road], traveler. 1.
8. prōnuntiō, 1, tr. [nuntiō, announce], announce, give out publicly, tell, relate, report, say; give orders; with sententia, pronounce. 1.
  auditiō, -ōnis, f. [audiō, hear], hearing, hearsay, report. 1.
10. paenitētēs, paenitēre, paenituit, —, tr., impers., it causes regret; makes one repent; when translated as pers. verb, repent (App. 109). 1.
   necesse, indecl. adj., necessary, unavoidable, indispensable. 2.
   incertus, -a, -um, adj. [in-+certus, decided], undecided, uncertain, untrustworthy; indefinite, vague; disordered. 2.
11. servīō, 4, intr. [servus, slave], be a slave to, be subservient to; pay attention to, devote one’s self to, follow. 1.
   fingō, fingere, finxi, factum, 1r., form, imagine, devise, invent. 2.
19. eōrum cópias, “on their supplies”; those which the Menapii had stored up for their own use.

Chap. 5-6. Caesar, fearing that the Gauls and the Germans will unite against him, hastens his preparations for war.

Chap. 5. Caesar fears the fickleness of the Gauls.
3. nihil . . . committendum, “that no confidence should be placed in them.”
4. cōnsuētūdinis: see App. 103.

uti: with cōgant, quaerant, circumscript, and cōgat.
7. quàque = et quās.
8. rēbus, “stories.”
11. plārique . . . respondeant, “give answers shaped to their wishes”; i.e. the wishes of the questioners.
WAR WITH THE GERMANS, B.C. 55

261

6. Qua conspicudine cognita Caesar, ne graviore bellò occurreret, maturius quam consueutas ad exercitum proficisci tur. Eò cum venisset, ea quae fore suspicatus erat facta cognovit: missas legationes ab non nullis civitatisibus ad Germanos, invitatosque eós uti ab Rheno discederent: omnia quae postulassent se fore parata. Qua spe adducti Germani latius iam vagabantur et in fines Eburonum et Condruorum, qui sunt Tréverorum clientes, pervenierant. Principibus Galliae evocatis Caesar ea quae cognoverat dissimulando sibi existimavit, eorumque animis permissis et confirmatis equitatusque imperator bellum cum Germanis gerere consti tuit.

7. Re frumentaria comparata equitibusque delictis iter in ea loca facere coepit quibus in locis esse Germanos audiebat.

2. maturé, adv. [maturus, ripe], early, speedily, soon. 3
3. suspicior, i, tr. [suspicio, suspect], suspect, distrust; surmise. *
4. invito, i, tr., invite, summon; allure, persuade. 2
5. dissimulæ, i, tr. [simulæ, make like], disguise, conceal. 1
6. permulceæ, -mulcere, -mulsi, -mulsum, tr. [mulceæ, soothe], soothe completely, appease. 1

Chap. 6. Caesar joins his army and learns that some Gallic states are welcoming the Germans.

ad exercitum: where was it? See III, 29, 11, and the map facing p. 254. Caesar himself, as usual, had spent the winter in Cisalpine Gaul.

ea facta (esse), "that those things had happened"; explained by the following clauses.

ab Rheno discederent: i.e. to advance further into Gaul. The purpose of the Gauls was to get help against Caesar.

postulassent: for the future perfect indicative of the direct form.

fore parata, lit. "would be in a prepared condition." This is one of the ways of avoiding the rare future infinitive given in the grammars, partim iri. The infinitive depends on a verb of saying implied in invitatos.

latius vagabantur, etc.: this only means that small bodies were sent out in various directions to see where they could best settle, and that some of them had got as far as the Condrusi (see the map facing p. 234). The main body remained among the Menapii, between the Mosa and the Rhine.

7. qui refers only to Condruorum.

10. permulsiis et confirmatis: Caesar pretended to believe that they were loyal to him and afraid of the Germans.

equitatus: it appears later that he secured 5,000.

11. constituit, "announced his decision." He had decided the matter long before.

Chap. 7-10. Being met by envoys, Caesar proposes that the Germans settle among the Ubii; he then marches on into a locality whose geographical features he describes.

Chap. 7. Caesar is met on his march by German envoys, who demand land.

1. delictis, "having levied."

iter coepit: for his route see the map facing p. 254. The envoys must have met him near the point where the route crosses the Mosa.
(À quibus; cum paucorum dieum iter abesset, legati ab eis venerunt, quorum haec fuit oratio; Germanos neque priores populorum Romano bellum inferre neque tamen rehusare, si laces-santur, quin armis contendunt, quod Germanorum consuetudino sit a maioris tradita, quicumque bellum inferunt, resistere neque decrebiri. Haec tamen dicere: venisse invitae, eictos domo; si suam gratiam Romani velint, posse iis utilis esse amicos; vel sibi agrus attribuunt vel patiantur eos tenere quo armis possederint; sese unis Suebis concedere, quibus nec dii quidem immortalis par es esse possint; reliquum quidem in terris esse neminem quem non superare possint.

8. Ad haec (quae visum est) Caesar respondit; sed exitus fuit orationis: Sibi nullam cum iis amicitiam esse posse, si in Gallia remanerent; neque verum esse, qui suos fines tuiri non potuerint, alienos occupare, neque ullos in Gallia vacare agris qui dari tantae praeertem multitudine sine iniuriis possint; sed licere, si velit, in Ubiorum finibus considere, quorum sint legati apud se et de Sueborum iniuriis querantur et a se auxilium petant; hoc se Ubii imperatorem.

8. ilci, licere, licel, lectum, tr. [iici, throw. App. 7], cast or drive out, expel; cast up; se sicere, rush out, sally. 2.
9. utilis, -e, adj. [utor, use], useful, serviceable. 1.
11. possidoe, -sidere, -sedi, -ses-sum, tr., take possession of, seize. 1.
3. tueor, tueri, tatus sum, tr., watch, guard, protect. 1.

4. haec, "as follows." The haughty tone of the speech recalls the speeches of Divico, I, 18, and of Ariovistus, I, 36.
priiores, "first"; i.e. they were not the aggressors.
7. quicumque = omnibus (dative with resistere) qui.
8. haec tamen dicere, "this, however, they would say."
10. attribuant: the subjunctive represents an imperative of the direct form.
11. unis, "alone."
12. reliquum nemenem, "no one else."

Chap. 8. Caesar refuses Gallic land, but offers to let them settle among the Ubii.
1. quae visum est, "what seemed best." quae is the object of respondi, to be supplied from respondit.
exitus, "the conclusion."
3. verum, "right," "just."
qui: supply eos as the antecedent.
7. Sueborum iniuriis, "the wrongs done them by the Suebi."
8. hoc: i.e. that they allow the Usipetes and the Tencteri to settle among
WAR WITH THE GERMANS, B.C. 55

9. Lēgāti haec sē ad suōs relātūrōs dixērunt et rē deōle-
   bērētā post diem tertium ad Caesarem reversūrōs; interēā nē
   (propius sē) castra movēret petiērunt. Nā id quidem Caesar ab
   sē impētrāri possē dixit. Ėgnōverat enim magnam partem
   equitātūs ab iīs aliquot diēbus ante praeāndī frūmentandique
   causā ad Ambivāritōs trāns Mosam missam; hōs expectārī
   equitēs atque eius rei causā moram interpōnē arbitrābatur.

10. Mosā prōfuit ex monte Vosegō, quī est in finibus
   Līngonum, et parte quādam ex Rhēnō receptā, quae appelātūr
   Vācalus, insulam efficit Batāvōrum neque longius inde milibus
   passum lxxxī in Ōceanum influit. Rhēnus autem oritur ex

3. propius, adv. and prep. with acc.
   (App. 122, b) [comp. of prope, near],
   nearer.

5. frūmentor, 1, intr. [frūmentum,
   grain], get grain, forage. 4.

6. Ambivāriti, -ārum, m. (Af), the
   Ambivāriti (ām"bl-vār"i-ti). 1.

Mōsa, -ae, m. (Af), the river Mosā
   (mōsā), now the Meuse or Maas. 6.

7. interpōnē, -pōnere, -pōnul, -pōsūm, tr. [pōnō, place], place be-
   tween, interpose; allege; cause; fidēm
   interpōnēre, pledge. 4.

1. prōfūnō, -fūnere, -fūnul, —, intr.
   [fūnō, flow], flow forth, rise. 1.

Vosegus, -I, m. (BCg), the Vosegus
   (vōsē-gus), better, the Vosges Moun-
   tains. 1.

3. Vācalus, -I, m. (Af), the Vācalus
   (vāk′a-lūs) river, now the Waal. 1.

Batāvī, -ārum, m. (Af), the Batāvī
   (bā-tā′vī). 1.

them. The arrangement would have been advantageous to both parties; for,
as the Ubbi were nearly a match for the
Suebi, the combined Ubbi, Usipetes, and
Tencetri should have more than held
their own.

Chap. 9. The envoys ask for time
to consider, but Caesar marches on.

2. post diem tertium, "on the third
day"; i.e. the next day but one, since
the present day was counted in.

3. propius sē: App. 122, b: G.-L. 360,
   n. 1: A. 433, c: B. 141, 3: H.-B. 380, b: H.
   430, 5.

5. diēbus: ablative of degree of dif-
   ference.

6. trāns: to the west.

exspectālī equitēs: The German
cavilary was far superior to Caesar's,
and he could afford to take no risk.
However, it is quite possible that the
envoys were honest in asking time to
consider, for they can have had no
power to bind their people to accept
Caesar's proposition.

Chap. 10. Description of the Rhine, the Mosa, and their conflu-
ence.

1. ex monte Vosegō: more correctly
   from the plateau lying between the
   Vosges and the Cevennes.

2. parte quādam, etc.: the Rhine
divides at the eastern end of the island
of the Batavi. The southern stream,
called Vācalus, flows west till it joins
the Mōsa. The combined Mōsa and
Vācalus flow on into the sea, making
the southern boundary of the island.
The confluence of the Mōsa and the
Vācalus was probably eighty miles
from the sea, as Caesar says; but it is
now nearer the sea, owing to a change
in the river beds.

3. inde: from the confluence.
5 Lepontis, qui Alpēs incolunt, et longō spatiō per finēs Nantuātium, Helvētiōrum, Sēquanōrum, Mediomatricum, Tribocōrum, Trēverōrum, citātus fertur; et, ubi Oceānō appropin-quāvit, in plūrēs diffuit partēs multēs ingentibusque insulis effectis, quārum pars magna à feris barbaris natiōnibus incīlitur, ex quibus sunt qui piscibus atque ēōs avium vivere existimantur, multīisque capītibus in Oceānum inīluit.

11. Caesar cum ab hoste nōn amplius passuum xii milibus abesset, ut erat consīstitūtum, ad eum lēgātī revertuntur; qui in itinere congressī magnopere nē longius prōgrederētūr ōrā-bant. Cum id nōn impetrāssent, petēbant ut ad eōs ecutēs qui agmen antecēssissent praemitteret ēōsque pugnā prohibēret, sibique ut potestātem faceret in Ubīōs lēgātōs mittēndi; quō-rum si principēs ac senātus sibi iūre iūrandō fidem fēcisset, ēā condiciōne quae ā Caesare ferrētūr sē ūsūrōs ostendēbant; ad hās rēs conāvidīdēs sibi tridūi spatiōm daret. Hāec omnia

5. Lepontī, -ōrum, m. (Ch), the Lepontī (lē-pōn'thyl). 1.
6. Mediomatricī, -ōrum, m. (Bgh), the Mediomatricī (mē’di-ō-māt’ri-sī). 1.
7. citātus, -ā, -ōrum, adj. [p.f. part. of citō, put in motion], swift. 1.
8. diffūs, -ī, -īōr, -ōrē, -ōrī, -ōrīōr, -āriō, —, intr. [fluō, flow], flow in different directions, divide. 1.
9. ingēns, -entis, adj., enormous, huge, vast, large. 2.
10. piscis, -īs, m., fish. 1.

5. longō spatiō, “in a long course.”
Nantuātium: either there is some mistake, or we know nothing of this tribe of Nantuates.
8. insulis effectis, “making islands.”
10. sunt qui, “there are some who,” is usually followed by the subjunctive of characteristic.

Chap. 11-15. Caesar slaughters the German host in revenge for a treacherous attack.
Chap. 11. Envoys beg for time to consult the Ubii. Caesar grants a short truce.
5. antecēssissent: implied indirect discourse.
6. quōrum si, “and if their.”
7. fēcisset: for the future perfect of the direct form.
8. ēā condiciōne sē ūsūrōs, “that they would accept the terms”; i.e. the offer to let them settle among the Ubii.
9. tridūii spatiō: this seems a short time for the purpose, since the Ubii were some seventy miles away; but there are well authenticated instances of longer rides in less time. The envoys of the Ubii, who were with Caes- sar, could tell them where to find the authorities, so that no time would be lost in looking them up.

daret: for the imperative of the direct form.
Caesar (eōdem illō pertinēre) arbitrabātur, ut triduī morā inter posita equītēs eōrum qui abessent reverterentur; tamen sēsē non longius milibus passuum quattuor aquātiōnis causā processūrum sō dīxī dīxit; huc (posterō dīe) quam frequentissimi convenirent, ut dē eōrum postulātis cognōsceret. Interim ad praefectōs, qui cum omnī equitātū antecesserant, mittit [qui 15 nūntiāre] nē hostēs proeliō lacesserent et, ā ipsī lacesseruntur sustinērent quodā iōpe cum exercitū propius accessisset.

12. [At hostēs (ubi primum nostrōs equītēs cōnspexerunt; quōrum erat quinque milium numerōs) cum ipsī non amplius octingentōs equītēs habērent, quod iī qui frumentandi causā iterant trāns Mosam nōndum redierant, nihil timentibus nostrīs, quod légāti eōrum paulō ante ā Caesarem discesserant atque (is 5 diēs indūtīs erat ab hīs petitus; impetū factō celeriter nostrōs perturbāvērunt] rūrsum hīs resistentibus cōnseūtūdine suā ad pedēs désiluērunt, suffossīs eius complūrībusque nostrīs dé-

10. illō, adv. [old dat. of illē], thither, to that place, there (= thither). 1.
12. aquātiō, -ōnis, f. [aquā, water], getting water. 1.
13. frequēns, -entis, adj., in great numbers, in crowds. 2.
14. postulātum, -i, n. [postulō, demand], demand, claim, request. 4.
17. quoad, adv. [quo, whither + ad, to], to where; as long as, as far as; till, until. 2.
18. octingenti, -ae, -a, card. num. adj. [octō, eight], eight hundred. 1.
19. indūtiae, -ārum, f., truce. 2.
20. suffodii, -ōdi, -ōdi, -ōsum, tr. [subitiōdi, dig.], dig under; stab underneath. 1.

10. eōdem illō pertinēre, "tended to that same object." See 9, 6, and note. It is quite likely that Caesar was mistaken. At any rate their request for time to consult the Ubil was perfectly natural, for they could not know whether the Ubil would respect Caesar's command (8, 8).

13. huc: i.e. to the camping ground.
14. convenienter: see daret, 1. 9. note.
15. qui nūntiārent, "men to give orders."

17. sustinērent: i.e. they were simply to defend themselves.

acessisset: implied indirect discourse for the future perfect.

Chap. 12. The German cavalry treacherously attack and rout Caes-
Iectis reliquōs in fugam conicēcērant atque ita perterritōs ēgērant ut non prius fugā désisterent quàm in conspectum agminis nostri vēnissent. In eō proeliō ex equitibus nostris interficiuntur (quattuor et septuāgingātā), in his vir fortissimus, Piso Aquitānus, amplissimō genere nātus, cuius avus in civitate suā règnum obtinuerat amicus à senātū nostrō appellātus. Hic cum frātrī interclūsō ab hostibus auxilium ferret, illum ex periculō ēripuit, ipse ēquō vulnerātō dēiectus quoad potuit fortissimē restītīt; cum circumventus multīs vulneribus accep-tīs cecidisset, atque id frāter, qui iam proeliō exsesserat, procul animadvertisset, incitātō ēquō sē hostibus obtulit atque interfectus est.

13. Hoc factō proeliō Caesar (neque iam) sibi légātōs au-diendōs neque condicionēs accipiendās arbitrābatur ab ipsis qui per dulōm atque insidiās petītā pāce ultrō bellum infulissent; expectāre vērō (dum) hostium cōpiāe augērentur equitātusque reverterētur summae démentiēae esse iūdicābat; et cognōtā Gallōrum infirmitāte quantum iam apud eōs hostēs únō proeliō auctōritātis (esse consēcutī) sentiebat; quibus ad cōnsilia capienda nihil spatiā dandum existimābat. Hīs cōnstitūtīs rēbus et cōnsiliō sēm légātīs et quaestōre communīcātō, nē
quem diem pugnae praetermitteret, opportūnissima rēs accidit, 10 (quod) postridiē eius dieī mānum sādēm et perfidiē et simulatiōne ĭūi Germānī frequentōs, omnibus principibus maiōribusque ādhibītīs, ad eum in castra vēněrant, simul, ut dicēbātur (sui pūrgandi causā, quod, contrā atque esset dīgum et ipsī petissent, proelium pridiē commiississent, simul (ut, si quid possent, dē indūtīs fallēndo) impetrārent.) (Quōs sībi Caesar oblātōs) gāvisus illōs retinērī iussit, ipse omnēs cōpiās castrīs ēdūcit equitātumque, quōd recenti proelīo perterritum esse existimābat, agmen subsequi iussit.

14. Acīe triplicī institūtā et celeriter viii mīliūm itinere cōnfectō prius ad hostium castra pervēnit quam quid a aerētur Germānī sentīre possent. Qui omnībus rēbus subītō perterritī,

10. praetermittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -mīssum, 3. [mittō, send], send by; let pass, overlook. 1.
11. māne, a.d., in the morning, early. 1.

perfidiā, -ae, f. [perfidus, faithless], treachery, perfidy; falsehood, dis-

honesty. 2.

simulatiō, -onis, f. [simulō, make like], simulation, pretense, deceit, disguise. 2.

17. gaudeō, gaudēre, gāvīsus sum (App. 74), intr., rejoice. 1.

11. quod, "(namely) that."
13. ad eum . . . vēnērant: this action seems to disprove Caesar's charge of perfidy.

contrā atque, "contrary to what."
15. ut . . . impetrārent, "to obtain whatever [lit. "if anything"] they could in the way of a truce by deceiving him."
16. quōs oblātōs (esse), "that they had come into his power."
17. retinērī: this, with what follows, was a shocking violation of the law of nations. Compare what Caesar says of the action of the Veneti, III, 9, 8. Cato, Caesar's enemy, proposed in the Roman senate that Caesar be handed over to the Germans for punishment. Caesar's motives may be summed up as follows: 1, a determination to teach the Germans, once for all, never to invade Gaul; 2, a determination to counteract at once the bad effect which the cavalry defeat must have had on the already disaffected Gauls; 3, irritation at the treacherous attack, although everything shows that it was not authorized by the leaders; 4, a real doubt as to whether the Germans were not trying to gain time for the return of their formidable cavalry; 5, the certainty that a pitched battle with the entire force of Germans would cost him the lives of many soldiers.

Chap. 14. Caesar surprises the German camp.
1. acīe . . . institūtā: usually an army has to march in column along a road. Here the country was open and level, so that the army could march in battle formation.
2. prius quam possent: App. 236, b.
et celeritāte adventūs nostrī et discussū suōrum, neque cōnsillī habendi neque arma capiendi spatīō datō, perturbantur cōpiās adversus hostem dūgere, an castra défendere, an fugā salūtem petere praestāre. Quōrum timor cum fremitū et concursū significārētur, militēs nostri pristīni diēi perfidīa incitāti in castra irrūpērunt. Quō locō quī celeriter arma capere potuērunt pauliisper nostrīs restītūrunt atque inter carrōs impedimentaque proelium commissērunt; at reliqua multitūdō puerōrum mulierumque (nam cum omnibus suīs domō exsesserant Rhēnumque trānsierant) passim fugere coepit; ad quōs cōnsectāndōs Caesar equitātum misit.

15. Germānī post tertum clāmōre audiō cum suōs interfici vidērent, armīs abjectīs signisque militāribus relictīs sē ex castris éiecērunt, et cum ad confluēntem Mosse et Rhēnī pervēnissent, reliquā fugā désperātā magnō numero interfectō reliqui sē in flūmen praecipitāvērunt atque ibi timōre, lassitū-

6. -ne, interrog. encīlit: in direct questions, simply sign of a question (App. 212, a); in indirect questions, whether; -ne ... -ne, -ne ... an, utrum ... -ne, whether ... or. 2.

adversus, prep. w. acc. [adversus, turned against], opposite to, against. 1.

an, conj., used to introduce the second member of alternative questions, or, or rather. * 9.

irrumpō,-rumpere,-rāpi,-ruptum, tr. [in+rumpō, break], break in-

4. et ... et, "both ... and."

suōrum: i.e. their leaders, who had been detained by Caesar.

5. perturbantur -ne praestāret, "were in great confusion, (not knowing) whether it was better." On the kind of question see App. 214; 264, c.

9. qui: sc. ās antecedent.

14. cōnsectāndōs: the beginning of the next chapter shows that the object was massacre, not the taking of prisoners.

10. to, rush into; force a way into, storm.

13. passim, adv., in all directions.

2. abiciō, -icere, -iciō, -iectum, tr. [iaciō, throw. App. 7], throw away or down; hurl. 2.

3. cōnflēns, -entis, f. [cōnflūō, flow together], a flowing together, confluence. 1.

5. praecipitā, 1, tr. [praecipus, headlong], throw or hurl headlong, precipitate. 1.

Chap. 15. The Germans are routed and slaughtered.

3. Rhēnī: i.e. the Vacalus; see partc quādam, 10, 2, note.

4. reliquā, "further."

5. reliquā perilūrunt: some must have escaped. At any rate in later years there were Usipetēs and Tencteri living east of the Rhine, not far from this battlefield. But they may be accounted for by the escape of the cavalry.
INEOSON OF GERMANY, B.C. 55

line, vi fluminis oppressi perierunt. Nostri ad unum omnès
incolumès perpaucis vulneratís (ex tanti bellí timóre, (cum
hostium numerus capitum ccccxxx miliun futisset) sé in castra
recéperunt. Caesar iis quós in castris retinuerat discéndi
potestatem fécit. Illi supplicia cruciátusque Gallórnum verití,
quórum agrós vexáverant, remanère sé apud eum velle dixé-
runt. His Caesar libertatem concessit.

16. Germánico belló cònfectò multis de causis Caesar
statuit sibi Rhénnum esse tránsseundum; quárum illa fuit iús-
sima, quod, cum vidéret Germánös tam facile impelli ut in
Galliam venirent, (suis quoque rébus) eós timère voluit, (cüm
intelígerent) et posse et audère populi Rómàni exercitum
Rhénnum tránsire. (Accessit etiam quod illa pars equitátus
Usipetum et Téncterórum (quam suprâ memorávì) præ-
dandí frúmentandique causá Mosam tránsisse neque proelíó
interfuisse (post fugam suórùm) sé tráns Rhénnum in finès
Sugambrórum recéperat sèque cum his coniùnzerat. Ad quós

6. peréde,-lre, -li, -ltum, intr. [e6; go. App. 84], be destroyed or killed, perish. 2.
1. Germánicus, -a, -um, adj. [Ger-
mánus, German], of or pertaining to the Germans, German. 1.

6. oppressi, "overwhelmed." 
ad unum, "to a man."
7. ex, "after," "relieved of."
9. discéndi . . . fécit: if Caesar
had believed the leaders guilty of
treachery, they above all others should
have been punished.
12. libertatem, "permission" to re-
main.

However unjust and brutal Caesar's
treatment of the Germans may have
been, it served his purpose. More than
a year later, when Caesar had lost a
legion and a half and all Gaul seemed
ripe for revolt, the Treveri tried to get
German help. But the Germans replied
(V. 55) that the thing had been tried
twice, by Arlovistus and by the Tenc-
teri; they would tempt fortune no more.

2. iúsus, -a, -um, adj. [ius, right],
in accordance with law or right, lawful,
valid, just, fair; proper, regular; with
funera, appropriate. 4.
10. Sugambri, -órum, m. (Ag), the

Chap. 16-19. Caesar crosses the
Rhine, as a warning to the Germans.
Chap. 16. Caesar’s reasons for de-
ciding to cross the Rhine.
2. iúsíssima, "most valid," "strongest."
3. quod . . . voluit: in apposition
with illa.
4. suis . . . rébus, "for their own
possessions too." The possessive usu-
ally follows its noun; why does it here
precede?
cum intelígerent, "(as they would;
when they should see);" implied indirect
discourse for the future indicative.
6. accessit etiam quod, lit. "there
was added also the fact that," = "more-
over," "and besides."
7. suprá: see 8, 5.
cum Caesar nuntiös misisset qui postularent eós qui sibi Galliaeque bellum intulissent sibi déderent, respondérunt: Populi Rómáni imperium Rhénum finire; si (se invité) Germánös in Galliam tránsire nón aequum existimáret, cùr súi quiquam esse imperí aut potestáti tráns Rhénum postuláret? Ubii autem, qui ùni ex TránsRhénánis ad Caesarem légátös misérant, amicitiam fécerant, obsidés déderant, magnopere orábant ut sibi auxílium ferret, quod graviter ab Suëbis premérentur; vel, sí id facere (occupátiónibus rei públicae) prohibéretur, exercitum modo Rhénum tránsportáret; id sibi ad auxílium spemque (reliqui temporis) satis futúrum. Tantum esse nómén atque opiniónem eius exercítus, Ariovístó pulsó et hoc novissimó proelió factó, etiam ad ultimás Germánórum nátiónés, uti opinióné et amicitía populi Rómáni tútì esse possent. Návium magnam còpiam ad tránsportandum exercitum pollicébantur.

17. Caesar hís dē causís (quás commemorávi) Rhénum tránsire décréverat; sed návibus tránsire neque satis tútum

13. finió, 4. tr. (finis, limit), limit, bound; determine, measure. 1.
14. cùr, interrog. and rel. adv., why, for what reason; for which reason, wherefore. 4.
16. TránsRhénánum, -a, -um, adj., beyond or across the Rhine; pl. as noun, TránsRhénáni, the people across the Rhine. 1.
18. occupátiónibus rei públicae, "affairs of state."
20. tránsportáret, in the same construction as ferret, l. 18.
21. reliqui temporis, "for the future."
22. Ariovístus, -I, m. Ariovístus (s'rI-ó-vis'tús), a king of the Germans.
INVASION OF GERMANY, B.C. 55

esse arbitrabatur (neque suae neque populi Romani dignitatis esse statuebat.) Itaque, et si summa difficultas facienda pontis (pronymebatur) propter latitudinem, rapiditatem, altitudinemque fluminis, tamen id sibi contendendum aut aliter non traducendum exercitum existimabat. Ratioem pontis hanc instituit. Tigna bina sequispedalia paulum ab imo praecuta dimensae ad altitudinem fluminis intervallum pedum duorum inter se iungebat. Haec cum machinatioribus immissa in flumen 10 dexterar fistucisque adegerat, non subicae modo dextrae ad perpendiculum, sed prone ac fastigat six secundum naturos

5. rapiditas, -tatis, f. [rapidus, swift], swiftness. 1.
8. tignum, -i, n., log, timber, beam, pile. 2.
sequispedalis, -e, adj. [sequi, one and a half + pes, foot], a foot and a half thick. 1.
10. immitt, -mittere, -mis, -missum, tr. [in + mitt, send], send or let into, insert; send against, direct towards or against; trabillus immissus, beams being let in. 2.
11. desfige, -figere, -fixi, -fixum, tr.

3. neque suae . . . statuebat, "he considered it inconsistent with his own dignity, etc." dignitas is a predicative possessive genitive. The construction of the bridge would impress the barbarians with a high sense of the power and skill of the Romans.

4. summa pronymebatur, "presented itself as very great." 5.

10. intervallum . . . iungebat, "he joined together [by spiking wooden cross-pieces on them] with a space of two feet [between them]." See plan and the pile-driver, p. 273. Intervallum is an ablative of attendant circumstance.

11. ut . . . prouncerent; i.e. sloping down-stream.
a, a, tigna bina, l. 8.
b, b, flos contraria duo (tigna), l. 13.
c, bipedales trabs, l. 16.
d, d, d, d, fibulae, l. 17.
e, dejecta materia, l. 21.
f, longurii cratésque, l. 23.
g, sublica obliqua acta, l. 23.
h, aliae (subicae) supra pontem, l. 25.
flūminis prōcumberent, īis item contrāria duo ad eundem modum iūncta intervāllo pedum quadrāgēnum ab īnferiōre parte contrā vim atque impetum flūminis conversa statuēbat. 15 Haec utraque, īnsuper bipedālibus trabibus immisis, quantum eōrum tīgnōrum iūnectūra distābat, bīnis utrimque fibulis ab

14. quadrāgēni, -ae, -a, distr. num. adj. [quadrāgintā, forty], forty each. 1.
16. insuper, adv. [super, above], above, on the top, from above. 1.
   bipedālis, -ē, adj. [bīs, twice+pes, foot], of two feet, two feet thick. 1.
17. iūnectūra, -ae, f. [iungō, join], joining. 1.
   distō, -strate, —, —, intr. [stō, stand], stand apart; be apart, removed or separated. 1.
   utrimque, adv. [uterque, each of

13. īis . . . statuēbat: i.e. a similar pair of piles was driven into the river bed opposite to these, forty feet downstream (ab īnferiōre parte), but sloping against the current. See plan, b, b.

duo: we should expect bina, as in 1. 8.

The distance must have been measured on the surface of the water: the roadway was therefore a little less than forty feet.

16. haec utraque, "these two pairs," is the subject of distīnēbantur.

A two-foot beam, exactly filling the space between the piles of each pair (quantum . . . distābat), was laid across from one pair of piles to the pair which faced it (plan, c). These pairs sloped toward each other, and although they were driven into the bottom they would sway with the current and would tend to fall together when the cross-beam had to carry a weight. Therefore they were held at the proper distance apart (distīnēbantur) by a pair of fastenings (fibulae) at each end of the two-foot cross beam.

quantum . . . distābat, lit. "as much as the joining of the

PILE-DRIVER
extrēmā parte distinēbantur; quibus disclūsīs atque in contrāriam partem revinctis tanta erat operis firmitūdō atque ea rērum nātūra ut quō maior vis aquae sé incitāvisset hoc artius illigāta tenērentur. Haec dērēctā māteriā iniectā contextēbantur ac longuriis crātibusque cōsternēbantur; ac nihilō sētius subicae et ad inferiōrem partem flūminis obliquē agēbantur, quae prō aristē subiectae et cum omnī opere coniunctae vim flūminis exciperent, et aliae item suprā pontem mediocrī spatīō, ut, si arborum truncī sīve nāvēs dēiciendi operis causā

20. aqua, -ae, f., water. 2.
artē, adv. [artus, close], closely, firmly. 1.
21. illigō, 1, tr. [ligō, bind], attach, hold or bind together. 1.
dērēctus, -a, -um, adj. [dērigō, put in line], straight. 1.
inīció, -icere, -īeci, -iectum, tr. [iaciō, hurl. App. 7], throw into or upon; put or place on; inspire, infuse. 3.

such trestle-bents. They were connected by timbers laid from one cross-beam to the next, lengthwise of the bridge (dērēctā māteriā). Plan, e.
22. nihilō sētius: i.e. although the bridge was already very strong.
23. et is correlative with et in l. 25.
obliquē: i.e. they were driven in with a greater slant than the double plies had. See plan, g.
24. quae prō aristē subiectae exciperent, “which, set below as a buttress, were to withstand, etc.”
25. aliae: sc. subicae agēbantur. There is nothing in the text to show the number of these plies, but the plan (l) suggests an effective defense.
spatīō: ablative of measure of difference with suprā.
essent à barbaris missae, his défensóribus éarum rērum vis
minuerētur, neu pontī nocèrent.

18. (Diēbus decem quibus)māteria (coepēta erat)comportāri
omni opere effectō exercitus tradūcitur. Caesar ad utramque
partem pontis firmā præsidīō relictā in finēs Sugambīorum
contendit. Interim a complūribus civitātibus ad eum légāti
veniunt; quibus pācem atque amicitiam petēntibus liberāliter s
respondet obsidēsque ad sē addūcī iubet. At Sugambri ex eō
tempore quō pōns institūtus est fugā comparāta, hortan-
tibus iūs quōs ex Tēncerīs atque Usipetībus apud sē habēbant,
finibus suīs excesserant suaque omnia exportāverant sēque in
sōlūtūdinem ac silvās)abdiderant.

19. Caesar paucōs diēs in eōrum finibus morātus, omnibus
vicīs aedificiāisque incēnās frumentīisque succēsīs, sē in finēs
Ubiōrum recepit, atque his auxiliō suum pollicētus, si ā
Suebis prēmerentur, haec ab iūs cognōvit: Suebōs, posteaquam
per explōratōrés pontem fieri comperissent, mōre suō conciliā
habitū(nūntiōs in omnēs partēs dimissēs)uti dē oppidīs démi-
grārent, liberōs, uxōrēs, suaque omnia in silvīs dépōnerent
atque omnēs quī arma ferre posseīn ēnum in locum conveni-
rent; hunc esse delétum medium ferē)regionum eārum quās

9. exportō, 1. tr. [portō, carry], carry out or away. 1.
10. sōlitūdō, -inis, f. [sōlus, alone], loneliness, solitude; a lonely place,
wilderness. 1.

27. essent missae is subjunctive by
implied indirect discourse, for a future
perfect indicative.

28. ne: why not neque?

Chap. 18. Caesar crosses the river
and marches into the country of the
Sugambri.

1. diēbus decem quibus, lit. “with-
in ten days within which,” “within ten
days after”; cf. paucē diēbus quibus, III.
23, 8.
coepēta erat: why passive? App. 86, a
5. quibus petēntibus: translate by
a clause, “and when they, etc.”

2. succīdē, -cidere, -cidi, -cisum,
tr. [sub + caedē, cut], cut from beneath,
cut down, fell. 2.
4. posteaquam, adv. [posteā, after-
wards + quam, than], after. 4.

7. hortantibus iūs, lit. “those urgin-
ing.” “on the advice of those.”
8. quōs . . . habēbant: i.e. the cav-
airy, 16, 6, and probably other survivors
of the massacre, 15, 5, note.

Chap. 19. Caesar ravages their
country. As the Suebi have with-
drawn, he returns to Gaul.

3. si prēmerentur: implied indirect
discourse for the future.

6. nūntiōs dimissēs uti, “had sent
messengers (urging) that.”
9. hunc . . . ferē, “that this place
had been chosen almost in the middle.”
10. hic, adv., here, in this place; (of a place just mentioned) there, in that place; (of an incident just mentioned) then, at this time. 1.
14. obsidio, -ōnis, f. [obsideō, blockade], siege, investment, blockade; peril, oppression. 1.
liberō, 1, r. [liber, free], make or set free, release, deliver. 2.

10. hic, ibi: both words refer to the same place.
12. ilis rēbus: explained by the substantive volitive (ut) clauses which follow.
13. ut . . . iniceret: cf. note at the end of chap. 15.
16. prōfectum: notice the ő; from what present?

Chap. 20-22. Caesar makes preparations for an expedition to Britain.

Chap. 20. Caesar decides on the expedition. He can get no information from the Gauls.

1. exigūa . . . reliquā: the ablative absolute is adversative: "although only a small part . . . , (and) in spite of the fact that the winters are early."

18. utītīs, -tātis, f. [utīlis, useful], usefulness, advantage, service. 1.
1. exiguus, -a, -um, adj., scantly, short, small, meager, limited. 1.
3. incognitus, -a, -um, adj. [in- cognitus, known; cognōscō, learn], unknown. 2.
termerē, adv., rashly, blindly, without good reason. 2.

4. hostibus nostrīs: indirect object of subministrāta.
subministrāta auxilia: for an instance see III, 9, 26. In II, 14, 8, we learn that Britain had afforded refuge to some of Caesar's enemies.
6. magnō . . . fore, "it would be of great advantage to him."

al adisset, etc.: for the future perfect of the direct form. These clauses give the real object of the expedition, which was only preparatory to that of the following year.

8. quae . . . incognīta: the Gauls may have deceived Caesar; at any rate there are indications that some Gauls knew a good deal about Britain: in II, 4, 19, we learn that a king of the Suec-
praeter mercatóres illō adit quisquam, neque (his ipsis) quicquam praeter òram maritimam atque eás regionés quae sunt contra Galliam nótum est. Itaque (vocātis ad sé undique mercatóribus) neque quanta esset insulae magnitūdō, neque quae aut quantae nātiōnēs incolerent, neque quem ūsum bellī habērent aut quibus institūtis ūterentur, neque quī essent ad maiōrum nāvium multītūdinem idōnei portūs repeire poterat.

21. Ad hāce cognōscenda, priusquam perāculum faceret, idōneum esse arbitratūs C. Volusēnum cum nāvī longā praemittit. Huic mandat ut explōratīs omnibus rēbus ad sé quam primum revertātur. Ipse cum omnibus cōpiis in Morinōs proficiscitur, quod inde erat brevissimus in Britanniam tràsec-tūs. Hūc nāvēs undique ex finitimīs regiōnibus et (quam superiōre aestāte ad Veneticum bellum fēcerat) clāsem iūbet convenire. Interim, cōnsiliō eius cognītō et per mercatóres perlātō ad Britannōs, ā complūribus insulae cīvitātibus ad eum légāti veniunt quī pollicēantur obsidēs dare atque imperiō populi Rōmānī obtemperāre. Quibus audītūs liberālīter pollicētus hortātūsusque ut (in ea sententīā permanērent) eōs dōnum

5. tràsec-tus, n. [ tràsec-tō, hurl across]; a hurling across; crossing, passage. 1.
9. Britannus, -ā, -um, adj., of Britan-nii, British; pl. as noun, the Britanni ones had been king of a part of Britain besides, and in VI, 13, we learn that Gallic Druids went to Britain to study.
9. illō: the adverb.
his ipsīs: the traders; dative with nōtum.
11. vocātis mercatóribus, "although he summoned, etc."
12. neque, etc.: a series of indirect questions, depending on repeire.
Chap. 21. Caesar sends men in advance to gain information and to advise submission.
2. Volusēnum: either the subject of esse or the object of praemittit; supply cum in one place or the other. See what Caesar says of Volusenus in III, 5, 7; (brī-tān'i); better, the Britons. 1.
11. obtemperāre, 1, intr. [temperō, rule], be subject to rule, comply with, obey. 1.

he is the only tribune whom Caesar mentions with honor.
nāvī longā: see Int. 64.
6. hūc: at a harbor among the Morini. This was probably Wissant, the point of France which is nearest to Britain: see map facing p. 254. The harbor is now filled with sand, but was in use during the middle ages.
10. quī pollicēantur: a purpose clause, but best translated by a present participle.
dare, obtemperāre: verbs of promising are more often followed by the future infinitive with subject accusative, sē datūrō esse.
remittit et cum iis undles Commiium, quem ipse Atrebätibus superátis régem ibi constituerat, cuius et virtútum et consílium probábat et quem sibi fidélem esse arbitràbatur, cuiusque auctorítás in his regiónibus magni habébatur, mittit. Huic imperat quás possit adeat civitátēs, hortáturque ut populi Rómānī fidem sequantur, séque celeriter eó ventúrum nūntiet. Volusēnus perspectís regiónibus, quantum eí facultátis darī potuit, qui nāxi ēgrēdi ac sē barbaris committere non audēret, quintō diē ad Caesarem revertitur quaeeque ibi perspexisset renūntiat.

22. Dum in his locis Caesar nāvium parandàrum causā morātur, ex magnā parte Moriniōrum ad eum lēgāti vēnerunt qui sē dē superiōris tempóris consilīi excūsārent, quōd hominēs barbari et nostrae consuetūdinis imperiī bellum populo Rómānī fécissent, séque ea quae imperásset factūrōs pollicērentur. Hoc sibi Caesar satís opportūnē acclíisse arbitràtus, quod neque post tergum hostem relinquire volēbat neque belli gerendi propter annī tempús facultātem habēbat ne-

13. Commiium, -mi, m., Commiium (kōmi'ūm), a chief of the Atrebates. 3.
15. fidēlis, -ē, adj. [fīdēs, faith], faithful, trustworthy, reliable. 1.
3. excūsā, 1. tr. [causa, reason], give reason for; excuse. 1.

14. iibi: i.e. among the Atrebates.
15. sibi fidēlem: but Commius became a leader in the general revolt against him three years later. This is why Caesar says arbitrātīur.
16. in his regiónibus: i.e. in Belgium.
magni: genitive of value.
18. fidem sequantur, lit. "follow the protection of." = "surrender to." sē: i.e. Caesar.
19. quantum . . . potuit, lit. "(as much) as of opportunity could be given to a man," = "as much as a man could."
20. qui . . . audēret: a clause of characteristic. Caesar cannot mean to blame Volusenus. Both the difficulty which Caesar himself experienced in landing with his army and the imprisonment of Commius will show that Volusenus could not possibly have landed and returned.

Chap. 22. Caesar accepts the surrender of the Morini, and completes his preparations for sailing.

3. consilīō, "behavior"; see III. 28.
hominēs: in apposition with the omitted subject; "being barbarians."
4. consuetūdinis: of sparing those who voluntarily surrendered.
5. fécissent, imperásset: implied indirect discourse for the perfect indicative and the future perfect, respectively.
que (hās tantulārum rērum occupātiōnēs) Britanniae ante-pōnendās iūdicābat, magnum īs numerum obsidium imperat. Quibus adductis eōs in fidem recipit. Nāvibus circiter LXXX onerāriīs (coāctīs contractīisque) quōt satis esse ad duās transportandās legiōnēs existimābat, (quod praetereā nāvium longārum habēbat) quaestōri, lēgātīs, praefectīisque distribuit. (Hūc accēdēbant) XVIII onerāriāe nāvēs, quae ex eō locō a mili-bus passuum octō ventō tenēbantur /quōminus in eundem * portum venire possent; hās equītibus distribuit. Reliquum exercitum Titūriō Sabinō et Aurunculēiō Cottae lēgātīs [in Menapiōs atque in eōs pāgōs Morinōrum ā quibus ad eum lēgātī nōn vēnerant] dūcendum dedit; Sulpicium Rūfum lēgā-tum [cum eō praeśiōdiō (quod satis esse arbitrābātur)] portum tenēre iussit.

23. Hīs constitūtīs rēbus nactus idōneam ad navigandum tempestātem terrēs fere vigiliā solvit equītēsque in ulteriōrem tempus, not), so that not, that not; from 2.

9. antepōnē, -pōnere, -posui, -postum, tr. [pōnē, place], place before; prefer. 1.

12. onerārius, -a, -um, adj. [onus, burden], fitted for burdens; with nāvis, transport, freight ship.

contrahē, -trahere, -trāxi, -trac-tum, tr. [trahē, draw], draw or bring together, assemble, collect; draw into smaller compass, contract. 2.

16. quōminus, conj. [quō, so that+...]

9. hās... occūpātiōnēs, "engaging in such trivial matters."

12. coāctīs contractīisque, "having levied and brought together."

13. quod... habēbat, lit. "whatever of ships of war he had besides," "the ships which he had."

15. hās accēdēbant, lit. "there were added to this number," = "he had in addition."

ā... octō, "eight miles [away]." If the chief harbor was Wissant, the small-er was Sangatte, east of Wissant.

16. tenēbantur quōminus possent, "were kept from being able": App. 225, c.

20. Sulpicius, -ci, m., Publius Sul-picius Rufus (pūb’il-ūs sūl-pīsh’yūs ruf’ūs), one of Caesar’s lieutenants. 1.

1. nanciscor, nancisci, nactus

sum, tr., get, obtain possession of; meet with, find. *

2. solvō, solvere, solvi, solvētum, tr., loosen, untie; with or without nāvēs, weigh anchor, set sail, put to sea. 3.

18. exercitum dūcendum dedit: construction? App. 225, II, 6: G.-L. 430:


Chap. 23-27. After a sharp con-test Caesar effects a landing and ac-cepts the surrender of the Britons. Chap. 23. Caesar crosses to Britain and makes preparations for landing.

1. idōneum tempestātem: a gentle southerly wind and clear weather, with the moon nearly full.

2. terrēs vigiliā: just after mid-night, the morning of August 27th. The first part of the night was spent in launching the ships, which had been
portum prógredī et nāvēs cōnsendere et sē sequi iussit. Ā quibus cum paulō tardius esset administratūrum, ipse hōrā diē\footnote{circiter quārtā cum primis nāvibus Britanniam attigit atque ibi in omnibus collibus exposītās hostium cōpiās armātās cōnspexit. Cuius loci haec erat nātūra atque its montibus angustē mare continēbātur uti ex locīs superiōribus in lūsī tēlum adīgī posset. Hunc ad ēgrediendum nēquāquam idōneum locum arbitratūs, dum reliquae nāvēs eō convenirent, ad hōram nōnam in ancoris expectāvit. Interim lēgātīs tribūnīisque militum convocātīs, et quae ex Volusēnō cognōvisset et quae fierī vellet ostendit, monuitque, ut reī militāris ratiō, maxime ut maritimae rēs postulārent, ut quae celerem atque instabilem mōtum habērent, ad nūtum et ad tempus omnēs rēs ab īs administrārentur. Hīs dīmīssīs et ventum et aestum ūnō drawn up on the sandy beach, and in embarking.

4. tardius, "too late." The wind changed and delayed them for three days.

Hōrā quārtā: about 9 A.M. At this time of year the fourth hour began about 8:30 and ended after 9:30.

5. Britanniam attigit: probably at or near Dover. The hills spoken of are the famous chalk cliffs.

7. haec, "such."

10. dum convenirent: mode? App. 239, b.

ad hōram nōnam: somewhere near 3 P.M.

11. in ancoris, "at anchor."

9. nēquāquam, adv. [nē + quāquam, in any way], in no way, by no means, not at all. 1.

14. celer, -eris, -ere, adj., swift, quick; precipitate. 1.

Instabilis, -e, adj. [in- + stabīlis, firm], not firm, unsteady. 1.

15. mōtus, -ūs, m. [moveō, move], movement, motion; political movement, uprising, disturbance. 3.

nātus, -ūs, m. [nuō, nod], nod; sign, command; ad nūtum, at one's nod or command. 2.

13. ut . . . postulārent, "as military science, and especially as seamanship requires"; the subjunctive is due to implied indirect discourse.


15. (ut) administrārentur: the object of monuit.

ad tempus, "on the instant."

16. ventum et aestum secundum: on other grounds it is supposed that Caesar sailed northeast, to Deal; but it has been proved that at this time the tide was running southwest. Possibly
tempore nactus secundum, datō signō et sublātīs ancorīs, circiter mīlia passuum septem ab eō locō progressus aperto ac planō litorē nāvēs consūstīt.

24. At barbarī consiliō Rōmanōrum cognitō, praemissō equitātū et essedāriis, quō plūrumque genere in proeliis ūtī consuērunt, reliquis copiis subsecūti nostrōs nāvibus ēgredī prohibēbant. Erat ob hās causās summa difficultās, quod nāvēs propter magnitudinem (nisi) in altō consūstīni nōn potērunt, militibus autem ignōtīs locīs, impeditīs manibus, magnō et gravi onere armōrum oppressīs simul et dē nāvibus dēsilīnedum et in flāctibus cōnsistendum et cum hostibus erat pugnandum; cum illī aut ex áridō aut paulum in aquam progressī omnibus membrīs expeditīs nōtissimīs locīs audācer tēla consicerent et equōs insuēfactōs incitārent. Quibus rēbus nostrī perterrītī atque huius omnīnō generis pugnæ imperītī nōn eadem alacritātē ac studiō quō in pedestribus ūtī proeliis consuerant (ūtēbantur.)

25. Quod ubi Caesar animadvertit, nāvēs longās, quārum et speciēs erat barbarīs insūsitātior et (mōtus ad ūsum expeditiōr.)

Caesar means that the tide was decreasing and the wind was so favorable that he could sail against the slackening current.

Chap. 24. The Britons try to prevent the landing.
2. quō genere, "a kind of troops which."
5. nisi... poēterant, "could be stationed only in deep water."
6. militibus: dative of the agent with dēsilīnedum, etc., erat.

Oppressus, "weighed down as they were"; in agreement with militibus.
Cōnsistendum, "keep their footing."
Cum illī, "while the enemy."
Nōn ūtēbantur, "did not display."
Quō agrees with the nearer antecedent.

Chap. 25. Caesar brings his warships into action. A Roman standard bearer sets an example of bravery.
2. Insūsitātior, "less familiar" than that of the transports. The latter were
paulum removēri ab onerāriis nāvibus et rēmīs incitāri et ad (latus apertum) hostium cōnsitūti atque inde/fundis, sagittīs, tormentīs hostēs prōpellī ac submovēri iussit; quae rēs magnō ŭsuī nostrīs fuit. Nam et nāvium figūrā et rēmōrum mōtū et inūsītāō generē tormentōrum/permōtībarī cōnsitērunt ac paulum etiam pedem rettulērunt. Atque nostrīs militibus cinctantibus, maximē propter altītūdinem marīs, qui decīmē
legiōnis aquilam ferēbat, obtestātus deōs ut ea rēs legiōnī felīciter evenīret, /Dēsilīte,' inquit, 'commilitōnēs, nisi vultis aquilam hostibus prōdere; egō certē meum rei pūblicae atque imperātōri officium praestiterō.' Hoc cum vōce magnā dixisset, se ex nāvi prōiēcit atque in hostēs aquilam ferre coepit. Tum nostrī, cohortātī/inter se hē tantum dēdecus admittērētur, īnversi ex nāvi dēsiluērunt. Hōs item ex proximīs nāvibus cum cōnspexisent, subsecūti hostibus appropinquāverunt.

26. Pugnātum est ab utrisque ācriter. Nostri tamen, quod neque ordinēs servāre neque firmiter īnsistere neque signa sub-

more like the trading vessels, with which the Britons were acquainted.

mōtus . . . expeditōr, lit. "whose motion was freer for use," = "which were more easily managed."

4. latus apertum, "the right flank," which was unprotected by shields.

9. qui, "the man who."

10. aquilam: see Int. 43, and Plate I, 6, facing p. 27.

13. praestiterō: note the force of

the tense. "(whatever the result shall be) I at least shall have done my duty."

15. inter sē, "one another."

16. ex proximīs nāvibus, "those who were in the nearest ships."

Chap. 26. After a fierce contest the Britons are put to flight.

2. firmiter īnsistere, "get a firm footing."

signa subsequit: i.e. keep their formation by cohorts.
sequi poterant, atque alius (alia ex navis) quibuscumque signis occurrerat se aggregabant; magnopere perturbabantur; hostes vero, notiss omnibus vadis, ubi ex litore alicubi singularibus ex navibus egredientes conspexerant, incitatis equis impeditos adorant, pluribus paucos circumstiebant, aliis ab latere aperto in universo tela coniciabant. Quod cum animadvertisset Caesar, scaphis longarum navium, item speculatatoria navigia militibus compleri insit et, quos laborantes conspexerat, his subsidia submittebat. Nostri simul in aridio constituerunt, suis omnibus consecutis in hostes impetum fecerunt atque eos in fugam de- dierunt, neque longius probequi potuerunt, quod equites cursum tenere atque insulam capere non potuerant. Hoc unum (ad pristinam fortunam) Caesaris defuit.

27. Hostes proeliio superati, simul atque ex fuga recerpient, statim ad Caesarem legatos de pace miserunt; obsides daturos, quaeque imperasset facturos sese polliciti sunt. Unam cum his legatis Commius Atrebasis venit, quem supra demonstraveram a Caesare in Britanniam praemissum. Hunc illi e navi egressum, cum ad eos orator (modo) Caesaris mandata

4. aggregō, 1, tr. [ad- + grex, flock], unite in a flock; assemble; join, attach. 1.
9. scapha, -ae, f., skiff, boat. 1. speculatōrius, -ae, -um, adj. [speculatior, spy], of a spy, spying, scouting. 1.
3. alius ... navi, "men from different ships.”
quibuscumque ... aggregabant, "gathered about whatever standards they chanced upon"; as in the battle with the Nervii, II, 21, 13.
5. ubi conspexerant: the pluperfect instead of the usual perfect with ubi, expressing repeated action, just as the following imperfects do.
7. plurēs, "several" of the enemy.
in universōs, "upon the main body."
9. scaphas, speculatōria navigia: these boats could be rowed into shallow water.
11. simul = simul atque.
10. laborō, 1, intr. [labor, toll], toll, work hard; be anxious, troubled, or perplexed; labor, suffer, be hard pressed. 3.
6. orator, -ōris, m. [orō, speak], speaker; ambassador, envoy. 1.
13. neque, "but. . . not.”
longius, "very far.”
hoc unum: the pursuit by the cavalry was an important part of every regular engagement.
Chap. 27. The Britons sue for peace.
3. datūros, factūros sēsē: the regular construction after verbs of promising; see note on dare, 21, 10.
4. supra: see 21, 18.
6. cum, "although.”
modō, "in the capacity of," “as.”
dēferret, comprehenderant atque in vincula coniēcerant; tum proeliō factō remiserunt, et in petendā pāce eius rei culpam in multitūdinem contulerunt et propter imprudentiam ut ignōscerētur petivērunt. Caesar questus quod cum ultrō in continentem lēgātis missis pācem ab sé petissent, bellum sine causā intulissent, ignōscere imprudentiae dixit obsidēsque imperāvit; quōrum illī partem statim dedērunt, partem ex longinquiōribus locis arcessitam paucis diēbus sēsē datūrōs dixērunt. Interea suōs remigrāre in agrōs iussērunt, principēsque undique convenīre et sē civitātēsque suās Caesari commendāre coepērunt. 28. His rebus pāce confirmātā, (post "diem quartum" quam est in Britanniam ventum nāvēs XVIII, dē quibus supra dēmōnstrātum est, quae equītēs sustulerant, ex superiorē portū lēnī ventō solvērunt. Quae cum approxinquārent Britanniae et ex castris vidērentur, tanta tempestās subitō coorta est ut nūlla eārum cursum tenēre possēt, sed aliae eōdem unde erant protectoriae referrentur, aliae ad inferiorēm partem īnsulae, quae est  

8. culpa, -ae, f., blame, fault, guilt. 
9. imprudentia, -ae, f. [imprēdēns, imprudent], imprudence, want of foresight or forethought, ignorance, indiscretion. ignōscō, -nōscere, -nōvī, -nōtum, intr. (in-+g)nōscēns, knowing; nōsc-

8. eius rei: the treatment of Commius. 9. ut ignōscerētur, "that they be pardoned." In what case would "they" be, if expressed? App. 115, d. 10. cum lēgātis missis petissent, "after they had sent hostages and begged"; see 21, 10. 14. arcessitam, "for whom they had sent." 15. in agrōs, "to their farms." 

Chap. 28-31. A storm turns back Caesar’s cavalry and wrecks his fleet. Although he partially repairs the fleet, the Britons are encouraged to attack him. Chap. 28. The cavalry transports are driven back by a storm. 

1. post . . . quam = dīē quārtō post-quam. When postquam is divided, post is usually an adverb, "afterwards... than." Here it is a preposition. The day was August 30th, the third day after his arrival, according to our reckoning. 2. supra, see 22, 15 and 23, 4. 6. aliae, aliae: the wind must have come from the north or northeast. The ships that were farthest out at sea were driven back at once; the others got some shelter west of Dover, but as the storm proved too severe they preferred to return to Gaul rather than land on the hostile shore of Britain, miles from Caesar’s camp.
propius sólis occásum, magnō suō cum perículō déicerentur; quae tamen ancoris iactis, cum flúctibus complérentur, necessárió adversá nocte in altum próvectae continentem petiērant. 10

29. Eādem nocte accidit ut esset lūna pléna, quī diēs mari-
timós aestūs maximós in Óceanō efficere cōnsēvīt; nostrīque id erat incognitum. Ita únō tempore et longās nāvēs, quās in āridum subdūxerat, aestūs complēbat, et onerāriās, quae ad ancorās erant (dēligātās) tempestās afflictingabant, neque úlla nostrīs facultās aut administrandi aut auxiliandi dābātur. Com-
plārībus nāvibus frāctās, reliquāe (cum) hosōnibus, ancorīs, reliquisque armāmentīs āmissī ad navigandum inutilēs, magnā, id quod necesse erat accidere, totius exercitūs perturbātiō facta est. Neque enim nāvēs erant aliae quibus reportāri possent, 10 et omnia deérant quae ad reficiendās nāvēs erant úsui, et quod

10. próvehō, -vehere, - vexi, - vexētum, tr. [vehē, carry], carry forward; passe., be carried forward, sail. 1.
1. lūna, -ae, f., the moon. 2.
5. dēligō, 1, tr. [ligō, bind], bind or tie down, fasten, moor. 2.
6. auxiliōr, 1, intr. [auxilium, aid], give aid, help, assist, render assistance. 1.
7. frangō frangere, frēgī, frāctum, tr. [frēgē, break], break, wreck; crush, discourage. 2.
9. perturbātiō, -ōnis, f. [perturbē, disturb], disturbance, disorder, confusion. 1.
10. reportō, 1, tr. [re-+portē, carry], carry or bring back, convey. 1.

8. occásum: for construction see note on propius sé, 9, 3.
9. cum complérentur, “since they began to fill.”
10. adversā nocte, “in the face of the night.”

Chap. 29. The storm and the tide wreck Caesar’s fleet.
1. lūna plēna: there was a full moon on the night of August 30th. This is what enables us to calculate the day of Caesar’s arrival in Britain.
2. aestūs maximōs: the “spring” tide. The average rise and fall of the tide at Deal is said to be 16 feet. This tide, helped by the wind, rose much higher.

nostrīs . . . incognitum: the Romans were best acquainted with the Mediterranean, where the tides rise only a few inches. Yet they had had some experience with the tides in the war with the Veneti.

4. quae . . . dēligātās, “which were riding at anchor.” The transports were heavier than the war-ships and Caesar had not thought it worth the effort to beach them.
6. administrandi, “of managing them.”
9. id quod or quae ré is commonly used instead of quod when the antecedent is a clause.
10. quibus possent: a clause of characteristic.
11. omnia quae erant úsui, “all the things which were needed”; a determining clause. App. 281.
omnibus cōnstatbat (hiemāri in Galliā oportère) frumentum in
his locīs in hiemem prōvisorī nōn erat.

30. Quibus rēbus cognitīs prīncipēs Britanniae, qui post
proelium ad Caesarem convēnerant, īntar sē collocūtī, cum et
equītēs et nāvēs et frumentum Rōmānīs deesse intellegērent
et paucitātem militūm ex castrōrum exiguitāte cognōscērent,
5(quae hōc) erant etiam angustiōra, quod sine impedimentīs Cae-
sar legiōnēs trānsportāverat, optimum factū esse dūxērunt re-
bellione factā frumentō commeātūque nostrōs prohibēre et rem
in hiemem prōducēre, quod (his superātīs aut reditū interclūsis
nēminem posteā bellī inferendī causā in Britanniam trānsitū-
10rum cōnfidēbant. / Itaque rūrus consīrātiōne factā paulātīm
ex castrīs discēdere et suōs clam ex agrīs dēducēre coepē-
runt.

31. At Caesar, et sī nōndum eōrum consīlia cognōverat,
tamen et [ex ēventū nævium suārum et ex ēō, quō] obsidēs dare
internērunt, fore id quod accidit suspicābātur. Itaque ad
omnēs cássus subsidia comparābant. Nam et frumentum ex agrīs
5 cōtidiē in castra cōnferēbant et quae gravissīmē affīctae erant
nāvēs, eārum māteriā atque aerē ad reliquās reficiendās utēbā-
tur et quae ad eās rēs erant ēsui ex continentī comparāri iubē-

8. reditus, -ūs, m. [redeō, return],
returning. return. 1.
5. amigō, -figere, -filī, -filētum,
tr., strike against; overthrow; damage.
8. hiemāri oportère, "that they
must pass the winter."
13. in hiemem, "for the winter."

Chap. 30. The Britons plan to re-
new hostilities.
1. principēs: subject of dīmērunt, l. 6.
5. hōc, "on this account."
etiam, "still."
6. optimum: predicate adjective
with esse, the subject being prohibēre
and prōducēre.

factū: App. 396. It is not needed in
translation.
7. factā: translate as an infinitive,
coördinate with prohibēre.

12. hiemāri oportère, "that they
must pass the winter."
13. in hiemem, "for the winter."

Chap. 30. The Britons plan to re-
new hostilities.
1. principēs: subject of dīmērunt, l. 6.
5. hōc, "on this account."
etiam, "still."
6. optimum: predicate adjective
with esse, the subject being prohibēre
and prōducēre.

factū: App. 396. It is not needed in
translation.
7. factā: translate as an infinitive,
coördinate with prohibēre.

8. reditus, -ūs, m. [redeō, return],
returning. return. 1.
5. amigō, -figere, -filī, -filētum,
tr., strike against; overthrow; damage.
8. hiemāri oportère, "that they
must pass the winter."
13. in hiemem, "for the winter."

Chap. 30. The Britons plan to re-
new hostilities.
1. principēs: subject of dīmērunt, l. 6.
5. hōc, "on this account."
etiam, "still."
6. optimum: predicate adjective
with esse, the subject being prohibēre
and prōducēre.

factū: App. 396. It is not needed in
translation.
7. factā: translate as an infinitive,
coördinate with prohibēre.

6. aëris, aëris, m. copper; anything
made of copper, coin, money; aës aliē-
num, another's money, debt. 1.

6. aes, aeris, m. copper; anything
made of copper, coin, money; aës aliē-
um, another's money, debt. 1.

6. aëris, aëris, m. copper; anything
made of copper, coin, money; aës aliē-
um, another's money, debt. 1.

6. aëris, aëris, m. copper; anything
made of copper, coin, money; aës aliē-
um, another's money, debt. 1.

6. aëris, aëris, m. copper; anything
made of copper, coin, money; aës aliē-
um, another's money, debt. 1.

6. aëris, aëris, m. copper; anything
made of copper, coin, money; aës aliē-
um, another's money, debt. 1.

6. aëris, aëris, m. copper; anything
made of copper, coin, money; aës aliē-
um, another's money, debt. 1.

6. aëris, aëris, m. copper; anything
made of copper, coin, money; aës aliē-
um, another's money, debt. 1.

6. aëris, aëris, m. copper; anything
made of copper, coin, money; aës aliē-
um, another's money, debt. 1.

6. aëris, aëris, m. copper; anything
made of copper, coin, money; aës aliē-
um, another's money, debt. 1.

6. aëris, aëris, m. copper; anything
made of copper, coin, money; aës aliē-
um, another's money, debt. 1.

6. aëris, aëris, m. copper; anything
made of copper, coin, money; aës aliē-
um, another's money, debt. 1.

6. aëris, aëris, m. copper; anything
made of copper, coin, money; aës aliē-
um, another's money, debt. 1.

6. aëris, aëris, m. copper; anything
made of copper, coin, money; aës aliē-
um, another's money, debt. 1.

6. aëris, aëris, m. copper; anything
made of copper, coin, money; aës aliē-
um, another's money, debt. 1.

6. aëris, aëris, m. copper; anything
made of copper, coin, money; aës aliē-
um, another's money, debt. 1.

6. aëris, aëris, m. copper; anything
made of copper, coin, money; aës aliē-
um, another's money, debt. 1.

6. aëris, aëris, m. copper; anything
made of copper, coin, money; aës aliē-
um, another's money, debt. 1.

6. aëris, aëris, m. copper; anything
made of copper, coin, money; aës aliē-
um, another's money, debt. 1.

6. aëris, aëris, m. copper; anything
made of copper, coin, money; aës aliē-
um, another's money, debt. 1.

6. aëris, aëris, m. copper; anything
made of copper, coin, money; aës aliē-
um, another's money, debt. 1.

6. aëris, aëris, m. copper; anything
made of copper, coin, money; aës aliē-
um, another's money, debt. 1.

6. aëris, aëris, m. copper; anything
made of copper, coin, money; aës aliē-
um, another's money, debt. 1.

6. aëris, aëris, m. copper; anything
made of copper, coin, money; aës aliē-
um, another's money, debt. 1.
32. Dum (ea geruntur, legiōne ex consuetūdine unā frumentātum missā, quae appellābātur septima, neque ulla ad id tempus belli suspicio interpositā, cum pars hominum in agrīs remanērat), pars etiam in castra ventitāret, iī qui prō portis castrōrum in stātīone erant Caesāri nūntiāvērunt pulvērem maiōrem (quam consuetūdō ferret) in ea parte vidēri quam in partem legiō iter fecissent. Caesār id quod erat suscipātus (aliquid novī a barbara initum cōnsilī) cohortēs quae in stationibus erant sēcum in eam partem profisciērī, ex reliquis duās in stationem succēdere, reliquās armāri et cōnfestim sēsē subsequī iussit. Cum paulō longius a castrīs prōcessisset, suōs ab hostibus premī atque aegrē sustinērē et cōnfertā legiōne ex omnibus partibus tēla conici animadvertīt. Nam quod, omnī ex reliquis partibus démessō frumentō, pars unā erat reliqua, suspicāti hostēs hūc nostros esse ventūros noctū in silvis dēliberant; tum dispersōs dēpositīs armīs in metendō occupatōs subīto adortī paucīs interfēctīs reliquōs incertīs ordinibus perturbāverant, simul equitātū atque essedīs circumcederant.

5. pulvis, -eris, m., dust. 1.
10. cōnfestim, adv., hastily, at once, immediately. 1.
14. démetō, -meterē, -messulum, -messum, tr. [metē, reap.]. mow, reap. 1.
15. délitescō, -litescere, -litul,
Genus hoc est ex essedis pugnae. Primò per omnès partès perequit atque ipsum terrōre equōrum et strepitū rotārum ordinēs plērumque perturbavit, et cum se inter equitum turmās insinuāruit, ex essedis désiliunt et pedibus proeliantur. Aurigae interim paulātim ex proeliō excédunt atque ita currūs collocant ut, si illī à multitudine hostium premantur, expeditum ad suōs receptum habeant. Ita mōbilitātem equitum, stabilitātem peditum in proelii praestant, ac tantum ūsū cotidiānō et exercitātiōne efficiunt ut in déclīvī ac præcipiti locō incitātōs equō sustinēre et brevī moderāri ac flectere et per tēmōnem percurrere et in iugō īnsistere et se inde in currūs citissimē recipere coēsūrīnt.

Quibus rébus perturbātīs nostris novitāte pugnae temp.
pore opportunissimō Caesar auxilium tulit; namque eius adventū hostēs cōnstitērunt, nostri sē ex timōre recēpērunt. Quō factō ad lacerendum hostem et ad committendum proelium aliēnum esse tempus arbitrātus suō sē locō continuēt et breviō tempore intermissō in castra legiōnēs redūxit. Dum haec geruntur, nostrīs omnibus occupātis, qui erant in agris reliqui discessērunt. Secūtae sunt continuōs complūres diēs tempes-tātēs quae et nostrōs in castris continērunt et hostem ā pugnā prohibērunt. Interim barbarī nūntiōs in omnēs partēs dimīsērent, paucitātemque nostrōrum militum suis praedicāvērunt et quanta praeda faciēndae atque in perpetuum sui liberandi facultās darētur, si Rōmānōs castrīs expulissent, dēmōnstrāvērunt. His rēbus celeriter magnā multitūdine peditātūs equitātūsque coāctā, ad castra vēnērunt.

35. Caesar ētīd idem quod superiōribus diēbus acciderat fore vidēbat, ut, si essent hostēs pulsāi, celeritāte periculum effugerent, tāne nactus equitēs circiter xxxī, quōs Commiōs Atrebās, dē quō ante dictum est, sēcēm ũransportāverat, legiōnēs in acī prō castrīs cōnstituit. Commīsō proelīō diūtius nostrōrum militūm impetum hostēs ferre nōn potuērunt ac terga vertērunt. Quōs tantō spatiōsecūtī quantum cursū et

8. continuōs, -a, -um, adj. [continēō, hold together], holding together, unbroken, uninterrupted, continuous. 2.
11. praeclō, 1. tr. [dicō, proclaim], proclaim publicly or before others; declare, report, tell of. 3.
12. praeda, -ae, f., booty, plunder, spoil. 2.
14. peditātūs, -ātūs, m. [pedes, foot soldier], foot soldiers, infantry. 1.
3. effugīō, -fugere, -fugī, —, tr. and intr. [ex-fugiō, flee], flee from or away, escape. 1.
5. aliēnum, lit. "belonging to another," = "unfavorable." suō, "his own," almost illustrates the corresponding meaning, "favorable."
6. dum haec geruntur, "in the meantime."
7. qui ... reliquī: mentioned in 32, 3.
9. quae continērunt: App. 230, a, examples.
12. praeda faciēndae: they would have been disappointed, for the Romans had left their baggage in Gaul; 30, 5. sui liberandi: see note on sui pūrgandī, 13, 14.

Chap. 35. The Britons are put to flight.
1. idem fore, ut, "that the same thing would occur ... namely, that."
4. ante: in 21, 14 and 27, 4.
5. diūtius, "very long."
6. ac, "but"; for this translation see note on III, 19, 9.
7. tantō spatiō quantum ... po-
viribus efficere potuérunt, complûrés ex iis occidêrunt, deinde omnibus longē lâtēque aedificiis incênsis sē in castra recêpērunt.

36. Eōdem diē légāti ab hostibus missi ad Caesarem dē pâce vēnērunt. Hīs Caesar numerum obsidium quum ante imperāverat duplicāvit/eōsque in continentem addūci iussit,/quod propinquā diē aequinocti infirmīs nāvibus hiemī navigātiōnem subiciendam nōn existimābat. Ipse idōneam tempestātem nactus paulō post medium noctem nāvēs solvit; quae omnēs in-columēs ad continentem pervēnērunt; sed ex iis onerāriae duae eōdem portūs quōs reliquae capere nōn potuērunt et paulō infrā dēlātæ sunt.

37. Quibus ex nāvibus cum essent expositī militiae circiter trecentī atque in castra contenderit, Morini, quōs Caesar in Britanniam proficiscēns pācātōs reliquerat, spē praedae adducti primō nōn ita magnō suōrum numerō circumstetērunt ac, si sēsē interfici nōllent, arma pōnere iussērunt. Cum illī orbe

3. duplicō, 1. tr. [duplic, double], double, increase. 1.
4. aequinocctium, -tī, n. [aequus, equal +nox, night], the equinox. 1.
9. infrā, adv. [inferus, below], below; prep. with acc., below, smaller than. 1.
2. trecentī.-ae, -a (OCC), card. num. adj. [tres, three +centum, hundred], three hundred. 1.
5. orbis, -īs, m., orb, ring, circle; orbis terrārum, the world. 1.

tuērunt, "over as great a distance as their speed and strength permitted." spatīō is an ablative of the way (App. 114), where an accusative of extent of space would seem more natural; see H.-B. 426, c.

Chap. 36. Caesar returns to Gaul.
1. his: dative of reference.
3. eōs . . . iussit: it is not surprising to learn later that most of the tribes failed to do this.
4. propinquā diē: ablative absolute. As Caesar reached Britain August 27th, and the equinox then fell on Sept. 24th, he must have remained in Britain about three weeks.
hiemī . . . subiciendam, "that his voyage should be exposed to wintry weather."

8. quōs reliquae, "as the rest." capere, "reach," "make." et, "but.
9. infrā: to the south. They may have landed at Ambleteuse.

Chap. 37. The Morini revolt and are conquered.

1. quibus ex nāvibus: i.e. the two transports.
2. in castra: at Wissant.
3. pācātōs: see 22, 1-11.
4. primō: the adverb. ita, "so very," "very.
5. pōnere, "to lay down." orbē: a formation like the modern hollow square, used when troops were attacked on all sides.
FACTO SÉSÉ DÉFENDERENT,CELERITER AD CLÁMÓREM HOMINUM CIRCITER MILIA SEX CONVÉNERUNT. QUÁ RÉ NÚNTIATĀ CAESAR OMNEM EX CASTRIS EQUITĀTUM SUIS AUXILIÓ MISIT. INTERIM NOSTRĪ MILITĒS IMPETUM HOSTIUM SUSTINUERUNT ATQUE AMPLIUS HŌRĪS QUATTUOR FORTISSIMĒ PUGNĀVĒRUNT ET PAUCĪS VULNERIBUS ACCEPTĪS COMPLŪRĒS EX HĪS OCCĪDERUNT. POSTEĀ VĒRŌ QUAM EQUITĀTUS NOSTER IN CON-SPECTUM VĪNĪT, HOSTĒS ABIECTĪS ARMĪS TERGĀ VERTĒRUNT MAGNUSQUE EŌRUM NUMERUS EST OCCĪSUS.


3. siccītās, -tātis, f. [siccus, dry].

4. perfugium, -gl, n. [perfugiō, flee for refuge], place of refuge, refuge.

6. hominum: with milia.

Chap. 38. Labienus conquers the Morini. The army is quartered for the winter among the Belgae. A thanksgiving in Caesar's honor.

3. siccītātēs: translate by the singular.

quō . . . habērent, lit. "had not where they could retreat," = "had nowhere to retreat"; App. 230, c.

4. quō perfugīō erant ĩsi, lit. "which refuge they had used," = "the

refuge [i.e. the swamps] which they had used." For the fact see III, 38, 8.

6. qui . . . dūxerant: see III, 22, 18.

9. in Belgis: in readiness for the next year's expedition to Britain.

12. diērum vigintī supplicātiō: see note on II, 35, 10, and notice the increased number of days. Caesar's two expeditions into lands where no Roman general had ever before set foot had made a wonderful impression at Rome.
THE DIRECT FORM OF THE INDIRECT DISCOURSE
IN BOOKS I AND II

I, 13, 7-19. Sī pācem populus Rōmānus cum Helvētiīs faciēst,
in eam partem ībunt atque ībi erunt Helvētiī ubi ēōs tū cōnstituēris atque esse volueris; sīn bellō persequi perseverābīs, reminiscere et veteris incommodi populi Rōmānī et pristīnae virtūtis Helvētiōrum. Quod imprōvisō ūnum pāgum adortus es, cum ii qui flūmen transierant suis auxiliōm ferre non possent, nōlī ob eam rem aut tuae magnopere virtūtē tribuere aut nōs dēspicerē; nōs ītā patribus maiōribusque nostrīs didicimus ut magis virtūte contendāmus quam dolō aut īnsidiās nitāmur. Quārē nōlī committere ut hic locus ubi cōnstitimus ex calamitāte populi Rōmānī et internecione exercitūs nōmen capiat aut memoria prōdat.

I, 14, 1-20. Eō mihi minus dubitātiōnis datur, quod ēās rēs quās vōs commemorāvistis memoria teneō, atque ēō gravius fero quō minus meritō populi Rōmānī accidērunt; quī sī alicuīus iniūriae sibi cōncius fuisset, nōn fuit difficile cavēre; sed ēō dēceptus est, quod neque commissum ā se intellegēbat quārē timēret, neque sine causā timendum putābat. Quod si veteris contumēliae oblīvisci velit, num etiam recentium iniūriārum, quod ēō invītō iter per prōvinciam per vim temptāvistis, quod Hāeduōs, quod Ambarrōs, quod Allobrogēs vexāvistis, memoriae dépōnere potest? Quod vestrā victōriā tam insolenter gloriāmini, quodque tam diū vōs impūne iniūriās intulisse admirāmini, eōdem pertinent. Cōnsuēvērunt enim di immortālēs, quō gravius hominēs ex commūtātiōne rērum doleant, quōs prō scelere eōrum ulcīscī volunt, hīs secundōrēs interdum rēs et diūturnōrem impūnitātem concēdere. Cum haec īta sint, tamen, sī obsidēs ā vōbis mihi dabuntur, utī ea quae pollicēmini vōs factūrōs intellegam, et sī Hāeduīs dē iniūriis quās ipsīs
DIRECT FORM OF INDIRECT DISCOURSE

sociisque intulistis, item si Allobrogibus satisfaciētis, vōbiscum pācem faciam.

20-23. Ita Helvētiī a maiōribus suīs instituted sunt utī obsidēs accipere, nōn dare, cōnsuērīnt; huius rei populus Rōmānus est testis.

I, 17, 2-13. Sunt nōn nūlli quōrum auctōritās apud plēbem plurimum valeat, qui privātīm plūs possint quam ipsī magistrātūs. Hī sēdiōsā atque improbā orātiōne multitudinem dēterrent nē frūmentum cōnserant quod dēbent: [these men say] "Praestat, si (Haeduī) iam principātum Galliae obtīnerō non possunt, Gallōrum quam Rōmānōrum imperia per ferre; neque dubitāmus quīn, si Helvētiōs superāverint Rōmānī, ānā cum reliquā Galliā Haeduīs libertātem sint ēreptūrī." Ab īsēm vestra cōnsilia queaque in castris geruntur hostibus ēnūntiantur. Hī ā mē coērcēri nōn possunt; quīn etiam, quod necessāriō rem coāctus tibi ēnūntiāvī, interlegō quantō id cum periculō fēcerim, et ob eam causam quam diū potui tacui.

I, 18, 6-24. Ipse est Dumnorix, summā audāciā, magnā apud plēbem propter liberālitātem grātiā, cupidus rērum novārum. Complūrēs annōs portōria reliquaque omnia Haedūorum vectīgālia parvō pretiō redēmpta habet, propertērā quod illō licentē contra licērī audēt nēmō. Hīs rēbus et suam rem familiārem auxit et facultātēs ad largiendum magnās comparāvit; magnum numerum equitātūs suō sūmptū semper alit et circum sē habet; neque sōlum domī, sed etiam apud fīnītimās civitātēs largiter potest, atque huius potentiae causā mātre in Biturīgibus homīnī illic nōbilissimō ac potentissimō collocāvit, ipse ex Helvētiōs uxorēm habet, sorōrem ex mātre et propinquās suās nūptum in aliās civitātēs collocāvit. Fāvet et cupit Helvētiōs propter eam affīnitātem, ōdit etiam suō nōmine Caesarem et Rōmānōs, quod eōrum adventū potentia eius dēminūta et Diviciācus frāter in antiquum locum grātiae atque honōris est restitūtus. Si quid accidat Rōmānīs, summam in spem per Helvētiōs regnī obtinendi venit; imperiō populi Rōmānī nōn modo dē regnō, sed etiam dē eā quam habet grātiā dēsperat.
I, 20, 2-12. Sciō ista esse véra, nec quisquam ex eō plus quam ego dolórís capit, propteréa quod, cum ego grátìa plúri-
mum domi atque in reliquā Galliā possem, ille minimum propter
aduléscéntiam posset, per mē crēvit; quibus opibus ac nervís
nōn sōlum ad minuendum grátiam, sed paene ad perniciem
meām utitur. Ego tamen et amōre frāternō et existimātiōne
vulgī commoveor. Quod sī quid eī ā tē gravius acciderit, cum
ego hunc locum amīcitiae apud tē teneam, nēmō existimābit nōn
meā voluntāte factum; quā ex rē tōtīus Galliāe animī ā mē
āvertentur.

I, 30, 3-10. Intellegimus, tametā prō veteribus Helvētiōrum
inūriās populī Rōmānī ab hīs poenās bellō repetierīs, tamen
eam rem nōn minus ex ūsū Galliāe quam populī Rōmānī acci-
disse, propterēa quod eō consiliō florentissimīs rēbus domōs suās
Helvētiī reliquiērunt, utī . . . habērent.

I, 31, 5-8. Nōn minus id contendimus et labōrāmus, nē ea
quae dixerimus ēnūntientur quam utī ea quae volumus impe-
trēmus, propterēa quod, si ēnūntiātum erit, summum in cruci-
ātum nōs ventūrōs vidēmus.

8-56. Galliāe tōtius factiōnēs sunt duae: hārum alterius
principātum tenet Haeduī, alterius Arvernī. Hī cum tanto-
pere dé potentātī inter sē multōs annōs contenderent, factum
est utī ab Arvernīs Séquanīsque Germānī mercēde aecesseren-
tur. Hōrum prīmō cīrctere mīlia xv Rhēnum trānsiērunt;
posteāquam agrōs et cultum et cōpiās Gallōrum hominēs feri
ac barbarī adamārunt, tràductī sunt plūrēs. Nunct sunt in
Galliā ad centum et vigintī mīlium numerum. Cum hīs
Haeduī eōrumque clientēs semel atque iterum armīs contende-
rent; magnam calamitātem pulsī accēpērunt, omnem nobili-
tātem, omnem senātum, omnem equitātem, omnem equitātum ēmisērunt. Qui-
bus proeliīs calamitātibusque frāctī, qui et suā virtūte et
populī Rōmānī hospitiō atque amīcitia plūrimum ante in
Galliā potuerant, coāctī sunt Séquanis obsidēs dare . . .
imperīo essent. Ūnus ego sum ex omnī civitāte Haeduō-
rum qui addūcī nōn potuerim ut iūrāre aut liberōs meōs
obsidēs darem. Ob eam rem ex cīvitāte profugi et Rōmam ad senātum vēnī auxilium postulātum, quod sōlus neque iūre iūrandō neque obsidibus tenēbar. Sed peius victōribus Sēquanīs quam Hæduīs victīs accidit, propōtērā quod Ariovigistus, rēx Germānōrum, in ēorum finibus consēdit tertiamque partem agrī Sēquanī, qui est optimus tōtīus Galliae, occupāvit et nunc dē alterā parte tertīā Sēquinōs dēcēdere iūbet, propōtērā quod paucīs mēnsibus ante Harūdum mīlia hominum xxiv ad eum vēnērunt, quibus locus ac sēdēs parantur. Paucīs annīs omnēs ex Galliae finibus pellentur atque omnēs Germānī Rhēnōrum trānsībunt; neque enim cōnferendus est Gallicus cum Germānōrum agrō, neque haec consuētūdō victūs cum illā comparanda. Ariovigistus autem, ut semel Gallōrum cōpiās proelīō vīcit, quod proelium factum est ad Magetobrīgam, superbē et crūdēliter imperat, obsidēs nōbilissimi cuiusque liberōs poscit et in eōs omnia exempla cru-ciātūsque edit, si qua rēs nōn ad nūtum aut ad voluntatem eius facta est. Homō est barbarus, irācundus, temerārius; nōn possunt eius imperia diūtius sustinērī. Nisi quid in tē populōque Rōmānō erit auxili, omnibus Gallīs idem est faciendum quod Helvētīi fēcērunt, ut domō... experiantur. Haec si ēnūntiāta Ariovigistō erunt, nōn dubitō quīn dē omnibus obsidibus quī apud eum sunt gravissimum supplicium sūmat. Tū vel auctōritāte tuā atque exercitūs vel recentē victōriā vel nōmine populi Rōmānī dēterrēre pōtes nē maior multitūdō Germānōrum Rhēnum trādūcātur, Galliamque omnem ab Ariovigistī iniūriā pōtes dēfendere.

I, 32, 8-15. Hoc est miserior et gravior fortūna Sēquinōrum quam reliquōrum, quod sōli nē in occultō quidem quēri neque auxilium implōrāre audent absentisque Ariovigisti crūdēlitàtem, velut si cōrām adsit, horrent, propōtērā quod reliquis tamen fugae facultās datūr, Sēquaniō vērō, qui intrā finēs suōs Ariovigistum recēpērunt, quōrum oppida omnia in potestāte eius sunt, omnēs cru-ciātūs sunt perferendi.

I, 34, 5-12. Si quid mihi ā Caesare opus esset, ego ad eum vēnissem; si quid ille mē vult, illum ad mē venire oportet.
Praeterea neque sine exercitū in eās partēs Galliae venire audeō quās Caesar possidet, neque exercitum sine magnō commeātū atque mōlimentō in ūnum locum contrahere possum. Mihi autem mirum vidētur quid in meā Galliā, quam bellō vīci, aut Caesarī aut omnīnō populō Rōmānō negoti sit.

I, 35, 2-18. Quoniam tantō meō populiique Rōmānī beneficiō affectus, cum in cōnsulātū meō rēx atque amīcus ā senātū appellantūs est, hanc mihi populōque Rōmānō grātiam refert, ut in colloquium venire invītātus gravētur neque dē communī rē dicendum sibi et cognōscendum putet, haec sunt quae ab eō postulō: primum, nē quam multitūdinem hominum amplius trāns Rhēnum in Galliam trādūcat; deinde, obsidēs quōs habet ab Haeduīs reddat Sēquanisque permittat ut quōs ipsi habent voluntāte eius reddere illis līceat; nēve Haeduōs īnīriā lacciasset, nēve īn secretique eōrum bellum inferat. Si ita fēcerit, mihi populōque Rōmānō perpetua grātia atque amīcitia cum eō erit; si nōn impertrābō, quoniam M. Messālā M. Pisōne cōnsulibus senātus cēnsuit utī quicumque Galliam prōvinciam obtinēret, quod commodō reī públicae facere possit, Haeduōs cēterōsque amīcōs populi Rōmānī dēfenderet, Haeduōrum īnīriās nōn neglegam.

I, 36. Iūs est bellī ut quī vicerint iīs quōs vicerint quem ad modum velint imperent; item populus Rōmānus victīs nōn ad alterius praescriptum, sed ad suum arbitrium imperāre cōnsuēvit. Si ego populō Rōmānō nōn praescribō quem ad modum suō iūre ātātur, nōn oportet mē ā populō Rōmānō in meō iūre impediri. Haeduī mihi, quoniam bellī fortūnam temptāvērunt et armīs congressi ac superātī sunt, stipendiāriī sunt factī. Magnam Caesar īnīriām faciī, quī suō adventū vectīgālia mihi dēteriōra faciit. Haeduīs obsidēs nōn reddam, neque his neque eōrum sociis īnīriā bellum īnferam, sī in eō manēbunt quod convēnit stipendumque quotannis pendent; sī id nōn fēcerint, longē iīs frāternōm nōmen populī Rōmānī abērit. Quod mihi Caesar dēnuntiāt sē Haeduōrum īnīriās nōn neglectūrum, nēmō mēcum sine suā perniciē contendit. Cum volet, congre-
diātur: intellege quid invicti Germani, exercitātissimi in armis, qui inter annos xiv tectum non subiérunt, virtūte possint.

I, 40, 3-47. Primum (vōs incūsō) quod aut quam in partem aut quō consiliō dūcāmini vōbis quareendum aut cōgitandum putātis. Ariovistus mē cōnsule cupidissimē populi Rōmānī amīcitiam appetiit; cur hunc tam temerē quisquam ab officiō discessūrum iūdicēt? Mihi quidem persuādētur, cognitis meis postulātis atque aequivātē condicionum perspectā, eum neque meam neque populi Rōmānī grātiam repudiātūrum. Quod si furōre atque āmentiā impulsus bellum intulerit, quid tandem vereāmini aut cur dē vestrā virtūte aut dē meā diligentiā dēspērētis? Factum est eius hostis periculum patrum nostrōrum memoriā, cum Cimbriīs et Teutonis à C. Mariō pulsēs non minōrem laudem exercitus quam ipse imperātor meritus vidēbātur; factum est etiam nūper in Italīa servīli tumultū, quōs tamen aliquid usus ac disciplīna quam à nōbis accēperant sublevābant. Ex quō iūdicārī potest quantum habeat in sē boni constantia, propterea quod, quōs aliquamdiō inermēs sine causā timuistiis, hōs postea armātōs ac victōrēs superāvistis. Dēnique hi sunt idem Germanī quibuscum saepe numerō Helvētiī congressi non sōlum in suīs, sed etiam in illōrum finibus, plerumque superāvērunt, qui tamen parēs esse nostrō exercitūi non potuērunt. Si quōs adversum proelium et fuga Gallōrum commovet, hī, si quaerent, reperire possunt . . . vicisse. Cui rationē contrā hominēs barbarōs atque imperitōs locus fuit, hāc nē ipse quidem spērat nostrōs exercitūs capi posse. Quī suum timōrem in rei frumentāriae simulātiōnem angustiāque itineris cōnferunt faciunt arroganter, cum aut dē officiō imperatōris dēspērāre aut praeścribere videantur. Haec mihi sunt curae: frumentum Sāquaniī, Leuciī, Lingonēs subministrant, iamque sunt in agrīs frumenta mātūra; dē itinere ipsī brevi tempore iūdicābitis. Quod nōn fore dictō audientēs neque signa lātūri dīcimī, nihili eā re commoveor; sciō enim, quibuscumque exercitus dictō audīēns nōn fuerit, aut male rē
gestā fortūnam dēfuisse aut aliqūo facinore compertō avāritiam esse convictam; mea innocentia perpetuā vitā, fēlicitās Helvētiorum bellō est perspecta. Itaque quod in longiórem diem collātūrus fūi reprezentābō et hāc nocte dē quártā vigiliā castra movēbō, ut quam primum intellegere possim utrum apud vōs pudor atque officium an timor plús valeat. Quod si praeterēa nēmō sequētur, tamen ego cum sōlā decimā legiōne îbō, dē quā nōn dubīō, mihiqve ea praetōria cohors erit.

I, 44. Trānsī Rhēnum nōn meā sponte, sed rogātus et arcessītus ā Gallis; nōn sine magnā spē magnisque praemiis domum propinquōsque reliquī; sēdēs habeō in Galliā ab ipsis concessās, obsidēs ipsisōrum voluntāte datōs; stipendium capīō iūre belli quod victōres victīs impōnere cōnșuērunt. Nōn ego Galliās, sed Gallī mihi bellum intulērunt; omnēs Galliae civitātēs ad mē oppugnandum vēnērunt ac contrā mē castra habuērunt; eae omnēs cōpiāe ā mē ūnō proeliiō pulsae ac superātēs sunt. Si iterum experīrī volunt, iterum parātus sum dēcerērē; sī pāce úti volunt, iniquum est dē stipendiiō recūsāre, quod suā voluntāte ad hoc tempus pependicularum. Amīcitiam populī Rōmānī mihi ērnāmentō et praeādiō, nōn dētrimentō esse oportet, atque hāc spē petīi. Si per populum Rōmānum stipendium remittiētur et dēditiciī subtrahentur, non minus libenter recūsābō populī Rōmānī amīcitiam quam appetīi. Quod multitudinēm Germānōrum in Galliam trādūcō, id mē muniendī nōn Galliae impugnandae causā faciō; eius reī testimōnium est quod nisi rogātus nōn vēni et quod bellum nōn intulī, sed dēfendī. Ego prius in Galliam vēnī quam populus Rōmānus. Numquam ante hoc tempus exercitus populī Rōmānī Galliae prōvinciae finibus ēgressus est. Quid tībi vis? Ĉur in meās possessīōnēs venīs? Prōvincia mea haec est Gallia, sicut illa vestra. Ut mihi concēdī nōn oportēt, sī in vestrōs finēs impetum faciām, sīc item vōs ēstis iniquī, quod in meō iūre mē interpellātis. Quod frātrēs ā senātū Haeduōs appellātōs dīcis, nōn tam barbarus neque tam imperītus sum rērum ut nōn sciam neque bellō Allobrogum proximō Haeduōs Rōmānīs
auxilium tulisse neque ipsós in hís contentiónibus quás Haeduī mēcum et cum Sēquânīs habuērunt auxilió populi Rōmānī úsōs esse. Débeō suspicāri simulātā tē amicitīā, quod exercitum in Galliā habēs, meī opprimendī causā habēre. Nisi dēcēdēs atque exercitum dēdūcēs ex hís regiónibus, tē nōn prō amīcō, sed prō hoste habēbō. Quod sī tē interfēcerō, multis nobilibus princípibusque populi Rōmānī grātum faciam; id ab ipsis per eōrum núntiōs compertum habeō, quōrum omnium grātiam atque amicitiam tuā morte redimere possüm. Quod sī dēcesseris et liberam possessiōnem Galliae mihi trādideris, magnō tē prae- miō remūnerābō et quaecumque bella īrē volēs sine úllō tuō labōre et periculō cōnfcìam.


II, 4, 2-28. Plērique Belgae sunt ortī à Germānis, Rhē- numque antiquitūs trāductī propter locī fertilitātem ibi cōnsē- dērunt, Gallōisque qui ea loca incolēbant expulērunt, sōlique
sunt qui patrum nostrōrum memoriam, omni Galliā vexātā, Teutonōs Cimbrōsque intrā suōs finēs ingredi prohibuerint; quā ex rē fit utī eārum rērum memoriam magnam sibi auctōritātem magnōsque spiritūs in rē militāri sūmant. Dē numerō eōrum omnia (nōs) habēmus explōrāta, propertēa quod propinquitābus affinitātibusque coniunctī, quantam quisque multitūdinem in commūni Belgārum conciliō ad id bellum pollicitus sit cognōvimus. Plūrimum inter eōs Bellovācī et virtūte et auctōritāte et hominum numerō valent; hī possunt cōnficere armāta mīlia centum; polliciti sunt ex eō numerō ēlecta mīlia sexāgintā, tōtiusque bellī imperium sibi postulant. Susiōnēs nostri sunt finītīmi; finēs lātissimōs ferācissimōque agrōs possident. Apud eōs fuit rēx nostrā etiam memoriam Diviciācus, tōtius Galliāe potentissimus, qui cum magnae partis hārum regiōnōm tum etiam Britanniae imperium obtinuit; nunc est rēx Galba; ad hunc propter iūstitiam prōdentiamque summa tōtībus belli omnium voluntāte dēfertur; oppida habent numerō xii; pollicentur mīlia armāta quīnquāgintā; totidem Nervii, qui maximē ferī inter ipsōs habentur longissimēque absunt; quīndecim mīlia Atrebātēs, Ambiānī decem mīlia, Morīnī xxv mīlia, Menapī vii mīlia, Calesī x mīlia, Veiiocassēs et Viroman-duī totidem, Atuatući xix mīlia; Condūrī, Eburōnēs, Cae-rōsī, Caemānī, qui ūnō nōmine Germānī appellantur, arbitrāmur ad xl mīlia.

II, 14, 2-13. Bellovācī omni tempore in fidē atque amicitia civitātis Haeduæ fuērunt; impulsī ab suis principibus, quī dicēbant Haeduōs a tē in servītūtem redēctōs omnēs indignitātēs contumēliāisque perferre, et ab Haeduīs dēfēcērunt et popūlo Rōmānō bellum intulērunt. Qui eōs consili principēs fuerant, quod intellegēbant quantam calamitātem civitātī intulissent, in Britanniam profūgērunt. Petunt non sōlum Bellovacī sed etiam prō hīs Haeduī ut tuā clēmentiā ac mānsuētūdīne in eōs ātāris. Quod si fēceris, Haeduōrum auctōritātem apud omnēs Belgās amplificābis; quōrum auxiliis atque opibus, si qua bella incidērunt, sustentāre cōnsuērunt.
II, 15, 8-15. *Nullus aditus est ad eōs mercatóribus; nihil patiuntur vīnī reliquārumque rērum ad lūxuriam pertinentium īnferri, quod hīs rēbus relanguēscere animōs et remittī virtū-tem īxīsīmī. Sunt homīnēs fēri magnaeque virtūtis; incre-}pitant atque incūsant reliquōs Belgōs, quī sē populō Rōmānō dēdiderint patriamque virtūtem prōiēcerint; cōnfīrmanē sēsē neque lēgātōs missūrōs neque ĩllum condicionem pācis accep-}turōs.

II, 16, 2-9 *Sābis flūmen ā castrīs tuis nōn amplius miliā passuum x abest; trāns īd flūmen omnēs Nervīī cōnsēdērunt ad-}}ventumque ībi Rōmānōrum exspectant ūnā cum Atrēbatibus et Viromanduīs, fīnitimīs suis; exspectantur etiam ab īīs Atuatu-}cōrum cōpiāe atque sunt in itinerī; mulierēs quīque pér aetā-}tem ā pugnam inūtilēs vidēbantur ēum locum consēcērun-}t quō propter palūdēs exercitiī aditus nōn esse t.

II, 31, 3-13. *Nōn īxīsīmām Rōmānōs sine ope deōrum bellum gerere, quī tantae altītūdinis māchinātiōnēs tantā celer-}}itāte prōmovēre possint. Nōs nostrāque omnia eōrum potes-}}tāti pērmittīmus. Īnum petimus ac dēprecāmūr: sī forte prō}tuā clēmentiā ac mānuētūdīne, quam nōs ā aliīs audimus,}statueris nōs esse cōnservandōs, nōli nōs armīs dēspoliāre. Nōbis omnēs fērē finītīmi sunt inimīci ac nostrae virtūtī in-}}vident; ā quibus nōs dēfendere trāditis armīs nōn possūmus.}Nōbis praestāt, sī in ēum cāsum dēdūcemūr, quamvis fortūnam ā populō Rōmānō patī quam āb hīs per cruciātum interfici, inter quōs domināri ī consēcēvimus.

II, 32, 1-6. *Māgīs cōnsētūdīne med quam meritō vestrō ci-viētātem cōnservābō, sī prīiusquam mūrum ariēs attigeriēt vōs}dēdideritis; sed dēditiōnis nūlīa est condiciō nisi armīs trā-}}ditīs. Id quod in Nervīīs fēcī faciam finitimīisque imperābō nē quam dēditiciis populī Rōmānī iniūriam īnferant.
APPENDIX

INTRODUCTION

The Appendix was originally prepared for use in the revision of Bel- lum Helveticum (1900). It has now received a thorough revision, but the numbering has been left unchanged, except at a very few points. It is intended to include all the grammatical material which need be put into the hands of a class for second-year work. The regular paradigms are given in full, with only such exceptional forms as are needed for the reading of Caesar and Cicero. Rules of syntax are almost invariably stated in full, so that when the student takes up a more complete grammar he will have to master only the exceptions, not the principles.

The examples are drawn chiefly from Caesar, especially the first half of the first book. Some are made up, for the sake of brevity and clearness, and a few are taken from Cicero. References like I, 14, 3 indicate the book, chapter, and line of Caesar.

The writer has consulted the usual authorities, and is under special obligations, as regards the treatment of the verb, to the writings and personal instruction of Professor William Gardner Hale. He has received much assistance in revising the work from the thoughtful and practical suggestions of Messrs. Janes and Jenks of the Boys' High School, Brooklyn, N. Y.

303

(Copyright 1900, by Scott, Foresman & Co.)
PRONUNCIATION

QUANTITY OF VOWELS

1. A vowel is usually short:
   a. Before another vowel, or h; as eō, nihil.
   b. Before nd and nt; as laudandus, laudant.
   c. In words of more than one syllable, before any other
      final consonant than s; as laudem, laudat.

2. A vowel is long:
   a. Before nf, ns, nx, and nct; as Inferō, cōnsul, iūnxi, iūnctum.
   b. When it results from contraction; as īsset, for īsset.

3. A vowel is usually long:
   a. In monosyllables not ending in b, d, l, m, or t; as mē, híc,
      but ab, ad.

SOUNDS OF VOWELS

4. Long vowels, whether accented or not, should be given twice the
   time given to short vowels. This is the chief difficulty in the Roman
   pronunciation, because in English only accented syllables are com-
   monly given more time than others.

   a = a in Cuba          ā = ah!
   e = e in net          ē = e in they
   i = i in pin          ī = i in machine
   o = o in for (not as in got)  ō = oh!
   u = oo in foot       ū = oo in boot
   y = French u or German ū; it rarely occurs.

SOUNDS OF DIPHTHONGS

5. The following are the commonly recognized diphthongs which
   appear in classical Latin:

   ae = ai in aisle
   oe = oi in oil
   au = ow in how
eu has no English equivalent. Run together in one syllable the sounds eh'-oo.

ui has no English equivalent. Run together in one syllable the sounds oo'-ee. The diphthong appears in cui, huic, cuius, and huius.

a. When the consonant i ( = j) stands between two vowels, as in maior, eius, Troia, and cuius, though i was written only once it was pronounced twice, as if the spelling were, maior, eius, Troia, and cuius. The second i is the consonant, pronounced like y in yet.

The first i makes a diphthong with the preceding vowel. In such cases,

ai = ai in aisle
ei = ey in they
oi = oi in oil
ui as indicated above.

SOUNDS OF CONSONANTS

6. The consonants are, in general, pronounced as in English; but the following points should be noted:

c and g are always hard, as in can, go
i (consonant, sometimes printed j) = y in yet
n before c, g, q, and x = ng in sing
r pronounced distinctly
s as in this, never as in these
t as in tin, never as in nation
v = w
x = ks
ch, ph, th = c, p, š
bs, bt = ps, pt
qu = qu in quart
ngu = ngu in anguish
su = sw in suādeō, suāvis, suēscō, and their compounds.

a. When consonants are doubled, as in mittō, annus, both consonants should be sounded, as they are in out-talk, pen-knife. We sound only one consonant in ditty, penny.

7. i is generally a consonant between vowels, and at the beginning of a word before a vowel. In compounds of iaciō, the form iiciō was written. It is commonly believed that in these words consonant i was pronounced, though not written, before vowel i; as dēiciō, pronounced as if dēiciō; abiciō, as if abīciō.
SYLLABLES

8. Every Latin word has as many syllables as it has vowels or diphthongs.
   a. A single consonant between two vowels is pronounced with the second vowel; as fe-rō, a-gō, mo-nā.
   b. The combination of a mute and a liquid (b, c, d, g, p, t, ch, ph, or th, followed by l or r) is pronounced together so easily that it goes with the second vowel like a single consonant; as pa-tris, a-gri. But in poetry such a combination was often divided; as pat-ris, ag-rī.
   c. Any other combination of two or more consonants is divided before the last consonant, or before the combination of a mute and a liquid; as mit-tō, dic-tus, magis-ter, magis-trī.

QUANTITY OF SYLLABLES

9. A syllable is long:
   a. If it contains a long vowel or diphthong; as both syllables of laudō, and the first syllable of eius (5, a).
   b. If its vowel is followed by any two consonants except a mute and a liquid, or by one of the double consonants x and z. The quantity of a short vowel is not changed by this position: est is est, not ēst. The time taken in pronouncing a consonant at the end of the syllable before the consonant at the beginning of the next syllable (8, c) lengthens the syllable. This will be felt if the consonants are pronounced distinctly in mit-tō (6, a), an-nus, dic-tus, par-tēs, nos-ter.
   c. Often in poetry when a short vowel is followed by a mute and a liquid. The pronunciation is then pat-ris, ag-rī (8, b). In prose such a syllable is always considered short.

ACCENT

10. Words of two syllables are accented on the first syllable; as om'nis.

11. Words of more than two syllables are accented on the penult if it is long, otherwise on the antepenult; as divi'sa, appe'tō, in'colunt.

12. When an enclitic is joined to another word, the accent falls on the syllable immediately preceding the enclitic; as Gallia'que.

INFLECTIONS

NOUNS

GENERAL RULES OF GENDER

13. The gender of most nōmen is determined by the nominative
ending or must be learned for the individual words; but the following
rules will prove helpful.

a. The names of male beings, rivers, winds, and months are masculine.

b. The names of female beings, countries, towns, islands, plants, trees, and of most abstract qualities are feminine.

c. Indeclinable nouns, and infinitives, phrases, and clauses used as nouns are neuter.

DECLENSIONS

14. There are five declensions of Latin nouns, distinguished from each other by the final letter of the stem, and the ending of the genitive singular.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DECLENSION</th>
<th>FINAL LETTER OF STEM</th>
<th>ENDING OF GEN. SING.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>-ae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II</td>
<td>o</td>
<td>-l</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III</td>
<td>consonant</td>
<td>-is</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV</td>
<td>u</td>
<td>-us</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V</td>
<td>e</td>
<td>-si or -sei</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a. Strictly speaking, the cases are usually formed by adding case-endings to the stem. But when the stem ends in a vowel, that vowel is often modified in some way, or is so combined with the true case-ending that neither the stem-vowel nor the true case-ending can be seen. Therefore it is more convenient to apply the name case-ending to the combined stem-vowel and true case-ending, and to say that the cases are formed by adding case-endings to the base. The base of a noun is found by dropping the ending of the genitive singular.

FIRST DECLENSION

15. The stem ends in -a; the nominative in -a. The gender is usually feminine.

lingua, r., tongue, language

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>ENDINGS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nominative</td>
<td>lingua</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genitive</td>
<td>linguae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dative</td>
<td>linguae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accusative</td>
<td>linguam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vocative</td>
<td>lingua</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ablative</td>
<td>linguà</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
PLURAL

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nominative</th>
<th>linguae</th>
<th>languages (as subject)</th>
<th>-ae</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Genitive</td>
<td>linguārum</td>
<td>of languages, languages'</td>
<td>-ārum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dative</td>
<td>lingulis</td>
<td>to or for languages</td>
<td>-is</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accusative</td>
<td>linguās</td>
<td>languages (as object)</td>
<td>-ās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vocative</td>
<td>linguae</td>
<td>O (or ye) languages</td>
<td>-ae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ablative</td>
<td>lingulis</td>
<td>by, from, in, or with languages</td>
<td>-is</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a. Exceptions in gender are shown by meanings (13); as Belgae, m., the Belgae; Matrona, m., the (river) Marne.

b. The locative singular ends in -ae; as Samarobrīvae, at Samarobrīva.

SECOND DECLENSION

16. The stem ends in -o; the nominative masculine in -us, -er, -ir; the nominative neuter in -um.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>singulars</th>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>animus, m.,</td>
<td>puer, m.,</td>
<td>ager, m.,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mind</td>
<td>boy</td>
<td>field</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>N. animus</th>
<th>puer</th>
<th>ager</th>
<th>vir</th>
<th>bellum</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>G. animī</td>
<td>puerī</td>
<td>agrī</td>
<td>virī</td>
<td>bellī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. animō</td>
<td>puerō</td>
<td>agrō</td>
<td>virō</td>
<td>bellō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. animum</td>
<td>puerum</td>
<td>agrum</td>
<td>virum</td>
<td>bellum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V. anime</td>
<td>puer</td>
<td>ager</td>
<td>vir</td>
<td>bellum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. animō</td>
<td>puerō</td>
<td>agrō</td>
<td>virō</td>
<td>bellō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>N. animī</th>
<th>puerī</th>
<th>agrī</th>
<th>virī</th>
<th>bella</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>G. animōrum</td>
<td>puerōrum</td>
<td>agrōrum</td>
<td>virōrum</td>
<td>bellōrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. animīs</td>
<td>puerīs</td>
<td>agrīs</td>
<td>virīs</td>
<td>bells</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. animōs</td>
<td>puerōs</td>
<td>agrōs</td>
<td>virōs</td>
<td>bella</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V. animī</td>
<td>puerī</td>
<td>agrī</td>
<td>virī</td>
<td>bella</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. animīs</td>
<td>puerīs</td>
<td>agrīs</td>
<td>virīs</td>
<td>bellīs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>filius, m.,</th>
<th>Gāius, m.,</th>
<th>Bōl, m.,</th>
<th>deus, m.,</th>
<th>god</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>son</td>
<td>Gaius</td>
<td>Boli</td>
<td>deus</td>
<td>diē, di</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>N. filius</th>
<th>Gaius</th>
<th>Bōl</th>
<th>deus</th>
<th>diē, di</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>G. filli</td>
<td>Gāī</td>
<td>Bōiōrum</td>
<td>def</td>
<td>deōrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. filiō</td>
<td>Gāīō</td>
<td>Bōīs</td>
<td>deō</td>
<td>diēs, diś</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. fillium</td>
<td>Gālum</td>
<td>Bōīōs</td>
<td>deum</td>
<td>deōs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V. filli</td>
<td>Gāī</td>
<td>Bōī</td>
<td>deus</td>
<td>diē, di</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. fillō</td>
<td>Gāīō</td>
<td>Bōīs</td>
<td>deō</td>
<td>diēs, diś</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
APPENDIX

a. Exceptions in gender are usually shown by the meanings (13). Vulgus, crowd, is usually neuter. Locus, m., place, has plural loca, n., places.

b. The locative singular ends in -I; as Agedinct, at Agedincum.

c. Nouns in -ius regularly form the genitive and vocative singular in -I, instead of -if and -ie, and nouns in -ium form the genitive in -I. The words are accented as if the longer form were used; consi'lli, of a plan; initi'll, of a beginning.

d. Proper names ending in -lius, -eius, and -eius are declined like Gaius and Boi.

e. A few words have -um instead of -orum in the genitive plural; socium (or sociorum), of allies.

THIRD DECLENSION

17. Third declension stems end in a consonant or in -I. Nomina-
tive case-ending for masculines and feminines, -s or none; for neuters, none.

A. CONSONANT STEMS

18. Stems ending in a labial mute, b or p. The nominative ending is -s.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>princeps, m., chief</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Stem</strong> princip-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. princeps</td>
<td>principes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. principis</td>
<td>principum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. principi</td>
<td>principibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. principem</td>
<td>principes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V. princeps</td>
<td>principes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. princip</td>
<td>principibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

19. Stems ending in a dental mute, d or t. The nominative ending for masculines and feminines is -s, and the final d or t of the stem is dropped before it.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>laus, f., praise</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Stem</strong> laud-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. laus</td>
<td>laudés</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. laudis</td>
<td>laudum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. laudi</td>
<td>laudibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. laudem</td>
<td>laudés</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V. laus</td>
<td>laudés</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. laude</td>
<td>laudibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>miles, m., soldier</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Stem</strong> milit-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>miles</td>
<td>milités</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>militis</td>
<td>militum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>militi</td>
<td>militibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>militem</td>
<td>milités</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>miles</td>
<td>milités</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>militae</td>
<td>militibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>caput, n., head</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Stem</strong> capit-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>caput</td>
<td>capita</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capitis</td>
<td>capitum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capit</td>
<td>capitibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>caput</td>
<td>capita</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capite</td>
<td>capitibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
20. Stems ending in a guttural mute, g or c. The nominative ending is -s, which unites with the final g or c of the stem to form x.

lēx, f., law

Stem lēg-

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. lēx</td>
<td>lēgēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. lēgis</td>
<td>lēgum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. lēgī</td>
<td>lēgibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. lēgem</td>
<td>lēgēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V. lēx</td>
<td>lēgēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. lēge</td>
<td>lēgibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

dux, m., leader

Stem duc-

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>dux</td>
<td>ducēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ducis</td>
<td>ducum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ducī</td>
<td>ducibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ducem</td>
<td>ducēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dux</td>
<td>ducēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ducem</td>
<td>ducibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

21. Stems ending in a liquid, l or r. There is no nominative case-ending.

cōnsul, m., consul

Stem cōnsul-

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. cōnsul</td>
<td>cōnsulēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. cōnsulis</td>
<td>cōnsulum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. cōnsult</td>
<td>cōnsulibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. cōnsulem</td>
<td>cōnsulēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V. cōnsul</td>
<td>cōnsulēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. cōnsule</td>
<td>cōnsulēs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

pater, m., father

Stem patr-

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pater</td>
<td>patrēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>patris</td>
<td>patrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>patrī</td>
<td>patribus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>patrem</td>
<td>patrēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pater</td>
<td>patrēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>patrem</td>
<td>patribus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

aequor, n., sea

Stem aequor-

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aequor</td>
<td>aequora</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aequoris</td>
<td>aequorīm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aequorī</td>
<td>aequoribus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aequor</td>
<td>aequora</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aequore</td>
<td>aequoribus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

22. Stems ending in a nasal, m or n. There is no nominative case-ending, except in hiems, the only stem in -m. The nominative of masculines and feminines usually drops the final n and changes the preceding vowel to ō.

homō, m., f., human being

Stem homin-

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. homō</td>
<td>homīnes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. hominis</td>
<td>hominum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. homini</td>
<td>hominibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. hominem</td>
<td>homīnes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V. homō</td>
<td>homīnes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. homine</td>
<td>hominibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ratio, f., reason

Stem ratio-

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ratio</td>
<td>ratioēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ratioās</td>
<td>ratioānum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ratioī</td>
<td>ratioībus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ratioēm</td>
<td>ratioēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ratio</td>
<td>ratioēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ratioēm</td>
<td>ratioībus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

flūmen, n., river

Stem flāmin-

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>flūmen</td>
<td>flāmina</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flāminis</td>
<td>flāminum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flāmini</td>
<td>flāminibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flūmen</td>
<td>flūmina</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flūmen</td>
<td>flūmina</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flūmine</td>
<td>flāminibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
APPENDIX

23. Stems ending in s (apparently r, because s changes to r between two vowels). The nominative has no case-ending, but usually ends in s, sometimes in r.

mōs, m., custom    honor, m., honor    tempus, n., time
Stem mōs-    Stem honōs-    Stem tempōs-
SING.    PLUR.    SING.    PLUR.    SING.    PLUR.
N. mōs    mōrēs    honor    honōrēs    tempus    tempora
G. mōris    mōrum    honōris    honōrum    temporis    temporum
D. mōrī    mōribus    honōrī    honōribus    temporī    temporibus
A. mōrem    mōrēs    honōrem    honōrēs    tempus    tempora
V. mōs    mōrēs    honor    honōrēs    tempus    tempora
A. mōre    mōribus    honōre    honōribus    tempore    temporibus

B. i-STEMS

24. Here belong (1) masculine and feminine nouns ending in -is or -ēs if they have the same number of syllables in the genitive as in the nominative, and (2) neuters in -e, -al, -ar.

25. Theoretically the i should appear in all cases except the nominative and vocative plural of masculines and feminines, and the nominative, accusative, and vocative singular of some neuters; but this declension became confused with that of consonant stems, and no absolute rule can be given for the endings. Masculine and feminine nouns usually have acc., -em, abl., -e, acc. plural either -ēs or -is. Neuters have abl. -l.

turris, f., tower    hostis, m., F., enemy    caedēs, f., slaughter
Stem turri-    Stem hosti-    Stem caedi-
SINGULAR

N. turris
G. turris
D. turri
A. turrim or -em
V. turris
A. turri or -e

PLURAL

N. turrēs
G. turrium
D. turribus
A. turris or -ēs
V. turrēs
A. turribus

caedēs
caedis
caedēm
caedēs
caede

caedēs
caedium
caedibus
caedēs or -īs
caedēs
caedibus
### APPENDIX

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cubile, n., couch</th>
<th>Vectigal, n., tax</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stem cubill-</td>
<td>Stem vectigalli-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Singular

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>N. cubile</th>
<th>Vectigal</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>G. cubillii</td>
<td>Vectigallis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. cubilli</td>
<td>Vectigalli</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. cubile</td>
<td>Vectigal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V. cubile</td>
<td>Vectigal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. cubillii</td>
<td>Vectigalli</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Plural

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>N. cubilia</th>
<th>Vectigalia</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>G. cubilium</td>
<td>Vectigaliolum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. cubilibus</td>
<td>Vectigaliibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. cubilia</td>
<td>Vectigalia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V. cubilia</td>
<td>Vectigalia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. cubilibus</td>
<td>Vectigaliibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Most nouns in -is are declined like hostis. Arar (for Araris), m., the Saone, and Liger (for Ligeris), m., the Loire, are declined in the singular like turris. Ignis, m., fire, and nāvis, f., ship, often have abl.-l. Mare, n., sea, is declined like cubile, but commonly has no other plural cases than nominative and accusative.

### C. MIXED STEMS

26. Some consonant stems have borrowed from -i stems the genitive plural in -ium and the accusative plural in -is. Here belong most monosyllables in -s and -x preceded by a consonant; most nouns in -ns and -rs; and a few nouns in -tās, -tātis.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Clēns, m., retainer</th>
<th>Urbs, f., city</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stem clēnt-</td>
<td>Stem urbs-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Singular

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>N. clēns</th>
<th>Clientēs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>G. clientis</td>
<td>Clientium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. cliēnti</td>
<td>Clientibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. clientem</td>
<td>Clientēs or -ls</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V. clēns</td>
<td>Clientēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. cliente</td>
<td>Clientibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Plural

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>N. urbs</th>
<th>Urbēs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>G. urbūs</td>
<td>Urbium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. urbī</td>
<td>Urbibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. urbem</td>
<td>Urbēs or -ls</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V. urbe</td>
<td>Urbēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. urbībus</td>
<td>Urbibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
D. IRREGULAR NOUNS

27. The following nouns present peculiarities of inflection:

\[
\begin{array}{llllll}
\text{sing.} & \text{plur.} & \text{sing.} & \text{plur.} & \text{sing.} & \text{plur.} \\
\text{senex, m.} & \text{os, n.} & \text{vis, f.} & \text{bo\'s, m., f.} & \text{Iuppiter, m.} \\
\text{old man} & \text{bone} & \text{force} & \text{ox, cow} & \text{Jupiter} \\
\end{array}
\]

\[
\begin{array}{llllllllll}
\text{N.} & \text{senex} & \text{os} & \text{vis} & \text{bo\'s} & \text{Iuppiter} \\
\text{G.} & \text{senis} & \text{ossis} & \text{vis} & \text{bovis} & \text{Iovis} \\
\text{D.} & \text{seni} & \text{ossi} & \text{vi} & \text{bovi} & \text{Iovi} \\
\text{A.} & \text{senem} & \text{os} & \text{vim} & \text{bovem} & \text{Iovem} \\
\text{V.} & \text{senex} & \text{os} & \text{vis} & \text{bo\'s} & \text{Iuppiter} \\
\text{A.} & \text{sene} & \text{ossi} & \text{vi} & \text{bove} & \text{Iove} \\
\end{array}
\]

28. The gender of many nouns is shown by the meaning (13). There are numerous exceptions to the following rules.

a. **Masculine** are nouns in \(\ddot{a}\) (except those in \(-\ddot{d}, \ddot{g}, \ddot{i}\) \(-\ddot{o}, \ddot{e},\)
\(-\ddot{e}, \ddot{r}, \ddot{e}\).

b. **Feminine** are nouns in \(-\ddot{d}, \ddot{g}, \ddot{i}, \ddot{a}, \ddot{e}, \ddot{e}, \ddot{e}, \ddot{i}, \ddot{u}, \ddot{y}, \ddot{x}, \ddot{a}, \ddot{r}, \ddot{u}, \ddot{u}\), and in \(-\ddot{s}\) when preceded by a consonant.

c. **Neuter** are all others; namely, nouns in \(-a, -e, -i, -y, -c, -l, -n, -t,\)
\(-ar, -ur, -us\).

FOURTH DECLENSION

29. Stem ends in \(-u\); nominative masculine in \(-us\), nominative
neuter in \(-a\).

\[
\begin{array}{llllllllll}
\text{N.} & \text{passus} & \text{passuum} & \text{passibis} \\
\text{G.} & \text{passus} & \text{passuum} & \text{passibis} \\
\text{D.} & \text{passum} & \text{passuum} & \text{passibis} \\
\text{A.} & \text{passus} & \text{passuum} & \text{passibis} \\
\text{V.} & \text{passus} & \text{passuum} & \text{passibis} \\
\text{A.} & \text{passus} & \text{passuum} & \text{passibis} \\
\end{array}
\]

a. **Domus, house, manus, hand, Id\'us, Ides**, are feminine.
b. The dative singular of nouns in \(-us\) sometimes ends in \(-a\).
c. The dative and ablative plural of a few nouns sometimes end
in \(-ubus\).
d. Domus, r., house, has some second declension forms. The forms in common use are:

SING. PLUR.
Nom. domus domus
Gen. domūs domuum
Dat. domūr or domō domibus
Acc. domum domōs
Voc. domus domūs
Abl. domō or domū domibus
Loc. domi (at home)

FIFTH DECLENSION

   diēs, m., day       rēs, f., thing

SING. PLUR.    SING. PLUR.
N. diēs     diēs     rēs     rēs
G. diēr     diērum   ref     rērum
D. diēr     diēbus   ref     rēbus
A. diem     diēs     rem     rēs
V. diēs     diēs     rēs     rēs
A. diēr     diēbus   rē     rēbus

a. Diēs in the singular is either masculine or feminine (feminine usually in the sense of an appointed day or a long space of time); in the plural it is masculine. Its compounds are masculine.

b. The ending of the genitive and dative singular is -ēr after a vowel, -ēr after a consonant. -ē is sometimes used instead of either.

c. Diēs and rēs are the only nouns of this declension that are declined throughout the plural. Acīēs, spēs, and a few others have nominative and accusative plural forms.

ADJECTIVES

31. ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS
    magnus, large

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N.</td>
<td>magnus</td>
<td>magna</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G.</td>
<td>magni</td>
<td>magnae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D.</td>
<td>magnō</td>
<td>magnae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A.</td>
<td>magnum</td>
<td>magna</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V.</td>
<td>magnae</td>
<td>magna</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A.</td>
<td>magnō</td>
<td>magnā</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### APPENDIX

**Liber, free**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. liber</td>
<td>libera</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. liberī</td>
<td>liberae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. liberō</td>
<td>liberae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. liberum</td>
<td>liberam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V. liber</td>
<td>libera</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. liberō</td>
<td>libera</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**noster, our**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. noster</td>
<td>nostrā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. nostrī</td>
<td>nostrae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. nostrō</td>
<td>nostrae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. nostrum</td>
<td>nostram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V. nostressa</td>
<td>nostrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. nostrō</td>
<td>nostrā</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### ADJECTIVES WITH GENITIVE IN -ius.

32. Nine adjectives of the first and second declensions have the genitive singular in -ius (in alter usually -ius) and the dative singular in -ī in all genders. These are alius, another, sōlus, only, tōtus, whole, ullus, any, nālius, no, ūnus, one, alter, the other, uter, which (of two), neuter, neither. In the plural the case-endings of these adjectives are exactly the same as in magnus. Note the ending -ud in the neuter of alius.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. ūnus</td>
<td>ūna</td>
<td>ūnum</td>
<td>tōtus</td>
<td>tōta</td>
<td>tōtum</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. ūnīus</td>
<td>ūnīus</td>
<td>ūnīus</td>
<td>tōtīus</td>
<td>tōtīus</td>
<td>tōtīus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. ūnī</td>
<td>ūnī</td>
<td>ūnī</td>
<td>tōtī</td>
<td>tōtī</td>
<td>tōtī</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. ūnum</td>
<td>ūnam</td>
<td>ūnum</td>
<td>tōtum</td>
<td>tōtum</td>
<td>tōtum</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. ūnō</td>
<td>ūnā</td>
<td>ūnō</td>
<td>tōtō</td>
<td>tōtā</td>
<td>tōtō</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N. alius</td>
<td>alia</td>
<td>aliud</td>
<td>alter</td>
<td>altera</td>
<td>alterum</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. alīus</td>
<td>alīus</td>
<td>alīus</td>
<td>alterius</td>
<td>alterius</td>
<td>alterius</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. alīf</td>
<td>alīf</td>
<td>alīf</td>
<td>alterī</td>
<td>alterī</td>
<td>alterī</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. alium</td>
<td>aliam</td>
<td>aliud</td>
<td>alterum</td>
<td>alteram</td>
<td>alterum</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. aliō</td>
<td>aliā</td>
<td>aliō</td>
<td>alterō</td>
<td>alterā</td>
<td>alterō</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

33. There are both consonant stems and i-stems. Adjectives of three terminations have a special form in the nominative singular for each gender; adjectives of two terminations have one form in the nominative singular for the masculine and feminine, another for the neuter; adjectives of one termination have the same form in the nominative singular for all genders. Except comparatives, all adjectives of two or three terminations have only -I in the ablative singular.

A. CONSONANT STEMS

34. Two Terminations.

fortior, braver

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mas. and Fem.</td>
<td>Neuter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N. fortior</td>
<td>fortius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. fortioris</td>
<td>fortiores</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. fortior</td>
<td>fortior</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. fortiorum</td>
<td>fortius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V. fortius</td>
<td>fortius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. fortiora</td>
<td>fortior</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a. Here belong all comparatives; but plus, more, is irregular and defective. In the singular it is used only as a noun.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Neuter</td>
<td>Mas. and Fem.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N. plus</td>
<td>plus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. pluriis</td>
<td>pluriium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. plus</td>
<td>plus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. pluriis</td>
<td>plus or -Is</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. plus</td>
<td>plurius</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

35. One termination.

vetus, old

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. vetus</td>
<td>vetus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. veteris</td>
<td>veteris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. veteri</td>
<td>veteri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. veterem</td>
<td>vetus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V. vetus</td>
<td>vetus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. vetera</td>
<td>vetera</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
APPENDIX

317

a. Here belongs princeps, chief. Dives, rich, also belongs here, but
has dītia for the nominative, accusative, and vocative neuter plural.

B. i-STEMS

36. Three terminations.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. ácer</td>
<td>ácris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. ácris</td>
<td>ácris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. ácri</td>
<td>ácri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. ácrem</td>
<td>ácrem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V. ácer</td>
<td>ácris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. ácri</td>
<td>ácri</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a. Here belong celeber, famous, equester, equestrian, pedester, pe-
destrian; names of months in -ber; and a few others.

37. Two terminations.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. omnis</td>
<td>omne</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. omnis</td>
<td>omnis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. omni</td>
<td>omni</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. omnem</td>
<td>omne</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V. omnis</td>
<td>omne</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. omni</td>
<td>omni</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a. Here belong all adjectives in -is, -e.

38. One termination.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. audāx</td>
<td>audāx</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. audācis</td>
<td>audācis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. audāci</td>
<td>audāci</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. audācem</td>
<td>audāx</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V. audāx</td>
<td>audāx</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. audāci</td>
<td>audāci</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
APPENDIX

oriēns, rising

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. oriēns</td>
<td>oriēns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. orientīs</td>
<td>orientīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. orientī</td>
<td>orientī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. orientem</td>
<td>oriēns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V. oriēns</td>
<td>oriēns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A oriente or -ī</td>
<td>orientē or -ī</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a. Here belong most adjectives of one termination, and all participles in -āns and -ēns. Participles usually have the ablative singular in -I only when used as adjectives, in -ē when used as participles or nouns.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

39. The regular comparative endings are -ior, -ius; superlative, -issimus, -a, -um. They are added to the base of the positive (found by removing the case-ending from the genitive singular). Examples: altus, high; altior, -ius. higher; altissimus, -a, -um, highest; fortis, brave; fortior, braver; fortissimus, bravest.

40. Adjectives in -er form the comparative regularly, but form the superlative by adding -rimus to the nominative of the positive. Example: ācer, sharp (base, ācr-), ācror, ācrerrimus.

41. Most adjectives in -ilis are compared regularly. Six, while forming the comparative regularly, form the superlative by adding -limus to the base of the positive. They are facilis, easy; difficilis, difficult; similis, like; dissimilis, unlike; humiliis, low; gracilis, slender. Example: facilis, faciliar, facillimus.

42. IRREGULAR COMPARISON

bonus, melior, optimus, good, better, best.
malus, peior, pessimus, bad, worse, worst.
magnus, maior, maximus, great, greater, greatest.
parvus, minor, minimus, small, less, least.
multus, plús, plurimus, much, more, most.
dexter, dexterior, dextimus, on the right, dexterous, etc.
DEFECTIVE COMPARISON

43. The following comparatives and superlatives appear without a positive because formed from stems not used as adjectives:

(citrā, adv., *on this side*) citerior, citimus, hither, hithermost.
(dē, prep., *down*) dēterior, dēterrimus, worse, worst.
(intrā, prep., *in, within*) interior, intimus, inner, inmost.
(prae, prep., *before*) prior, primus, former, first.
(prope, adv., *near*) propior, proximus, nearer, next.
(ultrā, adv., *beyond*) ulterior, ultimus, farther, farthest.

44. Of the following the positive forms are rare, except when used as nouns (generally in the plural):

exterus, exterior, extrēmus (*extimus*), outer, outmost.
Inferus, Inferior, Infimus (*imus*), lower, lowest.
posterus, posterior, postrēmus (*postumus*), latter, last.
superus, superior, suprēmus (*summus*), higher, highest.

COMPARISON BY ADVERBS

45. Most adjectives in -us preceded by a vowel, and many others, form the comparative and superlative by using the adverbs magis, more, and maximē, most. Example: idōneus, suitable; magis idōneus, more suitable; maximē idōneus, most suitable.

COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

46. Most adverbs are formed from adjectives in all the degrees of comparison.

a. The positive is formed from adjectives of the first and second declensions by adding -ē to the base; as lātus, wide, lātē, widely: from adjectives of the third declension by adding -ter or -iter to the base, except that adjectives whose base ends in nt add only -er; as audāx, audācis, bold, audāciter, boldly; fortis, brave, fortiter, bravely; prūdēns, prūdentis, prudent, prūdenter, prudently. But the neuter accusative singular of adjectives of all declensions may be used adverbially; as multum, much, facile, easily.

b. The comparative is the accusative singular neuter of the comparative of the adjective; as lātius, more widely, audācius, more boldly, fortius, more bravely, prūdentius, more prudently, plūs, more, facilius, more easily.
c. The superlative is formed by adding -e to the base of the superlative of the adjective; or, less often, is its accusative singular neuter; as látissíme, most widely, audáciassíme, most boldly, fortíssíme, most bravely, prudéntissíme, most prudently, plúrimum, most, facíllíme, most easily.

**NUMERALS**

47. Numeral adjectives are of three classes: cardinals, answering the question *how many?* as one, two, etc.; ordinals, answering the question *which in order?* as, first, second, etc.; and distributives, answering the question *how many each?* as, one each, two each, etc.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Roman Numerals</th>
<th>Cardinal</th>
<th>Ordinal</th>
<th>Distributive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I. unus, -a, -um</td>
<td>prímus, -a, -um</td>
<td>singulī, -ae, -a</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II. duo, -ae, -o</td>
<td>secundus or alter</td>
<td>bīnī</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III. tres, tria</td>
<td>tertius</td>
<td>ternī or trīnī</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV. quattuor</td>
<td>quārtus</td>
<td>quaternī</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V. quīnque</td>
<td>quintus</td>
<td>quīnī</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VI. sex</td>
<td>sextus</td>
<td>sēnī</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VII. septem</td>
<td>septimus</td>
<td>septēnī</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VIII. octō</td>
<td>octāvus</td>
<td>octēnī</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IX. novem</td>
<td>nōnus</td>
<td>novēnī</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X. decem</td>
<td>decimus</td>
<td>dēnī</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XI. undecim</td>
<td>undecimus</td>
<td>undēnī</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XII. duodecim</td>
<td>duodecimus</td>
<td>duodēnī</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XIII. tredecim</td>
<td>tertius decimus</td>
<td>ternī dēnī</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XIV. quattuordecim</td>
<td>quārtus decimus</td>
<td>quaternī dēnī</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XV. quīndecim</td>
<td>quintus decimus</td>
<td>quīnī dēnī</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XVI. sēdecim</td>
<td>sextus decimus</td>
<td>sēnī dēnī</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XVII. septendecim</td>
<td>septimus decimus</td>
<td>septēnī dēnī</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XVIII. duodēvigintī</td>
<td>duodēvicēsimus</td>
<td>duodēvicēnī</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XIX. undēvigintī</td>
<td>undēvicēsimus</td>
<td>undēvicēnī</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XX. vigintī</td>
<td>vicēsimus</td>
<td>vicēnī</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXI. ānus et vigintī</td>
<td>vicēsimus prīmus</td>
<td>vicēnī singulī</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(vigintī ānus)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXVIII. duodētrigintā</td>
<td>duodētricēsimus</td>
<td>duodētricēnī</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXIX. undētrigintā</td>
<td>undētricēsimus</td>
<td>undētricēnī</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXX. trigintā</td>
<td>tricēsimus</td>
<td>trīcēnī</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XL. quadragintā</td>
<td>quadragēsimus</td>
<td>quadragēnī</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L. quīnquagintā</td>
<td>quīnquagēsimus</td>
<td>quīnquagēnī</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LX. sexāgintā</td>
<td>sexāgēsimus</td>
<td>sexāgēnī</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LXX.</td>
<td>septuagintā</td>
<td>septuāgēsimus</td>
<td>septuāgēni</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LXXX.</td>
<td>octogintā</td>
<td>octōgēsimus</td>
<td>octōgēni</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XC.</td>
<td>nōnāgintā</td>
<td>nōnāgēsimus</td>
<td>nōnāgēni</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C.</td>
<td>centum</td>
<td>centēsimus</td>
<td>centēni</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cl.</td>
<td>centum (et)</td>
<td>centēsimus (et)</td>
<td>centēni (et)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>unus</td>
<td></td>
<td>primus</td>
<td>singuli</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CC.</td>
<td>ducentī, -ae, -a</td>
<td>ducentēsimus</td>
<td>ducēni</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CCC.</td>
<td>trecentī</td>
<td>trecentēsimus</td>
<td>trecentēni</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CCCC.</td>
<td>quadrimgentī</td>
<td>quadrimgentēsimus</td>
<td>quadrimgēni</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D.</td>
<td>quingentī</td>
<td>quingentēsimus</td>
<td>quingēni</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DC.</td>
<td>sescentī</td>
<td>sescentēsimus</td>
<td>sescentēni</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DCC.</td>
<td>septingentī</td>
<td>septingentēsimus</td>
<td>septingēni</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DCCC.</td>
<td>octingentī</td>
<td>octingentēsimus</td>
<td>octingēni</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DCCCC.</td>
<td>nōngenti</td>
<td>nōngentēsimus</td>
<td>nōngēni</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M.</td>
<td>mille</td>
<td>millēsimus</td>
<td>singula mília</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MM.</td>
<td>duo mília</td>
<td>bis millēsimus</td>
<td>bīna mília</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a. The ending -ēsimus is often used for -ēsimus.

48. Of the cardinals, unus, duo, and tres are declined; quattuor to centum, inclusive, are indeclinable; ducenti to nōngenti, inclusive, are declined like the plural of magnus (31); mīle as an adjective is indeclinable, as a substantive is declined like the plural of cubīle (25) and generally spelled mília. Ordinals are declined like magnus, distributives like the plural of magnus.

49. For the declension of unus see 32. Its plural usually means only or alone, but is used in the sense of one with nouns used only in the plural; as, ùna castra, one camp. Duo and tres are declined as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. duo</td>
<td>duae</td>
<td>duo</td>
<td>tres</td>
<td>tria</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. duōrum</td>
<td>duārum</td>
<td>duōrum</td>
<td>trium</td>
<td>trium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. duōbus</td>
<td>duābus</td>
<td>duōbus</td>
<td>tribus</td>
<td>tribus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. duōs, duo</td>
<td>duās</td>
<td>duo</td>
<td>tres, trīs</td>
<td>tria</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. duōbus</td>
<td>duābus</td>
<td>duōbus</td>
<td>tribus</td>
<td>tribus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

50. The numbers intermediate between those given in the table are expressed as follows: In a combination of tens and units the units may precede, followed by et; as tres et quadrāgintā, three and forty; or the tens may precede without an et; as quadrāgintā tres, forty three. In other combinations of two numerals the higher precedes, with or without et; as ducentī (et) vigintī, two hundred and twenty. In com-
pronouns

51.

First person, ego, I

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. ego</td>
<td>nōs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. méi</td>
<td>nostrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. mihi</td>
<td>nōbīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. mē</td>
<td>nōs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. mē</td>
<td>nōbīs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Second person, tū, you (thou)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>tū</td>
<td>vōs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tuī</td>
<td>vestrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tībī</td>
<td>vōbīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tē</td>
<td>vōs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tē</td>
<td>vōbīs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a. There is no personal pronoun of the third person. Its place is taken either by a demonstrative pronoun, usually is, he, ea, she, id, īt, 57; or, when him, them, etc., refer to the subject (163), by the reflexive pronouns.

b. nostrum and vestrum are the forms used as partitive genitives (101); nostrī and vestrī, as objective genitives (98).

c. The preposition cum is enclitic with personal pronouns; as, nōbis-cum, with us.

52. A reflexive pronoun can neither be the subject of a finite verb nor agree with such a subject; therefore there can be no nominative. For the first and second persons the personal pronouns are used as reflexives. For the third person there is a special pronoun.

First person, méi, of myself

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>G. méi</td>
<td>nostrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. mihi</td>
<td>nōbīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. mē</td>
<td>nōs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. mē</td>
<td>nōbīs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Second person, tuī, of yourself

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>tuī</td>
<td>vestrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tībī</td>
<td>vōbīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tē</td>
<td>vōs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tē</td>
<td>vōbīs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Third person, sulī, of himself, etc.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sulī</td>
<td>sulī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vestrī</td>
<td>vōbīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sībī</td>
<td>sībī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sē</td>
<td>sē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sē</td>
<td>sē</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a. The preposition cum is enclitic with reflexive pronouns; as, sēcum, with himself.
APPENDIX

63. POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS

1st pers. meus, -a, -um, my
2nd pers. tuus, -a, -um, your (of one)
3rd pers. suus, -a, -um, his, her, its (when referring to the subject)
   eius (gen. sing. of is) his, her,
      its (when not referring to the subject)
3rd pers. suus, -a, -um, their (when referring to the subject)
      eorum, earum, eorum (gen. plur. of is) their (when not referring to the subject)

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS

54. hic, this (near the speaker)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mas.</td>
<td>Fem.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N. hic</td>
<td>haec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. huius</td>
<td>huius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. huic</td>
<td>huiic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. hunc</td>
<td>hanc</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. hoc</td>
<td>hāc</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mas.</td>
<td>Fem.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hī</td>
<td>hae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hōrum</td>
<td>hārum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hīs</td>
<td>hīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hōs</td>
<td>hās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hīs</td>
<td>hīs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a. The nominative and accusative neuter, hoc, is pronounced hocc when the next word begins with a vowel. The syllable is therefore long. See 6, a.

55. iste, that (near the person spoken to)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mas.</td>
<td>Fem.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N. iste</td>
<td>ista</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. istius</td>
<td>istius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. istī</td>
<td>Īstī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. istum</td>
<td>Īstām</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. īstō</td>
<td>Īstō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mas.</td>
<td>Fem.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Īstī</td>
<td>Īstae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Īstōrum</td>
<td>Īstārum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Īstīs</td>
<td>Īstīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Īstās</td>
<td>Īstās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Īstīs</td>
<td>Īstīs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

56. illae, that (something more remote) is declined like iste.

57. is, this, that, he, she, it (unemphatic)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mas.</td>
<td>Fem.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N. is</td>
<td>ea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. eius</td>
<td>eius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. ei</td>
<td>ei</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. eum</td>
<td>eam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. eō</td>
<td>eā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mas.</td>
<td>Fem.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>il, el</td>
<td>eae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eōrum</td>
<td>earum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>īls, īls</td>
<td>īls īls</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>īls, īls</td>
<td>īls īls</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
58. | SING. | Idem, the same | PLUR. |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Mas.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Fem.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Neut.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N. Idem</td>
<td>eadem</td>
<td>idem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. eiusdem</td>
<td>eiusdem</td>
<td>eiusdem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. eidem</td>
<td>eidem</td>
<td>eidem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. eundem</td>
<td>eandem</td>
<td>idem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. eōdem</td>
<td>eādem</td>
<td>eōdem</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

59. **THE INTENSIVE PRONOUN**

ipse, self

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Mas.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Fem.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N. ipse</td>
<td>ipsa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. ipsīus</td>
<td>ipsīus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. ipsī</td>
<td>ipsī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. ipsum</td>
<td>ipsam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. ipsō</td>
<td>ipsā</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

60. **THE RELATIVE PRONOUN**

qui, who

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Mas.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Fem.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N. qui</td>
<td>quae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. cuius</td>
<td>cuius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. cui</td>
<td>cui</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. quem</td>
<td>quam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. quō</td>
<td>quā</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a. Quicumque and quisquis, whoever, are generalizing relatives. The qui of quicumque is declined regularly. Quisquis, quicquid (quid-quid), and quōquō are the only common forms of quisquis.

b. The preposition cum is usually enclitic with the relative pronoun, as quibuscum, with whom.

61. **INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS**

Qui, quae, quod, the adjective what? is declined like the relative. Quis, quid, the substantive who? what? is used in the singular.
APPENDIX

quis, who?

SING.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mas. and Fem.</th>
<th>Neut.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. quis</td>
<td>quid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. cuius</td>
<td>cuius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. cui</td>
<td>cui</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. quem</td>
<td>quid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. quō</td>
<td>quō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a. The enclitic -nam is sometimes added to an interrogative to strengthen it; quisnam, who, pray?

b. Cum is usually enclitic with the interrogative pronoun.

62.

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS

The indefinite pronouns are quis, qui, and their compounds. Quis and qui in this sense are in general declined like the interrogatives.

SUBSTANTIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>quis, quid, any one</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aliquis, aliquid, some one</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quispiam, quidpiam, some one</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quisquam, quicquam (quidquam), any one (abl. sing. and entire plural supplied by ullus, -a, -um)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quīvis, quaevis, quīdvis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quilibet, quaelibet, quidlibet any one etc., you like</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quīdam, quaedam, quiddam, a certain man</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quisque, quidque, each</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ADJECTIVE

| quī, quae (qua), quod, any |
| aliqui, aliqua, aliquod, some |
| quispiam, quaepiam, quodpiam, some |
| (adjective supplied by ullus) |
| quīvis, quaevis, quīdvis |
| quilibet, quaelibet, quidlibet any you like |
| quīdam, quaedam, quoddam, a certain |
| quisque, quaeque, quodque, each |

a. In qui and aliqui the nominative and accusative plural neuter are qua (or quae) and aliqua.

b. In the declension of quīdam, m becomes n before ʁ; as quândam.
VERBS

63. There are four conjugations of Latin verbs, distinguished from one another by the final vowel of the stem, best seen in the present infinitive.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CONJUGATION</th>
<th>FINAL VOWEL OF STEM</th>
<th>PRESENT INFINITIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I.</td>
<td>ā</td>
<td>-āre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II.</td>
<td>ē</td>
<td>-ēre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III.</td>
<td>e (i, u)</td>
<td>-ere</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV.</td>
<td>i</td>
<td>-īre</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

64. All forms of a verb are formed on one or another of three stems,—the present stem, the perfect stem, and the supine stem. In regular verbs the perfect and supine stems are based on the present stem, but in some irregular verbs they are formed on distinct roots.

a. On the present stem are formed: active and passive,—present, imperfect, and future indicative; present and imperfect subjunctive; imperative; present infinitive: active,—present participle; gerund: passive,—gerundive.

b. On the perfect stem are formed: active,—perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect indicative; perfect and pluperfect subjunctive; perfect infinitive.

c. On the supine stem are formed: active and passive,—future infinitive; active,—future participle; supine: passive,—perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect indicative; perfect and pluperfect subjunctive; perfect infinitive; perfect participle.

65. The principal parts are forms which show to which conjugation a verb belongs and what each of its stems is. They are, in the active, (1) the first person singular present indicative (as the first form of the verb), (2) the present infinitive (to indicate the conjugation and give the present stem), (3) the first person singular perfect indicative (to give the perfect stem), (4) the supine (to give the supine stem).

For example, the principal parts of laudō are:

laudō, laudāre (present stem, laudā).
laudāvi (perfect stem, laudāv).
laudātum (supine stem, laudāt).
The supine of the majority of verbs is not found in Latin literature so that other forms of the verb are often given instead of the supine. But no one form is found for every verb, and it is simpler to give the supine always.

In the passive the principal parts are (1) the first person singular present indicative, (2) the present infinitive, (3) the first person singular perfect indicative.

### 66. CONJUGATION OF SUM (irregular verb)

Principal parts: sum, esse, fuī

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>INDICATIVE</th>
<th>SUBJUNCTIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Present</strong></td>
<td><strong>Present</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SING.</td>
<td>SING.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sum</td>
<td>sim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esse</td>
<td>sit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>est</td>
<td>sint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PLUR.</td>
<td>PLUR.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sumus</td>
<td>simus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>estis</td>
<td>sitis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sunt</td>
<td>sint</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Imperfect</strong></th>
<th><strong>Imperfect</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>eram</td>
<td>essem (or forem)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>erās</td>
<td>essēs (or foreās)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>erat</td>
<td>esset (or foret)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>erāmus</td>
<td>essēmus (or forem)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>erātis</td>
<td>essētis (or foreātis)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>erant</td>
<td>essent (or forent)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Future</strong></th>
<th><strong>Future</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>erō</td>
<td>erimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eris</td>
<td>eritis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>erit</td>
<td>erunt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Perfect</strong></th>
<th><strong>Perfect</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>fuī</td>
<td>fuerim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fuistī</td>
<td>fuerīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fuīt</td>
<td>fuerit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pluperfect</td>
<td>Pluperfect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fueram</td>
<td>fuerāmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fuerās</td>
<td>fuissēmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fuerat</td>
<td>fuissētis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fuerit</td>
<td>fuisset</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Future Perfect</em></td>
<td><em>Future Perfect</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fuerō</td>
<td>fuerimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fueris</td>
<td>fueritis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fuerit</td>
<td>fuerint</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### IMPERATIVE

**Present**

2d pers. es este

**Future**

2d pers. estō estōte

3d pers. estō suntō

### FIRST CONJUGATION

#### ACTIVE VOICE

Principal parts: laudō, laudāre, laudāvi, laudātum

#### INDICATIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>laudō</td>
<td>laudāmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudās</td>
<td>laudātis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudat</td>
<td>laudant</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### IMPERFECT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>laudābam</td>
<td>laudābāmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudābās</td>
<td>laudābātis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudābat</td>
<td>laudābant</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### FUTURE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>laudābō</td>
<td>laudābimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudābis</td>
<td>laudābitis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudābit</td>
<td>laudābunt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### PERFECT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>laudāvi</td>
<td>laudāvimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudāvistī</td>
<td>laudāvistīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudāvit</td>
<td>laudāvērunt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### PLUPERFECT

or -ère

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>laudāveram</td>
<td>laudāverāmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudāverās</td>
<td>laudāverātis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudāverat</td>
<td>laudāverant</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### FUTURE PERFECT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>laudāverō</td>
<td>laudāverīmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudāveris</td>
<td>laudāverītis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudāverit</td>
<td>laudāverint</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### SUBJUNCTIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>laudem</td>
<td>laudēmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudēs</td>
<td>laudētis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudet</td>
<td>laudent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### IMPERFECT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>laudārem</td>
<td>laudāremus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudārēs</td>
<td>laudārētis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudāret</td>
<td>laudārent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### PERFECT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>laudāverīm</td>
<td>laudāverīmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudāverīs</td>
<td>laudāverītis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudāverīt</td>
<td>laudāverint</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### PLUPERFECT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>laudāvissem</td>
<td>laudāvissēmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudāvissēs</td>
<td>laudāvissētis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudāvissēt</td>
<td>laudāvissent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Imperative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Infinitive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2d pers. laudā</td>
<td>laudāte</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future</td>
<td>laudātōte</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2d pers.</td>
<td>laudātō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3d pers.</td>
<td>laudāntō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Participle

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pres.</th>
<th>Infinitive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>laudāns</td>
<td>laudātōrus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Supine

| Gen. | laudandī |
| Dat. | laudandō |
| Acc. | laudandum |
| Abl. | laudandō |

### Gerund

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>laudandī</td>
<td>laudandō</td>
<td>laudandum</td>
<td>laudandō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### First Conjugation

#### Passive Voice

Principal parts: laudor, laudārī, laudātus sum

### Indicative

#### Present

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>laudor</td>
<td>laudāmur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudāris or -re</td>
<td>laudāmini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudātūr</td>
<td>laudantur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Imperfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>laudābar</td>
<td>laudābamur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudābāris or -re</td>
<td>laudābāmini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudābātūr</td>
<td>laudābantur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Future

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>laudābor</td>
<td>laudābimur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudāberis or -re</td>
<td>laudābimini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudābitūr</td>
<td>laudābuntur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Perfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>laudātus sum</td>
<td>laudātī sumus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudātus es</td>
<td>laudātī estis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudātus est</td>
<td>laudātī sunt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Subjunctive

#### Present

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>lauder</td>
<td>laudēmur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudēris or -re</td>
<td>laudēmini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudētūr</td>
<td>laudentur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Imperfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>laudārer</td>
<td>laudāremur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudāreris or -re</td>
<td>laudāremini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudāretūr</td>
<td>laudārentur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Perfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>laudātus sim</td>
<td>laudātī simul</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudātus sis</td>
<td>laudātī sitis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudātus sitt</td>
<td>laudātī sint</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Pluperfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>laudātus eram</td>
<td>laudātī erāmus</td>
<td>laudātus essem</td>
<td>laudātī essemus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudātus erās</td>
<td>laudātī erātis</td>
<td>laudātus essēs</td>
<td>laudātī essētis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudātus erat</td>
<td>laudātī erant</td>
<td>laudātus essēt</td>
<td>laudātī essent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Future Perfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>laudātus erō</td>
<td>laudātī erimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudātus eris</td>
<td>laudātī eritis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudātus erit</td>
<td>laudātī erint</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Imperative

**Present**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2d pers. laudāre</td>
<td>laudāmini</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Future**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2d pers. laudātor</td>
<td>laudantor</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Infinitive

**Pres.** laudārī

**Perf.** laudātus esse

**Fut.** laudātum īrī

### Participle

**Perf.** laudātus

**Fut.** laudāndus

### Second Conjugation

### Active Voice

Principal parts: moneō, monēre, monuī, monitūm

### Indicative

**Present**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>moneō</td>
<td>monēmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monēs</td>
<td>monētis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monet</td>
<td>monent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Imperfect**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>monēbam</td>
<td>monēbamus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monēbās</td>
<td>monēbātis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monēbat</td>
<td>monēbant</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Future**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>monēbō</td>
<td>monēbimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monēbis</td>
<td>monēbitis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monēbit</td>
<td>monēbunt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
APPENDIX

**Perfect**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>monui</td>
<td>monuimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monuisti</td>
<td>monuistis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monuit</td>
<td>monuérunt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>or -ère</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Pluperfect**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>monueram</td>
<td>monuérâmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monuerâs</td>
<td>monuérâtis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monuerat</td>
<td>monuerant</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Future Perfect**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>monuerô</td>
<td>monuerimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monueris</td>
<td>monueritis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monuerit</td>
<td>monuerint</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Imperative**

**Present**

2d pers. monê monête

**Future**

2d pers. monêtô monêtôte

3d pers. monêtô monentô

**Participle**

**Pres.** monêns   **Fut.** monitûrus

**Supine**

Acc. monitum  Abl. monitâ

**Passive Voice**

Principal parts: moneor, monêri, monitus sum

**Indicative**

**Present**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>moneor</td>
<td>monêmur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monêris or -re</td>
<td>monêmini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monêtur</td>
<td>monentur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Subjunctive**

**Present**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>monear</td>
<td>moneâmur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>moneâris or -re</td>
<td>moneâmini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>moneâtur</td>
<td>moneantur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Imperfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>3rd pers.</th>
<th>1st pers.</th>
<th>2nd pers.</th>
<th>3rd pers.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>monēber</td>
<td>monēbámur</td>
<td>monēr</td>
<td>monērémur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monēbāris or -re</td>
<td>monēbāmini</td>
<td>monērēris or -re</td>
<td>monērēmini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monēbātur</td>
<td>monēbantur</td>
<td>monērētur</td>
<td>monērentur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Future

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>3rd pers.</th>
<th>1st pers.</th>
<th>2nd pers.</th>
<th>3rd pers.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>monēbor</td>
<td>monēbimur</td>
<td>monēr</td>
<td>monērémur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monēberis or -re</td>
<td>monēbimint</td>
<td>monērēris or -re</td>
<td>monērēmint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monēbitur</td>
<td>monēbintur</td>
<td>monērētur</td>
<td>monērentur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Perfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>3rd pers.</th>
<th>1st pers.</th>
<th>2nd pers.</th>
<th>3rd pers.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>monitus sum</td>
<td>monitú sumus</td>
<td>monitus sīm</td>
<td>monitú sīmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monitus es</td>
<td>monitú estis</td>
<td>monitus sīs</td>
<td>monitú sitis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monitus est</td>
<td>monitú sunt</td>
<td>monitus sīt</td>
<td>monitú sint</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Pluperfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>3rd pers.</th>
<th>1st pers.</th>
<th>2nd pers.</th>
<th>3rd pers.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>monitus eram</td>
<td>monitú erámus</td>
<td>monitus essem</td>
<td>monitú essémus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monitus erās</td>
<td>monitú erátis</td>
<td>monitus essēs</td>
<td>monitú essétis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monitus erat</td>
<td>monitú erant</td>
<td>monitus esset</td>
<td>monitú essent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Future Perfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>3rd pers.</th>
<th>1st pers.</th>
<th>2nd pers.</th>
<th>3rd pers.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>monitus erō</td>
<td>monitú erimus</td>
<td>monitus erōs</td>
<td>monitú erítmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monitus eris</td>
<td>monitú erítis</td>
<td>monitus erōn</td>
<td>monitú eríntis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monitus erit</td>
<td>monitú erint</td>
<td>monitus erit</td>
<td>monitú erint</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### IMPERATIVE

#### Present

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>2d pers.</th>
<th>3d pers.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>monēre</td>
<td>monētor</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Future

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>2d pers.</th>
<th>3d pers.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>monēr</td>
<td>monētor</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### INFINITIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>3rd pers.</th>
<th>1st pers.</th>
<th>2nd pers.</th>
<th>3rd pers.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres. monērī</td>
<td>Perf. monitus esse</td>
<td>Fut. monitum tri</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### PARTICIPLE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Perf.</th>
<th>Fut.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>monitus</td>
<td>monendus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### THIRD CONJUGATION

### ACTIVE VOICE

Principal parts: dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductum

### INDICATIVE

#### Present

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>dūcō</td>
<td>dūcimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dūcis</td>
<td>dūcitis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dūcit</td>
<td>dūcunt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### SUBJUNCTIVE

#### Present

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>dūcam</td>
<td>dūcamus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dūcas</td>
<td>dūcatis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dūcat</td>
<td>dūcant</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Imperfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>2d singular</th>
<th>3rd plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ducesbat</td>
<td>ducēbāmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ducēbat</td>
<td>ducēbant</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Future

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>3rd singular</th>
<th>2nd plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>duces</td>
<td>ducēmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ducet</td>
<td>ducēnt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Perfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>3rd singular</th>
<th>2nd plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>duxi</td>
<td>duximus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duxisti</td>
<td>duxistis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duxit</td>
<td>duxerunt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Pluperfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>3rd singular</th>
<th>2nd plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>duxerat</td>
<td>duxerāmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duxerātis</td>
<td>duxerātis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duxerant</td>
<td>duxerant</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Future Perfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>3rd singular</th>
<th>2nd plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>duxerō</td>
<td>duxerimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duxerītis</td>
<td>duxerītis</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### IMPERATIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>2d singular</th>
<th>3rd plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>duc*</td>
<td>ducite</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### INFINITIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>2d singular</th>
<th>3rd plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>duxisse</td>
<td>duxissēmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duxisset</td>
<td>duxissētis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duxissent</td>
<td>duxissent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### SUPINE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ducendī</td>
<td>ducendō</td>
<td>ducendum</td>
<td>ducendō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### GERUND

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ductārīn</td>
<td>ducēns</td>
<td>ductūrus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Irregular for ducē.


### APPENDIX

**THIRD CONJUGATION**

**PASSIVE VOICE**

Principal parts: dūcor, dūcl, ductus sum

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>INDICATIVE</strong></th>
<th><strong>SUBJUNCTIVE</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Present</strong></td>
<td><strong>Present</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>SING.</strong></td>
<td><strong>PLUR.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dūcor</td>
<td>dūcimur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dūceris or -re</td>
<td>dūciminí</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dūcitur</td>
<td>dūcuntur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Imperfect</strong></td>
<td><strong>Imperfect</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dūcēbar</td>
<td>dūcēbāmur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dūcēbāris or -re</td>
<td>dūcēbāminí</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dūcēbātur</td>
<td>dūcēbāntur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Future</strong></td>
<td><strong>Perfect</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dūcar</td>
<td>dūcēmur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dūceris or -re</td>
<td>dūcēminí</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dūcētur</td>
<td>dūcēmentur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Perfect</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ductus sum</td>
<td>ductis sumus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ductus es</td>
<td>ductis estis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ductus est</td>
<td>ductis sunt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pluperfect</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ductus eram</td>
<td>ductis erāmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ductus erās</td>
<td>ductis erātis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ductus erat</td>
<td>ductis erant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Future Perfect</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ductus erō</td>
<td>ductis erimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ductus eris</td>
<td>ductis eritis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ductus erit</td>
<td>ductis erunt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>IMPERATIVE</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Present</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2d pers. dūcere</td>
<td>dūcimini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Future</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2d pers. dūcitor</td>
<td>dūcantor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3d pers. dūcitor</td>
<td>dūcantor</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>INFINITIVE</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pres.</strong> dūcl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Perf.</strong> ductus esse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Fut.</strong> ductum Irí</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PARTICIPLE**

**Perf.** ductus
**Fut.** dūcendus
### Fourth Conjugation

#### Active Voice

**Principal parts:** audiō, audīre, audīvi, auditum

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>INDICATIVE</th>
<th>SUBJUNCTIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Present</strong></td>
<td><strong>Present</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SING.</td>
<td>SING.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiō</td>
<td>audiam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audīs</td>
<td>audīas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audit</td>
<td>audiat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PLUR.</td>
<td>PLUR.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audīmus</td>
<td>audiāmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audītis</td>
<td>audiātis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiant</td>
<td>audiant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Imperfect</strong></td>
<td><strong>Imperfect</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiēbam</td>
<td>audiēbam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiēbās</td>
<td>audiēbās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiēbat</td>
<td>audiēbat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>audiēbāmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>audiēbātis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>audiēbant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Future</strong></td>
<td><strong>Perfect</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiam</td>
<td>audiam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audīs</td>
<td>audīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiet</td>
<td>audiet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Perfect</strong></td>
<td><strong>Perfect</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audīvi</td>
<td>audīvīmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audīvisti</td>
<td>audīvītis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audīvit</td>
<td>audīvērunt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>or -ēre</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pluperfect</strong></td>
<td><strong>Pluperfect</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audīveram</td>
<td>audīverāmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audīverās</td>
<td>audīverātis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audīverat</td>
<td>audīverant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Future Perfect</strong></td>
<td><strong>Pluperfect</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audīverō</td>
<td>audīverimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audīveris</td>
<td>audīveritis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audīverit</td>
<td>audīverint</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Imperative

- **Present**
  - 2d pers. audi
  - audiēte

- **Future**
  - 2d pers. auditō
  - auditōte
  - 3d pers. auditō
  - audiuntō

#### Infinitive

- Pres. audīre
- Perf. audīvīsse
- Fut. auditūrus (esse)
### PARTICIPLE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pres.</th>
<th>Fut.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>audiēns</td>
<td>auditārus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### SUPINE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Acc.</th>
<th>Abl.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>auditum</td>
<td>auditū</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### GERUND

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>audiēndī</td>
<td>audiēndō</td>
<td>audiēendum</td>
<td>audiēndō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## FOURTH CONJUGATION

### PASSIVE VOICE

**Principal parts:** audior, audiri, auditus sum

### INDICATIVE

#### Present

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>audior</td>
<td>audimur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audīris or -re</td>
<td>audimīni</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>auditur</td>
<td>audiantur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Imperfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>audiēbar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiēbāris or -re</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>auditur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Future</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>audiar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiēris or -re</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>auditur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Perfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>auditus sum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>auditus es</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>auditus est</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pluperfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>auditus eram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>auditus erās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>auditus erat</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### SUBJUNCTIVE

#### Present

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>audiar</td>
<td>audiēmur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audīris or -re</td>
<td>audiēmini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>auditur</td>
<td>audiantur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Imperfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>audīrer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audīrēris or -re</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>auditūr</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Future

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Perfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>auditus sim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>auditus sis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>auditus sit</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pluperfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>auditus essem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>auditus essēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>auditus esset</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Future Perfect

| audītus erō      | auditī erimus |
| audītus eris   | auditī eritis |
| auditī est     | auditī erunt  |
## Appendix

### Imperative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Infinitive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2d pers. audire</td>
<td>audimini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2d pers. auditor</td>
<td>audiuntor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3d pers. auditor</td>
<td>audiuntor</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Infinitive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>audiri</td>
<td>auditus esse</td>
<td>auditum iri</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Participle

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Perf.</th>
<th>Fut.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>auditus</td>
<td>audiendus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Third Conjugation in iō

#### Active Voice

Principal parts: capiō, capere, cēpi, captum

#### Indicative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>capiō</td>
<td>capimus</td>
<td>capiam</td>
<td>capiamus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capis</td>
<td>capitis</td>
<td>capiās</td>
<td>capiātis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capit</td>
<td>capiunt</td>
<td>capiāt</td>
<td>capiānt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Imperfect</th>
<th>Imperfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>capiēbam</td>
<td>capiēbāmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capiēbās</td>
<td>capiēbātis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capiēbat</td>
<td>capiēbant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>caperem</td>
<td>caperēmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>caperēs</td>
<td>caperētis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>caperet</td>
<td>caperent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Future

| capiam | capiēmus |
| capiēs | capiētis |
| capiet | capiēnt |

#### Perfect

| cēpi | cēpimus |
| cēpiēs | cēpiētis |
| cēpit | cēpiēnt |
| or -ēre | cēperim |
| | cēperēmus |
| | cēperētis |
| | cēperint |
### APPENDIX

#### Pluperfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Future</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cēperam</td>
<td>cēperāmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cēperās</td>
<td>cēperātis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cēperat</td>
<td>cēperant</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Future Perfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Future</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cēperē</td>
<td>cēperēmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cēperēs</td>
<td>cēperētis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cēperēt</td>
<td>cēperēnt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### IMPERATIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Future</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2d pers. capē</td>
<td>capite</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### INFINITIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Future</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres. capere</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf. cēpisse</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut. captūrus (esse)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### PARTICIPLE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Future</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres. capiēns</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut. captūrus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### SUPINE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Future</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Acc. captum</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. captū</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### THIRD CONJUGATION IN Īō

#### PASSIVE VOICE

Principal parts: capiōr, capiī, captus sum

#### INDICATIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>capiōr</td>
<td>capimur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>caperis or-re</td>
<td>capimini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capiūr</td>
<td>capiuntur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Imperfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>capiēbar</td>
<td>capiēbāmur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capiēbāris or-re</td>
<td>capiēbāmini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capiēbātur</td>
<td>capiēbantur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Future

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>capiēbar</td>
<td>capiēbāmur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capiēbāris or-re</td>
<td>capiēbāmini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capiēbātur</td>
<td>capiēbantur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### SUBJUNCTIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>capiār</td>
<td>capiāmur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capiāris or-re</td>
<td>capiāmini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capiātur</td>
<td>capiantur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Imperfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>caperēr</td>
<td>caperēmur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>caperēris or-re</td>
<td>caperēmini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>caperētur</td>
<td>caperentur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capiēmur</td>
<td>capientur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## APPENDIX

### Perfect

- captus sum
- captus es
- captus est

### Pluperfect

- captus eram
- captus eras
- captus erat

### Future Perfect

- captus erō
- captus eris
- captus erit

### IMPERATIVE

#### Present

- 2d pers. capere

#### Future

- 2d pers. capitor
- 3d pers. capitor

### INFINITIVE

#### Pres.

- capī

#### Perf.

- captus esse

#### Fut.

- captum īri

### PARTICIPLE

#### Perf.

- captus

#### Fut.

- capiendus

### CONTRACTED FORMS

72. When the perfect stem ends in *v*, the *v* is sometimes dropped, and usually the two vowels thus brought together contract into one.  

- a. Perfects in -āvi, -ēvi, and -ōvi, and the other tenses based on the same stem, sometimes (apparently) drop *ve, vē, or vi* before *r* or *s.*

  **Examples**: laudāstī for laudāvisti; laudāsse for laudāvisse; délērunt for délēvērunt; nōrim for nōverim.

- b. Perfects in -īvi, and the other tenses based on the same stem, sometimes drop *v* in all forms. When the resulting combination is *iis* it usually contracts to *īs.*

  **Examples**: audīf for audīvi; audieram for audīveram; audīsse for audīvisse
DEPONENT VERBS

73. DepONENT verbs have passive forms with active meanings. But the future passive participle is passive in sense, and the perfect participle is sometimes so. On the other hand they have the following active forms: future infinitive, present and future participles, gerund, supine.

Of the following verbs the principal parts, indicative, subjunctive, and imperative are precisely the same as those for the passive voice of the verbs already given for the corresponding conjugations.

hortor, urge vereor, /ear sequor, follow partior, share

INFINITIVE

Pres. hortäri veräri sequi partäri
Perf. hortätus esse veritus esse secūtus esse partitus esse
Fut. hortätūrus (esse) veritārus (esse) secūtārus (esse) partitārus (esse)

PARTICIPLE

Pres. hortäns verēns sequēns partēns
Perf. hortätus veritus secūtus partitus
Fut. hortätūrus veritārus secūtārus partitārus
Fut. Pass. hortāndus verendus sequendus partiendus

GERUND

hortandi, -ō, etc. verendi, etc. sequendi, etc. partiendi, etc.

SUPINE

hortätum, -tū veritum, -tū secūtum, -tū partitum, -tū

74.

SEMI-DEPONENT VERBS

Semi-deponent verbs have active forms for the tenses based on the present stem, passive forms for those based on the perfect stem.

They are:

audeō, audēre, ausus sum, dare
gaudeō, gaudēre, gāvisus sum, rejoice
soleō, solēre, solitus sum, be accustomed
fidō, fidere, fisus sum, trust
APPENDIX

PERIPHRACTIC CONJUGATION

76. The active periphrastic conjugation expresses future or intended action. It is formed by combining the future active participle with the verb sum: thus,

Pres. laudātūrus sum, I am about to praise, I intend to praise,
Imp. laudātūrus eram, I was about to praise, I intended to praise, etc.

76. The passive periphrastic conjugation expresses obligation or necessity. It is formed by combining the future passive participle with the verb sum: thus,

Pres. laudandus sum, I am to be (must be) praised, I have to be praised.
Imp. laudandus eram, I was to be praised, I had to be praised, etc.

IRREGULAR VERBS

SUM AND ITS COMPOUNDS

77. For the conjugation of sum see 66. Sum is inflected in the same way when compounded with the prepositions ad, dé, in, inter, ob, prae, sub, super. Praesum has a present participle, praesēns.

78. In absēnum, sum is inflected in the same way, but ā is used for ab before f, giving āful, āfutūrus, etc. There is a present participle absēns.

79. In prōsum, sum is inflected in the same way, but the preposition prō has its original form prōd before all forms of sum beginning with e; as, prōdesse, prōderam. The present tense is, prōsum, prōdes, prōdest, prōsumus, prōdestis, prōsunt.

80. Possum, be able, can, is a compound of pot- and sum.

Principal parts: possum, posse, potūf

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>INDICATIVE</th>
<th>SUBJUNCTIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>Subjunctive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>possum, potes, potest</td>
<td>possum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>possumus, potestis, possunt</td>
<td>possem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imp.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>poteram</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>poterō</td>
<td>potuerim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>potūf</td>
<td>potuissem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plup.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>potueram</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut. Perf.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>potuerō</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
APPENDIX

INFINITIVE

Pres. posse
Perf. potuisse

PARTICIPLE

Pres. potēns

81. ferō, ferre, tuli, lātum, bear

ACTIVE VOICE

INDICATIVE

Pres. ferō, fers, fert,
ferimus, fertis, ferunt
Imp. ferēbam
Fut. feram
Perf. tuli
Plup. tuleram

Fut. Perf. tulerō

SUBJUNCTIVE

feram
ferrem
tulerim
tulissem

IMPERATIVE

Pres. fer ferte
Fut. fertō fertōte
fertō feruntō

INFINITIVE

Pres. ferre
Perf. tulisse
Fut. lātūrus (esse)

GERUND

ferendī, etc.

PARTICIPLE

fērēns
fertūris

PASSIVE VOICE

INDICATIVE

Pres. feror, ferris, fertur
ferimur, ferimini, feruntur
Imp. ferēbar
Fut. ferar
Perf. lātus sum
Plup lātus eram

Fut. Perf. lātus erō

SUBJUNCTIVE

fērar
ferrēr
lātus sim
lātus essem

IMPERATIVE

Pres. ferre, ferimini
Fut. fērtor
fērter, fēruntor

INFINITIVE

Pres. ferī
Perf. lātus esse
Fut. lātum ērī

PARTICIPLE

Perf. lātus
Fut. ferendus

82. volō, velle, volui, be willing
nōlō, nōlle, nōlui, be unwilling
mālō, mālle, mālui, prefer
### APPENDIX

**INDICATIVE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pres.</th>
<th>volō</th>
<th>nōlō</th>
<th>mālō</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>vīs</td>
<td>nōn vīs</td>
<td>māvīs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vult</td>
<td>nōn vult</td>
<td>māvult</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>volumus</td>
<td>nōlumus</td>
<td>mālumus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vultis</td>
<td>nōn vultis</td>
<td>māvultis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>volunt</td>
<td>nōlunt</td>
<td>mālunt</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imp.</td>
<td>volēbam</td>
<td>nōlēbam</td>
<td>mālēbam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>volam</td>
<td>nōlam</td>
<td>mālam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>volūf</td>
<td>nōlūf</td>
<td>mālūf</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plup.</td>
<td>volueram</td>
<td>nōlueram</td>
<td>mālueram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut. Perf. voluerō</td>
<td>nōluerō</td>
<td>māluerō</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**SUBJUNCTIVE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pres.</th>
<th>velim</th>
<th>nōlim</th>
<th>mālim</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Imp.</td>
<td>vellem</td>
<td>nōllem</td>
<td>māllem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>voluerim</td>
<td>nōluerim</td>
<td>māluerim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plup.</td>
<td>voluissem</td>
<td>nōluissem</td>
<td>māluissem</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**IMPERATIVE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pres.</th>
<th>nōlī</th>
<th>nōlīte</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>nōlītō</td>
<td>nōlītōte</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>nōlītō</td>
<td>nōlūntō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**INFINITIVE**

| Pres. velle | nōlle | mālle |
| Perf. voluisse | nōluisse | māluisse |

**PARTICIPILE**

| Pres. volēns | nōlēns |

83. *Flō, be made, be done, become, happen*, is the irregular passive of *faciō, make*. Note the *ī* before all vowels, except before *e* in the combination -er.

Principal parts: *flō, fierē, factus sum*

### INDICATIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pres.</th>
<th>flō, fis, fit</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>fīmus, fītis, fīunt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imp.</td>
<td>fīēbam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>fīam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>factus sum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plup.</td>
<td>factus eram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut. Perf. factus erō</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### IMPERATIVE
- Pres. si, site

### INFINITIVE
- Pres. fieri
- Perf. factus esse
- Fut. factum iri

### PARTICIPLE
- Perf. factus
- Fut. faciendus

### INDICATIVE
- Pres. eō, Is, it,
  - Imus, Itis, eunt
- Imp. ibam
- Fut. ibō
- Perf. ī for īvi
- Plup. ieram
- Fut. Per. ierō

### SUBJUNCTIVE
- eam
- frem
- ierim
- iissem or Issem

### IMPERATIVE
- Pres. ī
- Fut. ētō, ētōte

### INFINITIVE
- Pres. ire
- Perf. iisse or Isse
- Fut. itūrus

### PARTICIPLE
- Pres. iēns (Gen. euntis)
- Fut. itūrus (esse)

### GERUND
- eundī, etc.

### SUPINE
- itum, -tū

**a.** In the tenses based on the perfect stem, ī usually contracts to ī before s.

### 85. Dō, dare, dedī, datum, give, is conjugated like a verb of the first conjugation, except that the stem-vowel is regularly short ā. Ā appears only in the following active forms,—dās, dā, dāns.

### DEFECTIVE VERBS

The most important of these are the perfects memini, I remember; òdi, I hate; and coepl, I have begun. Notice that memini and òdi have the meanings of presents. Their pluperfects and future perfects have the meanings of imperfects and futures.

#### INDICATIVE
- Perf. memini
- Plup. memineram
- Fut. Perf. meminerō
- òdi
- òderam
- òderō
- coepl
- coeperam
- coeperō
**APPENDIX**

**SUBJUNCTIVE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Perf.</th>
<th>meminerim</th>
<th>õderim</th>
<th>coeperim</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Plup.</td>
<td>meminissem</td>
<td>õdissem</td>
<td>coepissem</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**IMPERATIVE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sing.</th>
<th>mementō</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Plur.</td>
<td>mementōte</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**INFINITIVE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Perf.</th>
<th>meminisse</th>
<th>õdisse</th>
<th>coepisse</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td></td>
<td>õsūrus (esse)</td>
<td>coeptūrus (esse)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PARTICIPLE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Perf</th>
<th>õsus</th>
<th>coeptus</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Fut</td>
<td>õsūrus</td>
<td>coeptūrus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a. Instead of coepi the passive form coeptus sum is regularly used when a passive infinitive depends on it. Example: laudāri coeptus est, he began to be praised.

**87. IMPERSONAL VERBS**

Impersonal verbs correspond to English impersonals with *it*. They have no personal subject, but most of them take as subject a substantive clause or sometimes a neuter pronoun. They appear only in the third person singular of the indicative and subjunctive tenses, the present and perfect infinitives, and occasionally in the participles and gerund. They are:

a. Most verbs expressing actions of nature; as pluit, *it rains*.

b. The following, which are exclusively impersonal: decet, *it becomes*; libet, *it pleases*; licet, *it is permitted*; miseret, *it causes pity*; oportet, *it is right*; paenitet, *it repents*; piget, *it displeases*; pudet, *it shames*; rēfert, *it concerns*; taedet, *it wearsies*. All of these except rēfert belong to the second conjugation.

c. Personal verbs used impersonally with a special meaning; as accēdit, *it is added*, from accēdō, *I approach*.

d. The passives of most intransitive verbs; as pugnātur, *it is fought*. 
APPENDIX

SYNTAX

SENTENCES

88. A sentence is a group of words so related as to express a complete thought. It consists of at least two parts — the subject (that of which something is said), and the predicate (that which is said about the subject). These two essential parts may be modified in various ways. A sentence may consist of a single verb, because the subject is implied in its ending.

Sentences are declarative, interrogative, imperative, or exclamatory as in English.

89. A Simple Sentence has one subject and one predicate. Example: Caesar vēnit, Caesar came.

90. A Compound Sentence consists of two or more simple sentences of equal value. These sentences are called coordinate clauses, and are connected by coordinating conjunctions; i.e., by conjunctions with such meanings as and, but, for, or. Example: Caesar vēnit et Gallī fūgērunt, Caesar came and the Gauls fled.

91. A Complex Sentence consists of a simple sentence (called a principal clause), modified by one or more dependent sentences (called subordinate or dependent clauses). The clauses are connected by relative pronouns or by subordinating conjunctions; i.e., by conjunctions with such meanings as in order that, so that, if, because, although, when, after, before. Example: ubi Caesar vēnit, Gallī fūgērunt, when Caesar came, the Gauls fled.

THE FUNCTION OF CASES

92. The cases help to show in what relation to the rest of a sentence any given substantive stands. This is shown in English almost entirely by the order of words or by the use of prepositions; yet the so-called possessive case illustrates the use of the Latin cases, for the ending's in the soldier's arms indicates that soldier modifies arms and that the soldier is the possessor of the arms. But in the English sentences the soldier (subject) fights, he kills the soldier (direct object), he gives the soldier (indirect object) a sword, only the order of words shows the relation of the word to the rest of the sentence; while in Latin miles would be used in the first sentence, mīlitem in the second, and mīlitī in the third.
93. But each of the cases, except the nominative and the vocative, expresses more than one thing. Consequently one must know just what uses each case can have, and must then determine which one of these uses it has in the sentence in which it occurs. This can be determined sometimes by the meaning of the word itself, sometimes by the obvious meaning of the sentence, sometimes by the fact that another word needs a certain case to satisfy its meaning and that case appears but once in the sentence. Examples: the accusative may express duration of time, but militem, a soldier, could not be used in this sense, while multis annos, many years, is quite probably so used. Dicit plum militem vulneraviisse might mean either he says that a javelin wounded the soldier, or a soldier wounded the javelin, but the latter makes no sense. Persuasit, he persuaded, needs a dative to express the person persuaded, and if there is but one dative in the sentence its use is evident.

94. For further clearness many relations are expressed in Latin by prepositions, though not so many as in English. Examples: a militie interfectus est, he was killed by a soldier; sum militie venit, he came in company with a soldier.

95. AGREEMENT OF SUBSTANTIVES

RULE: A noun which explains another noun and means the same person or thing is put in the same case.

Compare 97. Such a noun may be either a predicate noun or an appositive.

a. RULE: A predicate noun is connected with the subject by sum or a verb of similar meaning.

Such verbs are those meaning appear, become, seem, be called, be chosen, be regarded, and the like. Examples: Psō fuit consul, Piso was consul; Psō factus est consul, Piso became consul; Psō appellatus est consul, Piso was called consul. For the predicate accusative with verbs of calling, etc., see 126.

b. RULE: An appositive is set beside the noun which it explains, without a connecting verb.

Examples: Psō, consul, milit Psōni gladium dedit. Piso, the consul, gave a sword to Piso, the soldier.
APPENDIX

96. NOMINATIVE

RULE: The nominative is used as the subject of a finite verb (i.e. the indicative, subjunctive, and imperative modes).

EXAMPLE: Gallia est divisa (I, 1, 1), Gaul is divided.

GENITIVE

A. GENITIVE WITH NOUNS

97. GENERAL RULE: A noun which explains or limits another noun and does not mean the same person or thing (compare 95) is put in the genitive.

The relation between the two nouns is usually expressed in English by of, but often by for or by other prepositions. These combinations of nouns are divided, according to their meanings into the groups given in 98–105.

A genitive may be either (a) attributive, depending directly upon another noun; as domus Caesaris, Caesar's house; or (b) predicative, connected by sum or a verb of similar meaning; as domus est Caesaris, the house is Caesar's.

a. Appositional Genitive. 'But the genitive is sometimes used instead of an appositive; i.e., it sometimes means the same person or thing as the noun on which it depends. Example: tuorum comitum sentina (Cic. Cat. I, 12), that refuse, your comrades.

ATTRIBUTIVE

98. Subjective and Objective Genitives. These depend on nouns which have corresponding verbal ideas, as amor, love, amō, I love. The thought expressed by the noun and limiting genitive can be expanded into a sentence. If the genitive then becomes the subject it is a subjective genitive; if it becomes the object it is an objective genitive. Examples: amor patris, the love of the father, may imply that the father loves, (subjective), or that some one loves his father (objective); occasum sōlis (I, 1, 22), the setting of the sun (subjective); régni cupiditāte (I, 2, 2), by desire for power (objective).

99. Possessive Genitive.

RULE: The genitive may express the possessor.

The possessive pronouns are regularly used instead of the possessive genitive of personal pronouns. Examples: finibus Belgārum (I, 1, 16), by the territory of the Belgae; finibus vestris, by your territory.
APPENDIX

a. A genitive or possessive pronoun must precede causā or grātiā, for the sake of. Examples: huius potentiae causā (I, 18, 14), for the sake of this power; meā causā, for my sake.

100. Descriptive Genitive.

RULE: The genitive modified by an adjective may describe a person or thing by naming some quality.

Compare the descriptive ablative (141). This genitive is regularly used to express measure. Examples: huiusce modi senātūs cōnsultum (Cic. Cat. I, 4), a decree of this kind; trium mēnsium molitā cibāriā (I, 5, 7), provisions for three months.

101. Partitive Genitive (Genitive of the Whole).

RULE: The genitive may express the whole of which a part is mentioned.

This genitive may depend on any substantive, adjective, pronoun, or adverb which implies a part of a whole. Examples: eōrum ūna pars (I, 1, 15), one part of them; hōrum omnium fortissimī (I, 1, 6), the bravest of all these; ubinam gentium sumus (Cic. Cat. I, 9), where in (not of) the world are we?

a. Note especially the genitive of a noun, or of the neuter singular of a second declension adjective used substantively, depending on a neuter singular adjective or pronoun or on satis used substantively. Examples: quantum bōnū (I, 40, 17), how much (of) good; satis causae (I, 19, 6), sufficient (of) reason.

b. In place of this genitive the ablative with dē or ex is often used, especially with cardinal numerals and with quidam. Example: ūnus dī filīs captūs est (I, 26, 12), one of his sons was captured.

c. English often uses of in apparently similar phrases when there is really no partitive idea. Latin does not then use the genitive. Example: hi omnēs (I, 1, 3), all of these.

102. Genitive of Material.

RULE: The genitive may express the material of which a thing is composed.

Example: aciem legūnūm quattuor (I, 24, 3), a battle line (consisting) of four legions.
APPENDIX

Predicative

103. Possessive Genitive. The possessive genitive (99) is often used predicatively. Note especially such phrases as est hominis, *it is the part (duty, characteristic) of a man.* Example: est hoc Gallicae consuetudinis (IV, 5, 4), *this is a characteristic of the Gallic customs.*

104. Descriptive Genitive. The descriptive genitive (100) is often used predicatively. Example: senátus cónsultum est huiusce modi, *the decree is of this kind.*

105. The Genitive of Value. With sum and verbs of similar meaning, and with verbs of valuing, indefinite value is expressed by the genitive. Compare the ablative of price (147). The words commonly so used are magni, parvi, tantii, quanti, plúris, minórís. Example: tantí eius grátiam esse ostendit (I, 20, 14), *he assured him that his friendship was of such value.*

B. GENITIVE WITH ADJECTIVES

106. **RULE:** Many adjectives take a genitive to complete their meaning. They are:

a. Regularly, adjectives with such meanings as conscious (of), desirous (of), mindful (of), sharing (in), skilled (in), and their opposites, and plénus, full (of). Examples: bellandi cupidí (I, 2, 13), desirous of fighting; ref militáris perfíssimus (I, 21, 9), most skilled in military science.

b. Sometimes with the genitive, sometimes with the dative (122), similis, like; dissimilis, unlike. The genitive is more common of living objects, and regular of personal pronouns. Example: tul similis (Cic. Cat. I, 5), *like you; vērī simile (III, 13, 11), probable (like the truth).*

c. Occasionally other adjectives. Example: locum medium utrúsque (I, 34, 2), a place midway between them.

C. GENITIVE WITH VERBS

107. Verbs of Remembering and Forgetting.

**RULE:** Memini, bear in mind, reminiscor, remember, and oblívioscor, forget, govern either the genitive or the accusative.

The genitive is regular of persons, the accusative of neuter pronouns. Examples: reminiscerétur veteris incommódi (I, 13, 11), *he should remember the former disaster; veteris contuméliae oblívisci (I, 14, 7), to forget the former insult.*

Rule: Verbs of accusing, acquitting, convicting, and condemning take a genitive of the charge.

The penalty is expressed by the ablative. Example: me inertiae condemnō (Cic. Cat. I, 4), I pronounce myself guilty of inactivity.


Rule: The impersonal verbs miseret, pity, paenitet, repent, piget, dislike, pudet, be ashamed, taedet, be disgusted, take the genitive of the person or thing which causes the feeling, and the accusative of the person who has the feeling.

The personal verb misereor, pity, also takes the genitive. Examples: me meorum factorum numquam paenitetit (Cic. Cat. IV, 20), I shall never repent of my deeds; me eius miseret or eius misereor, I pity him.

110. Interest and Réfert.

Rule: The impersonal verbs interest and réfert, it concerns, it is to the interest of, take the genitive of the person concerned.

But if the person is expressed in English by a personal pronoun, interest is used with the ablative singular feminine of a possessive pronoun. Examples: ref publicae intersit (II, 5, 5), it is to the interest of the state; mei interest, it is to my interest.

111. Rule: Potior occasionally governs the genitive.

For potior with the ablative see 145. Example: Galliae potiēr (I, 3, 22), to become masters of Gaul.

THE DATIVE

112. The dative expresses that to or for which anything is or is done. It may depend on a verb or an adjective or, very rarely, a noun; or it may modify a whole sentence without depending on any one word.

113. Indirect Object.

General Rule: The dative denotes the person or thing indirectly affected by the action of a verb.

The indirect object depends closely on the verb, while the dative of reference (120) modifies the whole clause.

114. Indirect Object with Transitive Verbs.

Rule: Many verbs govern an indirect object in addition to a direct object.
These are especially verbs of giving and saying. The dative is usually translated by to, less often by for. For the indirect object with transitive verbs compounded with a preposition see 116. Example: ei filiam dat (I, 3, 15), he gives (to) him his daughter.

a. Dŏnō, give, present, and a few other verbs take either the dative of the person and the accusative of the thing, or the accusative of the person and the ablative of the thing. Examples: ei librum dŏnō, I give (to) him a book; sum librō dŏnō, I present him with a book.

b. Some verbs, instead of admitting both the accusative and the dative, admit either, but with a different meaning. Especially cŏnsulō, consult or consult for, and metuō, fear or fear for. Examples: si mé cŏnsulīs (Cic. Cat I, 13), if you consult me (ask my advice); cŏnsulīte vô-bīs (Cic. Cat. IV, 3), consult for yourselves (for your own interests).

c. This dative is retained with the passive voice. Example: ei filia datur, his daughter is given to him.

115. Indirect Object with Intransitive Verbs. The dative is used with all intransitive verbs whose meaning permits. Many of these verbs seem to be transitive in English, so that the indirect object must be translated by the English direct object.

**RULE:** The dative (usually of the person) is used with many verbs meaning benefit or injure, command or obey, please or displease, serve or resist, trust or distrust, believe, envy, favor, pardon, persuade, spare, threaten, and the like.

Examples: civitātī persuāsit (I, 2, 3), he persuaded the state; novīs rēbus studēbat (I, 9, 8), he was anxious for a revolution; Allobrogibus imperāvit (I, 28, 7), he commanded the Allobreges.

a. The dative is used with some phrases of similar meanings, as audiēns sum, obey, and fidem habēre, trust. Example: cui fidem habēbat (I, 19, 15), whom he trusted.

b. Many of these verbs which are ordinarily intransitive occasionally take an accusative of the thing, usually a neuter pronoun. Examples: prōvinciae militum numerum imperat (I, 7, 4), he levies a number of soldiers on the province; id īs persuāsit (I, 2, 6), he persuaded them to this (literally, he persuaded this to them).

c. Not all verbs with the meanings given above are intransitive. The most important exceptions are the verbs dēlectā, delight, iubēō
command, iuvō, *plāce, vetō, forbīd, which are transitive and therefore take the accusative (124). Example: Labiēnum iubet (I, 21, 5), *he commands Labienus.

d. Since only the direct object of the active voice becomes the subject of the passive (124, b), no intransitive verb can have a personal subject in the passive. The verbs of 115 can be used in the passive only impersonally, and the dative is retained, though it is usually translated as a subject. Examples: *Caesar persuādēō, *I persuade Caesar, becomes Caesarī ā me persuādētur, Caesar is persuaded by me (literally, it is persuaded to Caesar).

II.6. The Indirect Object with Compound Verbs. I. Certain prepositions usually give to verbs with which they are compounded a meaning which, in Latin idiom, requires the dative. If the simple verb is transitive the compound governs a direct object in addition to the indirect. The dative is variously translated with these verbs: when it is translated by *from, it is sometimes called the dative of separation.

RULE: *The dative is required with many compounds of ad, ante, con, dē, in, inter, ob, post, praecz, prō, sub, super; and with some compounds of ab, circūm, and ex.

EXAMPLES: cum omnibus praestārent (I, 2, 5), since they excelled all; *fīnutimīs bellum inferre (I, 2, 12), to make war upon their neighbors; mūntīōnī Labiēnum praecīcit (I, 10, 7), *he puts Labienus in command of the works; scūtō mīlitī dētractō (II, 25, 13), having snatched a shield from a soldier.

II. RULE: *The dative is used with compounds of satis and bene.

EXAMPLE: si Haeduīs satisfaciant (I, 14, 19), if they should make restitution to the Haeduī.

a. The meaning of the compound does not always permit the dative. Among the most important exceptions are the transitive verbs, agger-dior, a*tack; incendō, burn; interficiō, kill; oppugnō, assault; but there are many others. Example: eōs aggressīūs (I, 12, 9), having attacked (or attacking) them.

b. Very often with these compounds the preposition is repeated, or some other preposition is used, governing its proper case, instead of the dative. So especially if place is designated, or if motion is expressed. Example: illum in equum intulit (VI, 30, 15), he put him on a horse.

c. The dative is retained with the passive. Example: mūntīōnī Labiēnus praecīcitūr, Labienus is put in command of the works.
117. Dative of Possessor.

**RULE:** The dative is used in the predicate with sum to denote the possessor.

It may be translated as a nominative with the verb have. Examples: mihi est liber, I have a book (literally a book is to me); dēmonstrānt sibi nihil esse (I, xi, 12), they declared that they had nothing (lit. there was nothing to them).

118. Dative of the Agent.

**RULE:** The dative is used with the passive periphrastic conjugation (76) to express the agent.

Compare the ablative of the agent (137), which is used with the other forms of the passive. Example: non exspectāndum sibi statuit (Caes. I, xi, 13), he decided that he must not wait (lit. that it must not be waited by him).

a. The ablative of the agent (137) is often used with the passive periphrastic, especially if the dative would be ambiguous. Example: civitātī ā tē persuādendum est, the state must be persuaded by you.

119. Dative of Purpose.

**RULE:** The dative may express purpose or tendency.

This dative is especially common with sum. It is often found in connection with another dative (indirect object, dative of reference, dative of the possessor). Examples: quem auxilia Caesaris miserant (I, xviii, 27), whom they had sent to aid Caesar, lit. whom they had sent for an aid to Caesar; qui novissimīs praesidīō erant (I, 25, 14), who were guarding the rear, lit. who were for a guard to the rear.

120. Dative of Reference.

**RULE:** The dative may name the person with reference to whom the statement is made.

This dative does not depend on any one word (compare 113) but loosely modifies the whole predicate. It often takes the place of a genitive modifying a noun. Examples: cibāria sibi quemque efferre iubent (I, 5, 8), they order each one to carry food for himself; sēstē Caesar ad pedēs prōiēcērunt (I, 31, 4), they cast themselves at Caesar's feet.
121. Ethical Dative. The ethical dative is a dative of reference with so weak a meaning as to be unnecessary to the sense. It designates the person to whom the thought is of interest, and usually shows some emotion. Its use is confined to the personal pronouns. Example: Tongilium mihi ēdūxit (Cic. Cat. II, 4.), he took me out Tongilius, he took out my Tongilius, or simply he took out Tongilius.

122. Dative with Adjectives.

RULE: Adjectives meaning friendly or unfriendly, like or unlike, useful or useless, equal, fit, near, suitable, govern the dative.

Examples: plēbl acceptus (I, 3, 14), acceptable (pleasing) to the people; proximi sunt Germāns (I, 1, 9), they are nearest to the Germans; castrīs idōneum locum (VI, 10, 5), a place suitable for a camp.

a. With some of these adjectives a preposition with its proper case is often used instead of a dative. Example: ad amicitiam idōneus, suitable for friendship.

b. The adjectives proprius and proximus and the adverbs proprius and proximō sometimes govern the accusative, like the preposition prope. Example: proximi Rhēnum (I, 54, 3), nearest the Rhine.

c. For similis and dissimilis see 106, b.

ACCUSATIVE

123. Subject of Infinitive.

RULE: The accusative is used as the subject of the infinitive.

Example: certior factus est Helvētiōs trādūxisse (I, 12, 5), he was informed that the Helvetii had led across.

124. Direct Object.

RULE: The accusative is used with transitive verbs to express the direct object.

The direct object may be either (a) the person or thing directly affected by the action of the verb, as puerum laudat, he praises the boy; or (b) the thing produced by the action of the verb, as coniūrātiōnem fēcit, he made a conspiracy.

a. The direct object may be a substantive clause (228, 229, 262, 277).

b. The direct object of the active voice becomes the subject of the passive. Examples: puer laudātur, the boy is praised; coniūrātiō facta est, a conspiracy was made.
c. Many compounds of intransitive verbs with prepositions, especially ad, circum, in, per, praeter, sub, trans, have transitive meanings. Example: ire, to go, intransitive; but flumen transire, to cross (go across) the river.

d. Many verbs which are transitive in English are intransitive in Latin; see especially 115.

THREE CLASSES OF VERBS GOVERNING TWO ACCUSATIVES (125–127).

125. Two Objects. A few verbs take two objects, one of the person, one of the thing.

a. RULE: Verbs of asking, demanding, and teaching, (also celō, I conceal) have a direct object of the thing, and may have another of the person.

But with verbs of asking and demanding the person is usually expressed by the ablative with ab. Examples: Haeduiō frumentum flagitāre (I, 16, 1), he kept asking the Haedui for the grain; eadem ab alīs quaerit (I, 18, 5), he asked the same question of others.

b. RULE: Moneō, I warn, advise, and a few other verbs may take an accusative of the person and the neuter accusative of a pronoun or adjective of the thing.

The pronoun is an inner accusative (128, a). Examples: eōs hoc moneō (Cic. Cat. II, 20), I give them this advice; sī quid ille sē velit (I, 34, 6), if he wanted anything of him.

c. With the passive of these verbs the accusative of the person becomes the subject, and the accusative of the thing is retained. Example: Haedui frumentum flagitabantur, the Haedui were asked for the grain; (ii) hoc monentur, they are given this advice.

126. Object and Predicate Accusative.

RULE: Verbs of making, choosing, calling, regarding, showing, and the like, take a direct object and a predicate accusative, both referring to the same person or thing.

The predicate accusative may be either a noun or an adjective. Examples: quem régem constituerat (IV, 21, 14), whom he had appointed king; Caesarem certòrem fécit, he informed Caesar (made Caesar more certain).
a. With the passive of these verbs the direct object becomes the subject, and the predicate accusative becomes the predicate nominative (95, a). Examples: quī rēx cōnstitūtus erat, who had been appointed king; Caesar certior factus est (I, 12, 5), Caesar was informed (made more certain).

127. Two Objects with Compounds.

RULE: Transitive verbs compounded with trāns may take one object depending on the verb, another depending on the preposition.

Example: trēs partēs flūmen tràduxérunt (cf. I, 12, 6), they led three parts across the river.

a. With the passive of these verbs the object of the verb becomes the subject, the object of the preposition is retained. Example: trēs partēs flūmen tràductae sunt, three parts were led across the river.

128. Cognate Accusative.

RULE: An intransitive verb may take an accusative of a noun of kindred meaning, usually modified by an adjective or genitive.

Examples: eam vitam vivere, to live that life; tridul viam prōcēdere (I, 38), to advance a three days' march.

a. A neuter accusative of a pronoun or adjective is often used in a similar way. This is sometimes called an inner accusative. Examples: id īs persuāsit (I, 2, 3), he persuaded them of this (lit. he persuaded this to them); multum posse, to have much power.

b. Adverbial Accusative. A few accusatives are used adverbially. In some cases it is impossible to decide whether an accusative should be classed here or under a. The most common adverbial accusatives are multum, much, plūs, more, plūrimum, most, plūrumque, for the most part, and nihil, not at all. Here belong also id temporis (Cic. Cat. I, 10), at that time, and maximam partem (IV, 1, 14), for the most part. Example: multum sunt in vēnātiōne (IV, 1, 15), they engage much in hunting.

129. Accusative in Exclamations.

RULE: An accusative is sometimes used as an exclamation.

Example: O fortūnātām rem pūblicam (Cic. Cat. II, 7), Oh, fortunate state! The nominative and vocative are less often used in the same way.
130. Accusative of Time and Space.

RULE: The accusative is used to express duration of time and extent of space.

The noun must be one meaning time or distance, as, dies, day; pes, foot. Compare 152 and 148. Examples: regnum multos annos obtinuerat (I, 3, 10), he had held the royal power many years; milia passuum ducenta quadragesimae patebant (I, 2, 16), extended two hundred and forty miles.

131. Place to Which.

RULE: Place to which is regularly expressed by the accusative with ad or in, but names of towns and domus and rus omit the preposition.

Compare 134, a, and 151. Examples: ad iudicium coagit (I, 4, 14), he brought to the trial; in agrum Noricum transierant (I, 5, 11), they had crossed over into the Norian territory; sē Massiliam conferet (Cic. Cat. II, 14), he will go to Marseilles; domum reditio is (I, 5, 6), of a return home.

a. Ad is, however, sometimes used in the sense of towards (not to), or in the neighborhood of. Example: ad Genavam pervenit (I, 7, 4), he reached the neighborhood of Geneva.

132. VOCATIVE

The name of the person addressed is put in the vocative. Example: désilite, commilitônes (IV, 25, 11), jump down, comrades.

133. ABLATIVE

The language from which Latin developed had two more cases than Latin has,—the instrumental and the locative. The original ablative meant separation (from), the instrumental meant association or instrument (with or by), and the locative meant place where (in). The forms of these three cases united in the Latin ablative; so that this one case has meanings which belonged to three separate cases. This fact accounts for the many and widely differing uses which the case has.

134. Ablative of Separation.

RULE: Separation is usually expressed by the ablative, with or without ab, de, or ex.
With some verbs both constructions are used; the individual usage of others must be noted. For the so-called dative of separation see 116, I. Examples: suís finibus eós prohibént (I, 1, 13), they repel them from their own territory; quae hostem á pugná prohibérent (IV, 34, 9), which kept the enemy from battle; á Bibracte aberat (I, 23, 2), he was distant from Bibracte.

a. Place from which: with verbs expressing motion:—

**RULE:** Place from which is expressed by the ablative with ab, dē, or ex, but names of towns and domus and rūs omit the preposition.

Compare 131 and 151. Examples: ut rē fīnibus suís exirent (I, 2, 4), to go out from their territory; quī ex prōvinciā convēnerant (I, 8, 2), who had gathered from the province; Rōmā profugērunt (Cic. Cat. I, 7), they fled from Rome; domō exire (I, 6, 1), to go out from home.

Ab is, however, used with names of towns to express from the neighborhood of.

b. **RULE:** With verbs and adjectives of depriving, freeing, being without, and the like, the ablative without a preposition is generally used.

Examples: magnō mē metū liberābis (Cic. Cat. I, 10), you will free me of great fear; proeliō abstinēbat (I, 22, 11), refused battle (literally refrained from battle).

135. Ablative of Source.

**RULE:** The ablative, usually without a preposition, is used with the participles nātus and ortus, to express parentage or rank.

Examples: amplissimō genere nātus (IV, 12, 13), born of the highest rank; sorōrem ex mātre (nātam) (I, 18, 16), his sister on his mother's side.


**RULE:** The material of which anything is made is expressed by the ablative with ex, less often dē.

Example: nāvēs factae ex rō bore (III, 13, 5), the ships were made of oak.

137. Ablative of Agent.

**RULE:** The agent of the passive voice is expressed by the ablative with ab.
The agent is the person who performs the act. Compare the ablative of means (143), and the dative of agent (118). Example: exercitum ab Helvétiiis pulsum (I, 7, 13), that his army had been routed by the Helvetii.

138. Ablative of Cause.

RULE: Cause is expressed by the ablative, generally without a preposition.

Examples: grātiā et largītione (I, 9, 5), because of his popularity and lavish giving; quod suā victoriā glōriārentur (I, 14, 11), that they boasted (because) of their victory.

a. Cause is more frequently expressed by causā and the genitive (99, a); by the accusative with ob, per, or propter; and by dē or ex with the ablative. Examples: propter angustiās (I, 9, 2), because of its narrowness; quā dē causā, (I, 1, 11), and for this reason.

139. Ablative of Comparison.

RULE: With comparatives, “than” may be expressed by the ablative.

Examples: lūce sunt clāriōra tua cōnsilia (Cic. Cat. I, 6), your plans are clearer than day; nōn amplius quīnis aut sēnīs miliībus passuum (I, x5, 14), not more than five or six miles (compare b).

This is not to be confused with the ablative of measure of difference (148).

a. When quam is used for than, the two nouns compared are in the same case. The ablative is generally used only when the first noun is nominative or accusative, and when the sentence is negated.

b. Plūs, minus, amplius, and longius are often used instead of plūs quam, etc. Example: quae amplius octingentae ūnō erant visae tempore (V, 8, 19), of which more than 800 had been in sight at one time.

140. Ablative of Accompaniment.

RULE: Accompaniment is expressed by the ablative with cum.

Example: ut cūm omnibus cōpīs exīrent (I, 2, 4), to go out with all their troops.

In military phrases cum is sometimes omitted.

Example: Caesar subsequēbātur omnibus cōpīs (II, 19, 1), Caesar followed with all his troops.
141. Descriptive Ablative.

RULE: The ablative modified by an adjective may describe a person or thing by naming some quality.

It may be used either attributively or predicatively. Compare the descriptive genitive (100). Examples: hominès inimicō animō (I, 7, 15), men of unfriendly disposition; nōndum bonō animō vidērentur (I, 6, 11), they did not yet seem (to be) well disposed (of a good spirit).

142. Ablative of Manner.

RULE: Manner is expressed by the ablative, usually with either cum or a modifying adjective, rarely with both.

Examples: pars cum cruciātū necābatur (V, 45, 5), some were killed with torture; magnis itineribus (I, 10, 8), by forced marches.

a. Ablative of Accordance.

RULE: In some common phrases the ablative means in accordance with.

These are especially the following nouns, modified by either an adjective or a genitive,—cōnsuētūdine, iūre, iussū (iniussū), lēge, mōribus, sententiā, spontē, voluntāte. Examples: iniussū suō (I, 19, 4), without his orders; mōribus suīs (I, 4, 1), in accordance with their customs; suā voluntāte (I, 20, 11), in accordance with his wish.

b. Ablative of Attendant Circumstance.

RULE: Sometimes the ablative expresses situation or an attendant circumstance.

Usually it is impossible to distinguish clearly such an ablative from the ordinary ablative of manner. Examples: imperiō populi Rōmānī (I, 18, 22), under the sovereignty of the Roman people; intervallō pedum duōrum iungēbat (IV, 17, 9), he joined at a distance apart of two feet.

143. Ablative of Means.

RULE: The means or instrument by which a thing is done is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.

Compare the ablative of the agent (137). Example: rēgni cupiditāte inductus (I, 2, 2), influenced by the desire for royal power.
APPENDIX

a. Notice the ablative with the following words,—verbs and adjectives of filling (except plēnus, 106); fidē, cōnfidō, trust in; nītor, rely upon; lacessō (proelīō), provoke (to battle); assuēfactus, assuētus, accustomed to; frētus, reying upon. Examples: nātūrā locī cōnfidēbant (III, 9, 12), they trusted in the nature of the country; nūlō officiō assuēfactī (IV, 1, 17), accustomed to no obedience.

144. Ablative of the Way.

RULE: The road or way by which a person or thing goes is expressed by the ablative of means.

Examples: frūmentō quod flūmine Ararī nāvibus subvexerat (I, 16, 5), the grain which he had brought up (by way of) the Saone; eōdem itinere contendit (I, 21, 8), he advanced by the same road.

145. Ablative with Special Deponent Verbs. The ablative is used with ātor, use, fruor, enjoy, fungor, perform, fulfill, potior, get possession of, vēscor, eat, and their compounds.

This is an ablative of means, but is to be translated by a direct object. Examples: eōdem ātī cōnsiliō (I, 5, 9), adopting (having used) the same plan; imperiō potiri (I, 2, 6), to get possession of the government.

146. Ablative with opus est.

RULE: The ablative of means is used with opus est and ūsus est, meaning there is need of.

Example: Caesari multīs auxiliis opus est, Caesar needs many auxiliaries.

a. But if the thing needed is expressed by a neuter pronoun or adjective it may be used as the subject, with opus as predicate noun. Example: si quid opus esset (I, 34, 5), if he needed anything.

b. Sometimes the ablative neuter of the perfect passive participle is used with opus est. Example: si opus factō esset (I, 42, 19), if there should be need of action.

147. Ablative of Price.

RULE: With verbs of buying, selling, and the like, price is expressed by the ablative.

Compare the genitive of value, 105. Example: parvō pretiō redēmpta (I, 18, 9), bought up at a low price.

**RULE:** The ablative is used with comparatives and words of similar meaning to express the degree of difference.

Compare 139. Examples: nihilò minus (I, 5, 1), lit. less by nothing, = nevertheless; paucis ante diēbus, (I, 18, 25), a few days before (lit. before by a few days).

a. Eō . . . quō, in this construction, may be translated the . . . the.
Example: eō gravius ferre quō minus merítō accidissent (I, 14, 3), lit. he endured them with more anger by that amount by which they had happened less deservedly, = he was the more angry the less deservedly they had happened.

149. Ablative of Specification.

**RULE:** The ablative is used to express that in respect to which a statement is true.

Examples: linguā inter sē differunt (I, 1, 3), they differ in language; maior nātū, older (greater in birth).

a. The ablative is used with dignus, worthy, and indignus, unworthy. Example: ipsīs indignum (V, 35, 11), unworthy of themselves.

150. Ablative Absolute.

**RULE:** A noun and a participle in the ablative may modify a sentence as a subordinate clause would.

**RULE:** Two nouns, or a noun and an adjective, may stand in the ablative absolute when the English would connect them by the word "being."

The construction is called absolute because it does not depend syntactically on anything in the sentence. It is used much more frequently than the nominative absolute in English; hence it should be translated in some other way. It is always possible to translate by a subordinate clause, but sometimes other translations are more convenient. Notice the translations of the following examples: (translated by active past participle) remōtis equis proelium commīsit (I, 25, 2), having sent the horses away, he began the battle; (translated by prepositional phrase) M Messālā M. Pīsōne cōnsulibus (I, 2, 2), in the consulship of, etc.; eō dēprecātōre (I, 9, 4), by his mediation; (translated by subordinate clause) omnibus rēbus comparātīs diem dicunt (I, 6, 13),
when everything was ready they set a day; Séquanis invítis ire nón pote-
rant (I, 9, 1), if the Sequani should refuse they could not go; monte occu-
pátō nostrós exspectábat (I, 22, 11), though he had occupied the mountain
he waited for our men; (translated by coordinate clause) locís superíori-
bus occupátís .... conantur (I, 10, 12), they occupied advantageous posi-
tions and tried, etc.

151. Place in Which.

RULE: Place in which is regularly expressed by the ablative with in.

Compare 131 and 134, a. Example: in eórum finibus bellum gerunt
(I, 1, 13), they fight in their territory.

a. RULE: Names of towns and small islands stand in the locative
(15, b; 16, b) if they are singular nouns of the first and second declensions;
otherwise in the ablative without a preposition.

The locatives domi, at home, and rúrī, in the country, are also in regu-
lar use. Examples: Samarobrīvae (V, 24, 1), at Samarobrīva; domī
largiter posse (I, 18, 13), he had great influence at home.

b. RULE: No preposition is regularly used with locō, locís, parte,
partibus when accompanied by an adjective or an equivalent genitive; or
with any noun modified by tōtus.

Examples: nón nūllīs locís trānsītūr (I, 6, 8), is crossed in several
places; vulgō tōtīs castrīs (I, 39, 17), everywhere throughout the entire
camp.

c. Latin often uses some other construction where the English would
lead one to expect the construction of place in which. So ab and ex
are used to express position; and the ablative of means is often used in-
stead of the ablative with in if the construction is at all appropriate.
Examples: ānā ex parte (I, 2, 7), on one side; cotidiānīs proelīs conten-
dunt (I, 1, 12), they contend in (by means of) daily battles; memoriā tenē-
bat (I, 7, 12), he held in (by means of) memory.

152. Ablative of Time.

RULE: Time at or within which is expressed by the ablative without a
preposition.

Compare the accusative of time (130). Examples: eō tempore (I,
3, 14), at that time; id quod ipse diēbus vigintī aegerrimē cónfecerant (I,
13, 4), a thing which they had barely accomplished in (within) twenty days.

a. The ablative rarely denotes duration of time. Example: eā tōtā
nocte iːrunt (I, 26, 13), they marched during that whole night.
APPENDIX

CASES WITH PREPOSITIONS

153. Ablative. The following prepositions govern the ablative: ab, absque, cōram, cum, dē, ex, prae, prō, sine, tenuis.

a. The forms ab and ex must be used before words beginning with a vowel or h. It is always safe to use a and d before words beginning with a consonant, though ab and ex are often found.

b. Cum is enclitic with the personal and reflexive pronouns, and usually with the relative and interrogative.

154. Accusative or Ablative. In and sub with the accusative imply motion from outside into and under, respectively. Subter and super sometimes govern the ablative.

155. Accusative. All other prepositions govern the accusative.

156. PREDICATE AND ATTRIBUTIVE ADJECTIVES

A predicate adjective is connected with its noun by some part of the verb sum or a verb of similar meaning (see 95, a); as, flūmen est lātum, the river is wide. An attributive adjective modifies its noun without such a connecting verb; as, flūmen lātum, the wide river.

157. AGREEMENT OF ADJECTIVES

RULE: Adjectives (including participles and adjective pronouns) agree with their nouns in gender, number, and case.

Examples: homō bonus, a good man; mulierī bonus, to a good woman; bellōrum magnōrum, of great wars.

a. An adjective which belongs in sense to two or more nouns,—

1. If attributive, regularly agrees with the nearest noun. Examples: vir bonus et mulier, a good man and woman; bella et victōriāe magnae, great wars and victories.

2. If predicative, regularly agrees with all the nouns, and must, therefore, be plural. If the nouns are of the same gender the adjective usually takes that gender; otherwise it is neuter unless one or more of the nouns denote things with life, when the adjective is usually masculine rather than feminine, feminine rather than neuter. But the adjective may be neuter under almost any circumstances. Examples: hominēs et mōrēs sunt bonī, the men and their characters are good; hominēs et arma sunt magni, the men and their arms are large; montēs et flāmina sunt magnae, the mountains and rivers are large.
158. ADJECTIVES USED SUBSTANTIVELY

Adjectives are rarely used as substantives in the singular, more commonly in the plural. The masculine is used in all cases in the sense of man or men, and the feminine in the sense of woman or women. The neuter is used in the sense of thing or things, and commonly only in the nominative and accusative because they are the only cases in which masculine and neuter forms can be distinguished. But the genitive singular neuter is common as the partitive genitive (101, a). Examples: multī, many men; multōrum, of many men; multae, many women; multārum, of many women; multa, many things; multārum rērum, of many things.

159. ADJECTIVES FOR ADVERBS

Some adjectives are commonly used where the English idiom suggests the use of adverbs, chiefly when they modify the subject or object. Examples: invītus vēnit, lit. he came unwilling, = he came unwillingly or he was unwilling to come; prīmus vēnit, lit. he the first came, = he came first, or he was the first to come.

160. ADJECTIVES WITH PARTITIVE MEANING

Some adjectives mean only a part of an object. The most common of these are, ímus, infīmus, the bottom of; mediūs, the middle of; summus, the top of; prīmus, the first part of; extrēmus, the last part of; reliquus, the rest of. Examples: in colle mediō (I, 24, 3), on the middle of (half way up) the slope; summus mōns (I, 22, 1), the top of the mountain; prīmā noctē (I, 27, 12), in the first part of the night; multō diē, late in the day.

161. COMPARATIVES AND SUPERLATIVES

Comparatives and superlatives of both adjectives and adverbs are usually to be translated by the corresponding English forms; but the comparative is sometimes to be translated by quite, rather, somewhat, or too, the superlative by very. Examples: diūturnīōrem impōnitātem (I, 14, 15), quite long immortality; cupidīus insecūtī (I, 15, 5), following too eagerly; monte Iūrā altissimō (I, 2, 9), by the very high mountain Jura.

a. The superlative is often strengthened by quam, with or without a form of possum. Examples: quam maximum numerum (I, 3, 3), quam maximum potest numerum (I, 7, 4), as great a number as possible, or the greatest possible number.
APPENDIX

162. PERSONAL PRONOUNS

A personal pronoun (51) is rarely used as the subject of a finite verb except for emphasis or contrast. Example: ego maneō, tú abis, I remain, you go.

a. The plural of the first person is more often used for the singular than in English. The plural of the second person is not used for the singular, as is done in English. Example: uti supra dēmōnstrāvimus (II, i, 1), as I (lit. we) have said before.

REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS

163. GENERAL RULE: Reflexive pronouns refer to the subject of the clause or sentence in which they stand.

They correspond to myself, himself, etc., in such sentences as I praise myself, he praises himself. This use of myself, etc., must not be confused with the use in such sentences as I myself praise him, where myself emphasizes I and is in apposition with it. The latter use corresponds to the Latin intensive pronoun (172). The reflexive of the third person has two uses.

164. The Direct Reflexive.

RULE: Sui and suus are used in every kind of sentence or clause to refer to the subject of the clause in which they stand.

Example: eum videō qui sē laudat, I see the man who praises himself.

165. The Indirect Reflexive.

RULE: In a subordinate clause which expresses the thought of the principal subject sui and suus are also used to refer to the principal subject instead of the subject of the clause in which they stand.

This is especially important in indirect discourse (271) where the whole indirect discourse expresses the thought of the speaker, and consequently every pronoun referring to the speaker is regularly some form of sui or suus. Example: Caesar dicit mē sē laudāvisse, Caesar says that I praised him (Caesar).

166. The Reciprocal Expression. The reflexive pronouns are used with inter to express the reciprocal idea, one another, each other. Examples: inter nōs laudāmus, we praise one another or each other; obsidēs uti inter sēsē dent (I, 9, 10), that they give hostages to each other.
APPENDIX

POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS

167. The possessive pronouns (or adjectives) are rarely expressed except for clearness or contrast. Example: Caesar exercitum duxit, Caesar led (his) army.

a. Suus is the adjective of the reflexive pronoun sui, and is used in the same way. See 164 and 165.

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS

168. Hic refers to something near the speaker, and is sometimes called the demonstrative of the first person. Example: hic liber, this book (near me).

169. Iste refers to something near the person spoken to, and is sometimes called the demonstrative of the second person. Example: iste liber, that book (near you). When used of an opponent it often implies contempt.

170. Ille refers to something more remote from the speaker or person spoken to, and is often called the demonstrative of the third person. Example: ille liber, that book (yonder).

a. Ille and hic are often used in the sense of the former, the latter. Hic is usually the latter, as referring to the nearer of two things mentioned; but it may be the former if the former object is more important and therefore nearer in thought.

171. Is is the weakest of the demonstratives and the one most used as the personal pronoun of the third person, or to refer without emphasis to something just mentioned, or as the antecedent of a relative.

a. When is is used substantively it is translated by a personal pronoun; when used as an adjective, by this or that; when used as the antecedent of a relative it is translated in various ways,—the man, a man, such a man, that, etc.

THE INTENSIVE PRONOUN

172. Ipse emphasizes the noun with which it agrees. It is usually translated by self, and is not to be confused with the reflexive pronoun. Examples: ipse Caesar eum laudat, Caesar himself praises him; ipse Caesar se laudat, Caesar himself praises himself.
a. Ipse is often used to strengthen a possessive pronoun. It then stands in the genitive to agree with the genitive implied in the possessive. Examples: meus ipse liber, my own book (the book of me myself); vester ipsorum liber, your own book (the book of you yourselves).

THE RELATIVE PRONOUN

173. RULE: A relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender and number, but its case depends on its construction in its own clause.

If it is used as subject the verb agrees in person with the antecedent. If the relative has two or more antecedents it follows the same rules of agreement as predicate adjectives (157, a, 2). The relative is never omitted. Examples: Caesar, quem laudō, Caesar, whom I praise; ego, qui eum laudō, I, who praise him; Caesar et Cicerō, qui me laudant, Caesar and Cicero, who praise me.

a. Coordinate Relative. It is often necessary to translate a relative by a coordinating conjunction (and, but, etc.) and a personal or demonstrative pronoun. Example: relinquēbatur āna via, quā tre non poterant (I, 9, 1), there was left only one way, and by it they could not go. Latin is fond of letting a relative stand at the beginning of an entirely new sentence, with its antecedent in the preceding sentence. It is then usually best translated by a personal or demonstrative pronoun. Example: qui (I, 15, 5), they.

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS

174. RULE: Quis, anyone, is the indefinite commonly used after si, nisi, nē, and num.

Example: si quis laudat, if anyone praises.

175. RULE: Aliquis (aliquī) is the indefinite commonly used in affirmative sentences to mean some one, some, etc.

Example: aliquis dicat, some one may say.

176. Quispiam has almost exactly the same meaning as aliquis, but is rare. Example: quispiam dicat, some one may say.

177. RULE: Quisquam and tūlus are the indefinites commonly used in negative sentences (except with nē), and in questions implying a negative, to mean any, anyone, etc.

Examples: neque quemquam laudō, nor do I praise anyone; cur quisquam iūdicāret (I, 40, 6), why should anyone suppose?
APPENDIX

178. Nesció quis (nesció qui), originally meaning I know not who, is often used in a sense very much like that of aliquis, but with even more indefiniteness. Example: nesció quis laudat, some one or other praises.

AGREEMENT OF VERB AND SUBJECT

179. RULE: A finite verb agrees with its subject in person and number.

In the compound tenses the participle agrees with the subject in gender. Examples: Caesar laudátus est, Caesar was praised; mulierès laudátæ sunt, the women were praised.

a. But the verb sometimes agrees with the meaning of the subject rather than its grammatical form. Thus a singular collective noun sometimes has a plural verb, and a neuter noun a masculine participle in agreement. Examples: multitūdō vēnérunt, a great number came; duo mīlia occisī sunt, two thousand were killed.

180. If there are two or more subjects, the verb is usually plural. In the compound tenses of the passive the participle follows the rule given for predicate adjectives (157, a, 2). If the subjects differ in person the first person is preferred to the second and the second to the third. Examples: homō et mulier occisī sunt, the man and the woman were killed; ego et tū vénīmus, you and I came.

a. The verb may agree with the nearest subject, especially if the verb stands first or after the first subject. It regularly does so if the subjects are connected by conjunctions meaning or or nor. Example: Caesar vēnit et Labiēnus, Caesar and Labienus came; neque Caesar neque Labiēnus vēnit, neither Caesar nor Labienus came; filia atque fīnus ë fīliis captus est (I, 26, 11), his daughter and one of his sons were taken.

b. If the two or more subjects are thought of as forming a single whole, the verb is singular. Example: Matrona et Sēquana dividit (I, 1, 5), the Marne and Seine separate (they make one boundary line).

THE VOICES

181. The voices have the same meanings and uses as in English. An intransitive verb can not be used in the passive except impersonally. Examples: laudat, he praises; laudātur, he is praised; et crēditur (x15, d) lit. it is believed to him = he is believed.
APPENDIX

THE MODES

182. The Latin verb has three modes,—the indicative, the subjunctive and the imperative. The name mode is applied to them because they indicate the manner in which the action of the verb is spoken of; for example, as a fact, as wished, as willed.

183. The Indicative speaks of the action as a fact, either stating a fact or asking a question about a fact. Examples: laudat, he praises; non laudat, he does not praise; laudatne? does he praise?

184. The Subjunctive has three classes of meanings, some of which may be further subdivided.

   a. The Subjunctive of Desire. Both in independent sentences and in dependent clauses the subjunctive may express will (then called volitive) or wish (then called optative). Examples: laudet, let him praise or may he praise; imperō ut laudet, I command that he praise, i.e., I give the command "let him praise."

   b. The Subjunctive of Contingent Futurity. Both in independent sentences and in dependent clauses the subjunctive may express what would take place under some condition, either expressed or implied, or, very seldom, it may express what may possibly take place. The latter use is the potential. Examples: laudet, he would praise (if there should be reason); is est quī laudet, he is a man who would praise.

   c. The Subjunctive of Fact. Only in dependent clauses the subjunctive may express certainty and be translated like the indicative.

   Example: laudātur cum laudet, he is praised because he praises. Compare laudātur quod laudat, he is praised because he praises.

185. The Imperative is used only in independent sentences. It expresses a command. Example: laudā, praise (thou); dēsīrē (IV, 25, 11). jump down.

OTHER VERBAL FORMS

186. The Infinitive is not, strictly speaking, a mode, but a verbal noun. It is, however, used as a mode in certain kinds of dependent clauses. Example: dicit Caesarem laudārī, he says that Caesar is praised.
187. Verbal Nouns and Adjectives. The gerund and the supine are verbal nouns; the gerundive and the participles are verbal adjectives. None of these can form clauses in Latin, though they are often best translated into English by clauses.

THE NEGATIVES

188. There are two kinds of negatives in Latin.

a. **Rule**: Nōn, not, and neque, and not, nor, are used to negative statements and questions.

   That is, they are used with the indicative, the subjunctive of contingent futurity (184, b), the subjunctive of fact (184, c), and the infinitive. Examples: nōn laudat, he does not praise; nōn laudet, he would not praise; nōnne laudat? does he not praise?

b. **Rule**: Nē, not, and nēve, and not, nor, are used to negative the subjunctive of desire (184, a).

   But nē . . . quidem, not even, is used in statements. Examples: nē laudet, let him not praise, or may he not praise: nē laudat quidem, he does not even praise.

THE TENSES

189. The tense of a verb tells either one or both of two things: (1) the time of the action, whether past, present, or future; and (2) the stage of progress of the action at that time, whether already completed, still going on, or about to take place. For example, the following forms are all past, and yet express different things: laudāvit, he praised, simply puts the action in the past; laudāverat, he had praised, means that the action was already completed in the past time; laudābat, he was praising, means that the action was going on in the past time; and laudātūrus erat, he was going to praise, means that in the past time the action was on the point of taking place. Latin is much more accurate in its use of tenses than English is.

THE TENSES OF THE INDICATIVE

190. The Present regularly puts the action in the present time and corresponds to all the forms of the English present. Example: laudat, he praises (simple), he is praising (progressive), he does praise (emphatic).
a. The historical present speaks of a past fact as if it were present, in order to put it vividly before the mind. It is much more common in Latin than in English, and therefore should usually be translated by a past. Example: oppida sua omnia incendunt (I, 5, 3), they burned (burn) all their towns.

b. With such expressions as iam diū, iam prīdem, for a long time, multōs annōs, for many years, the Latin present is to be translated by the English present perfect. Example: multōs annōs tē moneō, I have been warning you for many years. There are really two ideas, "I have been in the past" and "I still am." English expresses one of them; Latin, like French and German, expresses the other.

c. For the present with dum, etc., see 234, a.

191. The Imperfect puts the action in the past and represents it as going on at that time. See 189. Example: laudābat, he was praising.

a. The imperfect is often used of repeated past action; as laudābat, he used to praise, or he kept praising. It is less often used of attempted past action; as laudābat, he tried to praise.

b. With the expressions mentioned in 190, b, the imperfect is to be translated by the English past perfect. Example: multōs annōs tē monēbam, I had been warning you for many years.

192. The Future puts the action in the future time and corresponds to the English future. See 199. Example: laudābō, I shall or will praise, or be praising.

193. The Perfect has two uses.

I. The present (or definite) perfect corresponds to the English present perfect with have. It represents the action as completed at the present time. Example: laudāvī, I have praised.

a. This perfect is often nearly equivalent to a present. For example, vēni, I have come, is nearly equivalent to I am here. A few perfects are regularly translated by presents; especially nōvī, cognōvī, I know (literally I have found out), and cōnsuēvī, I am accustomed (literally I have become accustomed). Cf. the English, "I've got it," for "I have it."
If. The historical (or indefinite) perfect simply puts the action in the past, without telling anything about the stage of progress (189) at that time. It corresponds to the English past tense. Example: laudāvi, I praised.

194. The Pluperfect describes the action as already completed in the past, or puts it at a time before another past point of time. See 189. Example: laudāveram, I had praised.

a. The pluperfect of the verbs mentioned in 193, I, a, are nearly equivalent to imperfects. Examples: vēneram, I had come, i.e., I was there; nōveram, I knew; conscuēveram, I was accustomed.

195. The Future Perfect represents the action as completed in future time, or as to take place before some future point of time. See 199. Example: laudāverō, I shall or will have praised.

a. The future perfects of the verbs mentioned in 193, I, a, are nearly equivalent to futures. Examples: vēnerō, I shall have come, i.e., I shall be there; nōverō, I shall know; conscuēverō, I shall be accustomed.

196. The Active Periphrastic (75) Tenses represent the action as about to take place in a time future to the time of the tense of sum. Examples: laudātūrus est, he is about to praise; laudātūrus erat, he was about to praise; laudātūrus erit, he will be about to praise.

INDICATIVE TENSES IN NARRATION

197. In telling of past events the indicative tenses used are the historical perfect (or the equivalent historical present), the imperfect, the pluperfect, and occasionally the imperfect periphrastic. The perfect is the narrating tense in which the successive main events of the story are told. The other tenses are the descriptive tenses in which the details which surround the main events are told. See 189.

For example, suppose one wished to begin a story with the following points. "The Helvetii lived in a small country; they planned to leave; Caesar went to Gaul." Told in that way all the verbs would be perfects; but the story is badly told. One would certainly pick out some chief event or events and group the others about them; and whatever events he so picked out would be expressed by the perfect, while the rest would be imperfect and pluperfect. He might begin in this way, "The Helvetii, who lived........, planned......... But Caesar went........." Then planned and went are perfects, each being
thought of as a separate step in the story; but lived is thought of as subordinate detail, telling something that was going on at the time of the main event, planned, and must be imperfect in Latin, though English uses the simple past tense. Or he might prefer to begin in this way, "The Helvetii, who lived........., had planned......... But Caesar went." Then went is thought of as the first main event, and is the only perfect; lived is still imperfect; but had planned is thought of as a subordinate detail, giving something which had happened before the went and which led up to it, and is, therefore, a pluperfect.

198. The chief events, thus expressed by perfects, are usually made the principal, or independent clauses; and the subordinate details, thus expressed in imperfектs and pluperfects, are usually made the subordinate, or dependent clauses. Therefore the following principle is a good one to follow unless there appears a clear reason for violating it:

**Rule:** In a narrative of past events the independent clauses generally use the perfect, the dependent clauses generally use the imperfect and pluperfect.

a. But there are dependent indicative clauses in which this principle does not hold. The following are the most important.

1. After postquam, ubi, etc. (see 237), the perfect or historical present is regularly used. See also 235, a, and 236, a.

2. After dum, while (see 234, a) the present is regularly used.

THE FUTURE AND FUTURE PERFECT

199. Latin is very accurate in the use of the future and future perfect, while English is very inaccurate. In many subordinate clauses English uses the present for the future or the future perfect, while Latin uses the tenses required by the meanings. For an example see 256.

THE TENSES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE

200. The tenses of the subjunctive have two sets of meanings.

a. When the subjunctive has the same meaning as the indicative (184, c), the tenses of the subjunctive mean the same as the corresponding indicative tenses.
b. When the subjunctive has one of its other meanings (184, a, b), the time denoted by the tenses is future to that denoted by the corresponding indicative tenses. Examples: laudet, let him praise, is a command to praise in the future; imperavit ut laudaret, he commanded that he praise, is a past command, to be carried into effect after the time of commanding.

201. The following table shows the meanings of the subjunctive tenses.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Present</td>
<td>present or future</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imperfect</td>
<td>imperfect or future to a past</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perfect</td>
<td>perfect or future perfect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pluperfect</td>
<td>pluperfect or future perfect to a past</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a. Some tenses have developed special meanings in certain constructions. See 221, 226, 254.

b. Any tense of the subjunctive may thus refer to the future. But where the meaning would be doubtful and it is necessary to express the future clearly, the periphrastic tenses are used. So rogō quid faciās regularly means I ask what you are doing, and would not be understood to mean I ask what you will do. Therefore the latter meaning must be expressed by rogō quid factūrus sis.

THE SUBJUNCTIVE TENSES IN DEPENDENCE

202. When a subjunctive clause depends on some other clause, a little knowledge of the real meaning of the English will enable one to use the right tense, just as in the indicative. When the tenses mean the same as those of the indicative they will be used in the same way (197, 198). When they have the future set of meanings, it will be found that a present or perfect is usually required after a tense of present or future meaning, and the imperfect and pluperfect after one of past meaning. For example: I come, or I shall come, that I may praise, laudem; I came that I might praise, laudārem. In the subjunctive the usage is more regular than in the indicative, so that the convenient but not very accurate rule, called the rule of sequence of tenses, can be followed.

RULE: In dependent subjunctive clauses principal tenses follow principal, and historical follow historical.
203. Principal tenses are those which have to do with the present and future, historical are those which have to do with the past. The following table of examples shows which are the principal and which the historical tenses of both indicative and subjunctive.

**Principal Tenses**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>INDICATIVE</th>
<th>SUBJUNCTIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Present</td>
<td>Present</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rogō, I ask</td>
<td>quid faciat,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future</td>
<td>Future</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rogābō, I shall ask</td>
<td>quid fècerit,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present perfect</td>
<td>Present</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rogāvī, I have asked</td>
<td>quid fècerit,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future perfect</td>
<td>Future</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rogāverō, I shall have asked</td>
<td>quid fècisset,</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Historical Tenses**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Imperfect</th>
<th>Pluperfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>rogābām, I was asking</td>
<td>rogāverām, I had asked</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Historical perf.</td>
<td>Historical perf.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rogāvī, I asked</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pluperfect</td>
<td>Pluperfect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>quid fècisset,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>what he had done</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a. Notice that the perfect subjunctive, even when it means past time, is called a principal tense.

204. **Exceptions to Rule of Sequence.** Two special points must be mentioned, not hard to understand if one remembers that this rule tells only how the natural meanings of the tenses make them depend on each other.

a. An exception may occur whenever the meaning of the sentence makes it natural. Still, Latin is not fond of these exceptions, and if exceptional tenses must be used it is better to use an indicative construction instead of a subjunctive, when there is a choice. For example, if the sentence, he marched around because the mountains are high, is to be put into Latin, cum sint would be an exception to sequence and it is better to use the indicative construction quod sunt.

The most common exceptions are in result clauses, where a perfect subjunctive sometimes follows a perfect indicative. Example: temporis tanta fuit exiguitas, ut tempus dèfuerit (II, 21, 9), so short was the time that there was no opportunity.
b. A subjunctive following an historical present may be either principal or historical, for it may either keep up the liveliness of the present or behave as if the perfect had been used. Examples: diem dicunt quâ die convenient (I, 6, 14), they appoint a day on which they are to assemble; omne frumentum combûrunt ut parâtiûres ad pericula subeunda essent (I, 5, 5), they burned all the grain that they might be more ready to undergo danger.

TENSES OF INFINITIVES AND PARTICIPLES

205. RULE: The time denoted by infinitives and participles is relative to the tenses of the verbs on which they depend.

That is, a present infinitive or participle expresses action as going on at the time of the main verb, whether that is present, future, or past; a future expresses action as future to the time of the main verb; and a perfect expresses action as completed at the time of the main verb. The following table gives examples of the infinitive. The tense meanings of the participles are the same.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>infinitive</th>
<th>meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>dicó eum</td>
<td>laudáre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I say he</td>
<td>to be praising</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dicam eum</td>
<td>laudatúrum esse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I shall say he is praising</td>
<td>to be about to praise to have praised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dixi eum</td>
<td>laudávisse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I said that he was praising</td>
<td>will praise</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a. With such perfects as dèbul, licuit, oportuit, potui, Latin correctly uses the present infinitive, though English illogically says ought to have, etc. Example: laudáre potuì lit. I was able to praise, = I could have praised.

b. Some verbs lack the supine stem and therefore have no future active infinitive. The future passive infinitive which is given in the paradigms is rarely used. In both cases the place of the future infinitive is taken by fore (futúrum esse) ut, it will (would) be that, with the present or imperfect subjunctive. Examples: dicit fore ut timeat, lit. he says that it will be that he fears, = he says that he will fear; dixit fore ut laudáretur, lit. he said that it would be that he was praised, = he said that he would be praised.
206. The Indicative is used to state facts. Examples: Caesar vēnit, Caesar came; Caesar nōn veniet, Caesar will not come.

207. The Subjunctive of Contingent Futurity (184, b) is used to state what would take place under some condition. The condition is usually, but not always, expressed. This kind of statement is the conclusion of the conditional sentences in 254 and 257. For the peculiar use of tenses see those paragraphs. In many grammars this use of the subjunctive is called potential. Examples: Caesar veniat, Caesar would come; Caesar nōn vēnisset, Caesar would not have come; velim, I should like.

208. The Potential Subjunctive (184, b) is sometimes used to state what may or can happen. It is very rarely used except where a negative is expressed or implied and in the phrase aliquis dicat, some one may say. In an independent sentence the student should always express may, might, can, could, by such words as possum and licet. Example: nēmō dubitet, but usually nēmō dubitāre potest, no one can doubt.

QUESTIONS

USE OF MODES

209. The indicative, the subjunctive of contingent futurity, and, rarely, the potential subjunctive, are used in questions with precisely the same meanings as in statements (206-208). Examples: quis veniet? who will come? quis veniat? who would come? quis dubitet? who can doubt (implying that no one can)?

210. A Deliberative Question is one that asks for an expression of some one’s will. The answer, if any, is a command. This kind of question is asked by the subjunctive. Example: quid faciam? what shall I do? what am I to do?

a. Under deliberative questions are usually classed those subjunctive questions which ask why one should do something or what one should do. Example: cūr dubitem? why should I doubt?

211. A rhetorical question is one which is used for rhetorical effect and which expects no answer. Any of the above questions may be either rhetorical or real. The rhetorical character of the question has no effect on the mode.
APPENDIX

INTRODUCTORY WORDS

212. Questions which can not be answered by yes or no are introduced in Latin, as in English, by an interrogative pronoun, adjective, or adverb. Examples: quis vēnit? who came? quālis est? what sort of man is he? ubi est? where is he?

213. RULE: Questions which can be answered by yes or no are usually, but not always, introduced by an interrogative particle.

In written English the interrogation point and usually the order of words show that a sentence is a question. The Romans had no interrogation point, and the order of words was free, so that an introductory particle was usually necessary.

a. RULE: When the question asks for information, without suggesting the answer, the enclitic -ne is added to the first word.

The first word is regularly the verb, unless some other word is put first for emphasis. Examples: scrbītne epistulam? is he writing a letter? epistulamne scrbīt? is it a letter that he is writing?

b. RULE: When the form of the question suggests the answer yes, the interrogative particle is nōnne.

Example: nōnne epistulam scrbīt? is he not writing a letter?

c. RULE: When the form of the question suggests the answer no, the interrogative particle is num.

Example: num epistulam scrbīt? he is not writing a letter, is he?

DOUBLE QUESTIONS

214. Double questions ask which of two or more possibilities is true. Utrum may stand at the beginning not to be translated, but as a mere warning that a double question is to follow; or -ne may be added to the first word; or no introductory word may be used, as always in English. The or is expressed by an; or not is annōn. Examples: utrum pugnāvit an fūgit? pugnāvitne an fūgit? pugnāvit an fūgit? did he fight or run away? pugnāvit annōn? did he fight or not?

ANSWERS

215. Latin has no words answering exactly to yes and no. It often replies by repeating the verb as a statement; or it may use ita, sānē, etc., for yes, nōn, minimē, etc., for no. Example: epistulamne scrbīt? scrbīt, yes; nōn scrbīt, no.
COMMANDS AND PROHIBITIONS

216. These are expressions of will, for which the appropriate modes are the subjunctive of desire (184, a) and the imperative (185). The negative with the subjunctive is nē (188, b).

217. **RULE**: An Exhortation is a command or prohibition in the first person plural of the present subjunctive.

Examples: laudēnus, let us praise; nē eāmus, let us not go.

218. **RULE**: A Command in the second person is expressed by the imperative.

The future imperative is seldom used unless the verb used has no present. Examples: venite, come (ye); mementō, remember.

219. **RULE**: A Prohibition (Negative Command) in the second person is usually expressed by nōllī, nōlitē, be unwilling, and the present infinitive.

A prohibition is less often expressed by cavē (with or without nē), take care, and the present subjunctive; or by nē and the perfect subjunctive. Examples: nōllī dubitāre, do not doubt; less often cavē (nē) dubitēs, or nē dubitāveris.

220. **RULE**: A Command or Prohibition in the third person is regularly expressed by the third person of the present subjunctive.

Examples: eat, let him go; nē veniant, let them not come.

WISHES

221. Wishes are regularly expressed by the subjunctive of desire (184, a) and are usually introduced by utinam (not to be translated).

a. **RULE**: A wish for something in the future is expressed by the present subjunctive, with or without utinam.

Example: (utinam) adsit, may he be here!

b. **RULE**: A wish for something at the present time is expressed by the imperfect subjunctive with utinam.

c. **RULE**: A wish for something in the past is expressed by the plus-perfect subjunctive with utinam.

Both of these express a wish, or rather a regret, for something unattainable. Examples: utinam adesse, would that he were here! utinam affuisset, would that he had been here!
COORDINATE CLAUSES

222. A coordinate clause is connected with another clause by means of a coordinating conjunction. The coordinating conjunctions are such as mean and, but, or, for, and the like. They are used exactly as in English.

DEPENDENT CLAUSES

223. Dependent clauses are those which are attached to other clauses by a relative or interrogative pronoun or adverb, or by a subordinating conjunction. Subordinating conjunctions are such as mean if, because, although, when, after, before, in order that, so that, and the like.

Neither the relatives nor any of the conjunctions have in themselves any effect on the mode of the verb in the dependent clause; but that clause may contain the indicative or the subjunctive with any of its meanings (184, a-c).

Dependent clauses are classified according to their meaning and use in the following groups: purpose clauses (225), result clauses (226), substantive clauses of desire (substantive purpose) (228), substantive clauses of result or fact (229), relative clauses of characteristic (230), determining relative clauses (231), parenthetical relative clauses (232), temporal clauses (233-242), causal clauses (243-245), adversative (concessive) clauses (246, 247), substantive quod clauses (248), conditional clauses (249-259), clauses of proviso (260), clauses of comparison (261), indirect questions (262-264), indirect discourse (265-273), attracted clauses (274), infinitive clauses (277-280).

PURPOSE AND RESULT CLAUSES

224. The subjunctive of desire (184, a) is used in purpose clauses, the subjunctive of fact (184, c) in result clauses. This explains the difference in negatives (188), and on the other hand the presence of a negative determines the kind of clause. In the ut clauses, or when an English clause is to be translated into Latin, the only test is the meaning: if any feeling of will or intention is implied, the clause is one of purpose; otherwise, of result.

PURPOSE CLAUSES

225. RULE: Purpose may be expressed by the subjunctive with ut, ne, quod, or a relative.
The infinitive, common in English, is never to be used. For the so-called substantive clause of purpose, see 228. The connecting words are used as follows:

a. In affirmative clauses:

1. If the principal clause contains a noun which can conveniently be used as an antecedent, a relative pronoun or adverb is commonly used. Example: hominēs misit qui vidērent, he sent men to see, lit. who were to see.

2. If the purpose clause contains an adjective or adverb in the comparative degree, quō is used. Example: vēnit quō facilius vidēret, he came that he might see more easily, lit. by which the more easily he might see.

3. Otherwise, and most commonly, the conjunction ut is used. Example: vēnit ut vidēret, he came to see, that he might see, or in order to see; venit ut videat, he comes to see.

b. In negative clauses the conjunction nē is always used. Example: hoc fēcit nē quis (not ut nēmō) vidēret, he did this that no one might see, or to keep anyone from seeing.

RESULT CLAUSES

226. RULE: Result is expressed by the subjunctive with ut or ut nōn.

For the so-called relative clause of result see 230, a. For the substantive clause of result see 229. Examples: mōns impendēbat, ut perpeuaet prohibēre possent (I, 6, 4), a mountain overhung, so that a very few could easily check; incredibilī lēnitāte, ita ut iūdicārī nōn possit (I, 12, 2), of extraordinary sluggishness, so that it can not be determined; tam fortis est ut pugnet, he is so brave that he would fight, or as to fight, or that he fights.

SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF DESIRE (PURPOSE) AND OF RESULT

227. These clauses differ from clauses of purpose and result in that they are used like nouns, either as the object of a transitive verb, or as the subject of the passive, or in apposition with a noun or neuter pronoun.

They are also called complementary clauses, because they serve to complement (complete) the meaning of such expressions as I command, I hinder, the result is.
There is the same difference between substantive clauses of desire (purpose) and substantive clauses of result as between purpose clauses and result clauses, and they are to be distinguished in the same way (224).

**SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF DESIRE (PURPOSE)**

228. These clauses all consist of the subjunctive of desire (184, a) introduced by a conjunction. As the subjunctive of desire is divided into the volitive (expressing will) and the optative (expressing wish), some grammars divide these clauses into substantive volitive clauses and substantive optative clauses. The older name, substantive purpose clauses, is not good, because they do not really express purpose. For example: impero ut eam, I command you to go, does not mean I command in order that you may go, but rather I give the command "go".

a. **RULE:** Most verbs expressing any form of desire, or of attempt to carry out a desire, may take the subjunctive with ut or nē.

Such are verbs meaning accomplish (when the subject is a conscious agent), command, permit, persuade, request, resolve, strive, urge, wish, and the like.

But after most of these verbs the infinitive may be used instead, and it always is used after iubeo, command, conor, attempt, patior, simo, permit. See 280, a. Ut is often omitted after verbs of asking, commanding, and wishing, especially after volo. The subjunctive, usually without ut, is often used with oportet, it is right, and licet, it is permitted; but see 276. Examples: civitatis persuasit ut exirent (I, 2, 3), he persuaded the citizens to leave; civitatis persuasit nē exirent, he persuaded the citizens not to leave; oportet eam, he ought to go; eam licet eam, he may go; obsides uti dent perficit (I, 9, 11), he causes them to give hostages.

b. **RULE:** Verbs expressing fear take the subjunctive with nē meaning that, or ut meaning that not.

But nē non, that not, is often used instead of ut. Examples: timeo nē veniat, I fear that he will come (originally timeo: nē veniat, I am afraid: let him, or may he, not come); timeo ut (or nē non) veniat, I fear that he will not come (originally timeo: veniat, I am afraid: let him or may he, come; ut or nē non was then used as the opposite of nē).

c. **RULE:** Verbs meaning avoid, hinder, prevent, and refuse may take the subjunctive with nē, quin, or quominus.
APPENDIX

But the infinitive may be used instead. Nē is used after an affirmative principal clause, quīn after a negative, quōminus after either positive or negative. Examples: eum impediō nē, or quōminus, veniat, I hinder him from coming; eum nōn impediō quīn, or quōminus, veniat, I do not hinder him from coming; neque recusāturōs quōminus esset (I, 31, 24), and that they would not refuse to be.

SUBSTANTIVE UT CLAUSES OF RESULT OR FACT

229. These clauses are all usually called substantive result clauses, but most of them are better called ut clauses of fact, since they do not express result. They usually contain the subjunctive of fact (184, c) and are to be translated by the indicative.

a. RULE: Verbs meaning accomplish take the subjunctive with ut or ut nōn when the subject is not a conscious agent.

Compare 228, a. Example: montēs efficiunt ut nōn exire possint, the mountains make (that they can not) it impossible for them to leave.

b. RULE: Impersonal verbs meaning the result is, it happens, it remains, there is added, and the like, may take the subjunctive with ut or ut nōn.

The clause is the subject of the verb. But with some of these verbs an indicative quod clause of fact may be used with the same meaning. See 248. Example: his rēbus fiēbat ut vagārentur (I, 2, 11), the result was that they wandered.

c. RULE: Such phrases as mōs est, consuētūdō est (it is the custom), may take the subjunctive with ut or ut nōn.

The clause is a predicate nominative. But a substantive clause of desire (with ut or nē) may be used with such phrases, especially with iūs est, lex est. Example: mōs est ut ex equis pugnent, it is their custom to fight on horseback.

d. RULE: Negatived verbs and phrases meaning doubt take the subjunctive with quīn.

After an affirmative expression of doubting an indirect question with num, an, or rē is used, as whether is in English. Dubitō with the infinitive means hesitate. Example: nōn est dubium quīn hoc fēcerit, there is no doubt that he did this.
APPENDIX

RELATIVE CLAUSES OF CHARACTERISTIC

230. GENERAL RULE: The subjunctive is used in certain kinds of relative clauses which describe an indefinite antecedent.

The subjunctive is not used in all relative clauses which describe an antecedent. If the antecedent is definite, the clause is parenthetical (232). If the clause is used chiefly to tell who or what the antecedent is, it is a determining clause (231). If the clause can be turned into a condition without changing the meaning of the sentence, it is a conditional clause (250). Clauses of characteristic are of the following kinds.

a. RULE: The subjunctive is used in relative clauses which are equivalent in meaning to ut clauses of result.

These clauses complete the meaning of an expressed or implied antecedent like is = (such) a man (171, a), eos modi, such, or an adjective modified by tam. Certain grammars call some of these clauses relative result clauses. Usually the subjunctive is to be translated as if it were indicative.

Examples: is est qui pugnet, he is a man who fights; secutae sunt tempestates quae nostris in castris continerent (IV, 34, 8), storms followed which kept our men in camp (= such storms ......that they kept); tam improbus qui non fataitur (Cic. Cat. I, 5), so villainous as not to admit.

b. RULE: The subjunctive is used in relative clauses which complete statements and questions of existence and non-existence.

So after est qui, there is a man who; non or nemo or nullus est qui, there is no one who; quis est qui? who is there who? solus or unus est qui he is the only man who; etc. Usually the subjunctive is to be translated as if it were indicative.

Examples: nulli sunt qui putent, there are none who think; erant omnino itinera duo quibus exire possent (I, 6, 1), there were only two ways by which they could leave.

c. In some relative clauses of characteristic the subjunctive is to be translated by can, could, or by should, ought. Examples: unum (iter) vix qua singull carri ducerentur (I, 6, 4), one road by which wagons could be moved; neque commissum intellexeret quare timere (I, 14, 6), he did not know that anything had been done on account of which he should be afraid.
DETERMINING RELATIVE CLAUSES

231. RULE: Relative clauses which are used for the purpose of telling what person or thing is meant by an indefinite antecedent, employ the indicative.

Example: ad eam partem Óceaní quam est ad Hispâniâm (I, 1, 21), to that part of the ocean which is near Spain.

PARENTHEtical RELATIVE CLAUSES

232. RULE: A relative clause for which a parenthetical statement may be substituted usually employs the indicative.

The antecedent of a parenthetical clause must always be definite, so that the relative clause may be entirely removed without destroying the meaning of the rest of the sentence. When the antecedent is indefinite the clause is either characterizing (230), determining (231), or conditional (250). Example: Dumnorígi, qui principátum obtínēbat, persuádet (I, 3, 14), he persuaded Dumnoriz, who held the chief power; the same meaning could be expressed by Dumnorígi (is principátum obtínēbat) persuádet.

TEMPORAL CLAUSES

233. There are many conjunctions denoting time relations. The most common is cum which must be treated by itself, but the others may be classified according to their meanings.

While, as long as

234. Conjunctions with these meanings show that one act was going on at the same time as another. Cum with the imperfect subjunctive does the same.

a. RULE: Dum meaning while (i.e., at some time during the time that) is used with the present indicative, even in speaking of past time.

See 198, a, 2. Example: dum haec geruntur, Caesari núntiatum est (I, 46, 1), while these things were going on, it was reported to Caesar.

b. RULE: Dum, dònc, quoad, and quam dul, as long as, while (i.e., during the entire time that) are used with the indicative, which is usually in the same tense as the main verb.

Example: quoad potuit, restitit (IV, 12, 16), he resisted as long as he could.
Until

235. Conjunctions meaning until show that the action of the principal clause lasted up to that of the subordinate clause. Sometimes the actor in the principal clause foresees the second act and intends to bring it about, or prepares for it, and sometimes he does not. This is the basis for the distinction in the use of modes.

a. **RULE:** Dum, dō nec, and quoad meaning until are used with the indicative when the subordinate act is not represented as foreseen.

The perfect is regularly used for past time. Example: Gallī fuērunt liberi dum Caesar vēnit, the Gauls were free until Caesar came.

b. **RULE:** Dum, dō nec, and quoad meaning until are used with the subjunctive when the subordinate act is represented as foreseen.

Examples: Gallī expectāvērunt dum Caesar venīret, the Gauls waited until Caesar should come, or for Caesar to come, or until Caesar came.

Before

236. Conjunctions meaning before also represent the action of the subordinate clause as subsequent to that of the principal clause, and the principle on which the choice of modes is based is the same as that given in 235.

a. **RULE:** Priusquam and antequam are used with the indicative when the subordinate act is not represented as foreseen.

The perfect is regularly used for past time. Example: Gallī inter sē pugnāvērunt priusquam Caesar vēnit, the Gauls fought with one another before Caesar came.

b. **RULE:** Priusquam and antequam are used with the subjunctive when the subordinate act is represented as foreseen.

Example: Gallī magnās cópiās comparāre cōnāti sunt priusquam Caesar venīret, the Gauls tried to prepare large forces before Caesar should arrive, or arrived, or in view of Caesar’s arrival.

c. These conjunctions are often written as two words, the prius or ante standing in the principal clause, and the quam at the beginning of the subordinate clause. Translate as if the complete word stood where quam does. Example: Gallī prius inter sē pugnāvērunt quam Caesar vēnit, translated as in a.
After

237. **RULE:** Postquam, after, ut, ubi, *when* (after, not while), simulac, *cum primum*, as soon as (immediately after), are used with the indicative, generally the perfect or the historical present.

Example: *ubi certioraes facti sunt, legatos mittunt* (I, 7, 6) *when they were informed of it they sent envoys.*

**Cum**

238. **Cum** has three chief uses:—

*temporal, when, after;*

*causal, since, because;*

*adversative (concessive), although.*

It is in reality an unddeclined relative, whose antecedent is something like *at the time or at a time,* sometimes expressed, more often only implied. The use of modes with **cum** is much the same as with the declined relative (230-232, 245, 247, 250).

239. **Causal and Adversative Cum.**

**RULE:** *Cum* meaning *since or although* is used with all tenses of the subjunctive.

Compare the causal relative (245) and the adversative relative (247).

Examples: *quae cum ita sint, perge* (Cic. Cat. I, 10), *since this is so, go on; his cum persuadere non possent, legatos mittunt* (I, 9, 2), *since they could not persuade them, they sent envoys; cum ad vesperum pugnatum sit* (I, 26, 4), *although they fought till evening.*

240. **Temporal cum.** Inaccurate but convenient rules are:—

**RULE:** *Cum* meaning *when is always used with the indicative when the principal verb is present or future.*

**RULE:** *Cum* meaning *when is generally followed by the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive when the principal verb is past.*

See examples under 241 and 242, which give more accurate rules for the same clauses.

241. **Temporal Cum with the Indicative.**

a. **Clauses of Date.**
RULE: Cum meaning when is followed by the indicative when the clause merely states the action of the principal clause.

These clauses are in reality determining clauses (231), and are especially common when an antecedent like tum or eō tempore is expressed in the principal clause. But a subjunctive is often found where an indicative might be expected. Examples: tum cum ex urbe Catilinam sécīebam (Cic. Cat. III, 3), at the time when I was trying to drive Catiline from the city; cum Caesar in Galliam vēnit, principēs erant Haeduī (VI, xii, 1), at the time when Caesar came to Gaul the Haeduī were the leaders.

b. Clauses of Repeated Action.

RULE: Cum meaning whenever is usually followed by the indicative.

These clauses correspond exactly to conditional relative clauses (150). It is necessary only that whenever be a possible translation of cum; when is usually a better translation. For the occasional subjunctive in such clauses see 242, b.

Example: haec cum dēfixerat, contrāria duo statuēbat (IV, xii, 10), when he had set them firmly (in each of several cases) he put two others opposite.

c. Inverted Cum Clauses.

RULE: Cum meaning when is followed by the indicative when the principal action is stated in the cum clause.

In the most common type of cum clauses (242, a) the principal action is stated in the principal clause, and the cum clause describes the situation under which it happened. In the inverted clause this relation is reversed.

Example: vīx agmen prōcesserat, cum Gallī cohortēs (sunt) inter sē (VI, viii, 1), hardly had the line advanced, when the Gauls encouraged one another (for cum . . . . prōcessisset . . . . cohortēs sunt, when the line had advanced the Gauls encouraged, etc.).

242. Temporal Cum with the Subjunctive.

a. Situation and Narrative Clauses.

RULE: Cum meaning when is followed by the subjunctive when the clause describes the situation under which the principal action took place.
**RULE:** Cum meaning when is followed by the subjunctive when the clause states a new point in the story. *(Unless the clause is inverted, 341, c.)*

These rules are given together because most subjunctive clauses are both situation and narrative clauses. Sometimes, however, one rule seems to apply better than the other. The situation clause corresponds to the relative clause of characteristic (230). Examples: *cum esset Caesar in citeriore Gallia, crebris ad cum rūmōres afferēbantur* (II, 1, 1), *when Caesar was in Cisalpine Gaul, frequent rumors came to him* (mainly situation, for the fact that Caesar was in Cisalpine Gaul has been stated before, so that it is no new point in the story); *cum civitās ista suum exsequī cōnārētur, Orgetorix mortuus est* (I, 4, 2), *while the state was trying to enforce its laws, Orgetorix died* (both situation and narrative, for the fact that the state tried to enforce its laws is told only in this cum clause).

b. Clauses of Repeated Action.

**RULE:** Cum meaning whenever is sometimes followed by the subjunctive.

Compare 241, b. Example: *cum ferrum sē inflexisset, neque svellevere poterant* (I, 25, 7), *when the iron had bent (in each of many cases), they could neither draw it out, etc.*

**CAUSAL CLAUSES**

243. Dependent causal clauses are introduced by the conjunctions *cum, quod, quia, quoniam,* and *quando,* or by the relative. The conjunctions *nam, enim, etenim, for,* introduce coordinate clauses.

244. **RULE:** Quod, quia, quoniam, and quando, because, since, are used with the indicative unless the reason is quoted.

When the writer wishes to imply because *(as he said), (as he thought), (as I said), (as I thought),* the subjunctive is used. See 273. Examples: *(with the indicative) reliquās Gallōs praeceēdunt, quod contendunt* (I, 1, 11), *they surpass the other Gauls because they fight;* *(with the subjunctive) quod sit dēstitūtus queritur* (I, 16, 18), *he complained because (as he said) he had been deserted.*

245. **RULE:** Cum, since, because, and often quia, since he, etc., are used with the subjunctive.
But the indicative is often used with qui, where the causal idea is perfectly clear. If praeestim, especially, stands in a subjunctive qui or cum clause, the clause is probably causal. Examples: (with the subjunctive) iii autem, qui omnia praeclara sentirent, negotium suscepérunt (Cic. Cat. III, 5), and they, since they had none but patriotic thoughts, undertook the matter; (with the indicative) fuit militum virtus laudanda, qui adaequarunt (V, 8, 12), the energy of the soldiers deserved praise, who (= since they) kept up with, etc. For example with cum, see 239.

ADVERSA TIVE (CONCESSIVE) CLAUSES

246. RULE: Quamquam, although, and et al, tamet al, even if, although, are used with the indicative.

Example: et al nöndum eorum consilia cognoverant, tamen suspicabantur (IV, 31, 1), although he did not yet know their plans, nevertheless he suspected. But quamquam sometimes introduces an independent sentence, and is then best translated by and yet.

247. RULE: Cum, although, and less commonly quamvis (in Cicero), however much, however, although, qui, although he, etc., ut, although, are used with the subjunctive.

Examples: (for cum see 239) quamvis senex sit, fortis est, however old he may be, he is brave; ut omnia contra opinionem acciderent (Caes. III, 9, 17), though everything should turn out contrary to their expectations. But the indicative is sometimes used with qui when the adversative idea is clear.

SUBSTANTIVE QUOD CLAUSES

248. RULE: Substantive clauses with quod, that, employ the indicative.

This clause is most commonly used as the appositive of a neuter pronoun. Example: illa prastered, quod Maelium occidit (Cic. Cat. I, 3), I pass over this, that he slew Maelius.

a. Sometimes the quod clause, standing at the beginning of its sentence, is used in the sense of as to the fact that, whereas. Example: quod anum pagum adortus es, noli ob eam rem despicer e (compare I, 13, 12), as to your having attacked one canton, do not despise us on that account.
APPENDIX

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

249. A conditional sentence has two essential clauses, a condition and a conclusion. The condition is the dependent clause, and is so called because it states the condition on which the truth of the principal clause depends; the conclusion is the principal clause. Example: *if he comes* (condition) *I shall see him* (conclusion).

CONNECTIVES IN CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

250. The connectives are the conjunctions *si, if, si nōn, if not, nisi, if not or unless, sin, but if,* and relative pronouns and adverbs used in a conditional sense.

Whenever a relative has for its antecedent, either expressed or implied, a word like *anyone, everyone, always, everywhere* (any word that includes all of a class of objects), it is a conditional relative, and the clause is a condition. For example, *anyone who thinks will see,* means *if anyone thinks he will see; whenever I saw him he used to say,* means *if at any time I saw him he used to say.* Compare this use of the relative with those given in 230-232.

CLASSES OF CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

251. There are four classes of conditional sentences, two for those dealing with present or past time, two for those dealing with future time:

a. Undetermined Present or Past (253). *si pugnat, vincit, if he fights he conquers; si pugnāvit, vicit, if he fought he conquered.*

b. Present or Past Contrary to Fact (254). *si pugnāret, vinceret, if he were fighting he would be conquering; si pugnāvisset, vicisset, if he had fought he would have conquered.*

c. More Vivid (Confident) Future (256). *si pugnābit, vincet, if he fights (shall fight) he will conquer.*

d. Less Vivid (Confident) Future (257). *si pugnet, vincat, if he should fight he would conquer.*

A. Present or Past

252. In present or past time a conditional sentence may either express no opinion as the truth or falsity of a statement, simply saying
that one thing is true if another is; or it may imply that a condition is not fulfilled, and that in consequence the conclusion is not fulfilled. There is no form of condition which affirms the truth of a statement. The speaker or hearer may know it to be true, but the sentence does not say so.

253. Undetermined Present or Past. RULE: A present or past conditional sentence whose form affirms nothing as to its fulfillment employs the present or past tenses of the indicative.

Examples: si fortis est cum laudā, if he is brave I praise him; qui fortis est prō patriā pugnât, whoever is brave fights for his country; nisi prō patriā pugnāvit nôn fortis fuit, unless he fought for his country he was not brave.

254. Present or Past Contrary to Fact. RULE: A present or past conditional sentence whose form implies that the condition is not or was not fulfilled employs the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive.

The imperfect subjunctive is used to express present time, the pluperfect to express past time. Examples: si fortis esset cum laudārem, if he were brave I should praise, or be praising, him (implying but he is not, and I do not); nisi prō patriā pugnāvisset cum nōn laudāvissem, unless he had (if he had not) fought for his country I should not have praised him (implying but he did, and I do; the contrary of the negative supposition); si pugnāvisset cum laudārem, if he had fought I should praise, or be praising, him (implying but he did not, and I do not; notice the change of tense).

a. When the conclusion of such conditions contains a verb meaning could or ought, or such expressions as it would be hard, or just, the verb of the conclusion is usually in the indicative, the imperfect for present time, the perfect or pluperfect for past time. The condition requires the subjunctive, like any other condition contrary to fact.

This is because the conclusion is not usually really contrary to fact, though the English idiom makes it seem so. When the conclusion is really contrary to fact, the subjunctive is used. Examples: si fortis esset pugnāre poterat, if he were brave he could fight (he has the power in any case; hence the indicative); si fortis fuisse pugnāre débuit or débuerat, if he had been brave he ought to have fought (the duty rested upon him in any case; hence the indicative).
B. Future

255. There are two forms of future conditions, one expressing less confidence in the fulfillment of the condition than the other. There is no form to express nonfulfillment, since one can not be sure of the nonfulfillment of a future condition.

256. Mere Vivid (Confident) Future. RULE: A future conditional sentence whose translation contains shall or will employs the future or future perfect indicative.

The English commonly uses the present with a future meaning in the condition. If I see him I shall tell him, means if I shall see him I shall tell him, and the Latin is precise in using the future. Moreover, if the condition must be fulfilled before the conclusion can take place, the Latin uses the future perfect, while the English commonly uses the present. If he arrives first he will tell him, means if he shall have arrived first, and the Latin is precise in using the future perfect. Examples: si pugnabit eum laudabit, if he fights or is fighting (shall fight or shall be fighting) I shall praise him; qui pugnaverit laudabitur, whoever fights or has fought (shall have fought) will be praised.

257. Less Vivid (Confident) Future. RULE: A future conditional sentence whose translation contains should or would employs the present or perfect subjunctive.

The difference between the present and perfect is the same as that between the future and future perfect indicative in 256. Examples: si pugnet vincat, if he should fight, or were to fight, he would conquer; qui pugnet laudetur, whoever should fight, or should be fighting, would be praised; si non pugnaverit eum non laudem, if he should not fight, or should not have fought, I should not praise him.

MIXED CONDITIONS

258. In Latin, as in English, the condition and the conclusion are usually of the same form. But sometimes, in both languages, one may wish to use a condition of one form, a conclusion of another. Example: si veniam hic adsumus, if he should come we are here.

CONDITION OMITTED OR IMPLIED

259. Instead of being expressed by a clause as in the examples given above, the condition may be implied in a phrase or even in a single
word. Sometimes it is omitted altogether, but is supplied in thought. Examples: damnum poneam sequi oportebat (I, 4, 3), (if) condemned, it was necessary that punishment be inflicted on him; dicit, he would say (if he should be asked); velim, I should like. The last two are simply the independent subjunctive of contingent futurity (207).

CLAUSES OF PROVISO

260. RULE: Dum, modo, and dummodo in the sense of if only, provided that, are used with the subjunctive.

Notice that although these seem like conditions the construction is not the same, for the subjunctive is always used, and the negative is often nē. This is because the construction originally meant only let (him come: I will, etc), and the mode is the subjunctive of desire (184, a). Examples: magnō mē metā lēberābis dummodo mārus intersit (Cic. Cat. I, 10), you will rid me of much fear if only there be (only let there be) a wall between us; modo nē (or nōn) discēdat eum vidēbō, if only he do not leave I shall see him.

CLAUSES OF COMPARISON

261. RULE: The subjunctive is used with ac si, quam si, quasi ut si, tamquam, tamquam si, velut, velut si, as if, just as if.

The tenses follow the rule of sequence although the English translation might lead one to expect always the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive. Examples: currit quasi timeat, he runs as if he were afraid; cucurrit quasi timēret, he ran as if he were afraid.

INDIRECT QUOTATION

A. INDIRECT QUESTIONS

262. GENERAL RULE: The subjunctive is employed in all indirect questions.

An indirect question is a substantive clause introduced by an interrogative word. A direct question may be quoted in the exact words in which it was asked, as he asked "where are you going?"; or it may be quoted indirectly; that is, with such changes as make it a dependent clause, as he asked where I (or he) was going. In the latter form it is an indirect question.

263. RULE: Subjunctive questions (308, 310) retain the subjunctive in the indirect form.
APPENDIX

The modal meaning is unchanged. Examples: (direct) quis veniat? who would come? (indirect) rogō quis veniat, I ask who would come; (direct) quid faciam? what am I to do? (indirect) rogāvi quid facerem, I asked what I was to do.

284. RULE: All indicative questions change to the subjunctive in the indirect form.

a. When the direct question is introduced by an interrogative pronoun, adjective, or adverb (212), the same word serves to introduce the indirect form. Examples: (direct) quis vēnit? who came? (indirect) rogō quis vēnerit, I ask who came; (direct) ubi est? where is he? (indirect) mihi dīxit ubi esset, he told me where he was.

b. When the direct question can be answered by yes or no (213) the indirect form is introduced by num or -ne, whether (no difference in meaning). Sī is also used in the sense of to see whether or whether. Examples: (direct) venitne? is he coming? (indirect) rogō num veniat, or rogō veniātne, I ask whether he is coming; exspectāvit sī venirent, he waited to see whether they would come.

c. Indirect double questions are introduced by the same particles as direct double questions (214), but or not is expressed by necne, instead of annōn. Examples: rogāvi utrum pugnāvisset, an fugisset, I asked whether he had fought or run away; rogāvi utrum pugnāvisset necne, I asked whether he had fought or not.

B. INDIRECT DISCOURSE

285. Direct discourse repeats the exact words of a remark or a thought. Example: he said, "the soldiers are brave." Indirect discourse repeats a remark or thought with such changes in the words as to make of it a dependent construction. Example: he said that the soldiers were brave.

Indirect discourse may quote a long speech consisting of separate sentences, and periods may be used between these sentences; but, none the less, each sentence is to be thought of as depending on a verb of saying or thinking, which may be either expressed or implied at the beginning. When one speaks of a principal clause in indirect discourse one means a clause that was principal in the direct form.
APPENDIX

Principal Clauses

266. Declarative Sentences. RULE: Every principal clause containing a statement requires the infinitive with subject accusative in indirect discourse (370).

But the subject is not always expressed. Example: miles est fortis, the soldier is brave, becomes dixit militem esse fortetm, he said that the soldier was brave.

a. For the meanings of the infinitive tenses see 205. It follows from the statements there made that the present infinitive must be used for an original present indicative, the future for the future indicative, and the perfect for the imperfect, perfect, and pluperfect indicative.

267. Imperative Sentences. RULE: Every sentence, containing a command or prohibition requires the subjunctive in indirect discourse.

This is a use of the subjunctive of desire; the negative is nē. Examples: ad Id. Apr. revertimini, return about the thirteenth of April, becomes respondit:....ad Id. Apr. reverterentur (I, 7, 19), he replied..... (that) they should return, etc.; is ita ēgit:....nē....dēspiceret (I, 13, 14), he should not despise (from an original nōlī dēspicere (219), do not despise).

268. Interrogative Sentences. I. RULE: An indicative question (209), if real (211), changes to the subjunctive in indirect discourse.

Example: respondit:....quid sibi vellet (I, 44, 24), what did he want (for an original quid tibi vis, what do you want?)?

II. RULE. An indicative question (209), if rhetorical (211), changes to the infinitive in indirect discourse.

This is because a rhetorical question is equivalent to a declarative sentence, which would require the infinitive (266) Example: respondit:....num memoriam dēpōnere posse (I, 14, 8), could he forget (for an original I can not forget [can If])?

III. RULE. A subjunctive question (209, 210), whether real or rhetorical, retains the subjunctive in indirect discourse.

Example: incisavit:....cūr quisquam ēdīcāret (I, 40, 6), why should anyone suppose (for an original ēdīcet. See 210, a)
APPENDIX

269. Subordinate Clauses. RULE: Every subordinate indicative or subjunctive clause of the direct form requires the subjunctive in indirect discourse.

Infinitives remain unchanged. Example: incusavit:...ex quo iudicari posse quantum habaret in se bona constantia, propter quod...superasset (I, 40, 17), from which it could be seen what an advantage courage had, since they had conquered (for original iudicari, potest, habeat, superavit, tis).

a. But a coordinate relative clause (173, a), being equivalent to a clause connected by et, or some other coordinating conjunction, sometimes has the infinitive in indirect discourse. See example under 269: since quo connects with the preceding sentence posse might have been a subjunctive.

Tenses of the Subjunctive

270. The tenses of the subjunctive regularly follow the rule of sequence, taking their time from the verb of saying or thinking.

a. Representatio. But after a past verb of saying or thinking the person who quotes very often drops the secondary sequence and uses the tenses of the original speaker, for the sake of vividness. It is best to use past tenses in translating. Example: respondit:...cum ea ita sint...sed paece esse facturus (I, 14, 16), he replied...that although these things were so he would make peace.

b. After a perfect infinitive the secondary sequence must be used even if the infinitive depends on a primary verb of saying or thinking; for the perfect infinitive is past, even though it depends on a present. Example: dicit Caesarem laudatum esse quod fortis esset, he says that Caesar was praised because he was brave.

c. In changing from the direct form to a subjunctive of the indirect the following rule is helpful: keep the stem of the original and follow the sequence. So for example a present or future indicative becomes present subjunctive after dicit, imperfect after dixit, in either case retaining the present stem; a perfect or future perfect indicative becomes perfect subjunctive after dicit, pluperfect after dixit, in either case retaining the perfect stem.

Other Changes

271. If a pronoun of the first person changes to one of the third person it must be to some form of sui or suus (rarely of ipse). See 165.
All other changes of person or pronouns are the same as in English. Example: hunc militem laudō, I praise this soldier, may become dicō mē hunc militem laudāre, I say that I praise this soldier, or dicit sē illum militem laudāre, he says that he praises that soldier. Adverbs will be changed in the same way, now to then, here to there, etc. Vocatives will become nominatives or disappear.

Conditions in Indirect Discourse

272. I. The condition, since it is the dependent clause, must have its verb in the subjunctive. The tense follows the rule of sequence except that the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive of conditions contrary to fact never change, even after a primary tense.

II. The conclusion, since it is the principal clause, must have its verb in the infinitive. Indicative tenses change to infinitive tenses according to 266, a. The present and perfect subjunctive of less vivid (confident) future conclusions become the future infinitive, in -ārus esse. The imperfect and pluperfect of conclusions contrary to fact become an infinitive not elsewhere used, in -ārus fuisse.

Examples are needed for only the conditions contrary to fact, since all others follow the regular rules of sequence and indirect discourse. Si pugnāret eum laudārem, if he were fighting I should praise him, becomes, after either dicit or dixit, si pugnāret sē eum laudātūrum fuisse; si pugnāvisset eum laudāvissem, if he had fought I should have praised him, becomes, after either dicit or dixit, si pugnāvisset sē eum laudātūrum fuisse.

C. IMPLIED INDIRECT DISCOURSE

273. RULE: The subjunctive may be used in any subordinate clause to imply that it is a quotation.

This is the reason for the subjunctive in causal clauses with quod, etc. (244) It is also especially common in clauses depending on purpose clauses and substantive clauses of desire (purpose). Examples: Caesar frumentum quod essent pollicitās flāgitāre (I, 16, 1), Caesar kept demanding the grain which (as he said) they had promised; erat sē praecipitā tum nē proelium committeret nisi ipsius cópiæ visae essent (I, 23, 8), he had been commanded not to give battle unless Caesar’s forces should be seen (Caesar had said nisi meae cópiæ visae erunt, unless my forces shall be seen).
APPENDIX

SUBJUNCTIVE BY ATTRACTION

274. RULE: Sometimes a verb that would otherwise stand in the indicative is put in the subjunctive only because it depends on another subjunctive or on an infinitive.

Example: cum certissimae rés accèderent, quod Helvètiōs tràdāritur set (I, 19, 1), since the most clearly proven facts were added (namely) that he had led the Helvetii.

THE INFINITIVE

For the tenses of the infinitive see 205.

A. WITHOUT SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE

COMPLEMENTARY INFINITIVE

275. RULE: Many verbs which imply another action of the same subject take a present infinitive to complete their meaning.

Such are verbs meaning be able, be accustomed, attempt, begin, cease, dare, determine, ought, wish, and the like. But with some of these verbs a substantive clause of desire (purpose) is often used. See 228, a.
Examples: Ire potest, he can go; Ire potuit, he could have gone, literally he was able to go; Ire dēbet, he ought to go; cōnstituērunt comparāre (I, 3, 2), they determined to prepare.

a. As these verbs have no subject accusative, either expressed or understood, a predicate noun or adjective must agree with the nominative subject of the principal verb. Example: fortis esse cōnātur, he tries to be brave.

INFINITIVE AS SUBJECT

276. The present infinitive (rarely the perfect) without an expressed subject accusative may be used as the subject of the verbs mentioned in 278. With licet, it is permitted, the dative is commonly used instead of a subject accusative. Examples: Ire oportet, one must go, literally to go is right; Ire oportuit, one ought to have gone (205, a), literally to go was right; et Ire liciuit, he might have gone, literally to go was permitted to him; Ire necessē est, one must go.

a. Since a subject accusative is easily supplied in thought with these infinitives, a predicate noun or adjective is regularly in the accu-
sative. But with licet a predicate is commonly dative. Examples: *fortem esse oportet, one ought to be brave; virō licet esse fortī (fortem), a man may be brave, lit. it is permitted to a man to be brave.*

**B. WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE**

277. The infinitive with a subject accusative (123) forms an infinitive clause (186).

**INFINITIVE CLAUSE AS SUBJECT**

278. **Rule:** The present infinitive (rarely the perfect) with subject accusative may be used as the subject of such impersonal verbs as decet, libet, oportet, placet, praestat, visum est, and of est with a predicate noun or adjective.

But with some of these verbs the subjunctive is also used. See 228, a, and 229, c. As stated in 276, the subject accusative is not always expressed with these verbs, and with licet the dative is much more common. Examples: *mē ire oportet, I ought to go; Caesarem ire oportuit, Caesar ought to have gone (205, a); mē ire ncesse est, I must go.*

**INFINITIVE CLAUSE AS OBJECT**

279. **Rule:** The infinitive in all its tenses, with subject accusative is used as the object of verbs of knowing, learning, and telling.

This is indirect discourse. For examples see 205 and 266.

a. When these verbs are made passive either the personal construction or the impersonal is possible; but the personal is the more common in the uncompounded tenses. Examples: (personal) *Caesar veniam furtur, Caesar is said to have come;* (impersonal) *Caesarem veniam dixit Caesar, it has been said that Caesar came.*

280. Note the use of the accusative and infinitive with the following verbs.

a. Regularly with *iubeō, order, vetō, forbid, patior, sinō, permit,* which might be expected to take the substantive clause of desire (228, a). Example: *militēs pugnāre iussit, he ordered the soldiers to fight.*

b. With *volō, nōlō, mālō, cupio,* regularly when the subject of the infinitive is not the same as that of the principal verb, sometimes when it is the same (compare 275). Examples: *volō eum ire, I wish him to go; cupio mē esse clāmentem (Cic. Cat. I, 4), I desire to be merciful.*
c. Regularly the accusative and future infinitive with verbs of *hoping* and *promising*. But *possē* may be used instead of a future infinitive, after verbs of *hoping*, because *possum* implies futurity. Examples: *sēsē effectūōs spērabant* (VII, 26, 4), lit. *they hoped that they could accomplish this*, = *they hoped to accomplish this*; *sēsē potūī possē spērant* (I, 3, 22), *they hoped that they could get possession*.

C. WITH SUBJECT NOMINATIVE

281. *Historical Infinitive*. **Rule:** The infinitive is sometimes used with a nominative subject, as an equivalent for an independent past indicative.

Example: *cotīdīē Caesar frūmentum fāgitāre* (I, 16, 1), Caesar *daily demanded the grain*.

PARTICIPLES

282. Participles are verbal adjectives and are used either attributively or predicatively (157). Like other adjectives they may be used substantively (158). They may govern cases just as the finite verb does. For the meanings of their tenses see 205.

283. Participles are often used in Latin where English uses a coordinate or a subordinate clause. Only the meaning of the sentence shows what conjunction to use in translating. Examples: *victus fāgit* may mean *he was conquered and fled*, when *he had been conquered* he fled, or because *he had been conquered* he fled; *victus fugit* may be translated by similar clauses, or by *if he is conquered he will flee*. See also the examples under 150.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

284. The present active participle corresponds in meaning to the English present participle, but is much less frequently used. There is no present passive participle.

a. Therefore such forms as *seeing*, usually, and such forms as *being seen*, always, must be translated into Latin otherwise than by a present participle.

1. Present participles are often used in English where the action is really completed before the action of the verb: Latin then uses the perfect participle. For example, *seeing this he fled*, means *having seen*, etc., and may be translated *hōc vīsō* (150) *fūgit*, lit. *this having been seen*.
2. Present participles are very often used in English where Latin uses *dum* with the present indicative (234, a.) or *cum* with the imperfect (or pluperfect) subjunctive (243, a). Examples: *he was killed (while) fighting*, sometimes *pugnāns occīsus est*, usually either *dum pugnat occīsus est*, or *cum pugnāret, occīsus est*; *seeing this he fled, cum hoc vidisset fūgit*.

b. Remember that *he is running* is always *currīt*, never *est currēns*.

285. FUTURE PARTICIPLES

I. The future active participle is used by Caesar and Cicero only with some form of *sum*, making either the active periphrastic conjugation (75 and 196) or the future active infinitive. Example: *praetert quod sēcum portātūrī erant* (I, 5, 5), lit. *except what they were about to take with them, = except what they intended, etc.*

II. The future passive participle has the same form as the gerundive (288), but in usage is quite distinct. It has two uses.

a. The future passive participle is used with the verb *sum* to form the passive periphrastic conjugation (76). This denotes duty or necessity; as *laudandus est*, *he is to be praised, he must (ought, deserves to) be praised*. The English form is usually active: remember that the Latin is passive. The agent is regularly dative (118). Intransitive verbs must be used impersonally. Examples: *Caesar est mihi laudandus*, lit. *Caesar must be praised by me, = I must praise Caesar; mihi pugnandum fuit* (impersonal), lit. *it had to be fought by me, = I had to fight*.

b. The future passive participle is sometimes used, to denote purpose, in agreement with the objects of verbs meaning *to have* (a thing done) or *to undertake* (to do a thing); especially *cūrō, cause, have* (literally *take care*), *dō, give over, suscipiō, undertake*. Examples: *pontem faciendum cūrat* (I, 13, 2), *he had a bridge made; cōnsulibus senātus rem públicam dēfendendam dedit*, *the senate entrusted the defense of the state to the consuls*.

PERFECT PARTICIPLE

286. Latin has a perfect passive participle, corresponding to such English forms as *seen* or *having been seen*, but no perfect active participle (but see a), corresponding to such English forms as *having seen*. The English perfect active participle with a direct object can usually
be translated into Latin by putting the English object in the ablative and using the passive participle in agreement with it (ablative absolute, 150). Examples: visus fūgit, having been seen he fled; Caesare visō fūgit, having seen Caesar he fled; literally, Caesar having been seen he fled. See also 150.

a. But the perfect passive form of deponent verbs usually (not always) has an active meaning, so that with these verbs the change described in 286 is not to be made. Example: Caesarem conspicātus fūgit, having seen Caesar he fled.

b. The perfect passive participle is sometimes used in agreement with the object of habēō. The meaning is nearly the same as that of the past active tenses of the simple verb; but the resulting fact is emphasized, rather than the past act. Example: magnās cōpiās coāctās habet, he has great forces (which he has) collected, or he has collected great forces (and still has them); while magnās cōpiās coēgit, he (has) collected great forces, leaves it uncertain whether he still has them.

c. Note the translation of such phrases as post urbem conditam, after the founding of the city; literally, after the city founded.

GERUND

287. The gerund is an active verbal noun and corresponds to the English verbal nouns in -ing. It governs the case that is governed by the finite forms of the verb; but see 289, II. Examples: fugiēndī causā (99, a), for the sake of fleeing; ad persuādendum eī (115), for persuading him; urbem vidēndī causā, for the sake of seeing the city.

GERUNDIVE

288. The gerundive is a passive verbal adjective, and must agree with its noun in gender, number, and case. For the same form used as a future passive participle, see 285, II.

The gerundive construction is commonly used in place of the gerund with a direct object. In this construction the English direct object takes the Latin case which the gerund would have, and the gerundive agrees with it. There is no exact English equivalent; the translation is the same as for a gerund with a direct object. For example, in the gerund construction urbem vidēndī causā, vidēndī is the genitive modifying causā, and urbem is the direct object of vidēndī. In the gerundive construction urbēs vidēndae causā, urbēs is the genitive mod-
ifying causâ and videndae agrees with urbis, literally for the sake of the city to be seen. Both alike must be translated for the sake of seeing the city.

CHOICE OF CONSTRUCTION

289. I. RULE: If the verb is intransitive the gerund must be used.

The gerundive is passive, and intransitive verbs can be used in the passive only impersonally. Example: of crēdendi causā, for the sake of believing him (115).

a. But the gerundive of ùtor, fruor, fungor, potior, and vēscor (145) is used. Example: spēs potiundi oppidi (II, 7, 5), hope of taking the town.

II. RULE: If the verb is used transitively the gerundive construction is more common, and must always be used after a preposition.

A direct object is sometimes used with a gerund in the genitive or the ablative without a preposition. Examples: (always) ad effēminandōs animōs (I, 1, 8), to weakening the courage; (usually) urbis videndae causā, for the sake of seeing the city; sometimes urbiem videndi causā, for the sake of seeing the city.

USE OF CASES

290. Neither the gerund nor the gerundive is used as the subject or direct object of verbs.

291. The Genitive is used with nouns and adjectives. With causâ and grātâ it forms a common expression of purpose. Examples: bellandi cupiditās, a desire of fighting; Caesaris (or Caesarem) videndi cupidus, desirous of seeing Caesar; bellandi causā vēnit, he came to fight (for the sake of fighting).

a. If the substantive is a personal or reflexive pronoun, an irregular construction is used,—mei, tu, sui, nostri, or vestri with a genitive in -i (sometimes called gerund, sometimes gerundive), regardless of gender and number. Example: sui cōnservandi causā, for the sake of saving themselves

The usual gerund would be sē cōnservandi; the gerundive sui cōnservandōrum.

292. The Dative is very rare.

293. The Accusative is used with a few prepositions, especially ad expressing purpose. Examples: parātus ad proficiscendum, ready to set
out; ad Caesarem vendendum (gerundive, see 289, II), venit, he came
to see Caesar.

294. The Ablative is used, with the prepositions ab, dé, ex, in, and as
the ablative of means or cause. Examples: in quaerendo reperiebat,
in questioning (them) he learned; lapidibus subministrandis (III, 25, 4),
by furnishing stones.

THE SUPINE

295. RULE: The Accusative of the supine is used after verbs of mo-
tion to express purpose.

It may govern a direct object. Examples: gratulatum vénérunt
(I, 30, 2), they came to offer congratulations; légátos mittunt rogátum
auxilium (I, 11, 4), they sent envoys to ask aid.

296. RULE: The Ablative of the supine is used as an ablative of
specification (149).

It does not take a direct object. The supine of the verbs audíō,
cognóscó, dicó, fació, videó, is most commonly found; and with the ad-
jectives facílis, diffícilis, crédibilis, incrédibilis, itáculos, iniúcundus,
optimus, mirábilis, and the expressions fás est, nefás est, opus est. Ex-
ample: perfácilis factū (I, 3, 16) lit. very easy as to the doing, = very easy
to do.

THE ROMAN CALENDAR

297. The Months. The Latin names of months are adjectives, not-
nouns as are ours. In the times of Caesar and Cicero the names of the
months were Ianuárius (-a, -um), Februárius, Márts, Aprilís (-e),
Máius, Iúnius, Quintilis, Sextílis, September (-bris, -bre), Octóber, No-
vember, and December. Later Quintilis was changed to Iúlius, in
honor of Julius Caesar, and Sextílis to Augustus, in honor of the emper-
or Augustus.

Before 46 B. C., that is till near the death of Caesar and Cicero,
March, May, July, and October had 31 days, February had 28, and
each of the others had 29. In 46 B. C. Caesar reformed the calendar
and gave the months their present number of days.

298. Calends, Nones, and Ides. The Romans counted the days back-
wards from three points in each month, the Calends, the Nones, and
the Ides, instead of forward from the first as we do; that is, they called
the days "the third before the Ides," "the fourth before the Calends," etc.

The Calends (Kalendae, -ārum, f. pl.) were always the first of the month. The Nones (Nōnae, -ārum, f. pl.) were the seventh, the Ides (Īdīs, -uum, f. pl.) the fifteenth of March, May, July, and October. In all other months they were the fifth and thirteenth.

299. Method of Reckoning. In reckoning dates they counted both the first day and the last day; for example, while we should speak of Monday as the second day before Wednesday, a Roman would have counted Wednesday as one, Tuesday as two, and Monday as three, and would thus have called Monday the third day before Wednesday.

In counting back from the Calends, remember that the Calends do not belong to the month in which the required day is. Add one to the number of days in the preceding month, then reckon backwards, counting both ends as usual.

300. Method of Expressing Dates. An idiomatic formula is commonly used, which can neither be parsed nor translated literally; for example a. d. IV. Íd. Iān. = ante diem quārtum Īdūs Iānuāriās. The logical, but less usual form is diē quārtō ante Īdūs Iānuāriās, on the fourth day before the Ides of January. For examples take the dates:

(LATIN-ENGLISH) (ENGLISH-LATIN)

Jan. 1 = Kal. Iān.

VOCABULARY
VOCABULARY

In this vocabulary the figures 1, 2, and 4, following verbs, mean that the principal parts are formed like those of laudō, moneō, and audiō, respectively; or, if the verb is deponent, like those of hortor, vereor, and partor (App. 73).

To all words occurring in the first four books of the text, numbers are affixed, showing the book and chapter of first occurrence. If the word occurs first in chapters 30-54 of Book I, the place of its second occurrence is also given. Words unaccompanied by reference numbers do not occur in the first four books.

Words in Italics are purely explanatory, and are never intended as definitions for translation purposes.

After geographical names letters are given, enclosed in parentheses. They correspond to letters on the margin of the general map, and thus serve as an index to the position of the names on the map.

Pronunciation of Proper Names. It is generally agreed that the English pronunciation of proper names should be used in translation; but as no modern grammar gives the rules for the English pronunciation, the greatest confusion exists in practice. Therefore the pronunciation of all proper names is indicated in parentheses. To indicate the sounds of vowels, diacritical marks are used with the following values:

\[ \begin{align*}
\hat{a} &= \text{a in rat.} & \hat{e} &= \text{e in me.} & \hat{o} &= \text{o in note.} \\
\hat{a} &= \text{a in mate.} & \hat{e} &= \text{e in fern.} & \hat{o} &= \text{o in or.} \\
\check{a} &= \text{a in arm.} & \check{i} &= \text{i in is.} & \check{u} &= \text{u in up.} \\
\check{a} &= \text{a in Cuba.} & \check{i} &= \text{i in ice.} & \check{u} &= \text{u in use.} \\
\check{e} &= \text{e in met.} & \check{o} &= \text{o in not.} & \check{u} &= \text{u in rude.}
\end{align*} \]

\[ y \] has the sounds of \[ i \], and is used in indicating pronunciation only as the consonant (= \[ y \] in youth), or to indicate an \[ i \] sound so rapidly uttered that it is barely distinguishable from the consonant \[ y \], as in Lūcīus = lüb/shyús.

It must be understood, however, that unaccented syllables are so hastily pronounced that their vowel sounds are usually somewhat indistinct.

The main accent is indicated by a single mark ('), the lighter, secondary accent by a double mark (")

In giving tribe names it is best to use always the Latin forms of the names (Nervii, Helvetii, etc.), rather than the anglicized forms (Nervians, Helvetians, etc.). Most of these anglicized forms have no warrant in good English usage, none has much warrant. The few that are possible are given in the vocabulary, but are not recommended for use. Modern geographical names may well be used, so far as they are familiar.
VOCABULARY


a., abbr. for ante. I, 6.

ā (before consonants), ab (before vowels
and some consonants), abs (before ā,l,
and in some compounds), prep. with
abē, originally denoting separation;
(1) of place, persons, time, etc., from,
away from, from the vicinity of: (2) de-
noting position, in some phrases, at,
in, on, on the side of; ā tergō, in the
rear; (3) with expressions of measure,
away, off; ab millibus passuum duō-
bus, two miles away: (4) with the
pass. voice often denoting the agent, as
the person from whom the action comes,
by: (5) variously translated in other
relations, from, by, in respect to, after.
I, 1.

abdō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, tr. [dō,
put], put away, remove, withdraw,
hide, conceal. I, 12.

abdūcō, -ducere, -ducī, -ductum, tr. [dūcō,
lead], lead away, draw or carry
off, withdraw. I, 11.

abē, -ire, -ī, -ītum, intr. [ē, go,
App. 84], go away, depart.

abīō, -iere, -īō, -iōctum, tr. [iacō,
throw. App. 7], throw away
or down; hurl. IV, 15.

abīōs, -īōs, f., ar tree.

abīungō, -iungere, -iūnxi, -iūctum, tr. [iungō,
join], disjoin, detach.

abs, see ā.

absidō, -sidere, -sidī, -sīsum, tr. [caedō,
cut], cut or lop off, tear off or
away. III, 14.

absēns, -entis, adj. [pres. part. of ab-
sum, be absent], absent, at a distance.
I, 52; III, 17.

absimilis, -ē, adj. [similis, like], un-
like. III, 14.

absistō, -sistere, -stītī, —, intr.
[sistō, stand], keep away from.

abstineō, -tinērē, -tinul, -tentum,
intr. [teneō, hold], keep aloof from,
refrain; spare. I, 22.

abstrahō, -trahere, -trāxi, -tractum,
tr. [trahō, draw], to drag away, carry
away by force. III, 2.

absum, abisse, āfui, intr. [sum, be
App. 78], be away from, be absent or
distant, be wanting or free from. I, 1.

abundō, I, intr. [unda, wave], overflow;
abound.

ac, see atque.

accēdō, -cedere, -cessī, -cessum, intr.
[ad+cēdō, go], approach, draw near
to, arrive at, come to; to be added;
accēdēbat, it was added. I, 19.

accelerō, I, intr. [ad+celerō, hasten],
hasten.

acceptus, -a, -um, adj. [pf. part. of
accipīō, accept], acceptable, beloved
by (with dative). I, 8.

accidī, -cidere, -cidī, —, intr. [ad+cādō,
fall], fall to or upon; befall, hap-
pen, fall to the lot of, occur; ac-
cidit, it happens. I, 14.

acsō, -cidere, -cidī, -cisum, tr. [ad+caedō,
cut], cut into.

accipīō, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptum, tr. [ad+cāpiō,
take], take or receive to one's self, accept; experience, suffer;
learn, hear, take. I, 14.

acclivis, -ē, adj. [ad+clivus, a slope],
sloping upward, rising, ascending.
II, 29.

acclivitas, -tātis, f. [acclivis, ascent-
ing], ascent, slope. II, 18.

Accō, -ōnis, m., Acco (ākō), a chief of
the Senones.

accommodātus, -a, -um, adj. [pf. part.
of accommodō, adapt], fit, adapted,
appropriate. III, 18.

accommodō, I, tr., adjust or adapt to
one's self, fit or put on. II, 21.

accūrātē, adv., carefully.
accurrē, -currere, -currō or -ocurrē, -currōrum, intr. [ad+currō, run], run or hasten to. I. 22.
accusō, I, tr. [ad+causa, cause, case], bring a case or charge against; blame, censure, accuse. I. 16.
acerbē, adv. [acerbus, harsh], harshly, with pain.
acerbītās, -ātis, f. [acerbus, harsh], harshness, rigor.
acerbus, -a, -um, adj., harsh, biting, severe.
acerīmē, see acriter.
acervus, -i, m., a heap, mass. II. 32.
acīsēs, -ēs (old gen. acīsēs), f., sharp point or edge of a weapon; sharp or keen sight, glance; a line (as forming an edge), battle line; prima, the van; media, the centre; novissima, the rear. I. 22.
acquirē, -quirere, -quisīvi, -quisitum, tr. [ad+quaerē, seek], seek or gain in addition, win, acquire.
acrērē, adv. [acer, sharp], sharply, keenly, fiercely, vigorously. Comp. acrēs; sup. acerrīmē (App.40). I. 36.
actūārius, -a, -um, adj. [agō, move, drive], fitted with oars.
actus, see agō.
actūs, -a, -um, adj. [pf. part. of acuē, sharpen], sharpened, pointed.
ad, prep. with acc., originally denoting motion toward: (1) denoting motion, to, toward, against, to the vicinity of; (2) denoting position, at, by, near; (3) denoting purpose, with gerund and gerundive, to, for, (4) with numerals, up to, about; (5) of time, up to, until; at, on; (6) variously translated in other relations, at, after, for, to, according to, in the eyes of, among. I. 1.
adēctus, see adīgō.
adaequō, I, tr. [sequō, make equal], make level with or equal to, equal; keep up with. I. 48; II. 32.
adamō, I, tr. [amō, love], love strongly, covet. I. 81.
addō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, tr. [dō, put], place on: add.
adducō, -ducere, -duxi, -ductum, tr. [ducō, lead], lead or draw to, bring to; induce, influence. I. 3.
ademptus, see adīmō.
adeō, adv. [eō, thither], to such an extent, so much, so very, so; in fact.
adeō, -ire, -iī, -itum, tr. and intr. [eō, go. App. 84], go to, approach, visit; assail, attack. II. 7.
adēptus, see adīpiscor.
adēquitō, I, intr. [equītō, ride; equus, horse], ride up. I. 46.
adhaereō, -haerēre, -haesī, -haesum, intr. [haereō, stick], cling or stick to.
adībēs, 2, tr. [habēs, have], bring to, bring in, summon; employ, use. I. 20.
adhortor, 1, tr. [hortor, encourage], encourage, incite.
adīcē, adv. [hīc, hither], hitherto, as yet. III. 22.
adīceō, -iacērē, -iaculi, —, intr. [iacēd, lie], lie near or close to, adjoin.
Adiastumus, -i, m., Adiastumus (Aōdith, Tūmīs), the leader of the Saites. III. 22.
adiciō, -ioere, -iōeī, -iectum, tr. [iacēō, throw. App. 7], throw to, throw up, hurl; add. III. 1.
adīgō, -igere, -iγī, -ictum, tr. [agō, move], drive or bring by force, move; thrust, plunge, hurl (of weapons); bind (by an oath). II. 21.
adīmō, -imerē, -imī, -emptum, tr. [emō, take], take away, remove.
adīpiscor, -ipiscī, -optus sum, tr., attain to, gain.
aditus, -ūs, m. [adeō, go to], approach, means of approach, right of approach, access. I. 48; II. 15.
adīdicē, I, tr. [tudicē, judge], adjudge, assign.
adungō, -ungere, -īnxi, -īnctum, tr. [ungō, join], join to, attach, unite; add. III. 2.
adītor, -ōs, m. [ainvō, aid], helper, abettor, assistant.
adīvō, -iuvēre, -iuvī, -iūtum, tr. [iuvō, aid], aid, help, assist; contribute to, support. II. 17.
administer, -tri, m. [minister, servant], attendant, priest.
administrō, I, tr. [minister, servant],
serve, attend, wait upon; manage, guide. II, 50.

admiror, a. tr. [miror, wonder at]; wonder at, be surprised at, admire. I, 14.

admittō, -mittere, -misit, -missum, tr. [mitter, send], admit; commit; incur; let go; give reins to (a horse). I, 22.

admodum, adv. [modus, measure], up to the measure; very much, very; with sum., fully; with neg., at all. III, 13.

admonēō, 2. tr. [moneō, warn], warn.

adolēscō, -olēscere, -olēvi, -ultum, intr., grow up.

adorior, -oriri, -ortus sum, tr. [orior, arise], rise against, assail, attack. I, 13.

adsum, adesse, afful, intr. [sum, be. App. 77], be near or present, be at hand, appear. I, 16.

adulēscēns, -entis, m. [pres. part. of adulēscō, grow up], youth, young man. I, 47; III, 7.

adulēscēntia, -ae, f. [adulēscēns, youth], youthfulness, youth. I, 20.

adulēscēntulus, -i, m. [dim. of adulēscēns, youth], a very young man. III, 11.

adventus, -ūs, m. [veniō, come], coming, arrival, approach. I, 7.

adversarius, -ri, m. [adversus, turned against], antagonist, foe.

adversus, -a, um, adj. [pf. part. of advertō, turn to], turned to or against; opposite, frontal; adverse, unfavorable; unsuccessful; adversō fitmine, up the river; in adversum ēs; full in the face. I, 16.

adversus, prep. in. acc. [adversus, turned against], opposite to, against. IV, 14.

advocō, 1. tr. [vocō, call], call to, summon.

advolō, 1. intr. [volō, fly], fly to or against, rush on or at.

aedificium, -ī, n. [aedificō, build], building, house. I, 5.

aedificō, 1. tr. [aedēs, house + faciō, make], build, construct. III, 9.

aeger, -gra, -grum, adj., ill, sick.


Aemilius, -ii, m., Aemilius (ē-mil'ī-dās), I, 28.

aequālīter, adv. [aequālis, equal; aequus, equal], equally, evenly. II, 18.

aequinoctium, -tī, n. [aequus, equalnox, night], the equinox. IV, 36.

aequitās, -tātis, f. [aequus, equal], equality; fairness, equity; animal aequitās, contentment. I, 40.

aequō, 1. tr. [aequus, equal], make even or equal, equalize. I, 25.

aequus, -a, -um, adj., even, level, equal; equitable, impartial, just; aequus animus, equanimity, composure. I, 48; III, 17.

aērāria, -ae, f. [aēs, copper], copper mine. III, 21.

aēs, aēris, n. copper; anything made of copper, coin, money; aēs aliōnum, another's money, debt. IV, 31.

aestās, -tātis, f., summer. I, 54; II, 2.

aestimātiō, -ōnis, f. [aestimō, value], valuation.

aestimō, 1. value, reckon, estimate, regard, consider. III, 20.

aestivus, -a, -um, adj. [aestus, heat; aestās, summer], of summer, summer.

aestuarium, -ri, n. [aestus, tide], low marsh-land, tidal inlet, estuary, marsh. II, 28.

aestus, -ūs, m., heat; boiling, surging; tide; minuente aestu, at ebb tide. III, 12.

aestās, aetātis, f., period of life, age. II, 16.

aeternus, -a, -um, adj., everlasting.

afferō, afferre, attuli, attātum, tr. [ad-ferrō, carry. App. 51], bring, take or carry to, present; occasion, cause; bring forward, allege; report. I, 48; II, 1.

afficiō, -ficere, -feci, -fectum, tr. [ad-facīō, do], do to, treat, affect; magnō dolōre afficiō, to annoy greatly. I, 2.

afigō, -figere, -fixi, -fixum, tr. [ad-fitō, fix], fasten to. III, 14.
AFFINGO
6
ALLOBROGES

alacer, -cris, -cre, adj., lively, eager, active, ready, joyous. III, 19.
alacrītās, -ātās, f. [alacer, lively], liveliness, ardor. I, 41; IV, 24.
ālārius, -a, -um, adj. [aia, wing], on the wing; pl. as nouns, auxiliaries. I, 51.
albus, -a, -um, adj., white.
alcēs, -is, f., elk.
Alesia, -ae, f. (Cf.), Alesia (g-lē'zhyā), now Allise Ste. Beine.
alīs, adv. [alius, another], at another place, elsewhere; at another time; alīs . . . alīs, at one time . . . at another. II, 29.
alīnēs, -a, -um, adj. [alius, other], or belonging to another, another's; strange, alien, unfamiliar; unfavourable; foreign to the purpose; anīs aiiē-
num, debt; aiiēnissimī, entire strangers. I, 15.
aliō, adv. [alius, other], to another place, person or thing, elsewhere.
aliquamētus, adv. [aliquis, some + diā, long], for some time. I, 40.
alliancēdā, adv.[aliquis, some], at some time, at length, finally.
aliquantō, adv. [aliquantus, some], somewhat, a little. III, 13.
aliquantus, -a, -um, adj., some, considerable; neut. as nouns with partitive gen., a good deal, not a little.
aliquis, -quid, and aliqui, -qua, -quod, indef. pron. [quils, who. App. 62, a], some one, something; anyone, anything, any. I, 14.
aliquot, indecl. num. adj. [quot, how many], some, a few, several. III, 1.
alter, adv. [alius, other], otherwise.
aliter . . . a, otherwise . . . than. II, 19.
alius, -a, -ud, gen. allus (App. 33), another, other; allus . . . allus, one . . . another; in pl., some . . . others. I, 1.
alūtus, see afferē.
allicēs, -licere, -lexī, -lectum, tr., attract, allure, entice.
Allobroges, -um, n. (Dīg), the Allo-
ALO

brogés (b-ro-g'z), a powerful Gallic people in the Province. I, 6.

dó, alere, alvi, altum, tr., nourish, feed, support; promote, foster, encourage. I, 18.

Alpes, -um, f. pl. (Cfhl), the Alpes (al'pēz), better, the Alps. I, 10.

alter, -era, -erum, gen. alterius (App. 89), the other (of two); second; the one; alter...alter, the one...the other; alteri...alteri, the one party...the other. I, 2.

alterius, -a, -um, adj. (alter, the other), ampler of another, in turn.

altitūdō, -inis, f. [altus, high, deep], height; thickness (of timber). I, 8.

altus, -a, -um, adj., high, lofty; deep; neut. as noun, the deep, the sea. I, 2.

alūta, -ae, f., soft leather. III, 13.

ambactus, -i, m., vassal.

Ambarri, -ōrum, m. (Of), the Ambarri (ām-bär'i), clients of the Haedui. I, 11.

Ambiani, -ōrum, m. (Abde), the Ambiani (ām-bē'i-ni). II, 4.

Ambibarrii, -ōrum, m. (Bbc), the Ambibarii (ām-bē-bär'i-i).

Ambiliati, -ōrum, m., the Ambiliati (ām-bē-i-li-at'i). III, 9.

Ambitorix, -īgis, m., Ambitorix (ām-bē-tōr'i-ks), king of the Eburones.

Ambivareti, -ōrum, m. (Ce)'y the Ambivareti (ām-bē-vär'ē-ti), clients of the Haedui.

Ambivartoti, -ōrum, m. (Af), the Ambivartoti (ām-bē-vār'tō-ti). IV, 9.

ambō, -ae, -ō, both.

āmentia, -ae, f. (mēns, mind), bewildermont of mind, folly, insanity. I, 40.

āmentum, -i, n., strap or thong, fastened to the shaft of a javelin to aid its propulsion.

amicitia, -ae, f. [amicus, friend], friendship. I, 3.

amicus, -a, -um, adj. (amō, love), friendly, well disposed; devoted; as noun, m., a friend, an ally. I, 3.

āmittū, -mittere, -misī, -misum, tr. (mittō, send), send away, dismiss; let go; lose. I, 28.

amor, -ōris, m. (amō, love), love. I, 20.

ampē, adv. [amplus, large], largely; comp., amplus, more, farther. I, 35; II, 16.

amplificāō, I, tr. [amplus, large+faciō, make], extend, enlarge, increase, expand. II, 14.

amplītūdō, -inis, f. [amplus, large], wide extent, size; importance, consequence, dignity. IV, 3.

amplus, see amplē and amplus.

amplus, -a, -um, adj., of large extent, spacious, large; illustrious, splendid, noble; generous, magnificent; amplius, comp. as noun, more, a greater number, a greater distance. I, 15.

an, conj., used to introduce the second member of alternative questions, or, or rather. I, 40; IV, 14.

Anartēs, -ium, m., the Anartes (ān-nārtē-tēz), a German tribe near the Hercynian forest.

AnCALĪTēs, -um, m. (Ac), the Ancauliai (ān-kālī-tēz).

ancepī, ancinītīs, adj. [ambō, both+caput, head], two headed, with two sides or fronts, double. I, 26.

ancora, -ae, f., anchor; in ancoris, at anchor. III, 18.

Andebrogiius, -gi, m., Andebrogius (ān-dē-brōg'i-yūs). II, 3.

Andēs, -ium, or Andī, -ōrum, m. (Cc), the Andes (ān-dēz) or Andī (ān'dī). II, 35.

ānfractus, -us, m., circuitous route.

angulus, -i, m., corner.

angustēs, adv. [angustus, narrow], narrowly; in close quarters. IV, 23.

angustiae, -ārum, f. pl. [angustus, narrow], narrowness; a narrow place or pass, strait, defile; straits, difficulties, perplexity. I, 9.

angustus, -a, -um, adj. [angō, squeeze], compressed, confined, straitened, narrow; in angustō, in a critical condition. I, 2.

animal, -ae, f., breath, life, soul.

animalētō, -ertere, -verti, -versum, tr. and intr. [animus, mind+ad+vertō, turn], turn the mind to; notice; animadvertere in, punish. I, 19.

animal, -ālis, n. [animal, breath of life], a living creature, animal.
animus, -i, m., soul, spirit; mind, intellect; feelings; character; resolution, courage; animi causa, for amusement; in animo habère, intend. I. 1.

annōtinus, -a, -um, adj. [annus, year], of last year.

annus, -i, m., year. I. 3.

annuus, -a, -um, adj. [annus, year], yearly. I. 16.

ānser, -eris, m., goose.

ante (1) adv., before, above, previously; (2) prep. w. acc., before, in advance of. I. 3.

antēā, adv. [ante, before + ēā, this], formerly, before, previously, once; always with a verb. I. 17.

antecēōdō, -cēōdē, -cēsī, -cessum, tr. and intr. [cēōdō, go], before, precede, excel, surpass. III. 8.

antecesor, -ōris, m. [currū, run], fore-runner; pl., vanguard.

antefo, -ferre, -tull, -lātum, tr. [ferō, bear. App. 81], bear or carry before; prefer.

antenna, -ae, f., sail-yard. III. 14.

antepōnē, -pōnere, -posul, -positum, tr. [pōnō, place], place before; prefer. IV. 22.

antevertō, -vertere, -verti, -versum, tr. [vertō, turn], put before, prefer.

antiquitās, adv. [antiquus, ancient], from early or ancient times; long ago, anciently. II. 4.

antiquus, -a, -um, adj. [ante, before], former, old, ancient. I. 18.

Antistus, -tī, m., Gaius Antistius Regius (gā' yū s ā n-tīs' tī-ūs rē-jīnūs), one of Caesar's lieutenants.

Antōnius, -ni, m., Marcus Antonius (mār' kūs ā n-tōnī-ūs), one of Caesar's lieutenants, afterward triumvir.

Ap., abbr. for Apollis (āp' lī-ūs), a Roman praenomen.

aperīō, -perire, -perul, -pertum, tr., open, expose.

aperē, adv. [aperitus, open], openly, manifestly.

aperitus, -a, -um, adj. [pf. part. of aperiō], open, exposed; ab latere aperē, on the unprotected flank. I. 26.

Apollō, -inis, m., Apollo (ā-pōl' ēō).

apparē, 1, tr. [ad+parē, prepare], prepare, make ready.

appellō, 1, tr., accost, address, call by name, name, call. I. 1.

appellō, -pellere, -pull, -pulfum, tr. [ad+pellō, drive], bring to land; bring together. III. 12.

appetē, -petere, -petivī (-petīl), -petum, tr. and intr. [ad+petē, seek], seek for, aim at; encroach upon; approach, be near. I. 40.

applicō, 1, tr. [ad+plīcō, fold], apply; sē applicāre, lean.

apporū, 1, tr. [ad+portū, carry], bring.

approbō, 1, tr. [ad+probē, approve], favor, approve.

appropinquō, 1, intr. [ad+propinquus, near], come near or close, approach. II. 10.

appulsus, see appellō.

Aprilis, abbr. for Aprilis, -ē, adj., of April, April. I. 6.

aptus, -a, -um, adj., fitted, suited, adapted. III. 13.

apud, prep. w. acc., at, among, near, with; (with persons) at the house of, in the presence of. I. 2.

aqua, -ae, f., water. IV. 17.

aquātīō, -onis, f. [aqua, water], getting water. IV. 11.

aquīlla, -ae, f., an eagle; a standard, (as the aquila was the chief standard of the legion). IV. 25.

Aquālia, -ae, f., Aquileia (āk' wēl' ē- ē' a), a city of Cisalpine Gaul. I. 10.

aquīlīfer, -eris, m. [aquilla, eagle+ferō, bear], standard-bearer.

Aquītānia, -ae, f. (DEcd), Aquitania (āk' wēl' ē-n' -ē), Southwestern Gaul between the Garonne and the Pyrenees. I. 1.

Aquitānus, -a, -um, adj., of Aquitania, Aquitanian; pl. as nouns, the Aquitani (āk' wēl' ē-nī or -ā-s), possibly Aquitanians, inhabiting southwestern Gaul. I. 1.

Arar, Ararīs (acc. -īm), m. (CDfg), the Arar (ār' ēr), the modern Saone. I. 12.

arbītrē, -tri, m., umpire, arbiter.

arbitrium, -rī, n. [arbiter, umpire], decision or judgment (of the arbiter); opinion, discretion, pleasure. I. 36.
ABRITROR 9  ATRIUS

arbitror, 1, tr. and instr. [arbiter, umpire], decide; think, believe. I, 2.
arbor, -oris, f., tree. II, 17.
arcessō, -ere, -ivi, -itum, summon, send for, invite. I, 31; II, 80.
árdeo, árdere, are, ásum, intr., burn, blaze; be inflamed, be eager.
Arduenna, -ae, f. (ABfg), Arduenna (ár-du-én-a), better the Ardennes, a vast forest of northeast Gaul.
arduus, -a, -um, adj., high, steep; difficult. II, 33.
Arecomiō, Arecomici (ár-ko-mí'i-ai), see Volcae.
Aremoricē, -ārum, f. (EBbd), adj., maritima, Aremorianic.
argentum, -ī, n., silver; silver plate or coin.
arilla, -ae, f., white clay.
árīdus, -a, -um, adj. [árēō, be dry], dry; neut. as noun, dry land. IV, 24.
ariēs, arietis, m., a ram; betteringram, a long beam for demolishing walls; one end of it was capped with iron in the form of a ram's head; brace, buttress. II, 32.
Ariovistus, -ī, m., Ariovistus (ár-ivís'tús), a king of the Germans. I, 31; IV, 16.
Aristius, -ī, m., Marcus Aristius (măr-kús á-rís'íi-ús), a military tribune.
arma, -ōrum, a.pl., arms; equipment; by metonymy, battle, war. I, 6.
armamenta, -ōrum, a. [armō, arm], implements, gear; tackle or rigging of a ship. III, 16.
armātūra, -ae, f., [armō, arm], armor, equipment; levīs armātūræ, light-armed. II, 10.
armō, 1, tr. [arma, arma], arm, equip; pass., arm one's self; armātus, p.f. part., as adj., armed; armāti, as noun, armed men. I, 40; II, 4.
Arpinēius, -ī, m., Gaius Arpinius (gā'-yēs á-rpē-nē'iús), a knight in Caesar's army.
arripīō, -ripere, -ripul, -reptum, tr. [ad-rāpiō, seize] take or seize hurriedly.
arroganter, adv. [arrogāns, arrogant], arrogantly, presumptuously. I, 40.
arrogantia, -ae, f. [arrogāns, arrog-
gant], arrogance, haughtiness, presumption, insolence. I, 33.
ars, artis, f., skill, art; pl., the arts.
artē, adv. [artus, close], closely, firmly. IV, 17.
articulus, -ī, m., joint.
artificium, -ī, n. [ars, art + facēs, make], a trade, handicraft; artifice, trick.
artus, -a, -um, adj., close, dense, thick.
Arvernus, -ī, m. (ODc), an Arvernan; pl., the Arverni (ár-ver'nī), possibly the Arverni. I, 31.
ax, arois, f., citadel, fortress, stronghold. I, 38.
ascendō, -scendere, -scendi; -scēn-
sum, tr. and intr. [ad+scendō, climb], climb up, ascend, mount, climb. I, 31.
ascēnsum, -īs, m. (ascendō, climb up), a climbing up, ascending; approach, ascent. I, 31.
asciscō, -sciscere, -scīvi, -scītum, tr. [ad+sciscō, approve], approve; admit or receive (as allies). I, 5.
aspectus, -ās, m. [aspīciō, look at], look; appearance, mien, aspect.
asper, -era, -erum, adj., rough, violent.
assiduus, -a, -um, adj. [ad+sedeō, sit], close at hand, ever present; continual, incessant, constant.
assistō, assistere, assistit, —, intr. [ad+alstō, stand], stand by or near.
assequiō, -sequer, -sēcī, -sectum, tr., accustom, train. IV, 1.
assequērō, -sequere, -suēvi, -suētum, intr. [suēscō, become accustomed], become accustomed.
at, conj., but, at least. I, 43; II, 23.
atque, a, (ac only before consonants, atque before vowels and consonants), conj., usually adds something especially important, while et usually associates objects of equal importance; and also, and even, and; after words denoting a comparison or difference, than, as, from. I, 1.
Atribas, -ītēs, m., (Ae), an Atrebasian; pl., the Atrebates (át're-bā'tēz). II, 4.
Atrius, -ī, m., Quintus Atrius (kwīn-tūs á-trī-ús), one of Caesar's officers.
attexō, -texere, -texul, -textum, tr. [ad+-texō, weave], weave on.
attingō, -tingere, -tigē, -tactum, tr. [ad+-tangō, touch], touch or border on, reach, extend to, arrive at, attain. I, 1.
attribuō, -tribuere, -tribul, -tribulatum, tr. [ad+-tribuō, assign], assign, allot. III, 1.
atūli, see afferē.
Atuatuca, -ae, f. (Af), Atuatuca (Āvū-ātū-ka), a stronghold of the Eburones.
Atuatucl, -ārum, m. (Af), the Atuatucl (Āvū-ātū-kl), II, 4.
auctor, -āris, m. [augeō, increase], one who produces, creates, or originates; promoter, instigator, adviser, author; auctor esse, advise. III, 17.
auctoritās, -tātis, f. [auctor, producer], influence, character, authority, reputation. I, 3.
auctus, -a, -um, adj. [pf. part. of augeō, increase], increased, advanced. I, 43.
audāciā, -ae, f. [audāx, bold], boldness, daring, courage; presumption, effrontery. I, 18.
audācter, adv. [audāx, bold], boldly, fearlessly, daringly. Comp., audācius; sup., audāciissimē. I, 15.
audeō, audēre, ausus sum (App. 74), intr., dare, risk, venture. I, 18.
audīō, ō, ā, tr., hear; hear of; dictō audiēns, obedient. I, 39; II, 12.
audītō, -onis, f. [audīō, hear], hearing, hearsay, report. IV, 5.
augēō, augēre, auxi, auctum, tr., increase, augment, enhance, add to. I, 18.
Aulercl, -ōrum, m., the Aulercl (aw-lēr'cl), a Gallic people divided into four branches. (1) Aulercl Eburovices (ēbū-rō-vī'sēz), (Bd), III, 17; (2) Aulercl Cenomani (sē-nōmā'ni), (Bd); (3) Aulercl Brannovices (brān'nō-vī'sēz), location unknown; (4) Aulercl Diablintes (diāb-līn'tēz), (Bc), II, 34.
aureus, -a, -um, adj. [aureum, gold], of gold, gold.
auriga, -ae, m., charioteer. IV, 33.
auris, -īs, f., ear.
Aurunculōōs, -ī, m., Lucius Aurunculōōs Cotta (ō-ush'yōs aw-rūn-kō-ush'yōs o'bī's), one of Caesar's lieutenants. II, 11.
Auscl, -ōrum, m. (Ed), the Auscl (awst-āl). III, 27.
ausus, see audeō.
aut, conj., used where the difference is important or exclusive, or; aut ... aut, either ... or. I, 1.
autem, conj., but (a weak adverbial); however, on the other hand; now; moreover. I, 2.
autumnus, -ī, m., autumn.
auxi, see audeō.
auxiliaris, -ē adj. [auxilium, aid], auxiliary; m. pī. as noun, auxiliary troops. III, 25.
auxiliōr, i, intr. (auxilium, aid), give aid, help, assist, render assistance. IV, 29.
auxilium, -ī, n. [augeō, increase], help, assistance, aid; pī, auxiliary troops; reinforcements. I, 11.
Avaricēnsis, -ēs, adj., of Avaricum.
Avaricium, -ī, n. (Ce), Avaricum (a-va'rikum), the stronghold of the Bituriges, now Bourges.
avāritia, -ae, f. [avārus, greedy], greed, covetousness. I, 40.
āvehō, -vehere, -vestī, -vestum, tr. [vehō, carry], carry away, take away.
avētō, -vertere, -vertī, -versum, tr. [vertō, turn], turn away from or away, turn aside; turn back, repulse; pī. part. as adj., with back turned. I, 16.
avis, -īs, f., bird. IV, 10.
avus, -ī, m., grandfather. I, 12.
Axonā, -ae, m. (Bf), the Axonā (ak'sō-nā), a river, now the Aisne. II, 5.

B.
Bacēnis, -īs, f. (Ahi), Bacēnis (ba-se-nis), the forest Bacēnus, between the Cherucus and the Suebi.
Balārēs, -ē, adj., Balarese (bālār'ēs), (i.e., coming from the islands Majorca and Minorca). II, 7.
balteus, -ī, m., sword belt.
BALVENTIUS

Barbarus, -æ, -um, adj., foreign (to Greeks and Romans), uncivilized, barbarous; pl. as noun, savages, barbarians. I. 31; II. 35.

Basilius, -i, m., Lucius Minucius Basilius (bā/lshīyūs mī-nū/shīyūs bās/ī-lūs), one of Caesar's lieutenants.

Batavi, -ōrum, m. (Af), the Batavi (bā-tā/vī). IV. 10.

Belgae, -ārum, m. (Abdefg), the Belgae (bē/ljē), or Belgians. I. 1.

Belgium, -ātis, f. (Belgium), the country of the Belgae.

Bellicōsus, -a, -um, adj. (bellum, war), of or full of war, warlike. I. 10.

Bellicus, -a, -um, adj. (bellum, war), of or in war, military.

Bellō, 1, adv. (bellum, war), make or carry on war, wage war. I. 2.

Bellocvāli, -ōrum, m. (Bde), the Bellocvāli (bē/lōvā/vī-sī). II. 4.

Bellum, -i, n., war. I. 1.

Bene, adv. (bonus, good), well, rightly, successfully. Comp., melius; sup., optimē. I. 45; III. 18.


Benevolentia, -ae, f. (bene, well-+volē, wish), good-will, kindness.

Bibracte, -is, m. (Cef), Bibracte (bi-brā/kē-tē), the chief town of the Gauls. I. 23.

Bibrax, -ōris, f. (Be), Bibrax (bi-brā/kē), a town of the Remi. II. 6.

Bibriski, -ōrum, m. (Ac), the Bibriski (bī-brī/sī).

Bidūnium, -i, n. [bis, twice-+diēs, day], space or period of two days, two days. I. 23.

Bibullium, -on, n. [bis, twice-+annus, year], two years. I. 3.

Bigerrōnēs, -ūm, m. (Ecd), the Bigerrōnes (bi-gērō/mīnēs or bi-gērē/mīnēs). III. 27.

Binī, -ae, -a, distrib. num. adj. [bis, twice], two each, two apiece, by twos. III. 18.

Bidēdīlis, -ēs, adj. [bis, twice-+pēs, foot], of two feet, two feet thick. IV. 17.

Bipertītū, adv. (bis, twice-+partior, divide), in two parts or divisions, in two ways. I. 25.

Bis, num. adv. [for duis, from due, two], twice. III. 12.

Biturigēs, -um, m. (Cde), the Bituriges (bī/tur-gē/jēs). I. 16.

Bodūgnātus, -i, m., Bodognatus (bōdō/gnātēs/tūs). II. 23.

Bōhil, -ōrum, m. (Cei), the Bōhil (bō/hi/l), a Celtic tribe once very powerful in southern Germany and Cisalpine Gaul. Those who joined the Helvetii were afterwards settled by Caesar as indicated on the map. I. 5.

Bonītās, -ātīs, f. (bonus, good), goodness; fertility. I. 28.

Bonūs, -a, -um, adj., good, beneficial, profitable, well-disposed; (with animō) friendly; as nouns, bonum, -i, profit, advantage; bona, -ōrum, goods, property, estate; bonī, -ōrum, the good, good men or citizens. Comp., melior; sup., optimus (App. 42). I. 6.

Bōs, bovis, m., ox; cow; pl., cattle.

Bracchium, -ōn, n., the arm, forearm. I. 25.

Brannovicēs, see Auleroci.

Bratęspantium, -ī, n. (Be), Bratuspantium (brā/tspān/sīm/shīyūm). II. 13.

Brevis, -e, adj., short, brief, transitory; brevi, in a short time. I. 40; III. 4.

Brextītīs, -ātīs, f. (Brevis, short), shortness; brevity. II. 20.

Breviter, adv. (Brevis, short), briefly.

Britannia, -ae, f. (Aabdcl), Britannia (brī-tān/ī-a), better Britain, Great Britain (England and Scotland), never Britain. II. 4.

Britannicus, -a, -um, adj. (Britannia, Britain), of Britain, British.

Britannus, -a, -um, adj., of Britain, British; pl. as noun, the Britanni (brī-tān/ī), better, the Britons. IV. 21.

Brūma, -ae, f., the winter solstice.

Brutus, -ī, m., Decimus Junius Brutus (dēs/mīs jī/num brū/tūs), one of Caesar's lieutenants in the Gallic war, and in the war with Pompey. He took part in the conspiracy against Caesar, and was killed by order of Antony. III. 11.
C.

C. abbr. for praenomen Gaius (gā’yūs). I. 40; III. 5.

C., sign for centum, a hundred.

Cābus, -i, m., Gaius Valerius Cābus (gā’yūs va-lē’rī-r̩-dēs kâ-bū’rīs), a Gaul who possessed Roman citizenship; father of C. Valerius Procōllos and C. Valerius Domitērus. I. 47.

cāctmen, -inis, n., top.

cādēr, -eris, n. [cādō, fail], a fallen or dead body, corpse. II. 27.

cādō, cadeere, cecidī, cāsum, intr., fall; fall in battle, be slain, die. I. 15.

Cādērcus, -a, -um, adj. (Dd), Cadūcan; pl. as noun, the Cadūcan (kã-dār’-sīl).

cādēs, -is, f. (cādō, cut), a cutting; (of persons) slaughter, massacre, murder.

cādēs, cadeere, cecidī, caesum, tr., cut, kill, slay. III. 29.

Caelestis, -e, adj. [caelum, heaven]; heavenly; pl. as noun, the gods.

Caemānī, -orum, m. (A), the Caemāni (sē-mā’-nī). II. 4.

Caerimōnia, -ae, f., a sacred rite.

Caesōs, -orum, m. (Ag), the Caesōs (sē-rō’-sl). II. 4.

Caesōlus, -a, -um, adj., dark blue.


Caespes, -itis, m., a sod, turf. III. 25.

Caesus, see cādēs.

Calamitās, -tātis, f., misfortune, disaster, defeat. I. 12.

Caleti, -ērūm (or -ēs, -ērum), m. (Bd), the Caletii (kã-lē’ti). II. 4.

callidus, -a, -um, adj., shrewd. III. 18.

cālō, -onis, m., a soldier’s servant, camp porter or follower. II. 24.

Campester, -tris, -tre, adj. [campus, a plain], of a plain, flat, level; loca, level country.

Campus, -i, m., plain, open space or country. III. 26.

Camulogenus, -i, m., Camulogenus (kā-mʊ’lō-jē’-nūs), a chief of the Au-terci.
Cassivellaunus, -I, m., Cassivellaunus (kāsīvē-lēw'nūs), the commander-in-chief of the Britons against Caesar.

castellum, -I, a. [castrum, fort], fortress, redoubt. I, 8.

Casticus, -I, m., Casticus (kāsī'ṭi-kūs). I, 3.

castrum, -I, n., fort; pl., castra, castrōrum, fortified camp, camp; castra facere or pōnere, to pitch camp; castra movēre, to break up camp. I, 12.

cāsus, -ās, m. [cadē, fall], what befalls; accident, chance; misfortune, fate; crisis; cāsus, by chance. I, 12.

Catamantaloedis, -is, m., Catamantaloedis (kāta-māntō-lēs'īs), a chief of the Eburones.

causa, -ae, f., cause, reason, grounds, motive; situation, condition; a (legal) case, cause; causam discere, to plead a case; causā, following a gen., for the sake of, for the purpose of, for. I, 1.

cautē, adv. [cautus, from caveō, be cautious], cautiously.

cautēs, -is, -ae, adv. III, 13.

Cavrillius, -I, m., Cavrillius (kāvēr'llī-us), a Haeduian noble.

Cavrīnus, -I, m., Cavrīnus (kāvēr'nī-nūs), a king of the Senones.

caveō, caveōrē, cāvī, cautum, intr., be cautious, be on one's guard; obsidibus caveōrē, exchange hostages as security. I, 14.

Cavillōnum, -I, n. (Cf., Cavillonum (kāvīlō'nūm).

Cebenna, -ae, f. (De), the Cebenna (sē-bēn'ās), or the Cevennes mountains.

cēdō, cēdere, cessē, cessēum, intr., go; go away; give way, yield, retreat. II, 19.

ceor, -ēris, -ēre, adv., swift, quick; precipitata. IV, 23.

celeritās, -tātis, f. [celer, swift], swiftness, quickness, speed. I, 48; II, 12.

celeriter, adv. [celer, swift], quickly, rapidly, speedily. Comp., celerius; sup., celerissimē (App. 40). I, 18.

cēlō, i, tr., keep covered or hidden, secrete, conceal; in pass., escape observation, be unnoticed. II, 32.

Celtae, -ārum, m., the Celtae (sēl'tē), better the Celts. I, 1.

Celtillus, -I, m., Celtillus (sēl-tīl'īs), an Arverian chief, father of Vercingetorix.

Cēnabēnsis, -e, adj. [Cēnabum], of Cēnabum; pl. as noun, the people of Cēnabum.

Cēnabum, -I, n. (Cād), Cēnabum (sēnēbū'im), now Orleans.

Cēnimagni, -ōrum, m. (Ad), the Cēnimagni (sēnēmāg'nī).

Cēnomanī, see Aulerī.

cēnūs, cēnūsē, cēnsul, cēnum, tr., think, decide (acc. and inf.); propose, advise, vote (ut and subj.); propose, vote for (acc.). I, 53.

cēnsus, -ās, m., enumeration. I, 39.

centum, (O), indeed. card. num., a hundred. I, 2.

centuriō, -ōnis, m. [centum, a hundred], centurion, the commander of the century, the sixtieth part of a legion. I, 39; II, 17.

cēpī, see capiō.

cernō, cernere, crēvi, crētum, tr., separate; see, perceive.

certāmen, -īnis, n. [certō, strive], strife, struggle, contest, combat. III, 14.

certō, adv. [certus, certain], certainly; at least, at all events. IV, 25.

certus, -a, -um, adj. [for crētus, pl. part. of cernō], decided; certain, sure, fixed; certiorum facere, to inform (acc. and inf.); order (ut or nē and subj.); certior fieri, to be informed. I, 7.

cervus, -I, m., stag.

cēteri, -ae, -a, adj., the rest of, the remainder; as noun, the rest, remaining, others. I, 32; II, 5.

Cētrōnas, -um, m., the Cētrōnas (sē'trō-nēs), (1), (Dg). I, 10. (2), (Af).
cherusci, -orum, m. (Ahi), the Cherusci (keh-rous'i), a German tribe.
cibarius, -a, -um, adj. [cibus, food], pertaining to food; a, pl. as noun, provisions; molita cibaria, meal, flour. I, 5.
cibus, -i, m., food. IV, 1.
cicerō, -onis, m., Quintus Tullius Cicero (kwin'tūs tōl'ūs sīs'ōrō), brother of the famous orator, one of Caesar's legates.
cimmerius, -ri, m., Cimmerus (sim-bē-rī'-ūs). I, 37.
cimbri, -orum, m., the Cimbrii (sim'brī). I, 38; II, 4.
cingetorix, -iges, m., Cingetorix (sin-jēt'ō-rīks), (1) a chief of the Treveri; (2) a British king.
cingō, cingere, cincti, cinctum, tr., encircle, surround, invest, encompass; man (a wall). I, 38.
cippus, -i, m., palisade, stockade.
circulus, -i, m. [circus, circle], a pair of compasses. I, 38.
circlarer, adv. [circus, circle], about, near. I, 15.
circu tus, -i, m. [circumē, go around], a going around; a winding path; circumference, circuit. I, 21.
circum, prep. with acc. [circus, a circle], around, about, near. I, 10.
circumdēō, -cidere, -clid, -cism, tr. [caedō, cut], cut around or off, cut; isolate.
circumclādō, -clādere, -clāsi, -clāsum, tr. [claudō, shut], encircle.
circumdēo, -dare, -dedi, -datum, tr. [dō, put], put around, encompass, surround. I, 38; IV, 32.
circumdāō, -dāere, -dāxi, -duc tum, tr. [duōd, lead], lead or draw around. I, 38; II, 26.
circumēs, -ire, -ī, -itum, tr. [ēō, go. App. 84], go or march around, traverse, visit. III, 28.
circumfundō, -fundere, -fundī, -fāsum, tr. [fundō, pour], surround; pass, gather round.
circumiciō, -icere, -iēci, -iectum, tr. [iacēō, throw. App. 7], throw, set or place around. II, 6.
circummittō, -mittere, -miśi, -mis sum, tr. [mittō, send], send around.
circumnātō, -tr. [manēō, fortify], wall around; fortify, protect. II, 29.
circumplector, -plecti, -plexus sum, tr. [plectō, fold], enfold, enclose.
circumsistō, -sistere, -stī, —, tr. [sistō, stand], stand, flock or rally around, surround, hem in. I, 48; III, 15.
circumspiciō, -spicere, -spexi, -spectum, tr. [specīō, look], look (around) for or at, consider, examine.
circumvālō, i, tr. [vāllum, rampart], surround with a rampart, beleaguer, invest.
circumvehō, -vehère, -vexi, -vectum, tr. [vehō, carry], carry around; pass, ride around.
circumvenīō, -venire, -vēni, -ven tum, tr. [venīō, come], come or get around, surround, cut off, beset; betray, defraud. I, 25.
cis, prep. with acc., on this side of. II, 3.
cisalpinus, -a, -um, adj. [Alpēs], Cisalpine, lying on the south side of the Alps.
cisrhēnānus, -a, -um, adj. [Rhēnus], on this (the western) side of the Rhine.
cita, -ae, m., Galus Fusius Cita (gū/yūs für'ū-ūs si'tē), a Roman knight.
citātus, -a, -um, adj. [pf. part. of citō, put in motion], swift. IV, 10.
citorius, -īs, comp. adj. (App. 43), nearer, hither; Gallia Citoria (= Cisalpina), Cisalpine Gaul, on the nearer (Italian) side of the Alps. I, 10.
citō, adv., quickly, speedily. Comp., citius; sup., citissimē. IV, 33.
citēā, prep. with acc., on this side of. I, 13.
citēō, adv., hither; ultrō citēōque, back and forth. I, 42.
civis, -is, m., f., citizen.
civitas, -tātis, f. [civis, citizen], citizenship; the citizens (as forming a community), state, city. I, 2.
clam, adv., secretly. III, 18.
clāmitō, i, tr. [freq. of clāmō, cry out], cry out repeatedly, exclaim.
clāmor, -ōris, m. [clāmō, cry out], outcry, noise, din, clamor. II, 11.
clandestinus, -a, -um, adj. [clam, secretly], hidden, secret.

clārus, -a, -um, adj., clear, loud.

classis, -is, f., fleet. III, 11.

Claudius, -di, m., Appius Claudius Pulcher (āp’T-ius klāw’di-ūs pūl’kär), consul 54 B.C.

claudō, claudere, claudi, claustrum, tr., shut, close; agmen claudere, close the line, bring up the rear. I, 28.

clāvus, -i, m., nail, spike. III, 13.

clémentia, -ae, f. [clēmēns, gentle], gentleness, kindness, mercy, clemency. II, 14.

clēns, -entis, m., f. [clēnēs, hear, obey], client, vassal, dependent, retainer. I, 4.

clientēla, -ae, f. [clēnēs, a client], the relation of client and patron; patronage, vassalage; clients.

clīvus, -i, m., slope, ascent.

Clodius, -di, m., Publius Clodius Pulcher (pūb’ī-liūs klō’di-ūs pūl’kēr), murdered by Milo in 52 B.C.

CN., abbr. for Gnaeus (nē’ūs), a Roman praenomen. IV, 1.

co-, see con-.

coacervō, -i, tr. [acervō, heap up; acervus, heap] heap or mass together, pile one upon another. II, 27.

coāctus, see cōgō.

coāctus, -ātus, m. [cōgō, compel], compulsion.

coamentō, i, tr., join, connect.

cōartō, i, tr., crowd together.

Cocosātēs, -ētis, m. (De), the Cocosates (kōkō’sātēz). III, 27.

coēgī, see cōgō.

coēmē, -eremē, -ēmlē, -ētmptum, tr. [ēmē, buy], buy, buy up. I, 3.

coēō, -ire, -ii, —, intr. [ēō, go. App. 84]. assemble.

coepi, coepisse (App. 86 and a), tr., began, commenced, undertook; coepitis, pf. part., begun, commenced. I, 15.

cōerceō, 2, tr. [arēceō, shut up], shut up completely, restrain, check. I, 27.

cōgitō, i, tr. and intr. [co- + agitō, consider], consider thoroughly or carefully, ponder, reflect; think, purpose, plan. I, 38; III, 24.

cognātiō, -ōnis, f. [co- + (g)natōs, born], blood relationship; family, clan.

cognōscō, -nōscere, -nōvī, -nitetum, tr. [co- + (g)nōscō, learn], learn, ascertain; study, investigate; cf., I have learned, I know (App. 198, I, a). I, 19.

cōgō, cōgere, cōgēri, cōactum, tr. [co- + agō, lead], lead or bring together, collect, draw together, assemble; force, compel, constrain. I, 4.

cohors, -tis, f., cohort. I, 40; II, 5.

cohortātio, -ōnis, f. [cohortor, encourage], encouragement, cheering. II, 25.

cohortor, 1, tr. [co- + horitor, encourage], encourage greatly, cheer, animate. I, 25.

collātus, see cōnferēs.

collaudō, i, tr. [con- + laudō, praise], praise highly.

colligō, i, tr. [co- + ligō, bind], bind or fasten together. I, 26.

colligō, -ligere, -lāgī, -lēctum, tr. [co- + legō, gather], gather together, collect; acquire; sē colligere, collect one’s self, rally. III, 67.

collis, -iis, m., hill. I, 22.

colllocūs, i, tr. [co- + locōs, place], place, set, station; arrange; nūptum collocāre, to give in marriage. I, 15.

colloquium, -qui, n. [colloquor, talk together], talking together; conference, parley, interview. I, 54.

colloquor, -i (locūs), -locūtus sum, intr. [co- + loquor, speak], speak with, converse, confer, have a conference. I, 19.

colō, colere, colui, cultum, tr., cultivate, dwell in; honor, worship. IV, 1.

colōnia, -ae, f., colony, settlement.

color, -ōris, m., color.

com-, see con-.

combrūre, -brure, -ussē, -ustum, tr. [com(b)- + brūrē, burn], burn up. I, 5.

comes, -itis, m., f., companion.

comitium, -ti, n. [com+ēs, go], place of assembly or meeting; pl., an election.

comitor, i, tr. [comes, companion], accompany, follow.
commemōtus, -ās, m. [commēō, go back and forth], trip, voyage; supplies, provisions. I, 34; II, 5.
commemorō, 1, tr. [memorō, call to mind], remind one of; state, mention. I, 14.
commendō, 1, tr. [mandō, entrust], entrust; surrender. IV, 27.
commēō, 1, intr. [meō, go], go back and forth; with ad, resort to, visit. I, 1.
commilitō, -ōnis, m. [milites, soldier], fellow soldier, comrade. IV, 25.
communus, adv. [manus, hand], hand to hand, in close contest. I, 52.
commissūrus, -ae, s. [commitō, join], uniting, joint, juncture.
committē, -mittere, -missi, -missum, tr. [mittō, send], join, splice; commit (a crime), do; allow, permit; entrust; proelium committere, join or begin battle. I, 13.
Committus, -mi, m., Committus (kōmī-tus), a chief of the Areuates. IV, 21.
comedē, adv. [commodus, convenient], conveniently; readily, easily, fitly; satis commodē, to much advantage, very easily. I, 25.
commodum, -i, n. [commodus, convenient], convenience, interest, advantage. I, 35; III, 23.
commodus, -a, -um, adj. [modus, measure], in full measure; convenient, suitable, satisfactory. I, 42.
commonefaciō, -facere, -feci, -factum, tr. [moneō, remind + facio, make], remind forcibly. I, 19.
commoror, 1, intr. [moror, tarry], wait, stop.
commoveō, -moveō, -movēre, -mōvē, -mōtum, tr. [moveō, move], move or excite thoroughly, rouse, agitate, alarm. I, 13.
communīcō, 1, tr. [commūnĭs, common], make common, communicate, impart, share. IV, 13.
communīcō, 4, tr. [mūnĭs, fortify], fortify strongly, interynch. I, 8.
commūnis, -ae, adj., common, general; rēs commūnĭs, the common interest. I, 30; II, 4.
commuttaō, -ōnis, s. [commutō, change], a changing, change. I, 14.
commutātō, 1, tr. [mutō, change], change or alter completely, change, exchange. I, 33.
comparō, 1, tr. [parō, prepare], prepare, get ready; aquire, gain, secure; prepare for. I, 8.
comparō, 1, tr. [pār, equal], place in comparison, compare. I, 31.
compellō, -pellere, -pullō, -pullum, tr. [pellō, drive], drive together, assemble, collect; force, compel. II, 23.
compendium, -dī, n., gain, profit.
comperī, -piritē, -pertēr, -pertum, tr. [parāb, procure], find out with certainty, discover, ascertain. I, 22.
complector, -plescī, -plesus sum, tr. [plicēō, fold], embrace, clasp, enclose. I, 20.
compleō, -plēre, -plēvi, -plēsum, tr. [obsoleō, plēō, fill], fill up or completely; complete; cover. I, 24.
complexus, see complector.
complūres, -a, adj. [plūs, more], several, many; a great many. I, 8.
comportō, 1, tr. [portō, carry], carry together, collect, bring. I, 16.
comprehendō, -prehendere, -prehendī, -prehēnsum, tr. [prehendō (=prehendō), seize], grasp or lay hold of, seize, catch, arrest; take, catch (ēre). III, 14.
comprobō, 1, tr. [probō, approve], approve, sanction, justify.
compulsus, see compellō.
con-, com-, co- [the forms taken by cum in composition], together; completely; or mere emphasis.
cōnātum, -i, n. [cōnor, try], attempt, undertaking. I, 3.
cōnātus, -us, m. [cōnor, try], attempt, undertaking. I, 3.
cōnātus, see cōnōr.
concedō, -cōdere, -cessi, -cessum, tr. and intr. [cōdō, go], go away, depart, withdraw; grant, yield; allow, permit. I, 7.
concessus, -us, m. [concedē, permit], concession, permission.
concīdō, -cidere, -cēdi, -cēsum, tr. [caedō, cut], cut down, slay, kill; cut off. I, 12.
concidō, -cidere, -cidi, —, intr. [cadē, fall], fall down, fall. III, 12.
conciliō, i, tr. [concilium, assembly], bring together; gain or win over, secure; reconcile, conciliate. I, 5.
concilium, -II, n., gathering, assembly, council. I, 25.
concisus, see concidō.
concitō, i, tr. [citō, put in motion], stir up, rouse, instigate, incite.
concitāmō, i, intr. [ciāmō, cry out], shout or cry out, call aloud. I, 47; III, 18.
concludō, -clādere, -clādi, -clāsum, tr. [claudō, close], shut up; conclūsum mare, an inland sea. III, 9.
Concomnetodumnus, -I, m., Concomnetodumnus (kōn-kōn'mō-tō-dūm'nūs), a chief of the Cnuteses.
concrepō, -crepāre, -crepuli, -crepitum, intr., clash.
concurreō, -currere, -currī, -cursum, intr. [currō, run], run or rush together; hurry, run, rush; run to the rescue; come, gather. I, 45; II, 20.
concurrō, i, intr. [freq. of concurreō], run, run about.
concursus, -sus, m. [concurreō, run], a running together, attack, onset; collision. I, 3.
concursus, see concurrō.
condemnō, i, tr. [damnō, condemn], convict.
condition, -ānis, f., condition, state; agreement, stipulation, terms. I, 28.
condōnō, i, tr. [dōnō, give], give up; pardon, forgive. I, 20.
Condusus, -ōrum, m. (At), the Condusus (kōn-drū’sī). II, 4.
condōcō, -dōcere, -dōxi, -ductum, tr. [dūcō, lead], lead or bring together, assemble; conduct; hire. I, 4.
concūcō, see concidō.
condūcō, -ducere, -duxi, -ductum, tr. [ducō, bring]. App, 51], bring or get together, collect, gather, carry, bring; crowd together; ascribe to; put off, defer; compare; sé condūcere, betake one’s self, take refuge. I, 16.
concūrō, -cōnferre, contulit, collātum, tr. [ferō, bring]. App, 51], bring or get together, collect, gather, carry, bringing; crowd together; ascribe to; put off, defer; compare; sé condūcere, betake one’s self, take refuge. I, 16.
concūrō, -cōnferre, contulit, collātum, tr. [ferō, bring]. App, 51], bring or get together, collect, gather, carry, bringing; crowd together; ascribe to; put off, defer; compare; sé condūcere, betake one’s self, take refuge. I, 16.
condusus, -ānis, f., [condusō, flow together], a flowing together, confluence. IV, 15.
condusō, -ducere, -duxi, -ductum, intr. [ducō, strike], strike together; pass, be distracted.
condūcō, -ducere, -duxi, -ductum, intr. [ducō, strike], strike against; contend, fight. II, 5.
condusus, -ānis, f. [condusō, flow together], a flowing together, confluence. IV, 15.
condusus, -ānis, f. [condusō, flow together], a flowing together, confluence. IV, 15.
condusus, -ānis, f., [condusō, flow together], a flowing together, confluence. IV, 15.
condusus, -ānis, f. [condusō, flow together], a flowing together, confluence. IV, 15.
condusus, -ānis, f. [condusō, flow together], a flowing together, confluence. IV, 15.
condusus, -ānis, f. [condusō, flow together], a flowing together, confluence. IV, 15.
condusus, -ānis, f. [condusō, flow together], a flowing together, confluence. IV, 15.
condusus, -ānis, f. [condusō, flow together], a flowing together, confluence. IV, 15.
condusus, -ānis, f. [condusō, flow together], a flowing together, confluence. IV, 15.
condusus, -ānis, f. [condusō, flow together], a flowing together, confluence. IV, 15.
condusus, -ānis, f. [condusō, flow together], a flowing together, confluence. IV, 15.
condusus, -ānis, f. [condusō, flow together], a flowing together, confluence. IV, 15.
condusus, -ānis, f. [condusō, flow together], a flowing together, confluence. IV, 15.
condusus, -ānis, f. [condusō, flow together], a flowing together, confluence. IV, 15.
condusus, -ānis, f. [condusō, flow together], a flowing together, confluence. IV, 15.
condusus, -ānis, f. [condusō, flow together], a flowing together, confluence. IV, 15.
condusus, -ānis, f. [condusō, flow together], a flowing together, confluence. IV, 15.
condusus, -ānis, f. [condusō, flow together], a flowing together, confluence. IV, 15.
CONJECTURA 18 CONSPICIO

put; put together logically, conjecture; in fugam conciere, put to flight. I, 26.

conjectura, -ae, f. [coniiciö, conjecture], inference, conjecture. conjectus, see coniciö.

coníctum, adv. [coniungö, join], jointly.

coniungö, -iungere, -iungi, -iunctum, tr. [iungö, join], join with or together, connect, unite, bind. I, 37; II, 3.

coniünx, -iujis, f. [coniungö, join], wife.

coniurâtio, -onis, f. [coniurö, swear together], a swearing together; plot, conspiracy; secret league, confederacy. I, 2.

coniurö, i. intr. [iurö, swear], swear or take an oath together, league together, conspire. II, 1.

cónor, i. intr., attempt, endeavor, try. I, 3.

conquisésco, -quisécere, -quisivi, -quisitum, intr. [quisécö, to rest, quiës, rest], lie down to rest.

conquirö, -quirere, -quisivi, -quisitum, tr. [quaserö, search], seek for carefully, search for, hunt up. I, 27.

cönsanguineus, -a, -um, adj. [san-guis, blood], of the same blood; as nouns, kinsman, relative. I, 11.

cönsendö, -scendere, -scendi, -scéntum, tr. [scandö, climb], climb, mount; go on board, embark. IV, 23.

cönscientia, -ae, f. [cöncius, conscious], consciousness, knowledge, sense.

cöncisciö, -sciscere, -scivi, -scítum, tr. [sciscö, resolve], resolve upon; aibi mortem cöncisciö, commit suicide. I, 4.

cönctus, -a, -um, adj. [scioö, know], conscious; aware. I, 14.

cöncrìbö, -scribere, -scriptum, tr. [scriböö, write], write together in a list; levy; enroll, enlist; write. I, 10.

cönseérö, i. tr. [sacröö, dedicate], dedicate, consecrate.

cönseerö, i. tr. [sector, freq. of se-

quor, follow], follow eagerly, pursue, chase. III, 15.

cönsēctūtus, see cösequor.

cönsēnsio, -onis, f. [cönsentiö, agree], agreement.

cönsensus, -ús, m. [cönsentiö, agree], united opinion, agreement, consent; coalition. I, 30; II, 28.

cönsentiö, -sentire, -sēni, -sēnum, intr. [sentioö, feel], think together; agree, combine. II, 3.

cösequor, -sequi, -sequēsum, tr. [sequor, follow], follow up; go after, pursue; reach, overtake; gain, attain, accomplish; ensue, succeed. I, 13.

cönservö, i. tr. [servöö, save], save, spare, protect; observe, maintain. II, 12.

Cönsidius, -dī, m., Publius Considius (pūb/ī-liūs kōn-āld’ītūs), a one of Cæsar’s officers. I, 21.

cönsidö, -sidera, -sēdi, -sēsum, intr. [sūdöö, sit down], sit down together, settle; take a position, halt, encamp. I, 21.

cönsiliö, -lum, n., consultation, deliberation; counsel, advice; plan, design; measure, course of action; judgment; prudence, wisdom; an assembly for deliberation, council, council of war; commanö cönsiliö, by, or in accordance with, general action; pūbliö cönsiliöö, by action of the state; cönsiliö capere or inire, form or adopt a plan; cönsiliö habēre, think, consider. I, 5.

cönsimilis, -e, adj. [similis, like], very like, similar. II, 11.

cönsistö, -sistera, -stītī, —, intr. [sīstöö, stand], take a stand or position, keep one’s position, stand, form (of soldiööre); stop, halt, remain; stay; (of shiööps) ride at anchor; consist in, depend or rest on. I, 13.

cönsobrinœ, -i, m., cousin.

cönsölor, i. tr. [sölöör, comfort], cheer, comfort. I, 20.

cönspectus, -ús, m. [cönspeciöö, look at], sight, view; presence. I, 11.

cönspeciöö, -specere, -spexi, -spectum, tr. [speciöö, look], look at, observe, descry, perceive. I, 47; II, 21.
cōnsīpicor, i, tr. [specīō, look], observe, discern, perceive. I. 25.
cōnspīrō, i, intr. [spīrō, breathe], combine, conspire. III. 10.
cōnstanter, adv. [cōnstō, stand firm], uniformly, consistently; resolutely. II. 2.
cōnstantia, -ae, f. [cōnstō, stand firm], firmness, steadfastness. I. 40.
cōnsternō, -sternere, -strāvī, -strā-tum, tr. [sternō, strew], strew over, cover over. IV. 17.
cōnstrēnō, i, tr. [cōnstrēnō, -ere, strew over], confound, perplex, dismay.
cōnstitō, i, tr., press or crowd closely.
cōnstituō, -stituere, -stitul, -stitū-tum, tr. [stātū, set up], set up, erect, construct; appoint, decide, decree, determine, establish, set, settle; (of troops) draw up station; (of ships) anchor, station; raise (a legion). I. 3.
cōnstitūre, -stīti, -stītū-tum, intr. [stō, stand], stand firm; depend on; be complete; cost; impersonal, it is agreed, certain, evident, known. III. 6.
cōnstrātus, see cōnstrēnō.
cōnsūscō, -suēscere, -suēvī, -suē-tum, intr. [suēscō, become used], become accustomed; yf. (App. 193, I. a), be accustomed, be wont; cōnsūstētus, pf. part. as adj., accustomed, usual, wonted. I. 14.
cōnsūstētō, -īnis, f. [cōnsuēscō, become accustomed], habit, custom, practice; mode of life. I. 31; II. 17.
cōnsūstētus, see cōnsuēscō.
cōnsūl, -ūlis, m., a consul, one of the two chief magistrates elected annually by the Roman people. I. 2.
cōnsūlātus, -us, m. [cōnsūl, consul], consulship. I. 35.
cōnsulō, -ere, -ui, -tum, tr. and intr.; tr., take counsel, consult, consider; intr. with dat., take counsel for, study the interests of, take care of; spare. I. 53.
cōnsūtō, i, intr. [frequ. of cōnsulō, take counsel], reflect, consider, take counsel.
continentias, -ae, f. [contineō, hold], self-restraint, moderation.
contineō, -tinerē, -tinui, -tentum, tr. [teneō, hold], hold together; hold, keep, restrain; bound, shut in; contain; sē continēre, with abl., remain in, on or within. I, 1.
continēgō, -tingere, -tigī, -tāctum, tr. and intr. [tangō, touch], touch, reach; extend to; befall, happen to. I, 38.
continuātiō, -onis, f. [continuus, continuous], continuance, succession. III, 39.
continūō, adv. [continuus, continuous], immediately, forthwith.
continuus, -a, -um, adj. [contineō, hold together], holding together, unbroken, uninterrupted, continuous. I, 48; IV, 34.
cōntiō, -onis, f. [for conventiō; conveniō, come together], assembly, mass-meeting; address (before such a meeting).
contrā, adv. and prep. with acc.: (1) as adv., against him or them; on the other hand; contrā atque, contrary to what; (2) as prep., against, contrary to; opposite, facing, I, 18.
contrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -tractum, tr. [trahō, draw], draw or bring together, assemble, collect; draw into smaller compass, contract. I, 34; IV, 22.
contrārius, -a, -um, adj. [contrā, against], lying over against, opposite, facing; ex contrāriō, on the contrary. II, 18.
contrōversia, -ae, f. [contrā, against + versus, turned], dispute, quarrel, controversy.
contulī, see cōnferō.
contumēlia, -ae, f., affront, indignity, insult; injury, violence. I, 14.
convalēscō, -valēscere, -valui, —, intr. [valēscō, incept. of valeō, be well], gain health or strength, recover.
convallis, -is, f. [vallis, valley], enclosed valley, defile. III, 20.
convehō, -vehere, -veklī, -vectum, tr. [vehō, carry], carry or bring together, collect.
conveniō, -venire, -vēni, -ventum, tr. and intr. [venīō, come], come together, assemble; convene, meet; come to, arrive; to be agreed upon; impersonal, be convenient, suitable, necessary. I, 6.
conventus, -ús, m. [conveniō, come together], a coming together, meeting, assembly; court. I, 18.
convertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versum, tr. and intr. [vertō, turn], turn completely, turn or wheel around; turn, change; regna convertere, face about. I, 23.
Convicτōriāvis, -is, m., Convicτoriāvis (kön-vik-to-ri-ā-vis), a Has-duan chief.
vincō, -vincere, -vičī, -victum, tr. [vincō, conquer], conquer completely; prove. I, 40.
convocō, i, tr. [vocō, call], call together, summon, assemble. I, 16.
coorior, -orīri, -ortus sum, intr. [co-iorior, rise], arise, spring up, break out. III, 7.
cōpia, -ae, f., supply, plenty, abundance, number; pl., resources; forces, troops. I, 2.
cōpiōsus, -a, -um, adj. [cōpis, plenty], well supplied, wealthy. I, 23.
cōpulā, -ae, f., grappling-hook. III, 13.
cor, cordis, n., heart; cordi esse, be dear.
cōram, adv., face to face, in person. I, 32.
Coriolātitēs, -um, m. (Bb), the Coriolātitēs (kō'rē-lā-tēs). II, 34.
coriuμ, -ri, n., skin, hide, leather.
cornu, -us, n., horn; (of an army) flank, wing. I, 52; II, 23.
corōna, -ae, f., wreath, chaplet; ring, circle; sub corōna vēndere, sell at auction. III, 16.
corpus, -orīs, n., body; person; a (dead) body. I, 25.
corrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptum, tr. [con-+rumpō, break], destroy, ruin.
cortex, -icis, m., f., bark. II, 33.
Cōrus, -ī, m., the northwest wind.
cotidiānus, -a, -um, adj. [cotidiē,
COTIDIE, adv. [quot, how many+diēs, day], daily, every day. I, 18.

Cotta, see Aurunculus.

Cotuātus, -1, m., Cotusus (kōtūs), a chief of the Carnutes.

Cotus, -1, m., Cotus (kōtūs), a Haeduan noble.

crassitūdō, -inis, f. [crassus, thick], thickness. III, 13.

Crassus, -1, m. (1) Marcus Licinius Crassus (mārk'kūs II-sīn'-ī-ūs krass'ūs), triumvir with Caesar and Pompey, I, 21; (2) his son, Marcus Licinius Crassus, one of Caesar's quaestors; (3) a second son, Publius Licinius Crassus, one of Caesar's lieutenants. I, 62; II, 24.

crātēs, -is, f., wicker-work; fascine (bundle of sticks for filling trenches, etc.) IV, 17.

crēber, -bra, -brum, adj., thick, close, repeated, numerous, frequent, at short intervals. Comp. crēbrior; sup. crēberrimus (App. 49). II, 1.

crēbrō, adv. [crēber, repeated], repeatedly, often.

crēdō, -dere, -didī, -dītum, tr., believe, suppose; entrust. II, 33.

cremō, I, tr., burn. I, 4.

creō, I, tr., create; elect, choose, appoint. I, 16.

crēsō, crēscere, crēvi, crētum, intr., grow or increase (in size, power, age, etc.), swell. I, 20.

Crētēs, -um, m., the Cretes (krē'tēs), better, Cretans, natives of the island of Crete. II, 7.

Crittognātus, -1, m., Critognatus (kriti'ō-gnat'ūs), a chief of the Arverni.

cruciatūs, -ās, m. [cruciō, torture; cru, cross], torture, torment. I, 31; II, 31.

crūdēlītās, -tātis, f. [crūdēlis, cruel], cruelty, harshness. I, 32.

crūdēlīter, adv. [crūdēlis, cruel], cruelly. I, 31.

crūs, crēris, n., leg.

cubile, -is, n. [cubō, lie down], bed, resting-place.

culmen, -inis, n., top, ridge. III, 2.

culpa, -ae, f., blame, fault, guilt. IV, 27.

cultus, -ūs, m. [colō, cultivate], cultivation; civilization; mode of life; dress. I, 1.

cum, conj., when, as, while; after, as soon as; whenever; since, because; although; cum ... tum, not only ... but also, both ... and; cum primum, as soon as. See App. 238-242. I, 1.

cum, prep. with abl., with, along with, together with. I, 1.

cānestātiō, -onis, f. [cānotor, delay], delaying, delay, hesitation, reluctance. III, 18.

cānotor, 1, intr., delay, hesitate, be reluctant. III, 23.

cānotus, -a, -um, adj. [for conīnctus, joined together], all together, all. II, 29.

cuneātum, adv. [cuneus, wedge], in wedge-shaped masses.

cuneus, -I, m., wedge, wedge-shaped mass.

cuniculus, -I, m., burrow; tunnel, mine. III, 21.

cupīdō, adv. [cupidus, desirous], desirously, eagerly. I, 15.

cupidītās, -tātis, f. [cupidus, eager], eagerness, desire, greed, avarice. I, 2.

cupīdus, -a, -um, adj. [cupīō, desire], eager, desirous, zealous, fond. I, 2.

cupō, cupere, cuplīī, cupītum, tr. and intr., long or be eager for, desire; wish well to, favor. I, 18.

cūr, interrog. and rel. adv., why, for what reason; for which reason, wherefore. I, 40; IV, 16.

cūra, -ae, f., care, attention. I, 33.

cūrō, I, tr. [cūra, care], care for, take care of, provide for; with gerundive (App. 236, II, b), have, order. I, 13.

currus, -ūs, m., chariot; wagon. IV, 33.

cursus, -ūs, m. [currō, run], running, speed; course, career; passage, voyage. I, 48; II, 23.

custōdia, -ae, f. [custōs, guard], custody, guard (state of being guarded); pl., guards, keepers. II, 29.

custōdiō, I, tr. [custōs, guard], guard.

custōs, -ōdis, m., guard, watchman, spy. I, 20.
DEFEBO

dēcērum, -a, -um, adj. [decimus, tenth], of or belonging to the tenth; decuman; decumāna portā, the rear gate (of the camp). II. 24.
decurītūs, -ōnis, m. [decem, ten], decurion, a cavalry officer in charge of a decuria, a squad of ten. I. 23.
decurrō, -currēre, -currīri, -currēsum, intr. [currō, run], run down hurry down. II. 19.
dēdecus, -ōris, n. [deceus, honor], dishonor, disgrace. IV. 25.
dēdi, see dēdō.
dēdīdi, see dēdō.
dēditicius, -a, -um, adj. [dēdō, surrender], surrendered; as noun, one surrendered, prisoner, subject. I. 27.
dēditō, -ōnis, f. [dēdō, surrender], surrender, capitulation. I. 27.
dēditus, see dēdō.
dēdō, -dere, -dīdī, -dītum, tr. [dō, give], give up or over, yield, surrender; devote; sē dēdere, submit, surrender. II. 15.
dēducō, -ducere, -ductū, -ductum, tr. [ducō, lead], lead down or away, withdraw; bring, conduct, lead; influence; launch (shēpēs); give in marriage. I. 44; II. 2.
dēfatigātiō, -ōnis, f. [dēfatigō, weary], fatigue, weariness. III. 19.
dēfatigō, i, tr. [fatigō, weary], completely weary, fatigue, tire out, exhaust. I. 40.
dēfectiō, -ōnis, f. [dēficiō, fall], falling away, desertion, revolt. III. 10.
dēfendō, -fendere, -fendi, -fēnsum, tr. [fendō, strike], keep or ward off, repel; defend, protect. I. 11.
dēfēnsiō, -ōnis, f. [dēfendō, defend], a defending, defence. II. 7.
dēfensor, -ōris, m. [dēfendō, defend], defender, protector; (means of) defense. II. 6.
dēferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātum, tr. [ferō, carry]. App. 81], bring from or down, carry, take; report, disclose; bring be-
fore, refer; bestow, confer; dēlātus (sometimes), falling; coming by chance. II. 4.

defessus, -a, -um, adj. [pf. part. of dēfētiscor, grow weary], wearied, exhausted. I. 25.
dēficīō, -ficēre, -ficēl, -fectum, tr. and intr. (facēre, make), fail, desert, fall away, revolt. II. 10.
dēfigō, -figere, -fixī, -fixum, tr. [figō, fix], fix or fasten down, drive in, plant. IV. 17.
dēfinīō, i, tr. (finiō, limit), mark off; define, determine.
dēfixus, see dēfigō.
dēfore, fut. inf. of dēsum.
dēformis, -a, adj. [forma, form], misshaped, deformed, unsightly. IV. 2.
dēfugīō, -fugere, -fugī, -fugitum, tr. [fugī, flee], flee from, shun.
dēful, see dēsum.
dēlīcō, -icēre, -icēl, -iectum, tr. [laćō, throw. App. 7], hurl or cast down; dislodge; kill; foil, disappoint. I. 8.
dēlectus, -ūs, m. [dēlīcō, cast down], declivity, slope, descent. II. 8.
dēnceps, adv., one after the other, in turn, successively. III. 29.
dēndae, adv. [dē+inde, thence], thereupon, then, next. I. 25.
dēlātus, see dēserō.
dēlectō, i, tr., delight; pass., delight in, take pleasure in. IV. 2.
dēlectūs, see dēligō.
dēlīseō, dēlīserē, dēlīsvī, dēlīstum, tr., rub out, efface, destroy, annihilate. II. 27.
dēlibērō, i, tr. [libra, balance], weigh well; consider, deliberate. I. 7.
dēlibrō, i, tr. [liber, bark], peel.
dēlictum, -ūm, n., fault, offence.
dēligō, i, tr. [ligō, bind], bind or tie down, fasten, Moor. I. 53; IV. 29.
dēligō, -ligere, -līgī, -līctum, tr. [legō, choose], pick out, select, choose. I. 2.
dēlītēscō, -lītēscere, -lītūl, —, intr. (lātēscō, incept. of lātēō, lie hidden), hide one's self, lurk. IV. 32.
dēmentia, -ae, f. [mēns, mind], madness, folly. IV. 13.
dēmetō, -metere, -messul, -messum
tr. [metō, reap], mow, reap. IV. 32.
dēmigrō, i, intr. [migrō, move, migrate], move from or away, emigrate, remove. IV. 4.
dēminūō, -minuere, -minul, -minutum, tr. [minūō, lessen], lessen, diminish, impair. I. 18.
dēmittē, -mittere, -misē, -missum, tr. [mittē, send], send, thrust or let down; sink; bow; sē dēmittere, come or get down, descend; sē animō dēmittere, lose courage; dēmissus, pf. part. as adj., low. I. 32.
dēmō, dēmere, dēmpel, dēmpūntum, tr. [dē+emō, take], take down, remove.
dēmōnstrā, i, tr. [mōnstrō, show], point out, show, explain, describe; declare, state, say. I. 11.
dēmoror, i, tr. (moror, delay), hinder, delay. III. 6.
dēmum, adv., at length, at last, finally. I. 17.
dēnegō, i, tr. [negō, deny], refuse. I. 42.
dēnī, -ae, -a, distr. num. adj. [decem, ten], ten each, ten at a time, by tens. I. 43.
dēnique, adv., and then, thereupon, finally, at last; at least. I. 22.
dēnūs, -a, -um, adj., closely set or packed, thick, dense. II. 22.
dēnuntiō, i, tr. [nuntiō, announce], announce, give or send notice, declare, threaten. I. 36.
dēpellō, -pellere, -pull, -pulsum, tr. [pellō, drive], drive from or away, ward off. III. 25.
dēperdō, -perdere, -perdīdī, -perdītum, tr. [perdō, destroy], destroy utterly; forfeit, lose. I. 43; III. 22.
dēpereō, -ire, -iī, -ītum, intr. [pereō, perish; eō, App. 84], go to ruin, perish; be lost or undone.
dēpōnō, -pōnerē, -posul, -positum, tr. [pōnō, place], lay down or aside, put away, give up; place, station, deposit. I. 14.
dēpopular, i, tr. (popular, lay waste), lay waste, ravage. I. 11.
dēportō, i, tr. (portō, carry), carry off or away. III. 12.
dépósca, -posecor, -posrece, —, tr. [posec, demand], demand; call for.
dépositus, see dépóca.
déprecátor, m. [déprec, plead for], mediate, intercessor. I. 9.
déprec, i, tr. and intr. [prec, pray], pray for deliverance from; beg off; implore, plead for. II. 31.
déprehendé, -prehendere, -prehend, -prehénsum, tr. [prehend (prén-
dó), seize], seize, capture, catch.
dépugná, i, intr. [pugná, fight], fight decisively; contend.
dépulsus, see dépóllo.
dérect, adv. [dérectus, straight], straight. IV, 17.
dérectus, -a, -um, adj. [dérígó, put in line], straight. IV, 17.
dérigó, -rigere, -reri, -rectum, tr. [regó, direct], put in line; arrange, draw up, put in order.
dérvó, i, tr. [rivus, stream], draw off.
dérogó, i, tr. [rogó, ask], take away, withdraw.
déscendó, -scendere, -scendi, -scéndsum, intr. [scándó, climb], climb or go down, descend; have recourse to, resort.
désecó, -secare, -secu, -sectum, tr. [secó, cut], cut away or off.
déseró, -serere, -serul, -sertum, tr. [seró, entwine, join], disjoin; abandon, desert, forsake; désertus, pf. part. as adj., deserted, solitary. I, 45; II, 25.
désertor, -óris, m. [déseró, desert], desert.

déslide, i, tr., feel the lack of, miss, lose; desire, wish, wish for. IV, 2.
désidia, -ae, f., inactivity, idleness.
désignó, i, tr. [signó, mark], mark out; mean, indicate. I, 18.
désilí, -silire, -silú, -sultum, intr. [salió, leap], leap from or down, alight, dismount. IV, 2.
désistó, -sister, -stí, -stítum, intr. [stistó, stand], abandon, cease, give up. I, 8.
déspectus, see dépisció.
déspectus, -us, m. [déspició, look down upon], a looking down, view. III, 14.
déspéritió, -ónis, f. [désperó, despair], despair, hopelessness.
désperó, i, intr. [spéró, hope], despair, be hopeless, lack confidence; déspé-
rátus, as part., from transitive meaning, despairs of; as adj., desperate. I, 18.
déspició, -spicère, -spexi, -spectum, tr. [speció, look], look down; look down upon, scorn, despise. I, 13.
déspolí, i, tr. [spolió, strip], deprive. II, 31.
déstí, i, tr., fasten, secure; catch firmly; appoint, choose. III, 14.
déstiti, see désístó.
déstitiu, -stituere, -stutum, -stitum, tr. [statuó, set up], set or place aside, forsake, desert. I, 16.
déstringó, -stringere, -strínxí, -strictum, tr. [stringó, bind tight], unbind, unsheathe, draw (gladium). I, 25.
désum, desse, désul, —, intr. [sum, be. App. 66], be wanting, be absent from. fall. I, 40; II, 21.
désuper, adv. [super, above], from above. I, 52.
déterior, -inus, comp. adj. (App. 43), worse, less. I, 36.
déterré, 2, tr. [terreó, frighten], frighten away or off, hinder, deter, prevent. I, 17.
déstestor, i, tr., execute, curse.
déteine, -tinère, -tinul, -tuentum, tr. [teneó, hold], hold off or back; hinder, detain. III, 12.
détrahó, -trahere, -tráxi, -tractum, tr. [trahó, draw], draw off or away, withdraw, take off, remove. I, 42; II, 21.
détrictó, i, tr., refuse, avoid.
détrimentósus, -a, -um, adj. [détrimentum, harm], hurtful, harmful.
détrimentum, -i, n. [detréteró, rub or wear out], harm, loss, injury; dis-
aster, defeat. I, 44.
déter, see déferó.
détervó, i, tr. (turbó, disturb), drive off, dislodge.
détró, -trere, -ussi, -ustum, tr. [áró, burn], burn up, destroy.
DEUS

déus, -i (nom. pl., dí; dat. pl., díla), m., god, deity. I, 12.
déstus, see déstus.
dévehé, -vehere, -vexi, -vectum, tr. [véheó, carry], carry away, bring.
dévenió, -venire, -vénixi, -ventum, intr. [vénió, come], come down, go, come. II, 21.
dévéxus, -a, -um, adj. [dévéhéó, carry away or down], sloping; neut. pl. as nómna, slopes, hill-sides.
dévincó, -vincère, vici, -victum, tr. [vínco, conquer], conquer completely, subdue.
dévocó, 1, tr. [vóco, call], call off or away; bring.
dévoéé, -vóvére, -vóvi, -vítum, tr. [vóvéé, vow], vow away, consecrate, devote; dévóitus, pf. part. as nómna, a sworn follower. III, 22.
déxter, -tra, -trum, adj., on the right, right. I, 53; II, 23.
déxters, -a, f. [dexiters, right; sc. manus], the right hand. I, 20.
dí-, see dis-.

Diábólintés, -um, m. (Bc), the Diábólintes (díábólin tézés). III, 9.
dióco, -ónis, f., dominion, authority, rule, sway. I, 32; II, 34.
dióco, 1, tr. [dícó, say], proclaim; give over, surrender.
dióca, dioecere, dixi, diictum, tr., say, tell, speak, express, mention; name, appoint; causam dioecere, plead a case; íis dioecere, administer justice. I, 1.
diócin, -ónis, f. [díció, say], speaking, pleading. I, 4.
diócum, -i, n. [pf. part. of dióco, say], saying, remark; command; díctio auditórum, obedient. I, 39.
dióco, -dicoere, -dixi, -dixitum, tr. [dícó, lead], lead or draw apart; separate, divide. III, 28.
díês, -di, m. and f., day; time; in diés, from day to day; diem ex diés, day after day. I, 4.
dís-. see dis.
díferé, -ferre, distúll, distásum, tr. and intr. [féró, carry. App. 81], scatter, spread; put off, defer; be different, differ. I, 1.
díícítás, -tátis, f. [díícílis, difficult], difficulty, trouble, embarrassment. II, 20.
díícíter, adv., with difficulty. Comp., díícílius.
díícó, --cliere, -cliusum, intr. [fuó, flow], flow in different directions, divide. IV, 10.
díícundus, -undere, -undius, tr. [fundó, pour], pour or spread out.
díigtus, -i, m., finger; as measure of length, a finger's breadth, the 18th part of a Roman foot; digitus pollex, the thumb. III, 13.
díignitás, -títis, f. [dígnus, worthy], worthiness, dignity, merit, rank. I, 43; III, 16.
dígnus, -a, -um, adj., worthy, deserving.
díll, see déus.
díércó, 1, tr. [dícíó, judge], decide.
díécoton, see díligó.
díécitum, -a, m. [diligó, choose], choice; levy.
díligenter, adv. [díligéns, careful], carefully; with exactness, pains or care. II, 5.
díligéntia, -ae, f. [díligéns, careful], carefulness, heedfulness, painstaking, care. I, 40; III, 20.
díligó, -ligere, -líxi, - líctum, tr. [legó, choose], single or choose out, esteem highly, love.
díécitó, -étíri, -énsus sum, tr. [métior, measure], measure out or off. II, 19.
dímicatói, -ónis, f. [dímécó, fight], fight, contest.
dímicó, 1, intr. [mícó, brandish], fight, struggle, contend. II, 21.
dímidius, -a, -um, adj. [medíus, middle], divided in the middle, half; neut. as nómna, a half.
dímittó, -mittere, -mis, -míssum, tr. [mittó, send], send in different directions, send away or off, dismiss;
break up; let go, let slip, let pass, give up, lose. I. 18.

dir-, see dis-.
dirimō, -imere, -ēmi, -ēmpum, tr. [ēmō, take], take apart, interrupt, break off. I. 46.
diripīs, -ripere, -ripul, -reptom, tr. [rapiō; seize], rend or tear asunder; plunder, pillage. II. 17.
dīs, Dītis, m., Dis (dis), Pluto (plū'tō), the god of the lower world.
dis, see deus.
dis- (di-, dif-, dir-), inseparable, apart, asunder, in different directions; negative, = Esh. un., not.
discēdō, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessum, intr. [cēdō, go], go away, depart, retire; leave (especially with ab or ex). I. 14.
disceptātōr, -ōris, m., judge, umpire.
discernērō, -cernere, -crēvi, -crētum, tr. [cernērō, separate], separate, keep apart.
discensus, -sus, m. [discēdō, depart], departure, withdrawal, absence. II. 14.
disciplina, -ae, f. [discō, learn], learning; discipline; instruction; system. I. 40; IV. 1.
discīndō, -cīndere, -clāsi, -clāsum, tr. [claudō, shut], shut off, hold or keep apart, separate. IV. 17.
discō, discērērē, didicīl, —, tr. and intr., learn, be taught. I. 13.
discrimen, -inis, m., danger, critical condition.
discutīō, -cutere, -ussi, -ussum, tr., clear away.
disiciō, -icere, -īciō, -iectum, tr. [iaciō, throw. App. 7], scatter, rout, disperse. I. 25.
dispar, -paris, adj. [pār, equal], unequal, ill-matched.
disparō, i, tr. [parō, prepare], separate.
dispergō, -spergere, -spersi, -spersum, tr. [spargō, scatter], scatter, disperse. I. 40; III. 28.
dispensō, -pōnere, -posui, -positum, tr. [pōnō, place], place apart or about; distribute, arrange, station. I. 8.
disputātiō, -ōnīs, f. [disputō, discuss], argument, discussion.
disputō, i, intr. [putō, reckon], discuss, debate about.
dissēnsiō, -ōnis, f. [dissentiō, think differently], disagreement, dissension.
dissentiō, -sentire, -sēnī, -sēnsum, intr. [sentīō, feel], differ, disagree.
disser-, -serere, -sēvi, -sītum, tr. [serō, sow], sow or set at intervals.
dissimulō, i, tr. [simulō, make like], disguise, conceal. IV. 6.
dissipō, i, tr., spread on all sides, scatter, disperse. II. 24.
dissuādeo, -suādēre, -suāsi, -suāsum, intr. [suādeō, advise], advise against.
distīnērē, -tinūl, -tinum, tr. [tēnō, hold], hold or keep apart; divide, isolate. II. 5.
distō, -stāre, —, —, intr. [sto, stand], stand apart; be apart, removed or separated. IV. 17.
distrāhō, -trahere, -trāxi, -tractum, tr. [trahō, drag], pull asunder, remove.
distribuō, -tribuere, -tribul, -tribum, tr. [tribuō, assign], assign, divide, distribute. III. 10.
distull, see differō.
ditissimus, sup. of dives.
dit, adv., for a long time, long; quam ditō, as long as; comp., dittius, longer, too long, any longer; sup., ditissimē, for the longest time. I. 14.
diurnus, -a, -um, adj. [diēs, day], of the day, by day, daily. I. 38.
dittinus, -a, -um, adj. [ditō, long], of long duration, long.
diurnitātis, -tātis, f. [diurnītūris long], long duration. I. 40; III. 4.
diurnītus, -a, -um, adj. [ditō, long], long. I. 14.
diversus, -a, -um, adj. [prt. part. of divertō, turn in different directions], diverse, different; separate, remote. II. 22.
dives, divitis, wealthy, rich. Sup., ditissimus. I. 2.

Diviciacus, -i, m., Divingiacus (Dīvī-shη̄kūs), (1), a chief of the Haedui, friendly to the Romans. I. 3. (2) a chief of the Sueviones. II. 4.
DIVICO 27 DUX

dubitatio, -onis, f. [dubitō, doubt], doubt, uncertainty; hesitation. I, 14.
dubitō, 1, intr. [dubius, doubtful], be uncertain; doubt; hesitate, delay. I, 17.
dubius, -a, -um, adj. uncertain, doubtful. I, 3.
ducenti, -ae, -a, (OC), card. num. adj. [duo, two + centum, hundred], two hundred. I, 2.
duēcō, duēcre, duēci, duēctum, tr., lead, conduct, guide, draw; bring, fetch; trace, construct, extend; deem, consider, judge; protract, defer. I, 3.
ductus, -us, m. [ducō, lead], leading, command.
dum, conj., while, as long as; till, until. I, 7.
Dumnorix, -igis, m., Dumnorix (dūn̄oriks), a Haeduan chieflain, brother of Diviciacus. I, 3.
duodecim, card. num. adj. [duo, two + decem, ten]; twelve. I, 5.
duodecimus, -a, -um, ord. num. adj. [duodecim, twelve], twelfth. II, 23.
duodēnā, -ae, -a, distrib. num. adj. [duodecim, twelve], twelve each, twelve at a time.
duodeviginti, card. num. adj. [duo, two + dē, from + viginti, twenty], eighteen. I, 23.
duplex, -plicis, adj. [duo, two + plicō, fold], twofold, double. II, 39.
duplicō, 1, tr. [duplex, double], double, increase. IV, 36.
duritia, -ae, f. [dārus, hard], hardness, hardship.
dūrē, 1, tr. [dārus, hard], make hard, harden.
Durocortorum, -I, n. (Bl). Durocortorum (dūroko-rōtō-rūm), the capital of the Remi, now Rheims.
dārus, -a, -um, adj., hard, rough, difficult, dangerous; severe, inolement. I, 48.
Dūrīs, -I, m., Quintus Laberius Durus (kwin’tus la-běr’ī-us dū’rūs), a tribune.
dux, ducis, m. [ducō, lead], leader, guide, commander. I, 21.
E

(only before consonants) **ex** (before vowels and some consonants), prep. with **ab**., originally denoting motion out of; (1) of place, out of, from away from; denoting position, in some phrases, on; **am** ex parte, on one side; (2) of time, from, after, since; **ex** itinerem, immediately after the march; (3) variously translated in other relations, from, out of, of, because of, in accordance with; **ex** regione, opposite. I, 2.

**ex**, adv. [=**e** viā], by that way, there.

**Eburōnēs**, -um, m. (Asg), the Eburones (ĕbřū-rōněz). II, 4.

**Eburovicēs**, -um, m. (Bd), the Aulerci Eburovicēs (aw-lěr'zi ĕbřū-rō-vi'zēz). III, 17.

**ēdico**, -discere, -didici, —, tr. [discō, learn], learn thoroughly, get by heart.

**ēditus**, -a, -um, adj. [pf. part. of ēdō, give out, raise up], elevated, lofty. II, 8.


**ēdocē**, -docère, -docul, -doctum, tr. [docē, teach], teach thoroughly, inform in detail, explain. III, 18.

**ēdoctē**, -docere, -dūxī, -ductum, tr. [docē, lead], lead out or forth; draw (a sword). I, 10.

**ēfeminō**, I, tr. [ex-fēmina, woman], make effeminate, enrave, enfeeble. I, 1.

**ēferci**, -fercre, —, -ferctum, tr., fill completely, stop up.

**ēfere**, -fferre, -extul, -ētātum, tr. [ex +ferō, carry. App. 81], bring or carry out, carry or take away; raise; spread or publish abroad, make known; elevate, puff up. I, 5.

**ēmiciō**, -ficere, -ficōl, -fectum, tr. [ex + faciō, make], make or do completely, complete, accomplish, construct; make, cause, bring about, render. I, 38; II, 5.

**ēmodiō**, -fodere, -fōdī, -fossum, tr. [ex +fodiō, dig], dig out.

**ēmugī**, - fugere, -fugī, —, tr. and intr. [ex + fugī, flee], flee from or away, escape. IV, 35.

**ēgōsus**, -entis, adj. [pres. part. of ēgō, want], in want, needy, destitute.

**ēgō**, ēgēre, ēgul, —, intr., need, want, lack, be without or destitute.

**ēgestās**, -tātis, f [ēgō, want], poverty.

**ēgī, pf. of ēgō**.

**ēgo**, mel (App. 81), first pers. pron., I; pl., nōs, we, us, etc. I, 40; II, 9.

**ēgomet**, emphatic for ego, I myself, I for my part.

**ēgramōs**, -gredi, -gressus sum, intr. [gredior, step], step or go out, come forth, depart; march out, make a sortie; land (from a ship), disembark. I, 27.

**ēgregiē**, adv. [ēgregius, excellent], excellently, admirably, remarkably. II, 29.

**ēgregius**, -a, -um, adj. [ē + grex, herd], out of the common herd; excellent, superior, eminent, remarkable. I, 19.

**ēgressus**, see ēgredior.

**ēgressus**, -iis, m. [ēgredior, step out], a landing, landing place.

**ēlicō**, -licere, -lēcol, -lectum, tr. [lācticō, throw. App. 7], cast or drive out, expel; cast up; sē elicere, rush out, sail. IV, 7.

**ēlus modi**, of such a sort or kind, such. III, 3.

**ēlabōr**, -lābl, -lāpsus sum, intr. [lābor, slipp], slip away, escape.

**ēlatūs**, see ēfferē.

**Elaver**, -eris, a. (Ce), the river Elaver (ēlā'vēr), now the Allier.

**ēlōctus**, see ēligō.

**ēlephantus**, -i, m., elephant.

**ēleutetēs**, -um, m. (Dd), the Eleuteeti (ē-liē' té-ti).

**ēliciō**, -ere, -uli, -itum, tr., draw or entice out, lure forth.

**ēligō**, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctum, tr. [legō, choose], choose or pick out, select; **ēlēctus, pf. part. as adj., picked (men, etc.). II, 4.

**ēlusātēs**, -um, m. (Ed), the Elusates (ē-lūsā-tēz). III, 27.

**ēmigrō**, I, intr. [migrō, migrate], depart, migrate. I, 31.

**ēmineō**, -ere, -uli, —, intr., project.
EMINUS

eminus, a. [manus, hand], aloof, at a distance, at long range.

ēmittē, -mittere, -misi, -missum, tr. [mittē, send], let go, send out or forth, release; hurl, discharge; drop. I, 25.

ēmō, emere, ēmī, ēmptum, tr., take, buy, purchase. I, 16.

ēnāscor, -nāscī, -nātus sum, intr. [ēnāscor, be born], be born from; spring up. II, 17.

ēnim, conj., in fact, really; for; sed enim, but in fact however. I, 14.

ēnuntiō, I, tr. [nuntiō, announce], report, declare, disclose. I, 4.

ēō, ire, ii (Ivi), itum (App. 84), intr., go, proceed, march, pass. I, 6.

ēō, adv. [old dative of ēs], thither, there (in sense of thither), to the place (where, etc.), to them (it, him, etc.). I, 25.

ēō, abl. of ēs.

ēōdem, adv. [old dative of īdem], to the same place, to the same point (result, ead, etc.). I, 43.

ephippiō, a, -um, adj. [ephippiō, saddle], using a saddle. IV, 2.

ephippium, i, m., horse-cloth, riding-pad, saddle. IV, 2.

espilus, a., f., letter, epistle.

Eporōδorix, -īgis, m., Eporōδorix (ēpōrōδ'ō-riks), the name of two Haeduan leaders.

epulae, ērūm, f., feast, banquet.

equēs, -ītis, m. [equēs, horse], a horseman, a rider; pl., cavalry. Then (as originally serving on horseback), a knight (one of the monevied class at Rome, next in rank to the senate). Also, a knight (of Gaul, of corresponding class). I, 15.

equēster, -tris, -tre, adj. [equēs, horseman], of or belonging to a horseman, equestrian, of cavalry, cavalry. I, 18.

equitātus, -ūs, m. [equitō, ride; equus, horse], cavalry, horsemen. I, 15.

equus, -i, m., horse. I, 22.

Kratosthenēs, -is, m., Kratosthenes (ēr'ō-stōnēs), a Greek geographer, born 276 B.C.

ēréctus, see ērigō.

ēreptus, see ēripīō.

ergō, prep. with acc., towards.

ergō, adv., therefore, then.

ērigō, -rigere, -rēxī, -rēctum, tr. [re-gō, direct], lift or raise; erēctus, p.f. part. as adj., standing upright, high. III, 13.

ēripīō, -ripere, -ripūl, -ruptum, tr. [rāpī, seize], wrest or take away, extort, deprive; rescue, relieve, save. I, 4.

erō, i, intr., wander; err, be mistaken.

ērumpō, -rumpere, -rūpl, -ruptum, intr. [rumpō, break], break forth, sally. III, 5.

ēruptīō, -ōnīs, f. (ērumpō, break forth), a breaking out, bursting forth, sortie, sally. II, 33.

esseōrīnus, -īri, m. [esseōrum, a war chariot], a soldier fighting from a war chariot, charioteer. IV, 24.

esseōrum, -i, m., a two-wheeled war chariot of the Britons. IV, 32.

Essuivil, -Ērūm, m. (Bod), the Essuivil (ē-sūivil). II, 34.

et, conj. and; also, too, even; et... et, both... and. I, 1.

etiam, conj. and also, also, even, yet. I, 1.

etāli, conj. [et-ali, if], even if, although. I, 40; III, 24.

ēvādō, -vādere, -vāsum, intr. [vādō, go], escape. III, 19.

ēvellō, -vellere, -vellī, -vulsum, tr. [vellō, pluck], pluck out, pull out. I, 25.

ēveniō, -venire, -vēni, -ventum, intr. [venī, come], turn out, result. IV, 25.

ēventūs, -ūs, m. [ēveniō, turn out], outcome, issue, result, consequence. II, 22.

ēvolū, i, intr. [volū, fly], fly or rush forth. III, 28.

ex, see:ē.

exāctūs, see exigō.

exagitātūs, i, tr. [agitō, freq. of agō, drive], drive out or away; disturb, harass. II, 29.

exāminō, i, tr. [anima, breath], deprive
of breath, render breathless, exhaust; 
kill. II, 28.
exardescô, -ardescore, -ârsî, -ârsu, 
instr. [ârdescô, incept. of ârdeô, blaze],
take fire; be inflamed or enraged.
exandô, 4, tr. [audiô, hear], hear (from a distance). II, 11.
excéô, -cédere, -cessô, -cessum, instr. 
[céô, go], go out or away, withdraw, retire. II, 25.
excellô, -cellere, ---, ---, instr., excel, surpass.
excelusus, -a, -um, adj. [excellô, surpass], high.
exceptô, 1, tr. [freq. of excipiô, catch],
take hold of, catch.
exciô, -cidere, -cîdî, -cisum, tr. 
[cădô, cut], Hew away or down.
exciplô, -cipere, -çîplô, -çoptum, tr. 
and instr. [capîô, take]; tr., take up, catch, receive; take up (in turn); meet, withstand; relieve (of soldiers in battle); instr., follow. I, 52; III, 5.
excitô, 1, tr. [citô, rouse], call forth, excite, animate, arouse; erect, construct (towers); kindle (fire). III, 10.
excludô, -cludere, -clusô, -clusum, 
tr. [claudô, shut], shut out, cut off; hinder, prevent.
excôgitô, 1, tr. [côgitô, think], think 
out, contrive, devise, invent.
excruciatô, 1, tr. [cruciatô, torture; crux, cross], torture greatly, torment, rack.
excubitor, -ôris, m. [excubô, keep guard], watchman, sentinel.
excubô, -are, -uir, -atum, instr. [cubô, lie], lie outside; keep guard.
exculcô, 1, tr., trample, tread down.
excursiô, -ônis, f. [excurrô, run forth], 
a running out or forth, sally, sortie. II, 30.
excurstatio, -ônis, f. [excusô, excuse], 
excuse, apology.
excuô, 1, tr. [causa, reason], give reason for; excuse. IV, 22.
exemplum, -I, n., example, precedent. I, 8.
exô, -re, -ir, -atum, instr. [ôô, go]. 
App. 84], go from or out, depart from, leave. I, 2.
exerceô, 2, tr., practice, train, exercise. I, 48.
exercitatio, -ônis, f. [exerçitô, freq. 
of exercôô, exercise, exercise, training; practice, experience. I, 39; III, 19.
exercitâtus, -a, -um, adj. [gf. part. of exercitô, train or practice well], well 
exercitus, -ús, m. [exercôô, train], a 
trained or disciplined body of men, an 
army. I, 8.
exhauriô, -haurire, -haustrum, tr. [hauriô, draw], draw out, empty.
exigô, -igere, -âgi, -âctum, tr. [agô, drive], finish, pass. III, 28.
exiguês, adv. [exiguus, scanty], meagerly, scarcely.
exiguîtâs, -âtis, f. [exiguus, scant], 
scantiness, meagerness, shortness, want. II, 21.
exiguus, -a, -um, adj., scanty, short, 
small, meager, limited. IV, 20.
eximius, -a, -um, adj. [eximô, take 
out], taken from the mass; hence choice, eminent. II, 8.
eximius, -a, -um, adj. [eximô, take 
out], taken from the mass; hence choice, eminent. II, 8.
existimatio, -ônis, f. [existimô, estimate], judgment, opinion. I, 20.
existimô, 1, tr. [aestimô, estimate, reckon, think, consider. I, 8.
exitus, -ús, m. [exèô, go out], a going 
out, exit, passage; issue, result, end. III, 8.
expediûtô, 4, tr. [pès, foot], set free; arrange, prepare.
expeditiô, -ônis, f. [expedîô, arrange], 
campaign, enterprise, expedition.
expeditus, -a, -um, adj. [gf. part of expediô, set free], unimpeded, free, unobstructed; without baggage; light armed; as noun, a light armed soldier. I, 6.
expellô, -pellere, -pull, -pulsum, tr. 
[pellô, drive], drive out or forth, expel. II, 32.
expierô, -perîrî, -pertus sum, tr. 
prove, try, test, experience. I, 31; II, 16.
expiô, 1, tr., atone for, expiate; avenge.
expleô, -plère, -plîvô, -plûsum, tr. 
[pleô, fill], fill out or up; finish, complete.
expló̄rātor, -őris, m. [expló̄rē, search out], explorer, scout, spy. I. 12.
expló̄rātus, -a, -um, adj. [sf. part of expló̄rō, search out], ascertained; sure, certain. III. 18.
expló̄rō, 1. tr., search or find out, investigate, spy out, reconnoiter. IV. 4.
expō̄nō, -pōnere, -posul, -positum, tr. [pōnō, place], put or set out; set on shore, disembark; draw up; set forth, explain. IV. 23.
exportō, 1. tr. [portō, carry], carry or way. IV. 18.
expōsō̄cō, -poscere, -posscī, ——, tr.
[poscō, demand], entreat, demand. I. 12.
expromō, -primēre, -presal, -presūn, tr. [premō, press], press out, extort, elicit; raise. I. 32.
expugnātiō̄, -ōnis, f. [expugnō, take by storm], a taking by assault, storming.
expugnō, 1. tr. [pugnō, fight], take or carry by storm, capture by assault; overpower, sack. I. 11.
exquirō, -quirere, -quisīlī, -quisītum, tr. [quaērō, search], seek or carry out, inquire, investigate. I. 41; III. 3.
exsequor, -sequi, -sequus sum, tr. [sequor, follow], follow out, enforce. I. 4.
exserō̄, -ere, -ul, -tum, tr., thrust or put out; uncover.
exsistō̄, -sistere, -stitī, ——, intr. [sistō, stand], stand or come forth, appear, arise; ensue. III. 15.
exspectō̄, 1. tr. [spectō], look at, look out for, await, expect; wait to see; anticipate, apprehend. I. 11.
exspoliō̄, 1. tr. [spoliō, strip], rob.
exstinguō̄, -stinguere, -stínxi, -stinctum, tr., put out, quench; destroy.
exstō̄, -stāre, -stitī, ——, intr. [stō, stand], stand out, extend above.
exstruō̄, -struere, -strixī, -structum, tr. [struō, build], build or pile up, rear, construct, build. II. 30.
exsul, -sulis, m. and f., an exile.
exterior, -ius, adj. [comp. of exterus]. App. 44], outer, exterior.
exterredō̄, 2. tr. [terredō, frighten],
frighten outright, strike with terror; scare.
externēscō, -timēscere, -timul, —— tr. [timēscō, incept. of timō, fear]. dread. III. 13.
exterqueō̄, -torquēre, -toral, -torxūtum, tr. [torquēō, twist], wrest or force from, extort.
extrā, adv. and prep. with acc., out of, outside of, beyond, without. I. 10.
extrahē, -trahere, -trāxi, -tractum, tr. [trahō, draw], draw out; waste.
extrēmēs, -a, -um, adj. [sup. of exterus]. App. 44], outermost, utmost, farthest; extreme; the farthest part of; extrēmīl (as noun), the rear; ad extrēmum, at last, at the end; as a last resort. I. 1.
extrādē, -trūdere, -trāxi, -trāsum, tr. [trādō, thrust], thrust or shut out. III. 12.
extruli, see efferē.
exuō̄, -ure, -ul, -ūtum, tr., draw out or off, put or strip off, divest, despoil.
III. 6.
extrērē, -hare, -ussi, -ustum, tr. [ārō, burn], burn up. I. 5.
F.
faber, -bri, m., workman, mechanic; carpenter.
Fabius, -bi, m. (1), Gaius Fabius (gā̄iús fā̄bē-ūs), one of Caesar's lieutenants. (2) Lucius Fabius (lū'śhyūs fā̄bē-ūs), a centurion of the 8th legion. (3) Quintus Fabius Maximus (kwīn'tūs fā̄bē-ūs māk'sēl-mūs), victor over the Gauls 131 B.C. I. 45.
facile, adv. [facilis, easy], easily, readily. Comp. facillus; sup., facillimē (App. 44]. I. 2.
facilis, -e, adj. [faciō, do], easy. I. 6.
facinus -noris, a. [faciō, do], deed; misdeed, outrage, crime. I. 40; III. 9.
faciō, facere, fēcī, factum, tr. and intr.; tr., make, construct, form, do, execute (commandes, etc.); give (opportunity, etc.); with ut, bring about.
cause: intr., do, act. Pass., rīgō, fieri, factus sum (App. 83), with passive of above meanings, and, used impersonally, result, happen, come to pass. I. 2.
factio, -onis, f. [facēō, make], party, faction. I, 31.

factum, -i, n. [pf. part. of facēō, half noun, half participle], act, exploit, deed. III, 14.

factus, ses facēō.

facultās, -tātis, f. [old adj., facul=facēō, facilis, easy], power; opportunity, chance; resources, supply. I, 7.

fagus, -i, f., beech tree or timber.

fallō, fallere, fellei, falsum, tr., deceive, cheat, disappoint. II, 10.

falsus, -a, -um, adj. [pf. part. of fallō, deceive], false.

falx, facēō, f., sickle, pruning-hook; hook (for pulling down walls). III, 14.

fama, -ae, f. [fāri, to speak], common talk, rumor, report; reputation, fame.

famēs, -is, f., hunger, starvation. I, 28.

familia, -ae, f., household (including slaves); retinue (including all dependents); family. I, 4.

familīāris, -is, adj. [familia, household], personal, private; as noun, intimate friend; rēs, personal property, estate. I, 18.

familīāritās, -tātis, f. [familīāris, intimate], intimacy.

fās, a, n, sedec., right, divine right, will of Heaven. I, 50.

fastigātō, adv. [fastigātus, sloping], sloping. IV, 17.

fastigātus, -a, -um, adj., sloping. II, 8.

fastigium, -ī, n., the top of a gable; elevation, height; declivity, descent, slope.

fātum, -i, n. [fāri, to speak], fate, lot. I, 39.

favēō, favēre, favō, fuitum, intr., favor. I, 18.

fax, facēs, f., firebrand, torch.

fēlicitās, -tātis, f. [fēlīx, happy], happiness, success, good fortune. I, 40.

fēlicitēs, -is, f. [fēlēx, happy], happily, fortunately. IV, 25.

fēmina, -ae, f., female, woman.

femur, -inis, m., the thigh.

fera, -ae, f. [fem. of ferus, wild], wild animal.

ferax, -acis, adj. [ferō, bear], productive, fertile. II, 4.
FINITIMUS

end; pl., boundaries; territory, country. I. 1.

finitimus, -a, -um, adj. [finis, limit, border], bordering on, adjoining, neighboring; pl. as nouns, neighbors. I. 2.

fiō, fieri, factus sum, see factō.

firmiter, adv. [firmus, strong], firmly. IV. 26.

firmūtūdō, -inis, f. [firmus, strong], strength, firmness, solidity. III. 13.

firmō, i, tr. [firmus, strong], strengthen, fortify.

firmus, -a, -um, adj., strong, stable, vigorous, firm. I. 3.

fīstula, -ae, f., pile-driver. IV. 17.

Flaccus, see Valerius.

fāgitō, i, tr., demand. I. 16.

flamma, -ae, f., fire, blaze.

flectō, flectere, flexi, flexum, tr., bend, turn, direct. IV. 33.

fles, flēre, fēvi, fētum, intr., weep, shed tears, lament. I. 20.

fletus, -ūs, m. [flēo, weep], weeping, lamentation. I. 22.

fō, i, intr., blow.

flōrens, -entis, adj. [flōreo, flower], flourishing, prosperous, influential. I. 30; IV. 3.

flōs, flōris, m., blossom, flower.

fluctus, -ūs, m. [fluō, flow], flood, bilow, wave. III. 13.

flumen, -inis, m. [fluō, flow], river, stream. I. 1.

fluō, fluere, flāxi, —, intr., flow, run. I. 6.

fodiō, fodere, fūdī, fossum, tr., dig.

foedus, -eris, n., compact, treaty, alliance.

forem = esse; see sum.

fore = futūrus esse; see sum.

foris, adv., out of doors, without.

forma, -ae, f., form, shape, appearance. III. 14.

fora, foris, f., chance; forte, abl. as adv., by chance, per chance. II. 21.

fortis, -e, adj., strong, valiant, brave. I. 1.

fortiter, adv. [fortis, brave], bravely, stoutly, courageously. II. 11.

fortitūdō, -inis, f. [fortis, brave], bravery, courage. I. 2.

fortūtō, adv. [fors, chance], by chance.

fortūna, -ae, f. [fors, chance], fortune, luck, chance, opportunity; lot, condition; good fortune, success; property, estate. I. 11.

fortūnātus, -a, -um, adj. [fortūna, fortune], prosperous, fortunate.

forum, -I, n., public square, market place.

fossa, -ae, f. [pf. part. fem. of fodīō, dig], trench, ditch. I. 8.

fovea, -ae, f., pitfall.

frangō, frangere, frēgi, frāctum, tr., break, wreck; crush, discourage. I. 31; IV. 29.

fratrēr, -tris, m., brother. I. 3.

fraternalis, -a, -um, adj. [frater, brother], brotherly, fraternal, of a brother. I. 20.

fraus, -dis, f., cheating, deception.

frenitus, -ūs, m., a confused noise, uproar, din. II. 24.

frequēns, -entis, adj., in great numbers, in crowds. IV. 11.

frētus, -ā, -um, adj., relying upon. III. 21.

frigidus, -a, -um, adj., cold. IV. 1.

frigus, -oris, m., cold weather, cold; pl., frigores, cold seasons. I. 16.

frōns, frontis, f., forehead; front. II. 8.

frāctus, -a, -um, adj. [fractus, fruit], fruitful, productive. I. 30.

frāctus, -ūs, m. [fruer, enjoy], fruit; profit, reward.

frumentarius, -a, -um, adj. [frumentum, grain], of or pertaining to grain; of places, fruitful productive of grain; rés frumentāria, supply of grain, provisions. I. 10.

frumentātiō, -onis, f. [frumentor, get grain], getting grain, foraging expedition.

frumentor, I, intr. [frumentum, grain], get grain, forage. IV. 9.

frumentum, -I, n., grain; pl., crops. I. 3.

fruor, frui, fructus sum, intr., enjoy. III. 22.

frustrē, adv., without effect, in vain, to no purpose. III. 4.

frīx, -gis, f. [fruer, enjoy], fruit; pl., crops, produce. I. 28.
Gallicus, -ae, -um, adj. (Gallia, Gaul), pertaining to Gaul or the Gauls, Gallic. I, 22.
gallina, -ae, f., hen.
Gallus, -ae, -um, adj., of Gaul, Gallic; pl. as nouns, the Gauls, inhabiting Central Gaul, Northern Italy, etc. I, 1.
Gallus, -I, m., Marcus Trebius Gallus (mâr’kûs trê’bî-ûs gâl’lûs), an officer in Caesar’s army. III, 7.
Garumna, -ae, m. (Dedic), the Garumna (gâr’ûm’nâ), or Garonne, a river forming the boundary between Aquitania and Celtic Gaul. I, 1.
Garumnii, -ôrum, m. (Ed), the Garumnii (gâr’ûm’ni). III, 27.
Gatôs, -um, m. (Dedic), the Gates (gâ’tôs). III, 27.
Gediumnii, -ôrum, m. (Af), the Gediumnii (jê’dûm’ni o jê’dôm’ni).
Genava, -ae, f. (Cg), Genava (jên’a-va), a city of the Allobroges, now Geneva. I, 6.
gener, -eris, m., son-in-law.
generâtim, adv. [genus, tribe], by tribes. I, 51.
gêns, gentis, f., race; clan, tribe, people. II, 28.
genius, -eris, n., descent, origin, race, class, tribe, family; kind, nature. I, 48; III, 14.
Gergovia, -ae, f. (Dedic), Gergovia (jêr-gôv’vâ), the chief town of the Arvernii.
Germani, -ôrum, m., the Germani (jêr-mân’ni), better Germans. I, 1.
Germania, -ae, f., Germania (jêr-mân’ni-a), better, Germany, the country east of the Rhine. IV, 4.
Germânicus, -âs, -um, adj. [Germanus, German], of or pertaining to the Germans, German. IV, 16.
gerô, gerere, gessal, gestum, tr., bear, carry, wield; (of war) carry on, perform, wage, conduct; pass, be done, go on, occur. I, 1.
gladius, -di, m., sword. I, 25.
glânis, glandis, f., acorn; ball, slug of lead.
gläba, -ae, f., clod of earth; lump.
Gloria, ae, f., glory, renown, honor, fame, reputation. I, 2.

Glorior, i, intr. [gloria, glory], glory, glory in, boast of. I, 14.

Gobannitio, -onis, m., Gobannitio (gōb'na-nish'yō), an Arvernian chief.

Gorgobina, -ae, f. (C), Gorgobina (gōr-gōb'i-na), a city of the Boii after they had settled in the territory of the Haeduui.

Gracius, -a, -um, adj., of or belonging to the Greeks, Greek, Grecian; pl. as noun, the Greeks. I, 29.

Graecolat, -orum, m. (Dg), the Graecolat (grā-γεκ-λατ), I, 10.

grandis, -e, adj., great, large, bulky. I, 45.

gratia, -ae, f. [gratus, pleasing], favor, good will, gratitude, esteem, influence, popularity; gratias agere, thank; gratiam habere, to feel grateful; gratiam referire, to return a favor; hanc gratiam referi, to return a favor in this way: gratiam inire, to gain favor; gratia following a gen., for the purpose of, in order to. I, 9.

gratulatio, -onis, f. [gratulor, express joy], expression of joy, congratulation, rejoicing. I, 55.

gratulor, i, intr. [gratius, pleasing], express joy, congratulate, thank. I, 30.

gratus, -a, -um, adj., pleasing, agreeable, acceptable. I, 44.

gravis, -e, adj., heavy, oppressive, hard, severe, serious; advanced (in years). I, 20.

gravitas, -tatis, f. [gravis, heavy], heaviness, weight; power. IV, 8.

graviter, ad. [gravis, heavy], heavily, with great weight, with force; severely, seriously; graviter ferre, take to heart, be annoyed or vexed (at); graviter prenere, press hard. I, 14.

gravor, i, intr. [gravis, heavy], be unwilling. I, 35.

Grudios, -orum, m. (A), the Grudios (gry'dūs). I, 2.

gubernator, -oris, m., steersman, pilot. III, 9.

gustus, i, tr., taste, eat.

H.

habeo, 2, tr., have, hold, possess; think, consider, regard; deliver (with o-rationem); in animo habere, intend; rationem habere, have regard for; take care or see that (followed by an ut clause); censum habere, form a plan; in numerō hostium habere, consider as enemies; alter se habere, be otherwise or different; for habere with if, pass. part., e.g. vectigalia redempta habere, see App. 268, b. I, 2.

Haeduui, -orum, m. (Cef), of the Haeduui (hādū'i-ī), Haeduui; as noun, a Haeduuan; pl. the Haeduui, possibly Haeduan, one of the most powerful of the Gallic tribes. I, 8.

haesitio, i, intr. [freq. of haereō, stick], stick or cling fast, remain fixed.

hāmus, -i, m., hook, barb.

harpagō, -onis, m., grappling hook.

Harrudes, -orum, m. (Ch), the Harudes (hā-rū'dēz), a German tribe. I, 31.

hau, adv., not, by no means, not at all.

Helvētius, -a, -um, adj. (Helvētius), of the Helvetii, Helvetian.

Helvētius, -a, -um, adj. (Cgh), of the Helvetii (hēl-vē' shyl), Helvetian; as noun, one of the Helvetii, an Helvetian; pl., the Helvetii, possibly Helvetians. I, 1.

Helvii, -orūm, m. (Df), the Helvii (hēl-vī-i).

 Hercynia, -ae, f. (Bhi). Hercynia (hēr-sīn'ī-a), the Hercynian forest.

hēritātis, -tatis, f. [hērēs, heir], inheritance.

hiberna, -orūm, a. [sc. castra, camp], winter camp, winter quarters. I, 10.

Hiberna, -ae, f. (Hibernia (hī-bēr'ni-a), better, Ireland.

hic, haece, hoc, dem. pron. (App. 54), used for what is near in space, time or thought, with more emphasis than is; this, this man, woman or thing; he, she, it; ab. sing. hoc, on this account; in this respect; the (with comparatives); hic . . . illis, the latter . . . the former. See App. 170, a. I, 1.

hic, adv., here, in this place; of a place just mentioned, there, in that place;
(of an incident just mentioned), then, at this time. IV, 19.
hiemō, i, instr. (hiemas, winter), pass the winter, winter. I, 10.
himéma, -nis, f., winter time, winter. III, 7.
hinc, adv., from that point or place, hence.
Hispánia, -ae, f. (Sabod), Hispánia (his-pá/-ni-a), better, Spain. I, 1.
Hispánus, -a, -um, adj. Spanish.
homē, -inis, m., human being, man, as distinguished from the lower animals; in pl., mankind, humanity, men. I, 2.
honestus, -a, -um, adj. (honēs, honor), honorable, worthy, distinguished, eminent. I, 53.
honorificus, -a, -um, adj. (honēs, honor + facīō, make], conferring honor. I, 43.
honēs, -ōris, m., honor, regard, glory, distinction; honorable position, office. I, 18.
hūra, -ae, f., hour. The Roman hour was the twelfth part of the day or night, (reckoning between sunrise and sunset), and hence varied according to the season. I, 26.
horrēō, -ēre, -ul, —, tr., shudder at, dread. I, 32.
horribilis, -e, adj. (horreō, dread), dreadful, horrible, frightful, hideous.
hortus, -i, tr., exhort, encourage, incite, urge strongly. I, 19.
hospes, -itis, m., f., host, entertainer; guest; friend; stranger. I, 53.
hospitium, -ίtium, m. (hospes, host or guest), the relation of host and guest; friendship, hospitality. I, 31.
hostis, -is, m., f., (public) enemy or foe in distinction from inimicus, a personal enemy; pl., the enemy. I, 11.
huc, adv. [old form for hōc from hīc], to this place, hither, here; against these, to these. I, 58.
hūmānitās, -tātis, f. [hūmānus, human], humanity, refinement, culture. I, 1.
hūmānus, -a, -um, adj. (homē, man), natural to man, human; civilized, cultured, refined, cultivated. IV, 8.
vumīlis, -e, adj. (humus, the ground), on the ground; low, humble, abject, weak. IV, 8.
humilitās, -tītis, f. (humilis, low), humility, lowness; weakness.

I.
ī, agnī for ānum, one.
Icācē, icācēre, icācul, —, intr., lie; lie slain. II, 27.
icācō, icācē, icācēt, icāctum, tr., throw, cast, hurl; (of an agger), throw up, construct. II, 6.
icāctō, i, tr. [freq. of icācē, throw], throw or hurl repeatedly, toss about; talk about, discuss. I, 18.
icāctāra, -ae, f. [icācē, throw], toss, sacrifice.
icāculum, -i, n. [icācē, throw], javelin, dart.
iam, adv., now, at this time; already, by this time, at last; really, indeed, even; neque iam or iam nōn, no longer; ubi iam, as soon as. I, 5.
ibi, adv., there, in that place. I, 10.
Icōcūs, -i, m., Icōcūs (Ik'shūys), a chief of the Hēm. II, 3.
ictus, -ūs, m., stroke, blow. I, 25.
id., abbr. for īdās.
idēcō, adv., therefore.
īdem, eadem, īdem (App, 68), dem., same as, this, that, the same; this very; īdem atque, the same as. I, 3.
identidem, adv. [īdem, the same], repeatedly. II, 19.
idēneōs, -e, -um, adj., fit, suitable, adapted. I, 49; II, 8.
ignis, -is, m., fire. I, 6.
ignōbilis, -e, adj. [în- + (g)nōbilis, well known], ignoble, unknown.
ignōminia, -ae, f., disgrace, dishonor.
ignōrö, i, tr. [ignārus, not knowing], not know, be ignorant of; fail to observe, overlook. I, 27.
ignōsō, -nōsōre, -nōvī, -nōtum, intr. [în- + (g)nōsōs, knowing; nōsō], forgive, pardon. I, 45; IV, 27.
ignōtus, -a, -um, adj. [în- + (g)nōtus, known; nōsō, know], unknown, unfamiliar. IV, 24.
ILLATUS, see inferō.
ille, illa, illud, gen. illus, dat. illi (App. 56), dem. pron. (of what is remote in time, place, thought, etc., cf. hic), that, that man, woman, or thing; he, she, it; hic... illa, the latter...
the former, see App. 170, a. I, 8.
ille, adj. [ille, that], in that place, there. I, 18.
illigō, 1, tr. [ligō, bind], attach, hold or bind together. IV, 17.
illō, adj. [old dat. of illē], thither, to that place, there (= thither). IV, 11.
illustris, -e, adj. distinguished, illustrious.
Illyricum, -i, n. Illyricum (I-lir'ikum), Illyria, lying northeast of the Adriatic, forming a part of Caesar’s province. II, 35.
imbēcillitās, -ātis, f., weakness.
imber, -bris, m., a rainstorm, rain. III, 29.
imitor, 1, tr., imitate, copy after.
immānis, -e, adj. huge, immense. IV, 1.
immineō, -minēre, —, —, intr. project, hang over; threaten, menace.
immittō, -mittere, -missī, -missum, tr. [in+mittō, send], send or let into, insert; send against, direct towards or against; trābibus immisīs, beams being placed between. IV, 17.
immolō, 1, tr., sacrifice.
immortalis, -e, adj. [in+mōrtalis, mortal], not mortal, immortal. I, 12.
immūnis, -e, adj. [in+mūnus, burden], unburdened, by taxes, requirements of service, etc.
imparātus, -a, -um, adj. [in+parātus, prepared; parō, prepare], unprepared, not ready.
impedimentum, -i, n. [impedīō, hinder], hindrance, obstacle, impediment; pl., baggage, luggage (of an army), baggage-train (including the draught animals). I, 24.
impecō, 4, tr. [in+pēs, foot], entangle the feet, hamper, obstruct, hinder, impede, delay.
impeptus, -a, -um, adj. [gf. part. of impedīō, hinder], hindered, burdened, impeded, delayed; hindered or burdened by baggage; occupied or engaged in; at a disadvantage; of places, difficult of passage. I, 19.
impellō, -pellere, -pullō, -pulsūm, tr. [in+pellō, drive], drive or urge on, incite, instigate, impel. I, 40; II, 14.
impendō, -pendēre, —, —, intr. [in+pendē, hang], overhang, impend. I, 6.
imphans, -a, -um, adj. expensive; with pretium, great. IV, 2.
imperātor, -ōris, m. [impērō, command], commander-in-chief, general. I, 40; II, 25.
imperātum, -i, n. [impērō, command], command, order. II, 3.
imperitus, -a, -um, adj. [in+peri tus, experienced], inexperienced, unskilled, ignorant. I, 40; IV, 22.
imperium, -ri, n. [impērō, command], command, order; authority, sway, supreme power, dominion, sovereignty; supreme military command, highest official power. I, 2.
imperō, 1, tr. and intr. [in+parō, procure], demand from, enjoin or levy upon; command, order, instruct, rule. I, 7.
impetrō, 1, tr. [in+patrō, accomplish], obtain (by request, entreaty, exertion), accomplish, succeed in obtaining (one’s request); impetrāre & (ab), gain permission from, persuade. I, 9.
impetus, -ās, m., attack, onset, charge; impetuosity, force, vehemence. I, 22.
implus, -a, -um, adj. [in+plus, pious], wicked.
impleō, 1, tr. [in+plicō, fold], interlace, interweave.
implōrō, 1, tr. [in+plōrō, call out], beseech, entreat, implore. I, 31.
imponē, -ponere, -posuī, -positum, tr. [in+ponē, place], place upon, set on, put or impose on; mount. I, 42.
importō, 1, tr. [in+portō, carry], carry or bring in, import. I, 1.
improbus, -a, -um, adj. [in+probus, good], unprincipled. I, 17.
improvisā, adj. [improvisus, unforeseen], unexpectedly, without warning. I, 13.
improvisus, -a, -um, adj. [in+prōvi-
incendē, -endere, -endī, -cēnsum, tr. [cf. candēō, shine], set fire to, fire, burn; inflame, excite. I, 5.

incertus, -a, -um, adj. [in-+certus, decided], undecided, uncertain, untrustworthy; indefinite, vague; disordered. IV, 5.

incidō, -cidere, -cīdī, —, intr. [caedō, fall], fall into or upon; fall in with, meet; happen, arise. I, 52; II, 14.

incidō, -cidere, -cīdī, -cīsum, tr. [caedō, cut], cut into. II, 17.

incipīō, -cipere, -cipērī, -ceptum, tr. [capīō, take], undertake; begin, commence. II, 2.

incipit, -i, tr. [cītā, put in motion], set in motion; incite, arouse, urge on, stimulate; exasperate; currū incipitā-tō, at full speed. I, 4.

incognitus, -a, -um, adj. [in-+cognitus, known]; cognōscō, learn, unknown. IV, 20.

incolō, -colere, -colūlī, —, tr. and intr. [colō, cultivate], inhabit, dwell in; live. I, 1.

incolumis, -e, adj., unhurt, uninjured, safe and sound, unimpaired. I, 53; III, 6.

incōmodō, adv. [incommodus, inconvenient], inconveniently, unseasonably.

incōmodum, -I, s. [incommodus, inconvenient], inconvenience, disadvantage, trouble; disaster, defeat, loss, injury. I, 13.

incrēdibilis, -e, adj. [in-+crēdibilis, credible], incredible, unlikely; extraordinary. I, 12.

incrēpētō, 1, tr. [freq. of incrēpō, chide], chide, blame; make sport of, taunt. II, 15.

incumbē, -umbere, -umbulī, -umbu-tum, intr. [cf. cubō, lie], recline upon; devote one’s self to.

incursiō, -onis, f. [incurrō, rush into or upon], invasion; onset, attack.

incursus, -us, m. [incurrō, rush into or upon], attack. II, 20.

incusō, 1, tr. [causa, cause or case], bring a case or charge against; censure, upbraiđ, blame. I, 40; II, 15.
inde, adv., from that place, thence; then, thereupon. I, 10.
indicium, -i, n. [indicāō, disclose], disclosure, information: ver indicium, through informers. - 2.
indicāō, -dicere, -dixi, -dictum, tr. [dico, say], speak publicly, proclaim, appoint, call. I, 30.
indictus, -a, -um, adj. [in- + dictus, pf. part. of dico, say], unsaid; causā indictāō, without a trial.
indignō, adv. [indignus, unworthy], unworthily, dishonorably.
indignitās, -tātis, f. [indignus, unworthy], unworthiness; outrage, disgrace. II, 14.
indignor, 1, intr. [indignus, unworthy], deem unworthy; be indignant.
indignus, -a, -um, adj. [in- + dignus, worthy], unworthy, disgraceful.
indiligēns, -entis, adj. [in- + diligēns, careful], not careful; negligent, lax.
indiligenter, adv. [indiligēns, careless], carelessly. II, 33.
indiligentia, -ae, f. [indiligēns, careless], negligence.
indūō, -duere, -dūxi, -ductum, tr. [duco, lead], lead or draw on; induce, influence, instigate; cover. I, 2.
indulgentia, -ae, f. [indulgeō, indulge], forbearance, clemency.
indulgeō, -dulgere, -dūsi, —, intr., be indulgent to, favor. I, 21.
induō, -duere, -dūi, -dūtum, tr., put on; sé induere, be impaled or pierced. II, 21.
industrialis, adv. [industrius, diligent], diligently.
indūtia, -ārum, -tr., truce. IV, 12.
indolumarōs, -ī, m., Indolumarus (in-dūs-shyō-mārūs), a chief of the Treveri.
ineō, -ire, -ii, -itum, tr. [eō, go. App. 84], go into; enter upon, begin; inire cōnsilium, form; inire ratiōnem, make an estimate, decide; inire grā-tiam, gain; inire numerum, enumerate. II, 2.
inermis, -e, adj. [in- + arma, arms], without arms or weapons, unarmed. I, 40; II, 27.
inera, -ertis, adj. [in- + ars, skill], with-
INGENS

Ingenus, -entis, adj., enormous, huge, vast, large. I, 29; IV, 10.

Ingradus, -a, -um, adj. [in-gradus, pleasing], displeasing, disagreeable.

Ingrassidor, -grædi, -grassus sum, intr. [gradior, go], go or come into, enter. II, 4.

Iniciō, -icere, -iēci, -iectum, tr. [iaciō, hurl. App. 7], throw into or upon; put or place on; inspire, infuse. I, 48; IV, 17.

Inimicitia, -ae, f. [inimicus, unfriendly], enmity.

Inimicus, -a, -um, adj. [in-amicus, friendly], unfriendly, hostile; as noun, an enemy (personal), rival, to be distinguished from hostis, a public enemy. I, 7.

Iniquitas, -tātis, f. [iniquus, unequal], inequality, unfairness; disadvantage. II, 22.

Iniquus, -a, -um, adj. [in-sequus, even, just], uneven; unjust, unfair; unfavorable, disadvantageous. I, 40; II, 10.

Initium, -ti, n. [inō, go into], beginning, commencement, origin; edge, of a country, borders. I, 1.

Inungi, -ungere, -iānxi, -iāctum, tr. [iungō, join], join to; impose.

Inuria, -ae, f. [in-ītās, right], wrong, injustice; outrage, injury, harm, violence. I, 7.

Inussō, abl. of inussus, -us, m. [lūbeō, order], without command or order. I, 19.

Inasscor, -nāscor, -nātus sum, intr. [nascor, be born], be born in, be engendered; innātus, pf. part. as adj., inborn, natural.

Initor, -nīti, -nīxus sum, intr. [nītor, rest on], lean upon. II, 27.

Innocens, -entis, adj. [in-nocēns, injurious], not injurious; innocent.

Innocentia, -ae, f. [innocēns, innocence], integrity. I, 40.

Inopia, -ae, f. [inops, needy], need, want, poverty, lack; want of provisions, hunger. I, 27.

Inopināns, -antis, adj. [in-opināns, expecting], not expecting, not suspecting, unawares, off one's guard. I, 12.

Inquam, -is, -it, def. verb, tr., used only with direct quotations and following one or more words of the quotation, say. IV, 25.

Insciēns, -entis, adj. [in-sciēns, knowing], not knowing, unaware, ignorant. I, 19.

Inscientia, -ae, f. [in sciēns, ignorant], ignorance. III, 9.

Inscius, -a, -um, adj. [scio, know], not knowing, ignorant, not aware. IV, 4.

Insequor, -sequi, -sequēs usm, tr. and intr. [sequor, follow], follow up or after, follow close upon, pursue. I, 15.

Inserō, -serere, -serei, -seratum, tr., insert, thrust in. III, 14.

Insidia, -ārum, f. pl. [sedeō, sit], a sitting or lying in wait; ambush, ambuscade; treachery; artifice, crafty device. I, 13.

Insidior, i, intr. [insidiae, ambush], lie in ambush.

Insignis, -e, adj. [signō, mark], marked, remarkable; n. as noun, mark, sign, ornament, trapping. I, 12.

Insiliō, -silirē, -silii, -silum, tr. [saliō, leap], leap upon. I, 52.

Insimulō, i, tr., charge, blame, accuse.

Insinuō, i, tr. [sinuō, wind], wind into; make one's way into, penetrate. IV, 33.

Instito, -sistere, -stītī, -stūtum, tr. [saliō, leap], leap upon. I, 52.

Insolenter, adu. [insolēns, unwonted], unusually; arrogantly, insolently. I, 14.

Inspectō, i, tr. [spectō, look], look at, view.

Instabilis, -e, adj. [in-stabilis, firm], not firm, unsteady. IV, 23.

Instar, n., indecli., likeness; with gen., like. II, 17.

Instigō, i, tr., urge on, incite.

Institō, -stituere, -stitūi, -stitūtum, tr. and intr. [statū, set up], set up or put in order, draw up; train, educate; procure, prepare; build, construct; begin, determine, decide upon, adopt; institūtus, pf. part. as adj.
usual, customary; finished, in addition to definitions above. I, 14.

Institutum, -I, n. [Instituō, set up, establish], a fixed course or principle; habit, institution, custom. I, 1.

Instō, -stāre, -stī, -stātum, intr. [stō, stand], stand upon or near, be at hand, press on; threaten. I, 18.

Instrumentum, -I, n. [Instrumentō, build], tool; apparatus, equipment.

Instruō, -struere, -struxi, -stractus, tr. [struō, build], build upon, build, construct; form, draw up in battle array; equip, furnish. I, 22.

Insuēfactus, -a, -um, adj. [suēscō, become accustomed, faciō, make], accustomed, trained. IV, 24.

Insuētus, -a, -um, adj. [in-suētus, accustomed], unaccustomed, not used to.

Insula, -ae, f., island. III, 9.

Insuper, adv. [super, above], above, on the top, from above. IV, 17.

Integere, -grae, -grum, adj., untouched, intact, whole, unimpaired; fresh; ré integra, before anything was done. III, 4.

Integō, -tegere, -tēxī, -tēctum, tr. [tegō, cover], cover over; protect.

Interlegō, -legere, -lēxī, -lēctum, tr. [inter-legō, choose, select], select or distinguish between; understand; know; see, perceive, realize; find out, learn. I, 10.

Interdī, -tendere, -tendi, -tentum, tr. [tendō, stretch], stretch out or to; intentus, pf. part., intent on, absorbed in, attentive to. III, 22.

Inter, prep. with acc. (sometimes its noun), (1) of place, among, between; (2) of time, during, within, for: (3) in other relations, among, between, in; in among or between; to; over; along with: (4) with reflex. pron., of reciprocal action, (App. 168), with, to, or from each other or one another, as, inter sē different, differ from one another; each other, one another, as, cohortātē inter sē, encouraging one another. I, 1.

Intercedō, -cedere, -cessī, -cessum, intr. [cedō, go], go or come between,

lie between, intervene, be between; pass. I, 7.

Intercipiō, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptum, tr. [capio, take], take or catch between (one point and another); interrupt; intercept, cut off. II, 27.

Interclādāo, -clādere, -clāsci, -clāsum, tr. [claudō, shut], shut or cut off, separate, hinder; with itinera, block. I, 23.

Interdicō, -dīcere, -dixī, -dictum, intr. [dicō, say], prohibit, exclude, forbid, interdict; aquā atque igni interdicere, forbid the use of fire and water, banish. I, 46.

Interdīn, adv. (dīēs, day), during the day, by day. I, 8.

Interdum, adv. [dūm, while], in the meantime; at times, sometimes. I, 14.

Interēa, adv., in the meantime, meanwhile. I, 8.

Interēs, -i, -ıtum, intr. [eō, go. App. 84], perish, die.

Interesse, see intersum.

Interficiō, -ficere, -feci, -fectum, tr. [faciō, make], make away with, kill, destroy. I, 12.

Intericiō, -iicere, -iici, -iectum, tr. [iaciō, hurl. App. 7], throw or hurl between; put or place between; interiectus, pf. part. as adj., lying between, intervening, interspersed; mediocrī interiectō spatīō, not far away. II, 17.

Interim, adv., meanwhile, in the meantime. I, 16.

Interior, -ıus, adj. (App. 43), interior, inner; as noun, interiōres, inhabitants of the interior; occupants of a town.

Interitus, -īus, m. [interēs, die], destruction, death.

Intermitō, -mittere, -misi, -misset, tr. and intr. [mittō, send], send between; intervene, separate; abate, cease, let up, discontinue; delay, neglect, omit; let pass. I, 26.

Interneciō, -onis, f. [neō, destroy], extermination, annihilation, utter destruction. I, 13.

Interpellō, i, tr., interrupt, hinder. I, 44.
interpōnō, -pōnerē, -pōsul, -positum, tr. [pōnē, place], place between, interpose; allege; cause; ādem interpōnere, pledge. I. 42; IV. 9.

interprestetis, m., f., interpreter; mediator. I. 19.

interpretor, i. tr. [interprestes, interpreter], interpret, explain.

interrogō, i. tr. [rogū ask], ask, question.

interrupō, -rumpere, -rūpl, -ruptum, tr. [ruptō, break], break off or through; destroy.

interscindō, -scindere, scid, -scissum, tr. [scindō, cut, -estroy], cut through, cut in two; destroy. II. 9.

intersum, -esse, -ful, intr. [sum, be. App. 66], be or lie between, intervene; be present at, take part in; imperē, interest, it concerns, it is important; there is a difference or an interval; magnī interest, it is of great importance. I. 15.

intervallum, -i, n. [vallis, pailsade], the space between two pailsades; interval (of space or time); distance. I. 22.

interveniō, -venire, -vēnī, -ventum, intr. [venīō, come], come between, come up; arrive.

intervenentus, -ās, m. [interveniō, come between], coming; aid. III. 15.

intexō, -textere, -textul, -textum, tr. [textō, weave], weave in or together. II. 32.

intoleranter, adv., intolerably; impatiently, eagerly.

intrā, prep. with acc. [inter, between], within, inside; into. I. 32; II. 4.

intritus, -a, -um, adj. [in-tritus, worn], unwarried. III. 28.

intrō, i. tr., go or walk into, enter, penetrate. II. 17.

intrōduōcō, -ducere, -duōl, -ductum, tr. [intrō, within+duōcō, lead], lead or bring into. II. 5.

introšō, -ire, -i,-itum, intr. [intrō, within+šō, go. App. 84], go or come in, enter.

introitus, -ās, m. [introšō, go in], entrance, approach.

intrōmittō, -mittere, -mīsl, -missum, tr. [intrō, within+mittō, send], send or let in. II. 33.

intrōrusus, adv. [intrō, within+versus, pf. part. of vertō, turn], within, on the inside. II. 18.

intrōrupō, -rumpere, -rūpl, -ruptum, tr. [intrō, within+rumpō, break], break in or through.

intueror, 2, tr. [tueor, look], look at. I. 32.

intus, adv., within, on the inside.

insitātus, -a, -um, adj. [in+-sitātus, usual], unusual, uncommon, strange, startling. II. 31.

inātilis, -a, adj. [in+-ātilis, useful], useless, worthless; disadvantageous. II. 16.

inveniō, -venire, -vēnī, -ventum, tr. [veniō, come], come upon, find, meet with; find out, learn. I. 53; II. 16.

inventor, -ēris, m. [inveniō, find], inventor, author.

inverterāscō, -veterāscere, -veterāvī, -veterāsum, intr., grow old; become established. II. 1.

invictus, -a, -um, adj. [in+-victus, conquered], unconquerable, invincible. I. 36.

invidēō, -vidēre, -vīdī, -visum, intr. [videō, see], look askance at; envy. II. 31.

invidia, -ae, f. [invideō, envy], envy, hatred.

inviolātus, -a, -um, adj. [in+-violātus, injured], uninjured; inviolate, sacred. III. 9.

invitō, 1, tr., invite, summon; allure, persuade. I. 35; IV. 6.

invitus, -a, -um, adj., against one's wish or will, unwilling, reluctant; sé invitō, against his will. I. 8.

Iovis, see Jupitier.

ipse, ipsa, ipsum, gen. ipsius (App. 59) intensive pron., self (as opposed to some one else; not to be confused with the reflexive sé, self. App. 163); himself, herself, itself, themsele- se, she, it, they; as adj., very; in gen., his, her, its, or their own. I. 1.

Irācundia, -ae, f. [Irācundus, irritable], irritability, anger.
IRACUNDUS


ÍRÍDEÓ, -ÍRÍDÉRE, -ÍRÍS, -ÍRÍSUM, intr. [Ín+-ÍRÍDÉO, laugh], laugh, jeer. II, 30.

ÍRÍDICULÓ, adv. [Ín+-ÍRÍDICULUS, witty], without wit, unwittily. I, 43.

ÍRÍMÓPÉ, -ÍRÍMÓPERE, -ÍRÍMÓPL, -ÍRÍMÓPTUM, tr. [Ín+-ÍRÍMÓPÉ, break], break into, rush into; force a way into, storm. IV, 14.

ÍRÍMÔTIÓ, -ÓNÍS, f. [ÍRÍMÓPÉ, break into], a breaking into, attack.

ÍS, EA, ID, gen. eius (App. 57), weak dem. pron. referring to some person or object named in the context, this, that, these, those; he, she, it, they; the, a; is locus quó, a, or the place where; ea quae, (the) things which; eō, with comp., the; eō magis, all the more; eō . . . quō, with comparatives, the . . . the. I, 1.

ÍSTE, -AE, -UD, gen. istius (App. 55), dem. pron. used of something near the person addressed, that, this.

ÍTA, adv., so, thus, in this way; as follows; ut . . . íta, in proportion as . . . in such proportion, as . . . so; nón íta, not so very, not very; íta . . . ut, just . . . as; so . . . that. I, 11.

ÍTALIA, -AE, f., Italy, sometimes (in Caesar) including Cisalpine Gaul, but usually including only the rest of the peninsula. I, 10.

ÍTÁQUE, conj. [Íta, so], and so, therefore, accordingly. I, 9.

ÍTEM, adv., in like manner, so, also, just so. I, 3.

ÍTER, ÍTINERIS, n. [eō, go], route, road; journey, march; passage; facere íter, march, travel; magnis ítineribus, by forced marches. I, 9.

ÍTERUM, adv., again, a second time; semel atque íterum, again and again. I, 31.

ÍTIIUS, -ITI, m. (Ad.), Itius (Ísh'yús), a harbor.

ÍTÍRUS, see ÉO.


ÍTUBÉ, ÍTUBÉRE, ÍTUS, ÍTUSUM, tr., order, bid, command, enjoin. I, 1.

ÍDÍCÌUM, -EL, a. [ÍNDEX, judge], judicial proceedings, trial; opinion, judgment; iudicium facere, express an opinion; iudició, by design, purposely. I, 4.

ÍDÍCO, I, tr. [ÍNDEX, a judge], pass judgment on, judge, decide, determine; think, consider. I, 12.

ÍUGUM, -I, n. [ÍUNGÉ, join], yoke; ridge, crest. I, 7.

ÍGMENTUM, -I, n. [ÍUNGÉ, join, yoke], yoke or draft animal, beast of burden. I, 8.

ÍNGÉ, ÍNGERÉ, ÍNGÉL, ÍNGÉNUM, tr., join or unite together, attach, connect. I, 8.

ÍNÍOR, see ÍUVÉNIS.

ÍNÍUS, -NL, m., (1) Decimus Junius Brutus, see Brütus; (2) Quintus Junius (kwin'tús jú'ní-us), a Spaniard in Caesar's service.

ÍUPPETOR, ÍLOVIS (App. 57), m., Jupiter (jú'pêr-têr), or Jove, god of the heavens, the chief god of the Romans.

ÍRA, -AE, m. (Cg.), the Jura (jú'ra) mountains. I, 2.

ÍRÓ, I, tr. and intr. [ÍRAS, right], take oath; swear. I, 31.

ÍRUS, ÍRIS, n., right, justice, law; rights; power, authority. I, 4.

ÍRUS ÍRANDUM, ÍRIS ÍRANDI, n. [ÍRAS, right-ÍRÓ, swear], an oath. I, 3.

ÍRUS, m., abl. of iussus, -US, [lubeó, order], by command, by order.

ÍRÍSTÍNIA, -AE, f. [ÍRÍTUS, just], justice, fair dealing, uprightness. I, 19.

ÍRÍTUS, -A, -UM, adj. [ÍRUS, right], in accordance with law or right, lawful, valid, just, fair; proper, regular; with fúnera, appropriate. I, 43; IV, 16.

ÍUVÉNIS, -AE, adj., young; comp., ÍNNIOR, in plur. as noun, men of military age.

ÍUVÉNTUS, -ATIS, f. [ÍUVÉNIS, young], period of youth, from seventeen to forty-five years; the youth, the young men. III, 16.


ÍVXTA, adv. [ÍUNGÉ, join], next, near. II, 26.
Kal., abbr. for Kalendae, -ārum, f., the Calends, the first day of the Roman month. I. 6.

L.
L., abbr. for Lūcius, Lucius (lū'shyūs), a Roman praenomen. I. 6.
L., sign for quiunqueâsitā, fifty.
Laberius, -ri, m., Quintus Laberius Durus (kwī'n tūs ī-bē're-ī-dū'rūs), a tribune.
Labēnius, -ī, m., Titus Atius Labienus (lā'bi-ē'nūs), Caesar's most trusted lieutenant in the Gallic War. In the Civil War he aided Pompey and was slain at Munda, 45 B.C., I. 10.

labūr, lábl, lápsum sum, intr., slip; go wrong; hāc spē lápsum, disappointed in this hope.
labor, -āris, m., toil, effort, striving; labor, hardship. I. 44; III. 5.
lábōrō, -ō, intr. (labor, toll), toll, work hard; be anxious, troubled, or perplexed; labor, suffer, be hard pressed. I. 31; IV. 26.
labrum, -ī, a., lip; edge.
lāc, lactis, a., milk. IV. 1.
lacessō, -e, -ivi, -itum, tr., arouse, harass, provoke, irritate, attack. I. 15.
lacrima, -ae, f., tear. I. 20.
lacrimūr, -ō, intr. (lacrima, tear), weep.
lacūs, -ūs, m., lake. I. 2.
lacdō, laedere, laesē, laesum, tr., hurt, damage; laedere fidem, to break faith.
lactītia, -ae, f. (laetus, joyful), joy, rejoicing.
lactus, -a, -um, adj., joyful. III. 18.
languidē, adv. (languidus, faint), faintly, sluggishly.
languidus, -a, -um, adj., weak, faint, sluggish. III. 5.
languor, -ōris, m., weakness, faintness, languish.
lapis, -idis, m., stone. I. 46; II. 6.
laqueus, -i, m., noose, snare.
largior, 4. tr. (lārgus, large), give largely or freely; bribe. I. 18.
Lemovícés, -um, m. (CDd), the Lemo-
vices (lêmô-vî'sêz).

lénis, -e, adj., gentle, mild, smooth.
IV, 28.

lénitás, -tätis, f. [lénis, smooth],
smoothness, gentleness. I, 12.

léniter, adv. [lénis, smooth], softly,
smoothly, gently, gradually. II, 8.

Lepontil, -örum, m. (Ch), the Lepontil
(lê-pôn/shi). IV, 10.

lepus, -oris, m., hare.

Leuel, -örum, m. (Bfg), the Leuel
(lû/si). I, 40.

Levaci, -örum, m. (Af), the Levaci
(lê-vă/shi).

levis, -e, adj., light (in weight), slight;
light-minded, fickle, inconstant. II,
10.

levitás, -tätis, f. [levis, light], light-
ness; fickleness, restlessness. II, 1.

levó, 1. tr. [levis, light], lighten, ease,
relieve.

lêx, légis, f., law, statute, enactment.
I, 1.

Lexovil, -örum, m. (Bd), the Lexovil

libenter, adv. [libens, willing], willing-
ly, gladly, with pleasure. I, 44; III,
18.

liber, -era, -örum, adj., unrestrained,
free; undisputed. I, 44.

liberalítás, -tätis, f. [liber, free],
freedom in giving, etc.; generosity. I,
18.

liberaliter, adv. [liber, free], graciously-
ly, generously, kindly. II, 5.

libere, adv. [liber, free], freely, without
restraint, boldly. I, 18.

liberi, -örum, m. [liber, free], the free
members of the household (as opposed to
slaves); children. I, 11.

liberó, 1. tr. [liber, free], make or set
free, release, deliver. IV, 19.

libertás, -tätis, f. [liber, free], free-
dom, liberty, independence. I, 17.

librîli, -e, adj. [libros, a pound], of a
 pound weight; funda librîli, a sling
for throwing heavy missiles.

licēns, see liceor.

licentia, -ae, f. [licet, it is permitted],
lawlessness, presumption.

liceor, 2, intr., bid (at an auction). I, 18.
longus, -a, -um, adj., long, distant; of long duration; tedious. I, 40; II, 21.

loquor, loqui, locutus sum, intr., speak, talk, converse. I, 36.

lōrica, -ae, f., coat of mail; parapet, breastwork.

Lucānius, -ni, m., Quintus Lucanius (kwaɪn,tuːs luːkɑːniːs) a centurion.

Lucterius, -ri, m., Lucterius (lʊk,tɛrɪʊs), a chief of the Cadurci.

Lugotorix, -igis, m., Lugotorix (luːɡoʊ,tɛrɪks), a British chief.

lūna, -ae, f., the moon. I, 50; IV, 29.

Lutetia, -ae, f. (Be), Lutetia (luːtɛtʃa), the capital of the Parisii, now Paris.

lūx, lūcis, f., light, daylight; primā lūce, at daylight. I, 22.

lūxuria, -ae, f., luxury, high living. II, 15.

M.

M., abbr. for Mārcus (mɑrˌkəs), a Roman praenomen. I, 2.

M., sign for miles, thousand.

māceria, -ae, f., wall.

māchinātūs, -ūnis, f. [māchinor, contrive], a mechanical contrivance, machine, engine, derrick. II, 30.

mæstus, -a, -um, adj. [mæreō, be sad], dejected, sad.

Magetobriga, -ae, f. (Cf), Magetobriga (mægˌətəˌbridʒə), a Gallic town where Ariovistus defeated the Gauls. I, 31.

magis, adv., comp. [magnus, great], more, rather, in a higher degree; sup., maximē, especially, in the highest degree; mostly, mainly. I, 3.

magistrātus, -ās, m. [magister, master], public office, magistracy; public officer, magistrate. I, 4.

magnificus, -a, -um, adj. [magnus, great + faciō, make], magnificent, splendid.

magnitūdō, -inis, f. [magnus, great], greatness, great size, size, extent; stature (corporum); violence (venti); severity (poenae); magnitudō animi, courage. I, 39; II, 12.

magnopere, adv. [magnus, great + opus, work], with great labor; especially, greatly, exceedingly, earnestly. I, 13.

magnus, -a, -um, adj., great (in size, quantity, or degree), large, abundant, much; important, extensive; loud (voice); high (tide); magni (gen. sing. neut.), of great importance; magnis itineribus, by forced marches. Comp., major, sup., maximus. I, 2.

maiestās, -tās, f. [major, greater], greatness, honor, majesty.

major, mālius, adj. [comp. of magnus, great], greater (in degree, size, time, etc.); older, elder; as noun, maiōres nātū, elders, old men; maiōres, ancestors. I, 13.

malacia, -ae, f., a calm at sea. III, 15.

male, adv. [malaus, bad], badly, ill, adversely. Comp., peius, sup., peissūm. I, 40.


mālō, mālle, mālūm, — (App. 82), tr. and intr. [maga, more + volō, wish], wish more or rather, prefer. III, 8.

mālius, -ī, m., mast; pole, beam (upright). III, 14.

malaus, -a, -um, adj., evil, bad, injurious; comp., peior, peius; as noun, a worse thing; sup., peissimus. I, 31.

mandātum, -ī, n. [mandō, command], charge, injunction, order, command; message. I, 35; II, 5.

mandō, i, tr. [manus, hand + dō, give], give into one's hands; entrust, commit; enjoin, order, command. I, 12.

Manubili, -orum, m. (Cf), the Mandubii (mɑn,duˌbɪi). Mandubracius, -ō, m., Mandubracus (mɑndɒbrɑˌkæs), a British chief.

māne, adv., in the morning, early. IV, 13.

māneō, manēre, mānsi, mānsum, intr., remain, continue, abide, stay. I, 36; IV, 1.

manipulāris, -a, adj. [manipulus, manipule], of a maniple; as noun, a common soldier; suus manipulāris, a soldier of his own company.

manipulus, -ī, m. [manus, hand + pleō, fill], a handful (esp. of hay, about a
mātrō, 1. tr. and intr. (mātrūs, ripe), ripen; quicken, accelerate; make haste, hasten. I, 7.
mātrūs, -a, -um, adj., ripe; early. I, 16.
maximē, see magis.
maximus, -a, -um, adj. [sup. of magnus, great. App. 42], greatest, largest. I, 3.
Maximus, -i, m., Quintus Fabius Maximus (quīntī́s fā́bǐ́-ūs mā́kˈsɪ-məs), victor over the Gauls. 121 B.C. I, 45.
medecor, medēri, —, intr., remedy, cure.
medioiris, -ore, adj. (medius, the middle of), middling, ordinary, moderate. III, 20.
mediocris, adv. [medioiris, moderate], moderately; nōn mediocris, in no small degree. I, 39.
Mediomatri, -ōrum, m. (Bfg), the Mediomatri (mēˈdi-ˈō-māˈtriˌkis), IV, 10.
mediterrānēus, -a, -um, adj. (medius, middle + terra, land), midland, inland.
medius, -a, -um, adj., in the middle; in the middle of; middle; intervening, interdi-
date; locus medius utrinque, a place midway between the two. I, 24.
Meldi, -ōrum, m. (Be), the Meldi (mēˈlē-dī).
melior, comp. of bonus.
membrum, -i, n., member of the body, limb. IV, 24.
memini, -isse (App. 80), tr., remember, bear in mind. III, 8.
memoria, -ae,f. (memor, mindful), the faculty of memory; recollection, mem-
ory, remembrance; tradition; memoriā tenēre, remember; patrum me-
morīs, in the time of our fathers. I, 7.
Menapī, -ōrum, m. (Alg), the Menapi (mēˈnā-pīˌlī). II, 4.
mendāciām, -ōi, n., lie, falsehood.
mēns, mentis, f., the thinking faculty, mind, intellect; thought; disposition, feelings; mentēs animēsque, minds and hearts; aliēnātā mente, bereft of reason. I, 33; III, 19.
mēnūs, -ius, m., month. I, 5.
mēnūria, -ae, f. (mētor, measure), measure.
mentio, -onis, f. naming, mention.
mercator, -oris, m. [mercor, trade], merchant, trader. I, 1.
mercatoria, -ae, f. [mercor, trade], a commercial enterprise, trade.
mercês, -ēdis, f., pay, hire. I, 81.
Mercurius, -ri, m. Mercurius (mēr-kū′ri-ūs), the god Mercury.
merēs, and mercēs, 2, tr., deserve, merit, be worthy of; win, earn, incur (odium); serve as a soldier (i.e., earn pay). I, 11.
meridīanus, -a, -um, adj. [meridiēs, middy], of midday or noon.
meridiēs, -ī, m. [for mediēs, from medius, middle + diēs, day], the middle of the day, midday, noon; the south. I, 50.
meritō, adv. [meritum, desert], justly, deservedly.
meritum, -i, n. [mercor, deserve], desert; merit, service; favor, kindness, benefit. I, 16.
Messaia, -ae, m., Marcus Valerius Messaia (mēr-kūs vā-lē′ri-ūs mē-sā′iš), consul, at B.C. I, 2.
mētērus, mētērius, mēsum sum, tr., deal or measure out, distribute. I, 16.
Mėtosēdum, -i, n. (Be), Metosēdum (mē′shyō′sē′dūm), a town of the Samnites, now Melun.
Mētius, -i, m., Marcus Metius (mēr-kūs mē′shyūs). I, 47.
mētē, metere, messai, messum, tr., mow, reap. IV, 82.
mētēus, -ēs, m. [metuō, fear], fear, dread, anxiety, apprehension; metē territāre, terrify; hoc metē = metē huius rei, from fear of this. I, 4.
meus, -a, -um, poss. adj. pron. [cf. oblique cases of ego], my, mine, my own. IV, 25.
miles, -itis, m., soldier, private soldier; infantry (opposed to equitās); militēs imperāre, levy soldiers upon. I, 7.
milia, see mille.
milītāris, -e, adj. [miles, soldier], of a soldier, military, martial; rés militāris, military matters, warfare, the science of warfare. I, 21.
militia, -ae, f. [miles, soldier], military service, warfare.
milla, indecl. num. adj., a thousand; pl. as nouns, milia, -ī, n., thousands, (usually followed by part. gen.); milia, passuum, thousands of paces, miles. I, 2.
Minerva, -ae, f., Minerva (mī-nēr′va), goddess of wisdom and the arts.
minimē, adv. [minimus, least], least, very little; by no means, not at all. I, 1.
minimus, -a, -um, sup. of parvus.
minor, comp. of parvus.
Minucius, -ī, m., Lucius Minucius Basilis (līb′hīshīs mī-nū′shīhs bās′i-līs), a commander of cavalry.
minuō, minuere, minui, minūtum, tr. and intr. [minus, less], lessen, impair, diminish; settle (contrōvēsīās); minuente aestā, the tide ebbing. I, 20.
minus, adv. comp. [parvus, little], less; not at all, too little; quō minus, see quōminus. I, 2.
mirer, I, tr. and intr., wonder or marvel at; wonder, be astonished. I, 32.
mirus, -a, -um, adj. [miror, wonder at], strange, astonishing; mirum in modum, surprisingly. I, 34.
miser, -era, -erum, adj., wretched, miserable, pitiable, unfortunate; poor, worthless. I, 32; II, 26.
misercordia, -ae, f. [misereō, pity + cor, the heart], pity, mercy, compassion. II, 28.
miseror, I, tr. [miser, wretched], bewail, lament over, deplore. I, 39.
misil, see mittō.
missus, -ūs, m. [mittō, send], a sending, dispatching; missū Caesaris, sent by Caesar.
missus, see mittō.
mittissimē, superl. adv. [mitis, mild], very mildly or gently.
mittō, mittere, misil, missum, tr., send, send off, dismiss, let go, dispatch; hurl, discharge. I, 7.
mōbilis, -e, adj. [moveō, move], changeable. IV, 5.
mōbilitās, -tātis, f. [mōbilis, movable], movableness, activity, speed;
MOBILITÉR 49  MUNDUS

changeableness, fickleness, inconsistency. II, 1.

mobiliter, adj. [mobilis, movable], readily, easily. III, 10.

moderor, 1, tr. [modus, limit], manage, govern, control, guide. IV, 33.

modestia, -ae, f. [modus, limit], moderation, self-control, sobriety of behavior.

modo, adv. [modus, measure], with measure or limit; only, merely; even, just, at least, but; of time, just now, recently; non modo . . . sed etiam, no; only, . . . but also. I, 16.

modus, -i, m., measure, quantity, size; manner, method, style; elius modi, of such a kind, such; abd., modē, with gen., in the character of, like. I, 41; II, 31.

moenia, -ium, n. pl., defensive walls, city walls, ramparts, bulwarks, fortifications, defenses. II, 6.

mōēs, -is, f., mass; dike. III, 12.

molestē, adv., with annoyance; molestē ferre, to be annoyed. II, 1.

mōlimentum, -i, n. [mōlior, exert one's self], effort, difficulty. I, 34.

mōlitus, -a, -um, see molē.

mōliō, 4, tr. [mollis, soft], soften, make easy.

mollis, -e, adj., soft; smooth; weak. III, 19.

mollitia, -ae, f. [mollis, soft], weakness.

mollitēs, -ī, f. [mollis, soft], weakness.

molē, -ere, -ul, -itum, tr., grind. I, 5.

mōmentum, -i, n., weight, influence, importance.

Mōna, -ae, f., Mōna (mō'nā), an island of the coast of Britain, probably the Isle of Man.


mōna, montis, m., mountain; mountain range; hill, height. I, 1.

mōra, -ae, f., delay. II, 15.

mōrbus, -i, m., illness, sickness, disease.

Morinī, -brum, m. (As), the Morini (mōr'ī-nī). II, 4.

morior, morī, mortuus sum, iat. [mors, death], die. I, 4.

Moritasgus, -i, m., Moritasgus (mōrī-tās'gas), a chief of the Semones.

moror, 1, tr. and intr. [mors, a delay], delay, hinder; tarry, linger. I, 26.

mors, -is, f., death; sibi mortem conscribere, commit suicide. I, 4.

mortuus, see morior.

mōs, mōris, m., manner, custom, practice; pl., customs, habits; character. I, 4.

Mōsa, -ae, m. (ABF), the river Mōsa (mō'sa), now the Meuse or Maas. IV, 9.

mōtus, -us, m. [moveō, move], movement, motion; political movement, uprising, disturbance. IV, 33.

moveō, movēre, mōvi, mōtum, tr., set in motion, move; affect, influence; with castra, move camp from one place to another, or break camp. I, 15.

mulier, -eris, f., woman; wife. I, 39.

mūliō, -ōnis, m. [mūlus, mule], mule driver, muleteer.

multitūdō, -inis, f. [multus, much], a great number, multitude; the multitude, the common people, the populace. I, 2.

multē, 1, tr., fine, deprive one of something as a fine.

multē, adv. [abl. of multus, much], by far, much.

multus, adj. [acc. of multus, much], much, very, greatly, especially; comp. plēs, more; plēs posse, be more able or powerful, have more influence; sup. plārimum, most, very; plārimum posse, be most powerful; be very powerful or influential. I, 3.

multus, -a, -um, adj., much, great; pl. many; with abl. denoting time when, late; as noun, many persons or things; comp. plēs, pluris, more; as noun, more; pl. more, several, many; sup. plurimus, -a, -um, most; pl. very many. I, 3.

mūlus, -i, m., a mule.

Munātius, -ti, m., Lucius Munatius Plancus (lū'shyūs mū'nā'shyūs plāŋ'kts), a lieutenant of Caesar.

mundus, -i, m., universe, world.
MUNIMENTUM, -I, n. [mánio, fortify], defense, fortification. II. 17.

mánio, 4, tr., defend with a wall, fortify, defend, protect; mánitus, pf. part. as adj., fortified, defended, protected. I. 24.

mántitiō, -onis, f. [mánio, fortify], fortifying; fortification, rampart, works, intrenchments. I. 8.

mánus, -eris, n., duty, service, task; present. I. 43.

múrális, -e, adj. [múrus, wall], pertaining to a wall, mural; múrale plúnum, mural javelin, a heavy javelin to be thrown from the top of a wall. III. 14.

múrus, -I, m., a wall. I. 8.

musculus, -I, m. [dim. of mus, mouse], shed, mantlet.

mutilus, -a, -um, adj., mutilated, broken.

N.

nactus, -a, -um, see nancisor.

nam, conj., for. I. 12.


Namnetēs, -um, m. (Ce), the Namnetes (năm'né-tēz). III. 9.

namque, conj. [nam, for], for. I. 38; III. 13.

nancisor, nanciscī, nactus sum, tr., get, obtain possession of; meet with, find. I. 53; IV. 23.

Nantuātes, -um, m. (Cd), the Nantuātes (năntū'tā-tēz). III. 1.

Narrō, -ōnis, m. (Ee), Narbo (nărb'ō), now Narbonne. III. 20.

nāscor, nāsci, nātus sum, intr., be born or produced; rise, spring up, be reared; be found. II. 18.

Nasua, -ae, m. Nasua (nāshū'-a), a leader of the Suebi. I. 37.

nātālis, -e, adj. [nāscor, be born], pertaining to birth; diēs, birthday.

nātio, -ōnis, f. [nāscor, be born], race, tribe, people, nation. I. 53; II. 35.

nātīvus, -a, -um, adj. [nāscor, be born], native; natural.

nātūra, -ae, f. [nāscor be born], nature; natural disposition, character; constitution. I. 2.
necne, conj. [nec, nor + ne], or not. I, 50.
neco, I, tr. [nex, death], put to death, kill, murder. I, 52; III, 16.
necubi, conj.-adv. [nē̂, not +(e)ubi, where], that nowhere, lest anywhere.
nēfarius, -a, -um, adj. [nēfās, sin], wicked, impious.
nēfās, n., indecl. [nē + fās, divine right], contrary to divine right; sin, crime.
neg-, see ne-.
neglegō, -legere, -lēxi, -lēctum, tr. [neg + legō, choose, regard], not heed, disregard, neglect. I, 35; III, 10.
eggō, I, tr. and intr., say no, refuse, say... not. I, 8.
eggōtor, I, intr. [eggōtium, business], carry on business, traffic, trade.
eggōtium, -tium, n. [neg + otiōm, leisure], concern, business, undertaking; trouble, difficulty, labor; negōtium dare, employ, direct; quid negōtiī, what business; nihil negōtii, no difficulty. I, 24; II, 3.
Nemētēs, -um, m. (Bh), the Nemetes (nēmētēs). I, 51.
nēmō, acc. nōminem, m. and f. [nē + homō, man], no man, no one, nobody. I, 18.
nēquāquam, adv. [nē + quāquam, in any way], in no way, by no means, not at all. IV, 23.
neque (neco) (App. 198, a), conj. [nē + que], and not, not, nor; but not; neque... neque, neither... nor. I, 4.
nēquīquam, adv. [nē + quī(d)quam, anything], in vain, to no purpose. II, 27.
Nervicus, -a, -um, adj. [Nervicus], of the Nervii. III, 5.
Nervius, -a, -um, adj. (Aef), of the Nervii; m. sing. as noun, one of the Nervii; m. pl. as noun, the Nervii (nēriu-). II, 4.
nervus, -i, m., sinew; in pl., vigor, strength, power. I, 20.
neu, see nēve.
neuter, -tra, -trum (gen. -trius, dat. -tri), adj. used as noun, [ne + uter, which of two], neither; in pl., neither side, neither party. II, 9.
nēve (neu) (App. 188, b), conj. [nē + ve, or], and not, nor. I, 26.
nex, necis, f., violent death, death, execution. I, 16.
nihil, indecl. noun, n., nothing; with gen., no, none of; acc. as adv., not, not at all, by no means; nōn nihil, somewhat. I, 11.
nihilō, adv., by no means; nihilō minus, nevertheless; nihilō sētiūs, none the less, nevertheless. I, 5.
nimus, -a, -um, adj. [nimis, too much], beyond measure, too great, excessive.
nisi, conj. [ne + si, if], if not, except, unless. I, 22.
Nitiobrogēs, -um, m. (Dd), the Nitiobrogés (nihībō'brōgēz).
nitor, nīlī, nīlus sum, intr., rest or rely upon; exert one's self, strive, endeavor. I, 18.
nix, nivis, f., snow.
nōbilis, -e, adj. [nōscō, know], well known, distinguished, noted; of noble birth, noble; as noun, a noble. I, 2.
nōbiltās, -tās, f. [nōbilis, well known], celebrity; noble birth, nobility, rank; the nobility, the nobles. I, 2.
noceō, nocēre, noculi, nocitum, intr., injure, hurt; nocēns, pres. part. as noun, guilty person. III, 12.
nocēta, adv. [nox, night], by night. I, 8.
nocēturnus, -a, -um, adj. [nox, night], at night, nocturnal, nightly. I, 38.
nōdus, -i, m., knot; joint.
nōlī, nōlle, nōli, —, (App. 89), tr. and intr. [nē + volō, wish], not wish, be unwilling; refuse; imp. nōli or nōlīte, with inf. (App. 219), do not. I, 16.
nōmen, -inis, n., name, title; reputation, prestige; nōmine with gen., in the name of, as; suō nōmine, on his or their own account, personally. I, 13.
nōminātim, adv. [nōminō, name], by name; expressly; in detail. I, 29.
nōminō, I, tr. [nōmen, name], call by name, name, mention. II, 18.
nōn (App. 166, a), adv., not; no. I, 3.
nōndum, adv. [nōn, not+dum], not yet. I, 6.
nōnus, -a, -um, ord. num. adj., ninth. II, 23.
Norēlia, ae, f. (Ck) Norelia (nō-řē’ya), a town in Noricum, now Neumarkt. I, 5.
Noricus, -a, -um, adj., pertaining to Noricum (a country between the Danube and the Alps), Norican. I, 5.
nōs, see ego.
nōscō, nōscere, nōvi, nōtum, tr., learn, become acquainted or familiar with; nōvi, pf., have learned, hence, know; nōtus, pf. part. as adj., known, well known, familiar. III, 9.
nōsēmet, see egomet.
nōstēr, -tra, -trum, poss. adj. [nōs, we], our, ours, our own; in pl. as nōs, our men, our troops. I, 1.
nōttinā, ae, f. [nōscō, know], knowledge, acquaintance.
nōtus, -a, -um, see nōscō.
novem, indecl. card. num. adj., nine.
Noviodūnium, -i, n., Noviodunum (nō-vi-o-dū’nium) (1), the capital of the Suevian Saec, the modern Soissons (Be); (2), a city of the Bituriges (Ce); (3), a city of the Haedui (Ce). II, 12.
novitās, -ātis, f. [novus, new], newness; strangeness, novelty. IV, 34.
novus, -a, -um, adj., new, novel, unusual; fresh; rēs novae, a change of government, revolution; sup. novissimus, -a, -um, latest, last; as novus or with agmen, those in the rear, the rear. I, 9.
nox, noctis, f., night; media nox, middle of the night, midnight; multā noce, late at night. I, 26.
noxia, -ae, f., crime, offense.
nūbē, nūbere, nāpsi, nāptum, intr., veil one's self for the marriage ceremony, marry. I, 18.
nūdō, 1, tr. [nādus, bare], strip, uncover, make bare, expose. II, 6.
nūdus, -a, -um, adj., naked, unclothed, bare; exposed, unprotected. I, 25.
nūllus, -a, -um, gen., nūllus, adj. [ne+nullus, any], not any, no; as nōn, no one, none; nōs nālūs, some; as nōs, some, some persons. I, 7.
nūm, interrog. particle implying the expectation of a negative reply. I, 14.
nūmen, -inis, m., divinity; divine will.
numerus, -i, m., number, quantity, amount; account; in numerō, with gen., among. as. I, 8.
Numidae, -ārum, m., the Numidae (nū-mid-ā), better the Numidians, a people of North Africa, in modern Algiers. II, 7.
nūmmus, -i, m., coin.
nūmquam, adv. [ne+numquam, ever], not ever, never; nōn numquam, sometimes. I, 8.
nūne, adv., now, at present, at this time. I, 31; II, 4.
nūntiās, -i, m., messenger, announce, send news, report, make known; order, direct. I, 7.
nūntiās, -i, m., messenger; message, news, report. I, 26.
nūper, adv., recently, not long ago. I, 6.
nūtus, -us, m. [nōs, nod], nod; sign, command; ad nūtum, at one's nod or command. I, 31; IV, 23.

0.

ob, prep. with acc., on account of, for; in compounds, opposed to, to, toward, against; quam ob rem, wherefore, why. I, 4.
obaerātus, -a, -um, adj. [aes, money], in debt; as nōs, debtor. I, 4.
obāūcō, -ducere, -daxi, -ductum, tr. [ducō, lead], lead towards; extend, dig. II, 8.
obāē, -ire, -il, -ītum, tr. [ēō, go. App. 84], go to or towards; perform, attend to.
obōs, -ārēs, -āri, -āriet, tr. [lācō, throw. App. 7], throw against or in the way; place in front or opposite, present; expose; objectus, pf. part. as adj., lying in the way or opposite, in the way. I, 26.
obotus, -ūs, m. [obōs, go to deā], destruction. II, 29.
obōlātus, see offerē.
oblíque, adv. [oblíquus, slanting]. obliquely, slantwise. IV, 17.

oblíquus, -a, -um, adj., running obliquely, slanting.

oblívisor, oblívisci, oblíitus sum, intr. [oblívitio, forgetfulness], forget. I, 14.

obsecrō, I, tr. [sacer, sacred], implore, entreat, beseech. I, 20.

obsequentia, -ae, f. [obsequor, comply], compliance, compliance.

observō, I, tr. [servō, give heed], observe, mark, watch; regard, obey; celebrate. I, 45.

obseques, -idium, m. and f. [obsideō, blockade], one that is guarded, hostage; pledge, security. I, 9.

obsesiō, -nis, f. [obsideō, blockade], blocking up, blockade, siege.

obsideō, -sidère, -sédī, -sēsium, tr. [sedeō, sit], sit in the way of, obstruct, besiege, blockade. III, 23.

obsideō, -nis, f. [obsideō, blockade], siege, investment, blockade; peril, oppression. IV, 19.

obsignō, I, tr. [signō, mark], seal, sign and seal. I, 39.

obstatō, -sistere, -stīlī, -stītum, intr. [sistē, stand], oppose, resist, withstand.

obstinātē, adv., firmly, resolutely.

obstringō, -stringere, -stringxi, -strictum, tr. [stringō, tie], bind, hold under obligations, pledge. I, 9.

obstruō, -struere, -strāxi, -strāctum, tr. [struō, pile up], block up, barricade, obstruct.

obtemperō, I, intr. [temporō, rule], be subject to rule, comply with, obey. IV, 21.

obtestor, I, tr. [testor, witness], call to witness; beseech, entreat. IV, 25.

obtineō, -tinère, -tinul, -tentum, tr. [teneō, hold], hold, retain, possess, maintain; acquire, obtain. I, 1.

obtuli, see offereō.

obvemiō, -venire, -vēnī, -ventum, intr. [veniō, come], come to, happen upon, meet; fall to by lot. II, 28.

obviam, adv [via, way], in the way; to meet, towards, against.

occașiō, -onis, f. [occidō, fall, happen], occasion, opportunity. III, 18.

occāsus, -ae, m. [occidō, fall, set], falling down, setting; with sólis, sunset; the west. I, 1.

occidō, -ciderē, -cidi, -cāsum, intr. [ob+cassō, fall], fall down, set; happen; be slain, perish; occidēns sól, the west.

occidō, -ciderē, -cidi, -cisum, tr. [ob+cessō, cut, slay], cut down, kill, slay. I, 7.

occultātō, -onis, f. [occultō, hide], concealment.

occultō, adv. [occultus, secret], secretly.

occultō, I, tr. [occultus, secret], hide, keep secret, conceal. I, 27.

occulitus, -a, -um, adj., covered, hidden, concealed, secret; n. as noun, a hidden place, an ambush. I, 32; II, 18.

occupātō, -onis, f. [occupō, seize], seizing; occupation, business, engagement. IV, 16.

occupō, I, tr. [ob+capiō, take], take possession of, seize, occupy; engage, employ. I, 3.

occurrō, -currere, -currī, -currum, intr. [ob+currō, run], run in the way of, meet; happen upon; go to, come to; oppose, counteract; occur. I, 33; II, 31.

Öceānus, -ī, m., the ocean; as adj., with mare, the ocean. I, 1.

Ocelum, -ī, n. (Dg), Ocelum: (ōcē-lūm). I, 10.

octāvus, -â, -um, ord. num. adj. [octō, eight], eighth. II, 23.

octingenti, -ae, -a, card. num. adj. [octō, eight], eight hundred. IV, 12.

octō (VII), card. num. adj. indecl., eight I, 21.

Octodārus, -ī, m. (Cg), Octodurus (ōk-tō-da-rūs). III, 1.

octōgēni, -ae, -a, distr. num. adj. [octō, eight], eighty each, eighty.

octōgintā (XXXX), card. num. adj. indecl. [octō, eight], eighty. I, 2.

octōni, -ae, -a, distr. num. adj. [octō, eight], eight at a time, eight.
OCULUS

οculus, -I, m., eye. I, 12.


οδium, -di, n., hatred.

οφενδέ, -fendor, -fendi, -fēsum, tr. [ob-fendō, strike], strike against, hurt, harm; animus offendere, hurt the feelings, offend. I, 19.

οφενσίο, -sia, f. [offendē, hurt], offence. I, 19.

οφερέ, oferre, obtull, oblātum, tr. [ob+-ferē, bear], bring before, present; offer, confer upon, give; with sē, expose one’s self to, charge upon, encounter. II, 21.

ομείνει, -mi, service, allegiance, duty; official duty, business; esse, manēre, or permanēre in officiō, to remain faithful. I, 40; III, 11.

Ολιβίος, -bı̂s, m., Olovico (ō-lō-vik-kō), a king of the Nitobogres.

ομίττε, -mittere, -miti, -missum, tr. [ob-+mittō, send], let go or fall, drop; give up, neglect, disregard. II, 17.

ομίλιο, adv. [omnis, all], all at all; whatever; altogether, entirely, wholly; in all, only. I, 6.

ομίλιο, -e, adj., all, every, all the, every kind of; the whole, as a whole; m. pl. as noun, all, every one; all the rest; a. pl. as noun, all possessions or goods. I, 1.

ονέαριος, -a, -um, adj. [onus, burden], fitted for burdens; with nāvis, transport, freight ship. IV, 22.

ονέρδ, I, tr. [onus, load], load.

ονος, -onis, a., load, burden; weight, size. II, 30.

οπέρα, -ae, f. [opus, work], work, exertion; service; pains, attention; dare operam, give attention, take pains. II, 25.

οπίνει, -onis, f. [opinor, think], way of thinking, opinion; impression; expectation; reputation; opinio timēris, impression of cowardice. II, 3.

οπορτέ, -ēre, -uit, —, intr. impress., it is necessary, needful, becoming, proper; when translated as personal verb, must, ought. I, 4.

οππιδίουμ, -i, -um, adj. [oppidum, town], of or pertaining to a town; is

pl. as noun, townspeople, inhabitants of a town. II, 7.

οππίδιο, -i, a. fortified town, town; stronghold. I, 5.

οππώνε, -pōnere, -posul, -posūmum, tr. [ob+-pōnē, place], place against or, opposite, oppose; oppositus, pf. part. as adj., in front, opposite.

οπποτέ, -rē, f. [opportūnus, fit], opportune, seasonably. IV, 22.

οπποτύνητι, -tēs, f. [opportūnus, fit], fitness; fit time, opportunity; advantage; with loci, favorable situation or position; with temporis, favorable opportunity. III, 12.

οπποτύνει, -sia, -um, adj., fit, opportune, lucky, suitable; favorable, advantageous. I, 30; II, 8.

οπποτέ, -i, adv. [oppōnē], opposed.

οππρίμε, -primere, -pressi, -pressum, tr. [ob+-premō, press], press down, oppress; overwhelm, overpower, destroy; fail upon, surprise. I, 44; III, 2.

οππυιγνιδ, -ōnis, f. [oppugnō, storm], a storming, besieging, siege, assault, attack; plan or method of storming. II, 6.

οππυιγνω, I, tr. [ob-pugnō, fight], fight against, attack, assault, storm, besiege, I, 5.


οπτάς, -a, -um, adj. [optō, wish], wished for, desired, welcome.

οπτόμε, sup. of tens.

οπτόμε, sup. of bonus.

οπος, operis, a., work, labor; military work or works, fortifications, defenses; a work of mēring or architecture; nātārē et oj are, by nature and art; operis, crafts. I, 8.

οπος, indecl. noun, a. [of opus, work, deed], need, necessity; opus est, it is necessary, there is need, the thing needed being expressed either by the nom. or abl. (App. 146). I, 28; II, 8.

ορα, -ae, f., border, margin; coast, shore. III, 8.

ορατιο, -ōnis, f. [ōrē, speak], a speak-
ing, speech, language, words, address, argument. I, 8.

örátór, -ória, m. (órō, speak), speaker; ambassador, envoy. IV, 27.

orbis, -is, m., orb, ring, circle; orbis terrarum, the world. IV, 27.

Orcoynia, -ae, f. Orcoynia (ór-ōnē-ā), same as Hecoreynia.

örō, -inis, m., row, tier, layer; rank, line of soldiers; arrangement, order; degree, rank; prīmi ārōnis, centuries of the first rank. I, 40; II, 11.

Orgetorix, -ígis, m., Orgetorix (ór-jēt-ó-rikē), a chief of the Helvetii. I, 2.

orior, orīrī, oritus sum, intr., arise, begin, spring up, rise, start; be born, descend; orīēns ōlī, the rising sun, sunrise; the east. I, 1.

ōrnamentum, -ī, n. (ōrō, adorn), ornament; mark of honor. I, 44.

ōrō, 1, tr., adorn; furnish, supply; ōrnātus, pf. part. as adj., equipped, furnished, fitted out. III, 12.

ōrō, 1, tr. [ōrō, mouth], speak; beseech, entreat. I, 20.

ortus, -ūsus, m. [orior, rise], rising. ōs, ēris, n., mouth; face, countenance.

Osiami, -ōrum, m. (Bb), the Osami (ō-sē-mi), a Gallic people in modern Brittany. II, 34.

ostendō, -tendere, -tendi, -tentum, tr. [obs-tendō, stretch], stretch before; present, show, bring into view, reveal; tell, declare; point out, mention. I, 8.

ostentātiō, -ānis, f. [ostentō, show], show, display; pretense; pride.

ostentō, 1, tr. [freq. of ostendō, show], show frequently; show, exhibit.

ōtium, -tī, n., leisure, inactivity, quiet.

ōvum, -ī, n., egg. IV, 10.

P.

P., abbr. for Pābālius, a Roman praenomen. I, 21.

pābāliātēs, -ānis, f. [pābālores, forage], getting fodder, foraging. I, 15.

pābālator, -āris, m. [pābālores, forage], forager.

pābālores, 1, intr. [pābālum, fodder], forage.

pābālum, -ī, n. [cf. pāso, food], fodder, provender. I, 16.

pācō, 1, tr. [pāx, peace], make peaceful, subdue, pacify; pācātus, pf. part. as adj., peaceful, quiet, subdued. I, 6.

pācūm, -ī, n. [pāzco, agree to], agreement; manner.

Pardus, -ī, m. (Bb), the Pardus (pārōdus), better, the Po, the largest river of northern Italy.

paeæ, adv., nearly, almost. I, 11.

paeinītēs, paeinītēre, paeinītūtum, — tr., imper., it causes regret; makes one repent; when translated as pers. verb, repent (App. 100). IV, 5.

pāgus, -ī, m., village; district, province, canton. I, 12.

palam, adv., openly, publicly.

palāma, -ae, f., palm of the hand.

palus, -ūdis, f., marsh, morass, swamp. I, 40; II, 9.

paluster, -āris, -tre, adj. [palās, swamp], swampy, marshy.

pandō, pandere, pandi, passum, tr., spread or stretch out, extend; passīs capillus, with disheveled hair; passīs manibus, with outstretched hands. I, 51; II, 12.

pār, paris, adj., equal, like, similar; equal to, a match for; with words of number and quantity, the same; pār atque, the same as. I, 28.

parcē, adv. [parce, frugal], frugally, sparingly.

parcē, parcere, parpeīrī, parsum, intr. [parce, frugal], be frugal or economical; spare, not injure.

parēns, -entis, m., f. [parēs, bring forth], parent.

parentō, 1, intr. [parēns, parent], make funeral offerings especially for parents; avenge.

pārēs, 2, intr. [cf. pāriō, bring forth], appear; obey, yield to, be subject to. I, 27.

pāriō, parere, parperī, partum, tr., bring forth; gain, acquire, win.

Parisii, -ōrum, m. (Bb), the Parissii (pā-ri-šē-yī), a Gallic tribe about modern Paris.

parō, 1, tr., prepare, get ready; procure, acquire; prepare for, get ready for;
pars, -is, f., part, portion; party, faction; direction, side, place; district. I, 1.

partim, adv. [acc. of pars, part], partly, in part; partim...partim, some...others. II, 1.

partior, 4, tr. [pars, part], part, share, divide. III, 10.

parsus, see parīs.

parum, adv. [parvus, little], little, too little, not sufficiently. III, 18.

parvulus, -a, -um, adj. [dim. of parvus, little], small, insignificant, slight; parvula proelia, skirmishes; parvuli, children. II, 30.

parvus, -a, -um, adj., little, small, insignificant; comp., minor, minus, lesser, smaller; shorter; minus, as noun, less; sup., minimus, -a, -um, least, very small. I, 8.

passim, adv., in all directions. IV, 14.

passus, -ús, m. [pandō, extend], a pace, the distance from where the foot leaves the ground to where the same foot strikes it again, a measure of 4 feet, 10 1/4 inches (five Roman feet); mille passus or passuum, a Roman mile, 4851 feet. I, 2.

passus, see pandō and patior.

patefaciō, -fae-rē, -fae-rēdō, -factum, tr. [patēō, be open+factō, make], make or throw open, open. II, 32.

patefīō, -feri, -factum sum, pass. of patefaciō.

patēns, -entis, adj. [patēō, be open], open, unobstructed, accessible. I, 10.

pateō, -ēre, -ul-, ---, intr., lie or be open, be passable; stretch out, extend. I, 2.

pater, -tris, m., father; in pl., forefathers, ancestors; pater familias, father or head of a family. I, 3.

patenter, adv. [patiēns; patior, endure], patiently.

patiēns, -e, f. [patiēns; patior, endure], endurance, patience.

pater, pati, passus sum, tr. and intr., endure, withstand, suffer; permit, allow. I, 6.

patrīus, -a, -um, adj. [pater, father], fatherly; ancestral. II, 15.

patrōnus, -i, m. [pater, father], protector, patron.

patruus, -i, m. [pater, father], a father's brother, uncle.

pau, -us, -a, adj. (used rarely in sing.), few; as noun, few persons or things. I, 15.

paucaitās, -tā-tās, f. [paucus, few], fewness, small number. III, 2.

paulātim, adv. [paulus, little], little by little, by degrees, gradually. I, 32; II, 8.

paulisper, adv. [paulus, little], for a short time, for a little while. II, 7.

paulō, adv. [paulus, little], a little, somewhat, slightly. I, 54; II, 20.

paululum, adv. [paulus, little], a very little. II, 8.

paulum, adv. [paulus, little], a little, somewhat, slightly. I, 50; II, 25.

paulus, -a, -um, adj., little; paulum, as noun, a little; post paulum, soon after.

pāx, pācis, f., peace; favor. I, 3.

pecō, 1, intr., sin, transgress, do wrong. I, 47.

pectūs, -oris, n., the breast.

pectūnās, -ae, f., property, wealth; money.

pecus, -oris, n., cattle, a herd; usually small cattle, sheep, meat, flesh. III, 29.

pedālis, -e, adj. [pēs, foot], of a foot as thickness or diameter. III, 13.

pedes, peditis, m. [pēs, foot], foot soldier; pl., infantry, foot. I, 42; II, 24.

pedester, -tris, -tre, adj. [pēs, foot], on foot, pedestrian; pedestres cóplāe, infantry. II, 17.

peditātus, -ūs, m. [pedes, foot soldier], foot soldiers, infantry. IV, 34.

Pedius, -di, m., Quintus Pedius (kwin'tūs pē'di-ūs), one of Caesar's lieutenants. II, 2.

pelus, comp. of malus.

pellis, -is, f., a hide, a skin (either on or off the body of an animal); tent made of hides. I, 23.

pellō, pellere, pepuli, pulsum, tr.,
beat, defeat, rout; drive out, expel. I, 7.

pendō, pendere, pependi, pensus, tr., weigh, weigh out; weigh out money, pay, pay out; with poenās, suffer. I, 36.

penitus, adv., deeply; far within.

per, prep. with acc., through, through-out; by means of, through the agency of, on account of, through the efforts or influence of; per sē, of their own accord, on their own responsibility; sometimes with intensive force, in itself, themselves; in composition, through, very, thoroughly, completely. I, 3.

peragō, -agere, -ēgī, -āctum, tr. [agō, lead], lead through; complete, finish.

perangustus, -a, -um, adj. [angustus, narrow], very narrow.

percipió, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, tr. [capī, take], take completely, obtain; learn of, hear.


percūrrō, -currere, -currī, -cursum, intr. [currō, run], run along or over. IV, 38.

percutiō, -cutere, -cussī, -cussum, tr., strike or thrust through, slay.

perdiscō, -discere, -didīcī, —, tr. [discō, learn], learn thoroughly, learn by heart.

perdō, -dere, -dīdī, -ditum, tr. [dō, give], give over, ruin; perditus, pōrtus, pōrtī part., as adj., desperate, ruined. III, 17.

perducō, -ducere, -duxi, -ductum, tr. [ducō, lead], lead through or along, conduct, bring over, bring; construct, extend; influence, win over; draw out, prolong. I, 8.

perendinus, -a, -um, adj., after to-morrow.

perēō, -ire, -iī, -ītum, intr. [ēō, go. App. 84], be destroyed or killed, perish. I, 52; IV, 18.

perexquitō, I, intr. [sequīto, ride], ride about, ride through or around. IV, 33.

perexiguus, -a, -um, adj. [exiguus, little], very little.

perfacilis, -ē, adj. [facilis, easy], very easy. I, 2.

perfectus, see perficiō.

perferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātum, tr. [ferō, bear], bear or carry through, convey, deliver; announce, report; submit to, endure, suffer. I, 17.

perficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, tr. [faciō, make, do], make or do thoroughly or completely, complete, finish; construct, build; achieve, accomplish, cause. I, 3.

perfādia, -ae, f. [perfādes, faithless], treachery, perfidy; falsehood, dishonesty. IV, 13.

perfringō, -fringere, -frēgī, -frāctum, tr. [frangō, break], break or burst through. I, 25.

perfuga, -ae, m. [perfugīō, flee for refuge], refugee, deserter. I, 58.

perfugīō, -fugere, -fugī, -fugitum, intr. [fugīō, flee], flee for refuge, take refuge; desert. I, 27.

perfugium, -gi, m. [perfugīō, flee for refuge], place of refuge, refuge. IV, 38.

pergō, pergere, perrexī, perrectum, intr. [per + regō, keep straight], go on, proceed. III, 18.

pericūtor, I, tr. and intr. [periculum, trial, danger], try, test; be in danger or peril. II, 8.

pericūlus, -a, -um, adj. [periculum, danger], full of danger, dangerous, perilous. I, 33.

periculum, -ī, n., trial, test, attempt; risk, danger, peril. I, 6.

peritus, -a, -um, adj. [of. experior, try], tried, experienced, skilled; familiar with, acquainted with. I, 21.

perlātus, see perferō.

perlēgō, -legere, -lēgī, -lēctum, tr. [legō, read], read through, read.

perlūe, -luere, -lūi, -lūtum, tr. [luō, wash], wash completely, bathe; pass. as middle voice, bathe one's self.

permagnus, -a, -um, adj. [magnus, large], very large, very great.

permaneō, -manēre, -mānī, -mānsum, intr. [manēō, remain], stay through or to the end, stay, remain; continue, persist. I, 32; III, 3.

permiscēo, -miscere, -miscī, -mixtum, tr. [miscēō, mix], mix thoroughly, mingle.
permittē, -mittere, -miœ, -missum, tr. [mitterē, send], give up or over, surrender; entrust, commit; permit. allow. I, 50; II, 3.

permixtus, see permisceō.

permovere, -movēre, -móvi, -móctum, tr. [moveō, move], move thoroughly, arouse, incite, excite; affect, influence. I, 3.

permulcē, -mulcēre, -mulē, -mulsum, tr. [mulcē, soothe], soothe completely, appease. IV, 6.


perpauci, -ae, -a, adj. [pauci, few], very few, but very few; m. pl. as noun, very few. I, 6.

perpendiculum, -i, a., plummet, plumb-line. IV, 17.

perpetior, -peti, -possus sum, tr. [patior, suffer], suffer, bear patiently.

perpetuō, adv. [perpetuus, continuous], continuously, constantly; forever. I, 31.

perpetuus, -a, -um, adj., continuous, uninterrupted; permanent, lasting, continual; whole, entire; a. as noun in phrase in perpetuum, forever. I, 35; III, 3.

perquirō, -quirere, -quisivī, -quisītum, tr. [quaequi, ask], ask about, make careful inquiry.

perrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpi, -ruptum, tr. and intr. [rumpō, break], break through, force one's way through, force a passage. I, 8.

perscribō, -scribere, -scriptū, -scriptum, tr. [scribō, write], write out, report, describe.

persequor, -sequī, -sectītus sum, tr. [sequor, follow], follow through, continue in; pursue, follow up; avenge. I, 13.

perservō, 1, intr., persist, persevere. I, 13.

persolvē, -solvere, -solvī, -solvatūm, tr. [solvō, pay], pay in full; suffer (punishment). I, 12.

perspicīō, -spicerē, -spexī, -spectūm, tr. [speciō, look], look or see through, view, examine, inspect; perceive, realize, learn, find out, ascertain. I, 40; II, 11.

perrō, -stāre, -stītī, -stātum, intr. [stō, stand], stand firm, persist.

persuādē, -suādēre, -suāsi, -suāsum, tr. and intr. [suādē, advise], advise prevailingly; convince, persuade, prevail upon; inculcate; sibi persuāderē, be convinced. I, 2.

perterreō, 2, tr. [terrebō, frighten], frighten thoroughly, terrify greatly. I, 18.

pertinācia, -ae, f. [pertinēō, hold through or fast], obstinacy, stubbornness, pertinacity. I, 42.

pertinēō, -tinēre, -tinul, ---, intr. [tenēō, hold], hold or reach to; extend; pertain, have reference to, concern; tend, aim at; sēdēm pertinēre, tend to the same purpose or result, amount to the same thing. I, 2.

pertuli, see perfērō.

perturbātiō, -onis, f. [perturbō, disturb], disturbance, disorder, confusion. IV, 29.

perturbō, 1, tr. [turbō, disturb], disturb greatly, throw into confusion, embarrass, disturb; alarm, terrify. I, 39; II, 11.

pervagor, 1, intr. [vagor, wander], wander about, scatter.

pervenīō, -veniēre, -vēnī, -ventum, intr. [venīō, come], come through; come to, arrive at, reach; of property, fall, revert. I, 7.

pēs, pedis, m., the foot; a foot, 11.65 inches in length; pedibus, on foot; pedem referre, retreat. I, 8.

petō, -ere, -ivi or -ii, -itum, tr. and intr., seek, hunt for, aim at, make for, attack, go to, direct one's course to or toward; seek to obtain, strive after; ask, request, beseech. I, 19.

Petrocorrī, -śrum, m. (Dcd), the Petrocorrī (pēvrō-kōrī-i).

Petrōnius, -ni, m., Marcus Petronius (mār'kūs pē-trō-nil'ūs), a centurion of the 5th legion.

Petrosidius, -di, m., Lucius Petrosidius (lū'shius pēvrō-sid'ūs), a standard-bearer.
Pictonés, -um, m. (Cod), the Pictones (plētōnēs). III, 11.
pictás, -átis, f. [plus, dutiful], devotion, loyalty.
plius, -i, m., century of soldiers; primus plius, first century of a legion; primipili centuriónis, or primipilus, the centurion of the first century, chief centurion. III, 5.
plina, -ae, f., feather; battlement, parapet.
pirásae, -ärum, m., the Pirustae (pi-rus'tē), a tribe of Iliricum.
pisciás, -is, m., fish. IV, 10.
Plācē, -ānis, m. (1), Marcus Pupius Piso Calpurnianus (mār'i-küs p'i-pl-us p'i-sō kāl-pōr'n-ian-ūs), consul with Messala, 61 B.C. I, 2. (3), Lucius Calpurnius Piso (lu-kōk-ūs kāl-pōr'n-ius p'i-sō), killed in the defeat of Caesar's army by the Tiguriones, 107 B.C. I, 12. (3), Lucius Calpurnius Piso, Caesar's father-in-law; consul 36 B.C. I, 6. (4), Piso, an Aquitanian. IV, 12.
plīx, plīcis, f., pitch.
plācē, 2, intr. [cf. placē, appease], please, satisfy; often imper. seem good to one, hence, decide, resolve, determine. I, 24; III, 3.
plācidē, adv. [placidus, calm], calmly.
plācō, i, tr., appease.
Plancus, see Munatius.
plānē, adv. [plānus, even, plain], plainly, distinctly, III, 26.
plānitiēs, -ēs, f. [plānus, level], level ground, plain. I, 43; II, 3.
plānus, -a, -um, adj., even, level, flat, plain, III, 12.
plēbs, plēbius, or plēbēs, -ēs, f., populace, common people. I, 8.
plēnā, adv. [plēnus, full], fully. III, 8.
plēnus, -a, -um, adj. [plēs, fill], full, whole, complete. III, 2.
plērīque, -aque, pl., very many, the most of; as nōn, a great many, very many. II, 4.
plērumque, adv. [plērūsque, the greater part], for the most part, mostly, generally; again and again, very oft. a
I, 40; II, 30.
Pleumoxii, -orum, m. (Ae), the Pleumoxii (plē-mōk's-ī). plumbum, -i, n., lead; plumbum album, tin.
plārum, see multum.
plārīnum, see multus.
plātā, see multus and multum.
plūteus, -i, m., parapet; a mantelet or screen of moveable shields.
pōcēulum, -i, n., cup.
pōena, -ae, f., punishment, penalty. I, 4.
pollex, -i, m., the thumb, with or without digitus. III, 12.
pollicēor, 2, tr. and intr. [prō+līceor, bid, offer], hold forth, offer, promise, pledge. I, 14.
pollicitātiō, -onis, f. [pollicēor, promise], promise, offer. III, 18.
popicītūs, see pollicēor.
Pompēius, -i, m. (1), Gnaeus Pompeius (nā'kus pōm-pē'yūs), better, Pompey, triumvir with Caesar and Crassus in 69 B.C., defeated by Caesar at Pharsalia, and murdered in Egypt by Ptolemy, 48 B.C. IV, 1. (3), Gnaeus Pompeius, an interpreter of Quintus Titurius.
pōndus, -onis, n. [cf. pendō, weigh], weight. II, 29.
pōné, pōnerē, posītum, tr., place, put, place over; lay down, set aside; station, post; regard, consider; make, build; with castra, pitch; pass, be situated; with in and adj., depend on, in addition to above meanings. I, 16.
pōnē, pontes, m., bridge. I, 6.
popsocī, see posocī.
populātiō, -onis, f. [popular, ravage], raving, pillaging. I, 15.
popular, i, tr., devastate, ravage, lay waste. I, 11.
populus, -i, m., the people, the mass, the crowd, as opposed to individuals; a people or nation. I, 8.
porrīgō, -rigere, -rēxi, -rēctum, tr. [prōrīgō, keep straight], extend; porrēctus, adj., extended, in extent. II, 19.
porrō, adv., farther on; furthermore, then.
porta, -ae, f. gate. II, 24.
portó, 1, tr., carry, transport, bring, take. I, 5.
portúrium, -ri, n., toll, tariff on imports or exports. I, 18.
portus, -ús, m. [cf. porta, gate], harbor, haven, port. III, 8.
pósce, poscere, poposci, —, tr., ask, demand, request, require. I, 27.
positus, see pōnē.
possideō, -sidēre, -sēdī, -sessum, tr. [sēdō, sit], occupy, hold, possess. I, 24; II, 4.
possidēo, -sidere, -sēdī, -sessum, tr., take possession of, seize. IV, 7.
possum, posse, potui, —, (App. 80), intr. [potiō, able+sum, be], be able, can; to have power or influence, have strength, be strong; with quam and supr., as possible, e.g., quam plurimam possunt, as many as possible; multum posse, plus posse and plurimum posse, see multum. I, 2.
post, adv., and prep. with acc. (1) As adv., later, afterwards. (3) As prep., behind, after; post tergum or post sē, in the rear. I, 5.
postēa, adv. [post, after], after this, afterwards. I, 31.
postēaquam, adv. [postēa, afterwards + quam, than], after. I, 31; IV, 19.
posterus, -a, -um, adj. [poster, after], after, following, next; in m. pl. as sōna, posterity; supr., postrēmus or postumum, last. I, 15.
postpōnē, -pōnerē, -posui, -positum, tr. [post, after+pōnē, place], place after, postpone; disregard.
postquam, coni. [post, afterwards + quam, than], after, as soon as. I, 24.
postrēmus, adv. [postrēmus, last], finally, at last.
postridēs, adv. [posterūs, following + diēs, day], on the day following, the next day; postridēs eius diēs, on the next or following day. I, 23.
postulătum, -i, n. [postulō, demand], demand, claim, request. I, 40; IV, 11.
postulō, 1, tr., request, ask, demand; require, necessitate. I, 31; II, 4.
potēns, -entis, adj. [pres. part. of possum, be able], powerful, influential. I, 8.
potentātus, -ātus, m. [potēns, powerful], chief power, supremacy. I, 31.
potentia, -ae, f. [potēns, powerful], power, authority, influence. I, 18.
potestās, -tātis, f. [potēns, powerful], ability, power, authority; control, sway, rule; chance, opportunity, possibility; potestatem facere, grant permission, give a chance. I, 16.
potior, 4, intr. [potiō, powerful], become master of, get control or possession of, obtain, capture. I, 2.
potius, adv. [comp. of potiō, able], rather. I, 40; II, 10.
potitus, see potior.
praē, prep. with abī, before, in front of; on account of; in comparison with; in composition, before, at the head of, in front, very. II, 30.
praeactus, -a, -atum, adj. [pūr. part. of praecūo, sharpen at the end], sharp in front or at the end, sharpened, pointed. II, 29.
praebeō, 2, tr. [praē-+beō, hold], hold out, offer, furnish, present. II, 17.
praecaveō, -cāvere, -cāvi, -cāvēm, intr. [cavē, guard against], guard against before hand, take precautions. I, 38.
praecédō, -cēdere, -cessit, -cessum, tr. [cēdō, go], go before; surpass, excel. I, 1.
praecēps, -cēpitis, adj. [caput, head], head foremost, headlong; steep, precipitous. II, 24.
praeceptum, -i, n. [praecipīō, instruct], instruction, injunction, command.
praecipīō, -cipere, -cépī, -cepĭm, tr. [capīō, take], take or obtain beforehand, anticipate; instruct, bid, order. I, 22.
praecipīō, 1, tr. [praecēps, headlong], throw or hurl headlong, precipitate. IV, 15.
praecipus, adv. [praecīpūs, especial], especially, particularly. I, 40.
praecipus, -a, -um, adj., especial.
praecipitās, -ātis, -ātis, -ātum, tr. [praecipitātūs, shunt], close or shut in front, block up, close.
praecō, -ōnis, m., herald.
praecōnūrus, see Valerius.
praecurrō, -currere, -currī, -currūsum, intr. [currō, run], run before, hasten on before, precede; outstrip, surpass.
praedas, -ae, f., booty, plunder, spoil.
IV, 54.
praedicitō, 1, tr. [discō, proclaim], proclaim publicly or before others; declare, report, tell of. I, 39; IV, 54.
praedor, 1, tr. [praedātus, boot!, make boot, plunder, rob, depoll. II, 17.
praedātus, -ātum, -ātim, -ātum, tr. [discēdō, lead], lead before, construct before or in front.
praefectus, -i, m. [praeficō, place over], oversee, prefect, commander, officer, captain (usually of cavalry). I, 39; III, 7.
prefereō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātum, tr. [ferō, bear, bring. App. 81], place before, esteem above, prefer to with quam; praeferre sē alicui, surpass. II, 27.
preficō, -ficēre, -feci, -fectum, tr. [facē, make], make before; place over, put in command of, put at the head of, place in charge of. I, 10.
prefigō, -figere, -fixi, -fixum, tr. [figō, fix], fix or set in front.
preful, see praesum.
preametēs, -metuere, -metēti, -metēsum, intr. [metē, fear], fear beforehand, be apprehensive.
preamittēs, -mittere, -mittēti, -mittēsum, tr. [mittē, send], send before or in advance. I, 15.
preamēntium, -mi, n., distinction, prize, reward. I, 43; III, 15.
preamentum, -mi, n., distinction, prize, reward. I, 43; III, 15.
prescupēs, -cupēmus, -cupēmus, -cupēsum, tr. (occupēs, seize), seize upon beforehand, encumber, possess.
presaoptō, 1, tr. [optō, wish], wish beforehand; prefer. I, 25.
presparē, 1, tr. [parē, prepare], prepare beforehand, provide. III, 14.
prespōnē, -pōnere, -posui, -positum, tr. [pōnē, place], place before or over, put in command of, put in charge of. I, 54.
presrumpē, -rumpere, -rumpī, -rumpētum, tr. [rumpē, break], break off, tear away; praeruptus, pres. part. as adj., steep, precipitous. III, 14.
presaeptīō, -saepriā, -saepiē, -saepētum, tr. [saepiē, hedge], hedge or block up.
prescribē, -scribere, -scripsi, -scripsum, tr. [scribē, write], write beforehand; order, direct, prescribe, dictate to. I, 39; II, 20.
prescriptum, -i, n. [praescribē, order], order, dictation, command. I, 39.
presēnsēs, -entis, pres. part. of praesum.
presentiās, -ae, f. [praesēns; praesum, be present], presence; the present moment; in praesentiā, for the present; then. I, 15.
presentiō, -sentire, -sēnsi, -sēnsum, tr. [sentiō, feel], feel beforehand, foresee.
presentiātum, adv., particularly, especially. I, 16.
presaesidētum, -di, n. [praesideō, guard], guard, garrison; safeguard, protection; fortification, stronghold; help, aid; safety. I, 8.
presētus, ad, at hand, ready; with sum, meet.
presētō, -stāre, -stāti, -stātūm, tr. and intr. [stō, stand], stand or place beforehand; show, exhibit, supply, furnish; be superior, excel, surpass; imperē, presētāt, it is better or more advisable. I, 2.
presum, -esse, -ful, pres. intr. [sum, be. App. 77], be before or over, be in command of, rule over, be at the head of; praesēns, pres. part. as adj., present, in person; for the present. I, 16.
presēr, prep. with acc. [praē, before], beforehand, before; beyond, past; contrary to; in addition to, except, besides. I, 13.
presērea, adv. [praeter, beyond], beyond this, besides, furthermore. I, 34; III, 17.
presērēreō, -resērē, -resēri, -resērum, tr. and intr. [prē, go. App. 84], go beyond, pass by,
omit; praeteritus, pf. pert. as adj., past; n. plu. as noun, the past. I, 20.

praetermittendum, -ittere, -mitti, -missum, tr. [mittō, send], send by; let pass, over look. IV, 12.

praeterquam, adv., besides, except. I, 8.

praetor, -ōris, m., praetor; commander. I, 31.

praestorius, -a, -um, adj. [praetor, commander], praetorian, belonging to the general. I, 40.

praefāre, -āre, -ussē, -ussum, tr. [fāre, burn], burn in front or at the end.

praesertēr, -vertēr, -vertī, -versum, tr. [vertō, turn], forestall, anticipate. prāvus, -us, -um, adj., perverse, wrong.


prex, preces, f. (in sing. only in dat., acc. and abl.) [precor, pray], prayer, entreaty; imprecation. I, 16.

pridē, adv. [diēs, day], on the day before. I, 25.

primum, -ī, m. [prīmus, first, first], a century], the centurion of the first century, chief centurion. II, 26.

primō, adv. [prīmus, first], at first, in the first place. I, 31; II, 8.

primus, adv. [prīmus, first], at first, in the first place, for the first time; cum primum, or ubi primum, as soon as; quam primum, as soon as possible, very soon. I, 25.

primum, -a, -um, adj., sup. (App, 48), first, foremost; first part of; pl. as noun, the first, the front rank or ranks; leaders, chiefs; in primis, especially. I, 10.

princēps, -ipis, adj. [prīmus, first], taking the first place; chief, most prominent, first; as noun, chief or principal person, leader, chief. I, 7.

principātus, -us, m. [princēps, chief], chief place or position; chief authority, leadership. I, 8.

prius, prius, adj., comp. (App, 45), former, previous, prior, first; pl. as noun, those in front. II, 11.

pristinus, -a, -um, adj. [for prūstinus from prior, former], former, original; previous, preceding. I, 18.

prior, adv. [prior, former], before, sooner, previously; prius quam, see prīsumquam.

prīsumquam or prius . . . quam, conf., sooner than, before; until. I, 19.

privātim, adv. [privātus, private], privately, individually, as private citizens. I, 17.

privātus, -a, -um, adj., private, personal, individual; as noun, person, individual. I, 5.

pro, prep. with abl. [cf. prae, before], before, in front of; for, in behalf of; on account of, in consideration of, in return for; as, in the disguise of; in place of, instead of; in proportion to, according to; in compounds (written prō, pro, and prōd), for, before, forward, forth. I, 2.

probō, i, tr. [probus, good], consider good, approve; prove, show, demonstrate. I, 3.

prōcēdō, -cēdere, -cessē, -cessum, intr. (odēs, go), go forth or forward, proceed, advance. I, 33; II, 20.

Procilius, see Valerius.

proclīnō, i, tr. [clinō, incline], bend forward, incline; procīnātus, pf. part. as adj., tottering, critical.

proānseuli, -a, m., a proconsul, one who at the close of his consulship in Rome became governor of a province. III, 20.

procul, adv., afar off, from afar, in the distance, at a distance. II, 30.

proculātum, -ātū, -ātūs, -ātālis, -ātālis, intr. [capit, lie down], lean forwards, fall down, lie down; be beaten down; incline. II, 27.

pročerrō, i, tr. [cerrō, care], care for, attend to.

procurreō, -currere, -currentum, inters. [currō, run], run or rush forward, rush out, charge. I, 62.

prodeo, -ere, -ii, -iūm, inters. [probāre, expect, look for, seek], go, undertake, undertake; proceed.
go. App. 84), go or come forth, go forward, advance. I. 48.

prōdesse, see prōsum.

prōditio, -ōnis, s. [prōdō, betray], betrayal, treason.

prōditor, -ōris, m. [prōdō, betray], betrayer, traitor.

prōdō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, tr. [nō, give], give forth, reveal; betray, give up; transmit, hand down; memoriam prōditum, told in tradition, handed down. I. 13.

prōducō, -ducere, -duxi, -duxitum, tr. [ducō, lead], lead out or forth, bring forth; prolong, protract; produce; with cōplās, arrange, draw up. I. 48; III. 17.

proelior, 1, intr. [proelium, battle], join or engage in battle, fight. II. 23.

proelium, -li, n., battle, contest, engagement; proelium committēre, join or begin battle, risk a fight, engage in battle, fight. I. 1.

profectio, -ōnis, s. [profection, set out], a setting out, start, departure. I. 8.

profectus, see prōficiō.

profectus, see profection.

prōferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātum, tr. [ferō, bring. App. 81], bring forth or out, produce.

prōficiō, -ficere, -feci, -fectum, tr. and intr. [faciō, make], make progress, advance; effect, accomplish, gain. III. 21.

profection, profection, prefectus sum, intr. [cf. prōficiō, advance], set out, start, depart; set out for, start for; go, proceed. I. 3.

proficiscor, proficiscer, profectus sum, intr. [cf. prōficiō, advance], admit, acknowledge, declare, offer.

prōfigō, 1, tr. [figō, strike], strike down; overcome; put to flight. II. 23.

prōfundus, -fundus, -fundus, -funī, ---, intr. [stūco, flow], flow forth, rise. IV. 10.

prōfugūs, -fugēre, -fugi, -fugītum, intr. [fugō, flee], flee, flee from, run or escape. I. 31; II. 14.

prōsum.

prōsum, -a, -um, adj. [nāscor, be born; descended, sprung. II. 29.

prōgresior, -gradī, -gressus sum, intr. [gradō, step], step or go forward, advance, proceed, go. I. 50; II. 10.

prohibēo, 3, tr. [habeō, have, hold], keep from, keep, restrain, prevent, prohibit; keep out or away from; protect, guard. I. 1.

prōcīciō, -icere, -iōci, -iectum, tr. [iacō, throw. App. 7], throw forward or away; throw, cast; reject, give up; sē prōcīere, cast one's self; jump. I. 27.

prōinde, adv., hence, accordingly, therefore.

prōlātus, see prōfūrō.

prōmineō, -minēre, -minui, ---, intr., project, lean out.

prōmissō, adv., promiscuously, in common.

prōmittō, -mittere, -missērē, -missum, tr. [mittēre, send], send forward; let grow.

prōmoverē, -movēre, -movi, -motum, tr. [moveō, move], move forward, advance, push forward. I. 48; II. 81.

prōmptus, -a, -um, adj., ready, active. III. 19.

prōmunturium, -re, n. [prōmineō, project], promontory, headland. III. 12.

prōneō, adv. [prōnus, inclined], sloping downwards. IV. 17.

prōnūntiō, 1, tr. [nūntiō, announce], announce, give out publicly, tell, relate, report, say; give orders; with sententia, pronounce. IV. 5.

prope, adv. and prep. with acc. (1) As prep., near, close to. (2) As adv., almost, nearly; recently. I. 22.

prōpellō, -pellēre, -pullēre, -pulsum, tr. [pellō, drive], drive forward, put to flight, rout; diolodge, drive back. I. 15.

properō, 1, intr. [properus, quick], hasten, hurry. II. 11.

propinquītās, -tātis, f. [propinquus, neighboring, near], nearness, vicinity; relationship. II. 6.

propinquus, -a, -um, adj. [prope, near], near, neighboring, close at hand; pl. as noun, relatives. I. 16.

propius, adv. and prep. with acc. (App. 123, b) [comp. of prope, near], nearer. I. 42; IV. 9.
PRÔPÔNÔ, -PÔNERE, -POSUL, -POSITUM, TR. [PÔNÔ, place], place or put forward, present, offer, relate, tell of, explain; propose, purpose, expose. I. 17.

PROPRIUS, -A, -UM, ADJ., one’s own, characteristic, indicative.

PROPTER, PREP. WITH ACC. [PROPE, near], on account of, because of, in consequence of. I. 9.

PROPTEREĀ, ADV. [PROPTER, because of], on this account; proptereā quod, because. I. 1.

PRÔPUGNĂTOR, -ôRIS, M. [PRÔPUGNÔ, fight for], defender.

PRÔPUGNÔ, 1, INTR., fight for, defend; rush out to fight, attack. II. 7.

PRÔPULLI, SEE PRÔPELLO.

PRÔPULSĪ, I, TR. [FREQ. OF PRÔPELLĪ, drive forward], drive forward, repel, ward off. I. 49.

PRÔRA, -AE, F., PROW. III. 18.

PRÔRUĪ, -RURES, -RUL, -RUTUM, TR. [RUĪ, fall], overthrow. III. 26.

PRÔSEQUOR, -SEQUIL, -SEQUĪTUS SUM, TR. [SEQUOR, follow], follow, accompany; pursue; with DRĀTĪONE, address. II. 5.

PRÔSPECTUS, -AS, M. [PRÔSPICĪÔ, look forth], view, prospect; sight. II. 22.

PRÔSPICĪÔ, -SPIERE, -SPÆXI, -SPECTUM, INTR. [SPECĪÔ, look], look forward; look to beforehand, see to, provide for, take care. I. 23.

PRÔSTERNŌ, -STERNERE, -STRĀVĪ, -STRĀTUM, TR. [STERNŌ, stretch out], protrude, destroy.

PRÔSUM, PRÔDÉSSE, PRÔFUL, INTR. [SUM, be. APP. 79], be useful, benefit.

PRÔTEGO, -TEGERE, -TÆXI, -TÆCUM, TR. [TEGO, cover], cover, protect.

PRÔTERREÔ, 2, TR. [TERREÔ, frighten], terrify, frighten off.

PRÔTINUS, ADV. [TENUS, as far as], continuously; forthwith, immediately. II. 9.

PRÔTURBŌ, I, TR. [TURBÔ, disturb], drive in confusion; dislodge. II. 19.

PRÔVEHŌ, -VEHERE, -VEXI, -VECTUM, TR. [VEHÔ, carry], carry forward; pass., be carried forward, sail. IV. 28.

PRÔVENIÔ, -VENĪRE, -VĒNĪ, -VĒNUNT, INTR. [VENĪÔ, come], come forth, grow; be produced, yield (of grain).

PRÔVENTUS, -AS, M. [PRÔVENIÔ, come forth], a coming forth, result.

PRÔVIDĒÔ, -VIDERE, -VIDI, -VISUM, TR. [VIDĒÔ, see], see beforehand, foresee; care for, provide. II. 22.

PRÔVINCIA, -AE, F., OFFICE OF GOVERNOR OF A PROVINCE; province, a territory subject to Rome and governed by a Roman governor; especially the Province, the southern part of France. I. 1.

PRÔVINCIAĪS, -AE, ADJ. [PRÔVINCIA, province], of a province; Province of the Province.

PRÔVISUS, SEE PRÔVIDĒÔ.

PRÔVOLĪ, I, INTR. [VOLĪ, fly], fly or rush forth. II. 19.

PRÔXIMĀ, ADV. [PRÔXIMUS, last], last; lately. I. 34.

PRÔXIMUS, -A, -UM, ADJ., SUP. (APP. 43), nearest, next; last, previous; with ACC. (APP. 128, b), next to. I. 1.

PRÔDENTIA, -AE, F. [PRÔDĒNS, foreseeing], prudence, foresight. II. 4.

PTIANIL, -ÎRUM, M. (Ec), the Ptiainil (ti-ˈnɛl-). III. 27.

PÔDĒS, -ERIS, ADJ., grown up, adult; PI. AS NOUN, grown men, adults.

PUBLICĒ, ADV. [PUBLICUS, public], publicly, in the name of the state, on behalf of the state. I. 16.

PUBLICĪ, I, TR. [PUBLICUS, public], adjudge to public use; consecrate.

PUBLICUS, -A, -UM, ADJ. [POPULUS, people], of the state or people, common, public; M. AS NOUN, public, public view; RĒS PUBLICA, common well, state. I. 12.

PUDET, -ÔRE, -ÜLT, -ITUM, TR., IMPER., IT SHAMES; TRANSLATED AS PERSONAL, BE ASHAMED, FEEL SHAME.

PADOR, -ÔRIS, M. [PUDET, IT SHAMES], shame, sense of shame; sense of honor. I. 39.

PUER, -ERI, M., boy, child, son; IN PL., children (OF BOTH SEXES); & PÆRIUS, FROM CHILDHOOD. I. 29.

PUERILIS, -A, ADJ. [PUER, child], childish.

PUGNA, -AS, F. [PUGNÔ, FIGHT], fight, battle, contest; GENUS PUGNAE, method of fighting. I. 25.

PUGNÔ, I, INTR., FIGHT, GIVE BATTLE, CONTEST; STRIVE; OFTEN IMPER., AS PUGNĀTUR, IT IS Fought, I.E., THEY FIGHT. I. 26.
PULCHER 65 QUICUMQUE

pulcher, -cha, -chrum, adj., beautiful; noble, glorious.

Pullo, -ônis, m., Titus Pullo (tu'tus pûl'ô), a centurion of Cicero's legion.
pulvis, see pellû.
pulvis, -ús, m. [pellû, strike], stroke. III. 13.
pulvis, -eris, m., dust. IV. 32.
puppis, -is, f., stern of a ship. III. 13.
putgô, 1, tr. [putrus, clean-+agô, do, make], clean, clear, excuse, exonerate; putrâtus, n.f. part. as adj., freed from blame, exonerated. I. 32.
putô, 1, tr., think, consider, believe. I. 7.
Pyrënaes, -à, -um, adj., Pyrenean; Pyrënaee montës (Ecede), the Pyrenees (pyrëo-nës/), better, Pyrenees Mountains. I. 1.

Q.
q., abbr. for Quintus, Quintus (kwîn'tûs), a Roman praenomen. I. 45; II. 2.
quâ, adv. [abl. fem. of quil], by which way or road; in which place, where. I. 6.
quadrageni, -ae, -a, distr. num. adj., [quadragintá, forty], forty each. IV. 17.
quadraginta (XL), card. num. adj., indecl., forty. I. 2.
quadringenti, -ae, -a, card. num. adj., four hundred. I. 5.
quarë, quærere, quaesivi, quaestum, tr. and intr., seek or look for; inquire, ask, ask or inquire about. I. 18.
quæstë, -ônis, f. [quærô, inquire], inquiry; examination, investigation.
quæstor, -ôris, m. [quærô, seek], a quæstor (kwës'tôr), one of a class of officers in charge of the public revenues or the finances of the army. I. 52; IV. 13.
quæstus, -ûs, m. [quærô, seek], gain, acquisition.
quâlis, -e, interroq. adj., of what sort, kind or nature? I. 21.
quam, (1) adv., (a) interroq., how? (b) rel., as; with sup. and with or without posse, as . . . as possible, very; quam dià, as long as; (3) conj. with comp., than; prius . . . quam, before; post . . . quam, postea . . . quam, after. I. 3.
quamvis, adv. [quam, as + vis, you wish], as you wish, however, very. IV. 2.
quandô, indef. adv., ever, at any time. III. 12.
quantopere, adv. [quantus, how much + opus, work], (1) interroq., how greatly? how much? (2) rel., as much as II. 5.
quas, adj. [of quam, how? as], (1) interroq., how much? how great? how large? what? quantum, as adv., how much? (2) rel., as much as; quantum, as adv., as much as; quantô . . . tantô (with comparatives), the . . . the. I. 17.
quauvis, -avis, -umvis, adj. [quantus, as great as + vis, you wish], as great as you wish, however great.
quarë, adv. [qui, which + rês, thing], (1) interroq., why? wherefore? (2) rel., wherefore; on this account, therefore. I. 13.
quârus, -a, -um, ord. num. adj. [quattuor], four, fourth. I. 12.
quasi, conj. [qua(m), as + ei, if], as if, just as if.
quattuor (IV), card. num. adj., indecl., four. I. 12.
-que, conj. (always affixed to the word or some part of the expression it connects), and; que . . . que, or que . . . et, both . . . and. I. 1.
queror, queri, questus sum, tr. and intr., complain, bewail, lament. I. 16.
quí, qua, quod, rel. pron. (and see quis), who, which, what; often implying an antecedent, he who, those who; with force of dem., this, that; quam ob rem, wherefore; quem ad modum, in what manner, how, as; quô, with comparatives, the; quô . . . quô, the . . . the. I. 1.
quicquam, see quisquam.
quicumque, quaecumque, quodcumque, indef. (or generalizing) rel. pron., whoever, whatever; whosoever, what-
quaepiam, quaepiam, indef. pron. (App. 82), any one, any.

quisquam, quicquam, indef. pron. (App. 68), any; any person or thing. I. 19.

quisque, quique, and quaque, quaeseque, quaesseque, universal indef. pron. (App. 63), each one, each; every one, all. I. 5.

quisquis, quicquid, indef. (or generalising) rel. prom. (App. 60, etc), whoever, whatever. II. 17.

quivis, quasevis, quivis, and quivis, quaevis, quodvis, indef. pron. (App. 63), (qui, whom, you wish), whom or what you wish; any one, anything, any whatever, any. II. 31.

quō, adv. [old dat. case form of qui, who, which], (1) interrogo, whether? to what place? (2) rel., to which, to whom; to where, whither; toward which; where, wherein; (3) indef., to any place, anywhere. I. 48; II. 8.

quō, conj. [abl. case form of qui, who, which], in order that, so that, that. I. 8.

quoad, adv. [quō, whither+ad, to], to where; as long as, as far as; till, until. IV. 11.

quod, conj. [adv. acc. of the neuter of qui, who, which], as to which, in that, that; as to the fact that, in so much as; because; quod si, but if; propterēs quod, because. I. 1.

quōminus, conj. [quō, so that+-minus, not], so that not, that not; from. I. 31; IV. 22.

quoniam, conj. [quom = cum, since + iam, now], since now, since, inasmuch as, because, whereas. I. 35.

quoque, conj., following the word emphasised, also, too, likewise. I. 1.

quoqueversus, adv., in every direction, all around. III. 28.

quot, adj., indecl., (1) interrogo., how many? (2) rel., as many as, the number that. I. 29.

quotannis, adv. [quot, as many as+-annus, year], every year, yearly. I. 36; IV. 1.

quōtius, adv. [quot, how many], (1) interrogo., how many times? how often? (2) rel., as often as. I. 43.
radix, -icis, f., root; in pl. with mon-tis or collis, foot, base. I, 38.
radě, radere, radě, răsum, tr., scrape, shave.
resa, -ae, f., wagon with four wheels.
I, 26.
rămus, -i, m., branch, bough. II, 17.
rapidităță, -tățis, f. [rapidus, swift], swiftness. IV, 17.
răpina, -ae, f. [răpō, seize], plunder; pl., plundering. I, 15.
rășus, -a, -um, adj., scattered, far apart; in small detachments, a few at a time; few. III, 13.
răsus, see rădō.
ratīō, -onis, f. [reor, reckon], reckoning, account, estimate; design, plan, strategy, science; method, arrangement; cause, reason; regard, consideration; condition, state of affairs; manner, way; condition, terms; in pl., transactions. I, 28.
ratīs, -is, f., raft. I, 8.
Rauraci, -ōrum, m. (Cg), the Rauraci (raw'ra-si). I, 5.
re- and red-, inseparable prefixes, again, back, un-, re-.
rebellīō, -onis, f. [rebellō, renew war], renewal of war, rebellion, revolt. III, 10.
Reblīus, -i, m., see Canīnius.
recōdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, intr. [re- + cōdō, go back, retire.
recōns, -entis, adj., recent, late; fresh, new, vigorous. I, 14.
recōnsēō, -ōnsēre, -ōnsul, -ōnsu-min, tr., inspect, review.
receptāculum, -i, n. [receptō, receive], retreat, refuge.
receptus, see receptō.
receptus, -us, m. [receptō, receive], retreat; refuge, shelter. IV, 33.
recessus, -us, m. [recōdō, go back], going back, retreat; chance to retreat.
recīō, -cēdere, -cīdī, -cāsum, intr. [cādō, fall], fall back; fall upon; be reduced.
receptīō, -cipēre, -cēpl, -ceptum, tr. [re- + capīō, take], take or get back, recover; admit, receive, receive in surrender or submission; admit of, allow;
with sé, withdraw one's self, retreat, escape, flee, run back; recover one's self.
I, 5.
recītō, i, tr., read aloud.
reclīnō, i, tr. [re- + clīnō, incline], lean back, recline, lean.
rectē, adv. [rectus, straight], properly, rightly.
rectus, -a, -um, adj. [regō, keep straight], straight.
recuperō, 1, tr., recover, regain. III, 8.
reconśūs, 1, tr. and intr., refuse, reject; object to, make objections, complain; with perflō, shrunk from. I, 31; III, 22.
redēctus, see redigō.
reddō, -dere, -dīdi, -ditum, tr. [red- + dō, give], give back, return, restore; give something due; make or cause to be, render. I, 35; II, 5.
redemption, see redimō.
redeō, -ire, -ītum, intr. [red- + ēb, go. App. 85], go or turn back, return; come; fail to, descend; be referred. I, 29.
redigō, -igere, -ēgit, -āctum, tr. [red- + āgō, put in motion], bring back, bring under; render, make; reduce.
I, 45; II, 14.
redimō, -imere, -ēmī, -ēmptum, tr. [red- + emō, buy], buy back; buy up; purchase. I, 18.
redintegō, 1, tr. [red- + integrō, make whole], make whole again, renew, restore, revive. I, 26.
redittō, -onis, f. [redeō, return], return. I, 5.
reditus, -us, m. [redeō, return], returning, return. IV, 30.
Redonēs, -um, m. (Bc), the Redones (rēd'ō-nēz). II, 34.
redūcē, -ducere, -duxi, -ductum, tr. [re- + duōcō, lead], lead or bring back; draw back, pull back; extend back. I, 28.
redēctus, see redēctō.
referō, referre, rettuli, relātum, tr. [re- + ferō, bear. App. 81], bear, carry or bring back, report; pedem referre, go back, retreat; gratiam referre, show one's gratitude, make a requisitæ. I, 25.
pessō, demand), demand back, exact, ask for.
reppuli, see repellō.
repraesentō, I, tr. [re-+praesēns, present], make present; do at once. I, 40.
reprehendō, -prehendere, -prehendi, -prehēnsum, tr. [re-+prehendō (=prēndō), seize], hold back; criticize, blame, censure. I, 20.
reprimē, -primere, -pressī, -pressīnum, tr. [re-+premē, press], press or keep back, check, restrain. III, 14.
repudiō, I, tr., reject. I, 40.
repugnō, I, intr. [re-+pugnō, fight], fight back; resist, oppose. I, 19.
repulsus, see repellō.
requirō, -quirere, -quāsiī, -quisītum, tr. [re-+quaerō, seek], seek again; require, demand; miss, desire, long for.
res, rei, f., of indefinite meaning; variously translated according to the context; thing, object, matter, event, affair, occurrence; circumstance, case; act, action, deed; reason, ground; rēs familiāris, property; rēs frāmentāria, supplies; rēs militāria, warfare; novae rēs, revolution; rēs pūblica, state; rēs āctae, deeds, achievements; quam ob rem, see quī and quīs. I, 2.
rescindō, -scindere, -scīdī, -scissum, tr. [re-+scindō, cleave], cut away or down, break down, destroy. I, 7.
resolvō, -resolvēre, -resolvī, -resolvūm, tr. [re-+resolvō, inquire], find out, learn. I, 28.
rescribō, -scribere, -scripsī, -scriptum, tr. [re-+scribō, write], write again; transfer. I, 42.
reservō, I, tr. [re-+servō, save, keep], keep back, save up, reserve. I, 53; III, 8.
resideō, -sidēre, -sēdī, —, intr. [re-+sedeō, sit], sit back; remain.
residō, -sidere, -sēdī, —, intr. [re-+sīdō, sit down], settle, become calm.
resistō, -sisterere, -stitī, —, intr. [re-+sēstitō, stand], stand back, remain behind, halt, stand still; withstand, resist, oppose. I, 25.
respicīō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectum, tr. [re-+specīō, look], look back; look at, take notice of; consider, regard. II, 24.
respondeō, -spondēre, -spondī, -spōnsum, tr. and intr. [spondeō, promise], reply, answer. I, 7.
responsūm, I, n. [respondeō, answer], reply, answer. I, 14.
respuō, -spuere, -spulī, —, tr., reject, spurn. I, 42.
restituō, -stītulure, -stītī, -stītum, tr. [re-+stātū, set up], set up again, rebuild, renew, restore. I, 18.
retineō, 2, tr. [re-+teneō, hold], hold back, detain, keep; restrain, hinder; detain forcibly, seize; retain, preserve, maintain. I, 18.
retrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -tractum, tr. [re-+trahō, drag], drag back; bring back.
rettullō, see referō.
revellō, -vellere, -vellī, -vulsum, tr. [re-+vellō, pluck], pluck or tear away, pull out. I, 52.
revertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versum, intr., used almost exclusively in the perfect tenses, and revertor, -vertī, -versus sum, intr., used in the tenses formed on the present stem [re-+vertō, turn], turn back, come back, return. I, 7.
revincīō, -vincēre, -vinxī, -vīctum, tr. [re-+vincīō, bind], bind back; fasten, bind. III, 13.
revocō, I, tr. [re-+vocō, call], call back, recall; withdraw. II, 20.
rex, rēgis, m., king. I, 31; II, 4.
Rhēnus, -I, m. (ABCgh), the river Rhenum (rōnūs), better the Rhine. I, 1.
Rhodanus, -I, m. (CDfgh), the river Rhodanus (rōdānūs), better the Rhone. I, 1.
ripa, -ae, f., bank (of a stream). I, 6.
rivus, -I, m., small stream, brook.
rōbur, -oris, m., oak. III, 13.
rogō, I, tr., ask; request, ask for. I, 7.
Românus. -a, -um, adj. [Rôma, Rome].
Roman; as noun, a Roman. I, 3.
Rôscius, -i, m., Lucius Roecius (lî'-shyûs rôch'ûs), one of Caesar's lieutenants.
Rôstrum, -i, n. [rôdô, gnaw, consume],
beak of a bird; beak or prow of a ship.
III, 13.
Rôta, -ae, f., wheel. IV, 33.
Rubus, -i, m., bramble. II, 17.
Rûs, -i, m. See Sulpicius.
Rûmor, -ôris, m., hearsay, report, rumor. II, 1.
Rûpes, -is, f., rock, cliff. II, 29.
Rûrsus, adv. [for reversus, from revertô, turn back], again, back, anew;
in turn. I, 25.
Rutêni, -ôrum, m. (DeDe), the Ruteni, (ry'-tô-ni). I, 45.
Rutîlius, -i, m., Marcus Sempronius Rutilius (mâr'kûs sêm-prô'nî-us ry'-tî-lîus), one of Caesar's lieutenants.
S.
Sabinus, -i, m., Quintus Titurius Sabinius (kwîn'tûs tî-tûr'i-us sâ-bî'nûs),
one of Caesar's lieutenants. II, 5.
Sabis, -is, m. (Af), the river Sabis (sâ'-bîs). II, 16.
sacerdös, -ôtis, m. [sacër, sacred],
priest.
sacrâmementum, -i, n. [sacrû, sacer, sacred], oath.
sacrâficium, -i, n. [sacër, sacred + faciô, make], sacrifice.
saepe, often, frequently; many times, again and again; saepe numeros, often, time and again, frequently; comp. saepius, oftener, more frequently; time and again; too often. I, 1.
saepès, -is, f., hedge. II, 17.
saevîo, -ire, -i, -atum, intr. [saevus, raging], rage; be fierce. III, 13.
sagitâ, -ae, f., arrow. IV, 25.
sagittârius, -i, m. [sagitta, an arrow],
bowman, archer. II, 7.
sagulâmus, -i, m., a military cloak.
salûtus, -ûs, m., pass, wooded ravine, glade.
salûtus, salûtîs, f. [salvus, safe], welfare, security, safety; preservation,
derivance; place of safety; life (solea in danger). I, 27.
samarobriva, -ae, f. (Be), Samaro-
briva (sâm-a-ro-brî'va).
sanciô, sancti, sancti, sanctum, tr.
[cf. saecr, sacred], make sacred, sanction; bind; sanctus, pl. part. as adj.,
sacred, inviolable; established. I, 30;
III, 9.
sanguis, -inis, m., blood.
sanitâs, -tâtis, f. [sanûs, sound],
soundness of mind, good sense, discretion, sanity. I, 42.
sanûs, i, tr. [sanûs, sound], make sound;
make good, repair.
Santônii, -ôrum, or Santônes, -um, m. (Ded), the Santonii.'(sâm-tô-nî), or Santones (sâm'tô-nêz). I, 10.
sanûs, -a, -um, adj., sound; sensible, sane.
sanûi, see sancti.
sapiô, -ere, -ivi, —, intr., taste; be wise, understand.
sarcina, -ae, f., pack, luggage; pl.
baggage, packs (of individual soldiers, which they carried). I, 24.
sarcîo, sacrîre, sarsel, sartum, tr.,
make good, repair, compensate for.
sarmentum, -i, n., brushwood, fagots.
III, 18.
satis, adv., and indecl. adj. and noun,
(1) as adv., enough, sufficiently; rather; very; well; (2) as adj., sufficient;
(3) as noun, enough. I, 3.
satisfaciô, -fasere, -feci, -factum, intr. [satis, enough + faciô, make],
make or do enough for; give satisfaction, satisfy; make amends, apologize, ask pardon. I, 14.
satisfaciô, -onis, f. [satisfaciô, give satisfaction], satisfaction; excuse, apology. I, 41.
saucius, -a, -um, adj., wounded. III, 4.
saxum, -i, n., rock, large stone. II, 29.
sclâae, -ârum, f. [scandô, climb],
stairs; scaling ladder.
Scaldis, -is, m. (Af), the river Scaldis
(sklî'dis) or Scheldt.
scapha, -ae, f., skiff, boat. IV, 26.
scalerâtus, -a, -um, adj. [scclerô,
pollute], accused, infamous; as noun, criminal.
sclenter, adv. [scleō, know], knowingly, 
skillfully.
sclentia, -ae, f. [scleō, know], knowl-
edge, science, skill. I. 47; II. 20.
sclindō, scindere, scidē, scissum, tr., 
split; tear down, destroy. III, 5.
sclō, 4, tr., distinguish; know, under-
stand. I. 20.
scriptor, -ōnis, m., scorpion, a military 
engine for hurling missiles.
scrībō, scribere, scriptūs, scriptum, 
tr., write, record or make mention in 
writing. II, 29.
scrōbis, -is, m. and f., pit.
scrūtum, -i, n., shield, buckler; oblong, 
convex (2½×4 ft.), made of wood cov-
ered with leather or iron plates, with a 
metal rim. I, 29.
sē- and sē-, inseparable prefix, apart, 
away.
sē, see sul.
sēbum, -i, n., tallow.
seō, secarē, secūl, sectum, tr., cut, 
reap.
sēcrētō, adv. [sēcrēnō, separate], sep-
arately, privately, secretly. I. 18.
sectō, -onis, f. [seco, cut], cutting; 
dividing of captured goods; booty. II, 
33.
sector, 1, tr. [freq. of sequor, follow], 
follow eagerly, chase after.
sectūra, -ae, f. [seco, cut], cutting; 
shaft, mine. III, 31.
sequendum, prep. with acc. [sequor, 
follow], along; in the direction of; 
beside, in addition to. I, 33; II, 
18.
secundus, -a, -um, adj. [sequor, fol-
low], following, next, second; favor-
able, successful, prosperous; secundō 
fāmina, down the river. I. 14.
secūna, -is, f., axe; Roman authority, 
because the axe and fasces of the lictor 
were symbols of authority.
secūtus, see sequor.
seō-, see sē-.
seō, conf., but, but yet (a stronger ad-
versative than autem or at). I. 12.
sēdecim (XVI), card. num. adj., indeci., 
sixteen. I, 9.
sēdēs, -is, f. [sedēō, sit], seat, chair; 
residence, abode, settlement. I, 31; 
IV, 4.
sēditio, -onis, f. [sedēō, sit], insur-
rection, sedition.
sēditiosus, -a, -um, adj. [sedētio, se-
dition], seditious, mutinous. I. 17.
Sedulius, -II, m., Sedulius (sē-duˈlē-ūs), 
a chief of the Lemovices.
Sedūn, -ūrum, m. (Cgh), the Seduni 
(sē-dūˈnē). III. 1.
Sedusil, -ūrum, m. (Bh), the Sedusili 
segēs, -etis, f., growing grain, field of 
grain.
Segni, -ūrum, m. (Afg), the Segni 
(sēɡˈni).
Segontiaci, -ūrum, m. (Acg), the Se-
gontiaci (sēɡˈoνˌtʃa-ˈtʃi or sēɡˈoνˌtʃa-ˈtʃi).
Segovax, -actis, m., Segovax (sēɡˈo-
vaks), a king of Kent.
Segusiavi, -ūrum, m. (Def), the Segu-
semel, adv., once, a single time; semel 
atque iterum, repeatedly; ut semel, 
as soon as. I. 31.
sementis, -is, f. [sēmen, seed], sow-
ing. I. 3.
semita, -ae, f., narrow path, by-way, 
foot-path.
semper, adv., always, ever, continually. 
I. 18.
Sempronius, -nl, m., see Rutulus.
Senator, -ōris, m. [senex, old], elder; 
senator. II. 23.
Senātus, -ās, m. [senex, old], a body of 
old men; senate; esp., the administra-
tive council of Rome. I. 3.
Senex, senis, adj., old; as noun, old 
man. I. 29.
Sēni, -ae, -a, distrib. num. adj., six each, 
six. I. 15.
Senonēs, -ūm, m. (Bef), the Senones 
(sēnˈo-nēs). II. 2.
Sententia, -ae, f. [sentīō, think], way 
of thinking, opinion, sentiment; pur-
pose, design, scheme, plan; decision, 
resolve; verdict; sentence. I. 45; II, 
10.
Sentīō, sentire, sēnsi, sēnsum, tr., 
perceive, be aware of, notice; expe-
rience, undergo; realize, know; decide, judge; sanction, adhere to. I, 18.

sentis, -is, m., briar. II, 17.

séparátim, adv. [sépará, separate], separately, privately. I, 19.

séparó, i, tr. [sé-+paró, prepare, prepare apart; separate; séparáta, p/. part. as adj., separate. IV, 1.


septentríónes, -um, m. [septem, seven + triónés, plough oxen], the seven plough oxen, the stars of the Great Bear, hence the North. I, 1.

septimus, -a, -um, ord. num. adj. [septem, seven], seventh. I, 10.

septingenti, -ae, -a (DOC), card. num. adj. [septem, seven], seven hundred.

septuágintā (LXX), card. num. adj., indecl. [septem, seven], seventy. IV, 13.

septúlúa, -ae, f., burial. I, 26.

Séquana, -ae, m. (BCdef), the river Sequana (sék/wa-na), better, Seine. I, 1.

Séquanes, -a, -um, adj., of or belonging to the Sequani; pl. as noun, Séquani (Ctg), the Sequani (sék/wa-ni). I, 1.

sequeor, sequi, secutus 'sum, tr. and intr., follow, follow after, pursue; accompany, attend; follow in point of time; with poena, be inflicted; fidem sequi, seek the protection. I, 4.

sermō, -ónis, m., conversation, interview, speech.

séri, adv., late, too late.

serō, serere, sévi, saturum, tr., sow, plant.

Sertórius, -ri, m., Quintus Sertorius (kwi/m'tús sé/to-ri-ús), a partisan of Marius; after the death of the latter, he continued the war in Spain against the senatorial party, until murdered in 72 B.C. III, 23.

servilis, -e, adj. [servus, a slave], of or like a slave, servile. I, 40.

servíō, 4. intr. [servus, slave], be a slave to, be subservient to; pay attention to, devote one's self to, follow. IV, 5.

servítūs, -útis, f. [servus, a slave], slavery, servitude. I, 11.

Servius, -vi, m., Servius (sér'/vi-us), a Roman praetor. III, 1.

servō, i, tr., save, preserve; maintain, keep; guard, watch; reserve. II, 33.

servus, -i, m., slave, servant. I, 27.

sescénti, -ae, -a (DOC), card. num. adj., [sex, six], six hundred. I, 38; II, 15.

sésquipedális, -e, adj. [sēquis, one and a half+pes, foot], a foot and a half thick. IV, 17.

sétius, adv., less, otherwise; nihilō sētis, none the less, nevertheless, likewise. I, 49; IV, 17.

 seu, see slu.

severitās, -tās, f., sternness, severity.

sévocō, i, tr. (sē-+vocō, call), call aside or apart.

sex (VI), card. num. adj., indecl., six. I, 27.

sexágintā (LX), card. num. adj., indecl. [sex, six], sixty. II, 4.

Sextius, -ti, m. (1) Publius Sextius Bacinus (publ'i-us séstis'ti-us bák/i-lús), a centurion in Caesar's army. II, 25. (2) Titus Sextius (tit'tús séstis'ti-us), one of Caesar's lieutenants.

si, conj., if, if perchance; to see whether or if; whether; quod si, but if, now if. I, 7.

sibi, see slu.

Sibústēs, -um, m. (Ec), the Sibusates (sibúb/stēz). III, 27.

sio, adv., so, thus, in this manner; sic . . . ut, so . . . that; so . . . as. I, 38; II, 4.

siccitās, -tās, f. [siccus, dry], drought, dryness. IV, 33.

sícut or sicuti, adv. [sio, so+ut(I), as], so as; just as, as; just as if. I, 44.

sidus, -eris, n., star; constellation.

signifer, -eris, m. [signum, standard+ferō, bear], standard-bearer. II, 25.

significātūs, -ónis, f. [signifō, make signs], making of signs, signal; indication, intimation. II, 33.

signifō, i, tr. [signum, sign+faciō, make], make signs; show, indicate, signify. II, 7.

signum, -i, n., mark, sign, signal, watchword; signal for battle, standard, ensign; ab signis discēdere.
withdraw from the ranks; signa inferre, advance to the attack; signa conversa inferre, face about and advance to the attack; signa ferre, advance on the march; direct the attack; signa convertere, face or wheel about; ad signa convenire, join the army. I, 25.

Silanus, -i, m., Marcus Silanus (mär′kəs si-lā’nas), one of Caesar's lieutenants.

silentium, -tii, n., silence, stillness.

Silius, -ii, m., Titus Silius (țī'təs sī-lē’äs), a military tribune in Caesar's army. III, 7.

silva, -ae, f., a wood, forest, woods. I, 12.

silvestris, -e, adj. [silva, forest], of a wood, wooded; in a wood or forest. II, 18.

similis, -a, adj, like, similar. III, 13.

similitudo, -inis, f. [similis, like], likeness, resemblance.

simul, adv. at once, at the same time, thereupon; simul ... simul, both ... and, partly ... partly; simul atque, as soon as. I, 19.

simulācrum, -i, n. [simulō, make like], image, statue.

simulātiō, -onis, f. [simulō, make like], simulation, pretence, deceit, disguise. I, 40; IV, 13.

simulō, I, tr. [similis, like], make like; pretend. I, 44; IV, 4.

simultēs, -tētis, f., jealousy, rivalry.

sin, conj. if however, but if. I, 13.

sincērō, adv. [sincērus, sincere], sincerely, truthfully.

sine, prep. with abl., without. I, 7.

singillātim, adv. [singuli, one each], singly, one by one individually. III, 2.

singularis, -a, adj. [singuli, oneeach], one at a time, one by one; single, alone; singular, remarkable, extraordinary, matchless. II, 24.

singulī, -ae, -a, distrib. num. adj., one each, one; one at a time, single, separate; each, every; the several; in annōs singulōs, annually. I, 8.

sinister, -tra, -trum, adj., left; fem. sing. as noun (sa. manus), the left hand; sub sinistrā, on the left. I, 25.

sinistrōrsus, adv. [sinister, left- versus, from vertō, turn], to the left.

situs, -tus, m. [sinū, put down], situation, site, position. III, 12.

slive et seu, conj. [si, if-ve, or], or if, if; or; whether; slive ... slive, either ... or, whether ... or, to see if ... or, I, 12.

socer, -erī, m., father-in-law. I, 19.

sociétas, -tētis, f. [socius, ally], alliance.

socius, -i, m. [cf. sequor, follow], companion; confederate, ally. I, 5.

sōl, sōlis, m., the sun; ad occidentem sōlem, toward the setting sun or west; ad orientem sōlem, toward the rising sun or east. I, 1.

sōlācium, -i, n. [sōlor, console], comfort, solace.

sordurio, -ri, m., vassal. III, 22.

sōlē, solēre, solitus sum (App. 74), intr., be wont; be accustomed.

solitūdō, -inis, f. [sōlius, alone], loneliness, solitude; a lonely place, wilderness. IV, 18.

sollertia, -ae, f. [sollers, skilful], skil, expertise; ingenuity.

sollicitō, I, tr., move violently, stir up, agitate; incite, tempt, instigate. II, 1.

sollicitūdō, -inis, f. [sollicitus, anxious], anxiety, worry, apprehension.

solum, -i, n., bottom; ground, soil, earth. I, 11.

sōlum, adv. [sōlius, alone], only, merely. I, 12.

sōlus, -a, -um, gen. sōlius (App. 89), adj., alone, only; the only. I, 18.

solvō, solvere, solvi, solvētam, tr., loosen, untie; with or without nāves, weigh anchor; set sail, put to sea. IV, 28.

sonitus, -a, m. [cf. sonō, sound], sound, din.

sonus, -i, m. [cf. sonō, sound], sound.

soror, -ōris, f., sister. I, 18.

sors, sortis, f., lot, chance, fate; casting or drawing of lots. I, 50.

Sotiatēs, -i, m. (DEcd), the Sotiates (sōtē-shēz♀). III, 20.

spatium, -ti, n., space, distance, extent, length of space; period or length of time, hence time, opportunity. I, 7.
SPECIES 74 SUBITO

speciosus, -ës, f. [speciö, see]. seeing, sight; look, appearance, show, pretence. I. 51; II. 51.
specto, I. tr. [freq. of speciö, see]. look at, regard; look, face, lie. I. 1.
speculator, -öris, m. [speculator, spy], spy, scout. II. 11.
speculatorius, -a, -um, adj. [speculator, spy], of a spy, spying, scouting. IV. 26.
speculator, I. instr. [cf. speciö, look]. spy. I. 47.
spérâ, 1. tr. [spés, hope], hope, hope for, anticipate. I. 3.
spēs, -ei, f., hope, anticipation, expectation. I. 5.
spiritus, -üs, m. [spiritus, breathe], breath, air; is pl., haughtiness, pride. I. 33; II. 4.
spoliosis, I. tr. strip, despoil.
spontus, gen. and sponte, abl. (obsolete nom., spontis), f., of one's own accord, willingly, voluntarily; by one's self. I. 9.
stabilitas, -tätis, f. [stabilis, firm], firmness, steadiness. IV. 33.
statim, adv. [stô, stand], as one stands, hence, forthwith, immediately, at once. I. 53; II. 11.
statius, -önis, f. [stô, stand], standing or stationing; a military post or station; sentries, pickets, outposts; in statione esse, be on guard. II. 18.
status, statuere, statui, statuatum, tr. [status, position], put in position, set up, place; determine, resolve; judge, pass sentence; think, consider. I. 11.
statura, -ae, f. [status; stô, stand], a standing upright; size or height of the body, stature. II. 30.
status, -üs, m. [stô, stand], standing, condition, status; position.
stimulus, -i, m., goad; stake with barbed iron point set in the ground as a defence.
stipendiarius, -a, -am, adj. [stipendium, tribute], paying tribute, tributary; pl. as noun, tributaries. I. 20.
stipendium, -i, n., tax, tribute. I. 86.

tipes, -itis, m., log, trunk; stake.
tirpa, -pis, m., stem, stock; race.
stô, stäre, steti, statum, intr., stand; abide by.
stramentum, -i, n., covering; straw, thatch; pack-saddle.
strepidus, -üs, m. [strepö, make a noise], noise, rattle, uproar. II. 11.
studeö, -äre, -al, -al., intr., be eager or zealous; desire, strive after, devote one's self to; pay attention to; accustom one's self to. I. 9.
studiöse, adv. [studiösus, eager], eagerly, zealously.
studium, -i, n. [studeö, be zealous], zeal, eagerness, enthusiasm, desire; good will, devotion; pursuit, occupation. I. 19.
stultitia, -ae, f. [stultus, foolish], foolishness, folly.
sub, prep. with acc. and abl. (1) With acc., (a) with verbs of motion, under, beneath; up to: (b) of time, just at, about, toward. (2) With abl., (a) of position, under, beneath; toward, near to; at the foot or base of: (b) of time, during, within: in compounds, sub or subs, under; up, away; from beneath; secretly; in succession; slightly. I. 7.
subactus, see subigö.
subdolus, -a, -um, adj. [dolus, deceit], subtle, crafty.
subducere, -ducere, -ducere, -ductum, tr. [ducö, lead], draw or lead up; lead or draw off, withdraw; with navis, haul up, beach. I. 22.
subductio, -önis, f. [subducö, beach], beaching.
sudeö, -ire, -il, -itum, tr. [eö, go. App. 84]. come or go under, come up to, come up; undergo, endure. I. 5.
subesse, see subsum.
subiciö, -icere, -ïcē, -ïctum, tr. [iacö, hurl. App. 7]. hurl or put under; throw from beneath; place below; subject to, expose to. I. 26.
subigö, -igere, -igē, -igö, abl. [bagai, lead, drive], subdue, reduce.
subitio, adv. [subitus, sudden], suddenly, unexpectedly, of a sudden. L. 39; II. 19.
SUBITUS

subitus, -a, -um, adj. [subeō, come up, come by stealth], unexpected, sudden. III. 7.
subitius, see tollō.
sublevō, I, tr. [levō, lift], lift from beneath, lift or raise up, support; assist, aid; lighten, lessen. I. 16.
sublica, -ae, f., pile, stake. IV. 17.
sublico, -luere, —, -lūtum, wash, flow around the base.
subministrō, I, tr. [ministrō, wait upon], furnish, supply, give. I. 40; III. 26.
submitto, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, tr. [mittō, send], send up, send, send to the assistance of. II. 6.
submoveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, tr. [moveō, move], move away, drive away, dislodge. I. 35.
subruō, -ruere, -rūrī, -rutum, tr. [ruō, fail], cause to fail from beneath, overthrow; dig under, undermine. II. 6.
subsequor, -sequi, -sectus sum, tr. and intr. [sequor, follow], follow closely, follow up or on, follow. II. 11.
subsidiō, -diō, a. [subsideō, sit near or in reserve], sitting in reserve; reserve force, reserves; help, aid, assistance. I. 52; II. 6.
subsidō, -sidere, -sēdī, -sessum, intr. [sedeō, sit], sit down, remain.
subsistō, -sistere, -stītī, —, intr. [sistō, stand], hold, make a stand; be strong enough, hold out. I. 15.
sbusum, -esse, -ful, intr. [sum, be]. App. 77, be under or below; be near or close at hand. I. 25.
subtrahō, -trahere, -trāxi, -tractum, tr. [trahō, draw], draw or carry off from beneath; take away, withdraw. I. 44.
subvectō, -ōnis, f. [subvehō, convey], conveying; transportation.
subvehō, -vehere, -vexi, -vectum, tr. [vehō, carry], bring or carry up; convey. I. 16.
subvenīo, -venire, -vēnī, -ventum, intr. [venīo, come], come or go to help, aid, succor.
succedō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, intr. [sub-cēdō, go], go or come under; come up to, come up, advance, be next to; succeed, take the place of; succeed, prosper. I. 24.
succendō, -cendere, -cendi, -cōnsum, tr. [cf. candeō, shine], set on fire below, kindle, burn.
succidō, -sidere, -sīdī, -silolum, tr. [sub-cidō, cut], cut from beneath, cut down, fell. IV. 19.
succumbē, -cumbere, -cubulī, -cubītum, intr. [cf. cubō, lie], sink under; yield.
succurrē, -currere, -currī, -currsum, m. [sub-curro, run], run to help, aid, assist.
sudā, -iss, f., pile, stake.
Subbus, -a, -um, adj., of or pertaining to the Suebi, Suebians; pl. as nouns, Suebi (Sbi), the Suebi (swē' bi), a powerful people of central Germany consisting of several independent tribes, the modern Swabians. I. 37; IV. 1.
Suessioniōs, -um, m. (Be), the Suessiones (swē'si-naes). II. 3.
sumō, -scriō, -scriētis, -scriptum, intr. [sub-facīō, make], be sufficient.
suffodiō, -fodere, -fōdī, -fossum, tr. sub-fodiō, dig, dig under; stab underneath. IV. 12.
suffrāgium, -gi, n., vote, ballot.
Sugambri, -örum, m. (Ag), the Sugambri (sū-gam' bri). IV. 16.
suggestus, -us, m., platform, stage, tribunal.
sul, sibi, sē, or sēsē, reflex. prom. of sē person (App. 163, 164, 165), himself, herself, itself, themselves; he, she, they, etc.; inter sē, see inter and App. 163. I. 1.
Sulla, -ae, m., Lucius Sulla (lū'syūs sū' la), the dictator; leader of the nobility; engaged in civil war with Marius, leader of the popular party; lived from 138 B.C. to 78 B.C. I. 21.
Sulpicius, -ei, m., Publius Sulpicius Rufus (pū'li-u' sūl-pi-shūs ry' fūs), one of Caesar's lieutenants. IV. 22.
sum, esse, fuit, (App. 60), intr., be, exist, live; stay, remain; serve for; with gen. in predicate, be the mark or sign of; belong to; be the duty of; with dat. of possessor, have. I. 1.
summa, -ae, f. [summus, highest], the
main thing or point, sum total, aggregate, the whole; general management, control, direction; summa imperi, the chief command. I. 29.

summus, -a, -um, adj. [sup. of superus, high. App. 44], highest, very high; the highest part of, the top of; preeminent, greatest, chief, supreme; all. I. 16.

sūmō, sūmere, sūmpel, sūptum, tr., [sub+emē, take], take away, take; assume; with suppliantum, inflict; with labor, spend. I. 7.

sūmpuōsus, -a, -um, adj. [sūptus, expense], expensive.

sūptus, -ās, m. [sūmō, spend], expense. I. 18.

sūptus, see sūmō.

super, adv. and prep. with acc., above, over, on.


superior, -eus, adj. [comp. of superus, high. App. 44], (1) of place, upper, higher; superior; (2) of times, earlier, former. I. 10.

superō, 1, tr. and intr. [super, over], go over; overmatch, be superior to, surpass, conquer, master, overcome, prevail; be left over, remain; vitē superē, survive. I. 17.

supersedēs, -ēs, -ēdi, -ēsum, intr. [sedēs, sit], sit above, be above, be superior to; refrain from. II. 8.

supersum, -esse, -fēl, intr. [sum, be. App. 77], be over or above; be left, remain, survive. I. 23.

superus, -a, -um, adj. [super, 'above'], over, above; comp., see superior; supr., see summus.

suppetō, -petēs, -petīvi, -petītum, intr. [sub+petō, seek, obtain], be near or at hand; be in store, be supplied, hold out. I. 3.

supplēmentum, -I, n. [suppleō, fill up], a filling up; supplies, reinforcements.

supplex, -icis, m. and f., suppliant. II. 28.

supplicātiō, -onis, f. [supplex, suppliant], public prayer to the gods in thanksgiving for successes, hence thanksgiving. II. 35.

suppliciter, adv. [supplex, suppliant], as suppliants, humbly. I. 37.

suppliērum, -cf, n. [sub+plēō, bend], a bending over to receive punishment; punishment, death. I. 19.

supportō, 1, tr. [sub+portō, carry], carry or bring up from beneath; bring, convey; supply, furnish. I. 39; III. 3.

suprā, adv. and prep. with acc. (1) as adv., before, previously; (2) as prep. with acc., above, before. II. 1.

susceptō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, tr. [su(b)ceptō, take], take or lift up; undertake, assume, take on one's self; begin, engage in. I. 3.

suspectus, -a, -um, adj. [suspicō, suspect], suspected, distrusted.

suspicō, -önis, f. [suspicor, suspect]. suspicion, distrust; cause for suspicion; indication, appearance. I. 4.

suspicor, 1, tr. [suspicō, suspect]. suspect, distrust; surmise. I. 44; IV. 6.

sustentō, 1, tr. and intr. [freq. of sustineō, hold up], hold up, sustain, maintain; hold out; endure, withstand. II. 6.

sustineō, 2, tr. and intr. [su(b)stineō, hold], hold up from below; hold up, sustain; hold back, check, restrain; hold out against, withstand, endure, bear; hold out. I. 24.

sustuli, see tollō.

suus, -a, -um, reflex. pronominal adj. referring to subject. (App. 163, 164, 165, 167.a), [suī, himself, herself, etc.], of or belonging to himself, herself, etc., his own, their own; his, hers, its, theirs.

sūs, n. pl. as noun, one's property; sui, m. pl. as noun, their men (friends or countrymen). I. 1.

T.

T. abbr. for Titus (tu'tūs), a Roman praenomen. I. 10.


tabula, -ae, f., board; tablet; list. I. 39.

tabulkūm, -I, n. [cf. tabula, board], flooring of boards; story.

taceō, 2, tr. and intr., be silent; keep
silent, pass over in silence; tacitus, pf. part. as adj., silent. I, 17.

tálea, -ae, f., rod, bar; piece of wood, stake.

tálla, -e, adj., such, such a; such a great; so great a.

tax, adv., so, so very. I, 14.

tamen, adv. (opposed to some expressed or implied concession), yet, nevertheless, notwithstanding, still, however; at least. I, 7.

Tamesis, -is, m. (Acd), the river Tamesis (tāmˈɛs), better, the Thames.

tametel, conj. [tamen, however, + etel, even if], although, though, notwithstanding. I, 30.

tandem, adv., at last, at length, finally; in interrog. clauses to add emphasis, as quid tandem, what, pray? what then? I, 38.

tangō, tangere, tetigī, tāctum, tr., touch, border on.

tantopere, adv. [tantus, so great→opus, work], so greatly, so earnestly. I, 31.

tantius, -a, -um, adj. [dim. of tantus, so great], so small or little, so diminutive; trifling. II, 30.

tantum, adv. [tantus, so great], so much, so very, so far; only, merely.

tantummodo, adv., only. III, 5.

tantundem, adv. [tantus, so great], so much or so far.

tantus, -a, -um, adj. [cf. tam, so], so much, so great, so powerful, such; quantō ... tantō, with comparatives, see quantō. I, 15.

Tarbelli, -ôrum, m. (Ec), the Tarbelli (tārˈbɛl). III, 27.

tarō, adv. [tardus, slow] slowly; comp. tardius, too slowly. IV, 28.

tardō, I, tr. [tardus, slow], make slow, delay; hinder, check. II, 25.

tardus, -a, -um, adj., slow, sluggish. II, 25.

Tarusátēs, -ium, m. (DeC), the Tarusates (tārˈusətēz). III, 23.

Tagetius, -ti, m., Tagetius (tāgˈjē-shyṓs), a chief of the Carnutes.

taurus, -i, m., bull.

Taximagulus, -i, m., Taximagulus (tākˈməgˈuləs), a king of Kent.

taxus, -i, f., yew-tree, yew.

Tectosagēs, -um, m. (Ede), the Tectosages (tēkˈtōsˈāgəs).

téctum, -i, n. [tegō, cover], covering, roof; house. I, 36.

téctus, see tegō.

tegimentum, -i, n. [tegō, cover], a covering. II, 31.

tegō, tegere, tēxi, téctum, tr., cover, hide; protect, defend.

tēlum, -i, n., a weapon for fighting at a distance, missile, dart, javelin. I, 8.

temerārius, -a, -um, adj. [temerē, rashly], rash, imprudent, reckless. I, 31.

temerē, adv., rashly, blindly, without good reason. I, 40; IV, 20.

temerītās, -ētis, f. [temerē, rashly], rashness, indiscretion.

tēmō, -onis, m., pole (of a wagon). IV, 33.

temperantia, -ae, f. [temperō, control one's self], prudence, self-control. I, 19.

temperē, I, intr., restrain or control one's self, refrain; temperātus, pf. part. as adj., temperate, mild. I, 7.

tempestās, -ētis, f. [tempus, time], time, season; weather, usually bad weather, storm, tempest. III, 12.

tempōtō, I, tr., make an attempt upon, try to gain possession of, attack; try, test; try to win over. I, 14.

tempsus, -oris, n., a division or section of time, a time, time (in general); occasion, crisis; omnē tempore, always; in rellum tempus, for the future; anō tempore, at the same time, at once. I, 3.

Tēncterī, -ōrum, m., the Tencteri (tēŋkˈtērī). IV, 1.

tendō, tendere, tetendi, tentum, or tēnsum, tr., stretch, stretch out, extend; stretch a tent, pitch; encamp. II, 18.

tenebras, -ārum, f. pl., darkness.

tenēō, tenēre, tenuli, tentum, tr., hold, keep, occupy, possess, hold possession of; hold in, restrain, bind; sē tenēre, remain; memorīa tenēre, remember. I, 7.

tener, -era, -erum, adj., tender. II, 17.
tenuís, -e, adj., slim, thin; slight, insignificant; delicate.
tenuitás, -tátis, f. [tenuís, thin], thinness, poverty.
tenuiter, adv. [tenuís, thin], thinly. III, 15.
ter, num. adv. [cf. trés, three], three times. I, 53; III, 19.
tereás, -etis, rounded; tapering.
tergum, -I, n., the back: terga verte, to flee; post tergum or ab tergo, in the rear. I, 53; III, 15.
terní, -ae, -a, distr. num. adj. [ter, thrice], three each, three apiece. III, 15.
terra, -ae, f., earth, land, soil, ground; region, district; terrae (pl.) and orbis terrárum, the world. I, 32; III, 15.
Terrasídios, -di, m., Titus Terrasidius (tú'tás tér'as-sé'di-us), a military tribune in Caesar’s army. III, 7.
terrónus, -a, -um, adj. [terra, earth], of earth. I, 43.
terreó, 3, tr., frighten, terrify.
terrító, I, tr. [freq. of terreó, frighten].
terror, -órís, m. [terreó, frighten], fright, alarm, panic, terror. II, 12.
tertius, -a, -um, num. adj. [ter, thrice], third. I, 1.
testámentum, -I, n. [testor, be a witness], will. I, 39.
testimónium, -ni, n., [testor, be a witness], testimony, evidence, proof. I, 44.
testis, -is, m. and f., witness. I, 14.
testudó, -inis, f., tortoise; shed; a testudo, a column of men, holding their shields overlapped over their heads. II, 6.
Teutomés, -a, -um, Teutumós (tú'tó-mós-tú’s), son of Olovico, king of the Nitobroges; later king himself.
Teutóni, -órum or Teutónés, -ém, m., the Teutoni (tú'tó-ni) or Teutones (tú'tó-néz). I, 33; II, 4.
téxí, -ce tegó.
tigum, -i, n., log, timber, beam, pile. IV, 17.
Tigirus, -a, -um, of or belonging to the Tigurini; pl. as noun, Tigurini (Cg), the Tigurini (tíg’u-rí’ni). I, 12.
timéó, -ôre, -ul, —, tr. and intr., fear, be afraid of, dread; with dat., be anxious about, be anxious for, dread; nihil timére, have no fear. I, 14.
timídus, -a, -um, adj. [timeó, fear], fearful, frightened, timid, cowardly, afraid. I, 39.
timor, -óris, m. [timeó, fear], fear, alarm, dread. I, 22.
Titerius, -ri, m., see Sabinus.
toleró, 1, tr. [cf. tolló, lift up], bear, endure; hold out; nourish, support; with faram, appease, alleviate. I, 28.
toló, tollère, sustulī, sublátum, tr., lift, elevate; take on board; take away, remove; do away with, destroy; cancel; subtútus, pf. part as adj., elapsed. I, 5.
Toloás, -ae, f. (Ed), Tolosa (tól’o-sa), now Toulouse. III, 20.
Tolósátés, -átum, m., the Tolosates (tól’o-sá-téz), the people of Tolosa. I, 10.
tormentum, -I, n. (torquó, twist), means of twisting; an engine for hurling missiles, e.g. catapulta and ballista; windlass, hoist; device for torturing, hence, torment, torture. II, 8.
torreo, terrére, torrul, testum, tr., scorch, burn.
tót, indecl. adj., so many. III, 10.
totidem, indecl. adj. [tot, so many], just as many, the same number. I, 48; II, 4.
tóitus, -a, -um, gen. totiús (App. 23), adj., the whole, the whole of; entire, all; with force of adv., wholly, entirely. I, 2.
trábs, trabis, f., beam, timber, pile. II, 29.
tractus, see trahó.
trádó, -dere, -didí, -ditum, tr. [tráns +dág, give], give over, give up, surrender, deliver; intrust, commit; hand down, transmit; teach, communicate; recommend. I, 27.
tráducó, -ducere, -ducxi, -ducutum, tr. [tráns+dág, lead], lead across, lead
TRAGULA

over; take across, transport; transfer, convey, pass on; win over. I. 11.
trágula, -ae, f., a javelin or dart used by the Gauls. I. 26.
trahō, trahere, tráxi, tractum, tr., drag, drag along. I. 53.
tráciō, -icere, -iēō, -iectum, tr. [tráns + iacēō, hurl. App. 7], hurl across; pierce, transfix.
tráiectus, -ŭs, m. [tráciō, hurl across], a hurling across; crossing, passage. IV. 21.
tránsō, I, (a)tr. [tráns + ō, swim], swim across. I. 55.
træquilítās, -tātis, f., calmness, stillness; a calm. III. 15.
tráns, prep. with acc., across, beyond, over; in compounds, tráns or trá,a cross, over, through. I. 1.
Tránsalpinus, -a, -um, adj. [Alpēs, the Alps], across the Alps, Transalpine.
tránsceñdō, -scendere, -scendē, -scēnsum, tr. and intr. [scandō, climb], climb over; board. III. 15.
tránsēō, -irē, -iē, -ītum, tr. and intr. [éō, go. App. 84], go across or over; cross; march through, pass through; move, migrate; of time, pass by. I. 5.
tránsferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, tr. [ferō, carry. App. 81], carry or bring over.
tránsfigō, -figere, -fixī, -fixum, tr. [figō, fix], thrust or pierce through. Transfix. I. 25.
tránsfodiō, -fodere, -fōdī, -fossum, tr. [fodiō, dig], dig through; pierce through, impale.
tránsgrēdior, -gredi, -grēssus sum, tr. [grādīor, step], step over, cross. II. 19.
tránsitus, -ús, m. [tránsēō, go across], crossing, passage.
tránslātus, see tránsferō.
tránsmarinus, -a, -um, adj. [mare, sea], across the sea, foreign.
tránsmissus, -ús, m. [trānsmittō, send across], sending across; passage.
tránsmittō, -mittere, -missi, -missum, tr. [mittō, send], send across.
tránsportō, I, tr. [portō, carry], carry across or over, bring over, convey, transport. I. 37; IV. 16.
Tránsrhēnasānus, -a, -um, adj., beyond or across the Rhine; pl. as nouns.
Tránsrhēnasānī, the people across the Rhine. IV. 16.
tránsstrum, -I, n., cross-beam, thwart. III. 15.
tránsversus, -a, -um, adj. [tránsvertō, turn across], turned across, cross. II. 8.
Trebius, -bi, m., Marcus Trebius Gallus (mär’kūs trē’bi-ŭs gāl’ūs), a military tribune in Caesar’s army. III. 7.
Trebonius, -ni, m. (1) Gaius Trebonius (gā’yūs trē-bo’ni-ŭs), one of Caesar’s lieutenants. (2) Gaius Trebonius, a Roman knight.
treceni, -ae, -a (OOC), card. num. adj. [trēs, three+centum, hundred], three hundred. IV. 37.
trepidō, I, intr., hurry about in alarm; pass, be disturbed or in confusion.
trēs, trīa, gen. trīum (III), card. num. adj., three. I. 1.
Trēvirī, -erī, m., one of the Treveri; pl. Trēverī (Bgh), the Treveri (trēv’ē-ri). I. 37; II. 24.
Triboci, -ŏrum, m. (Bgh), the Triboci (trībō’si). I. 51; IV. 10.
tribānus, -I, m. [tribus, tribe], tribune, a magistrate elected by the people, voting in tribes, to defend the interests of the plebs; tribunus militum or mili-
tāris, a military tribune. I. 89; II. 26.
tribuō, tribuere, tribulī, tribūtum, tr. [tribus, a tribe or division], divide, distribute; attribute, assign, allot, ascribe; grant, do for the sake of, ren-
tribūtum, -I, n. [tribuō, render, pay], tribute, tax.
triduum, -I, n. [trēs, three+diēs, day], three days. I. 26.
triennum, -ni, n. [trēs, three+annus, year], three years. IV. 4.
trigintā (XXX), card. num. adj., indecl. [trēs, three], thirty. I. 26.
trīni, -ae, -a, distrib. num. adj., three each; three, triple. I. 53.
Trinovantēs, -um, m. (Ad), the Trinovantes (trin’ō-vantēz).
TRIPERTITÓ, adv. [très, three+partior, divide], in three parts or divisions.

TRIPLÉX, -īdis, adj. [très, three+pléō, fold], three-fold, triple. I, 24.

TRIQUÉSTRUS, -a, -um, adj., triangular.

TRISTIS, -a, adj., sad, dejected. I, 32.

TRISTITIA, -ae, f., sadness. I, 32.

TROUCILLUS, -i, m., see VALERIUS.

TRUNCUS, -i, m., trunk of trees. IV, 17.

TÜ, tuī (App. 51), pers. pron., you.

TUBA, -ae, f., trumpet. II, 20.

TUEOR, tuērī, tātus sum, tr., watch, guard, protect. IV, 8.

TULLI, see FERÖ.

TULINGI, -ōrum, m. (Cghb), the Tulingi (tū-lin'ji), a Gallic tribe east of the Rhine. I, 5.

TULIUS, -ī, m., see CICERO.

TULLUS, -ī, m., see VOLEAČIUS.

TUM, adv., then, at this or that time; then, secondly; then also; cum ... tum, both ... and, not only ... but also. I, 17.

TUMULTUOR, i, intr. [tumultus, disorder], make a disturbance; impers., there is a disturbance.

TUMULTÜSOE, adj. [tumultus, disorder], with confusion or noise.

TUMULIUS, -ōs, m. [tumeō, swell], uproar, confusion, disorder, tumult; uprising, insurrection. I, 40; II, 11.

TUMULUS, -ī, m. [tumeō, swell], swelling; mound, hill. I, 43; II, 27.

TURMA, -ae, f., troop or squadron of about thirty cavalrymen. IV, 33.

Turonl, -ōrum, m. (Od), the Turonl (tō-rō-nl). II, 35.

TURPIS, -ae, adj., ugly, unseemly; shameful, disgraceful, dishonorable. I, 33; IV, 2.

TURPITER, adv. [turpis, disgraceful], disgracefully, cowardly, basely.

TURPITUDINIS, -inis, f. [turpis, disgraceful], disgrace. II, 27.

TURRIS, -is, f., tower. II, 12.

TATUS, -a, -um, adj. [tueor, protect], protected, safe, secure. III, 13.

TUTUS, -a, -um, adj. [tueor, protect], protected, safe, secure. II, 5.

TUUS, -a, -um, poss. pron. [tū, you], your, yours.

ubi, adv. (1) of place, in which place, where; (2) of time, when, whenever; as soon as; ubi primum, as soon as. I, 5.

UBIL, -ūrum, m. (Abgh), the Ubil (ū-bil-). I, 54; IV, 3.

UBLIQUE, adv. [ubi, where], anywhere, everywhere. III, 16.

UICISCOR, uicisci, ultus sum, tr., avenge; punish, take vengeance on. I, 12.

ULLUS, -a, -um, gen. ULLUS (App. 32), adj., a single, one; as noun, any one, anybody. I, 7.

ULTERIOR, -ius, adj., comp. [ultrā, beyond. App. 43], farther, more remote, ulterior. I, 7.

ULTIMUS, -a, -um, adj., sup. [ultrā, beyond. App. 43], farthest, most distant or remote; as noun, those in the rear. III, 27.

ULTRĀ, prep. with acc., beyond, on the farther side of. I, 48.

ULTRŌ, adv., to or on the farther side, beyond; of one’s own accord, voluntarily, spontaneously, without provocation; besides, moreover; ultrō citröque, back and forth. I, 42; III, 27.

ULTUS, see UICISCOR.

ULULĀTUS, -ās, m., yell, shriek.

UMERUS, -ī, m., the shoulder.

UMQUAM, adv., at any time, ever; neque ... umquam, and never, never. I, 41; III, 28.

UNĀ, adv. [ANUS, one], (1) of place, together, along with, in one place. (2) of time, together, along with, at the same time, also. I, 5.

Unde, adv., from which place, whence. I, 28.

ANDECIM (XI), card. num. adj., indecl. [ANUS, one+decem, ten], eleven.

ANDECIMUS, -a, -um, ord. num. adj. [ANDECIM, eleven], eleventh. II, 23.

Undeviginti, card. num. adj., indecl. [ANUS, one+duō, from+viginti, twenty], nineteen. I, 8.

Undique, adv. [unde, whence], from all parts; on all sides, everywhere. I, 2.

ANIVERSUS, -a, -um, adj. [ANUS, one-}
VERNUS

vertē, turn], turned into one; all together, whole, universal, all as a mass. II. 33.

Vernus, Æna, Ænum, gen. Ænius (App. 32), card. num. adj., one, the same one; single, alone; the sole, the only; the sole or only one. I. 1.

Urbanus, -a, -um, adj. [URBS, city], of or in the city.

URBS, urbis, f., city; especially, the city, Rome. I. 7.


URUS, -I, m., wild ox.

Usipetēs, -um, m., the Usipetes (ū-sip-ē-tēz). IV. 1.

usitātus, -a, -um, adj. [Asitor, use often], ordinary, familiar.

USQUE, adv. (1) of place, all the way to, even to, as far as; (2) of time, up to, till; with ad, until. I. 50; III. 13.

Usus, see ātor.

Usus, -us, m. [ātor, use], use, experience, practice, skill; service, advantage; need, necessity; āsus est, there is need; āsul esse or ex āsul esse, be of advantage or service; āsul venire, come by necessity; happen. I. 30; II. 9.

UT and uti, adv. and conj., (1) as interrog., ad., how? (2) as rel. adv. and conj., as, in proportion as, just as; insomuch as; as it: (3) as conj. (a) with ind., when, after; (b) with subj., that, in order that, to, that, so that, so as to, though, although, after words of fear, that not. I. 2.

UTER, utra, utrum, gen. utrius (App. 32), adj. (1) as interrog., which one or which of two; (2) as rel., the one who, of two, whichever. I. 12.

UTERQUE, utraque, utrumque, adj. [uter, which of two], each of two. Either of two; both. I. 34; II. 8.

UTI, see ātor.

utilis, -e, adj. [ātor, use], useful, serviceable. IV. 7.

Utilitas, -ātis, f. [utilis, useful], usefulness, advantage, service. IV. 19.

Ātor, āti, āsus sum, intr., make use of, employ, use, avail one's self of, exercise; have, enjoy, experience, possess, show; adopt, accept; āsus, pf. part. often translated with. I. 5.

Utrīque, adv. [uterque, each of two], on each side, on both sides. I. 50; IV. 17.

Utrum, conj. [uter, which of two], whether; utrum an, whether... b: utrum... necne, whether... or not. I. 40.

UXOR, -āris, f., wife. I. 18.

V.

V, sign for quinque, five.

Vacalus, -I, m. (AF), the Vacaless (vāk-tā-lūs) river, now the Waal. IV. 10.

Vacō, I, intr., be empty or unoccupied; lie waste. I. 28.

Vacuus, -a, -um, adj. [vacō, be empty], empty, unoccupied; free from, destitute of. I. 12.


Vagina, -ae, f., sheath, scabbard.

Vagor, I, intr. [vagus, roaming], roam about, rove, wander. I. 2.

Valeō, 2, intr., be strong or vigorous, have weight, influence or strength; plārum valēre, be very powerful. I. 17.

Valerius, -rI, m. (1) Gaius Valerius Trouculus (gāyūs va-Īrūs trū-skūlūs), a Gallic interpreter and confidential friend of Caesar. I. 19. (2) Gaius Valerius Flaccus (see (1) flākūs), Governor of Gaul 83 B.C. I. 47. (3) Gaius Valerius Caburus (see (1) kābūrūs), a Gaul who had received Roman citizenship. I. 47. (4) Gaius Valerius Proculus (see (1) prō-skūlus), son of No. 3. I. 47. (5) Lucius Valerius Praeconius (lu-Īśhyūs va-lē-rīūs prēkōnū-nīī-nūs), a Roman lieutenant in Gaul, before Caesar's time. III. 20. (6) Gaius Valerius Domnatorius (see (1) domīnō-tawtrūs), son of No. 8.

Valetiācus, -I, m., Valetiacus (vālē-shī-ī-ī-kūs), a nobleman of the Haedu.

Valendo, -inis, f. [valetō, be strong], health, poor health.

Vallēs, -is, f., vale, valley. III. 1.

Vallum, -I, m. (vāllius, palsade), wall
VALLUS 82

or rampart of earth set with palisades; entrenchments, earthworks. I, 36.

vallus, -i, m., stake; palisade.

Vangionés, -um, m. (Bgu), the Vangiones (vān-ji-ō-nēz). I, 51.

variétéś, -tātis, f. [varius, diverse], diversity, variety.

varius, -a, -um, adj., diverse, changing, various. II, 22.

vāstā, i, tr. [vāstus, waste], lay waste, ravage, devastate. I, 11.

vāstus, -a, -um, adj., waste; boundless, vast. III, 8.

vāticinātīō, -ōnis, f., divination. I, 50.

ve, conj. enclitic = vel, or.

vectigālis, -ālis, n. [vectigālis, tributary], tax, tribute; pl., revenues. I, 18.

vectigālis, -e, adj. [vehō, carry], paying revenue or tribute; tributary. III, 8.

vectōrius, -a, -um, adj. [vehō, carry], for carrying; vectōria nāvis, a transport.

vehementer, adv. [vehemēns, violent], violently, severely, strongly, very much, greatly. I, 37; III, 22.

vehō, vēhere, vēxi, vectum, tr., carry; bring along. I, 43.

vel, conj. and adv. (1) as conj., or; vel . . . vel, either . . . or; (2) as adv., even. I, 6.

velānius, -ī, m., Quintus Velanius (kwin'tūs vē-lā'nī-us), a military tribune in Caesar's army. III, 7.

vellōcissēs, -um, m. (Bd), the Vellōcissēs (vēlōk-sēs). II, 4.

velluānōdum, -i, n. (Bo), Velluānōdunum (vē-lōw-nō-dūnum or vēlōw-nō-dūnum), a town of the Senones.

vellāvīl, -ōrum, m. (De), the Vellāvīl (vēlāvīl). I, 48.

vellōcitās, -tātis, f. [vēlōx, swift], swiftness, speed.

vellōcer, adv. [vēlōx, swift], swiftly, speedily.

vēlōx, -ōcis, adj., swift, rapid, speedy. I, 48.

vēlum, -i, n., covering, veil; sail. III, 13.

velut, adv., as, just as. I, 32.

vēnātīō, -ōnis, f. [vēnōr, hunt], hunting, the chase. IV, 1.

vēnātor, -ōris, m. [vēnōr, hunt], hunter.

vēndō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, tr. [vēn-um, sale-đō, give], put to sale, sell, sell at auction. II, 33.

Venellī, -ōrum, m. (Bc), the Venelli (vēnēlī). II, 34.

Venetī, -ōrum, m. (Cb), the Veneti (vēnē-tī). II, 34.

Venetia, -ae, f.; Venetia (vē-nētē-shē), the country of the Veneti. III, 9.

Veneticus, -a, -um, adj., of the Veneti, Venetian. III, 18.

venia, -ae, f., indulgence, favor; pardon.

venīō, venīre, vēnī, vēnītum, 'intr., come, arrive, go, advance; in spec venīre, have hopes; pass. often imper., as vēnītum est, they came, it came, etc. I, 8.

ventītō, i, intr. [freq. of vēnīō], come, keep coming, resort; go back and forth, visit. IV, 3.

ventus, -i, m., wind. III, 13.

vēr, vēris, n., the spring.

Veragri, -ōrum, m. (CDg), the Veragri (vēr'ag-ri). III, 1.

Verbigenus, -i, m. (Ggh), Verbigenus (vēr-bīg-ē-nūs), a canton of the Helvetii. I, 27.

verbum, -i, n., word; pl., speech; entreaty; verbs facere, plead. I, 20.

Vercassīvellaunus, -i, m., Vercassīvellaunus (vēr-kās-ī-vē-lōw-nūs).

Vercingetorix, -īgis, m., Vercingetorix (vēr-sin-jētō-rīks), an Arvernian, the greatest leader produced by the Gaels.

vereor, verērī, verītus sum, tr., reverence; fear, dread, be afraid of. I, 19.

vergō, -ere, —, intr., look or lie towards, be situated; slope. I, 1.

vercobretus, -i, m., vergobret (vēr-gō-brēt), the title of the chief magistrate of the Ilaeuti. I, 16.

veritus, see vereor.

vērō, adv. [vērūs, true], in truth, truly, really, indeed; but, however, on the other hand. I, 32; II, 2.

versō, i, tr., turn; deal with; pass. as
deponent, turn one’s self; be, remain; engage in; fight. I. 46; II. 1.

versus, adv. [vertō, turn], turned to; toward.

versus, -ās, m. [vertō, turn], turning; verse.

Vertical, -ōnis, m., Vertigo (vēr’ti-kō), one of the Nervi.

vertō, vertere, vertī, versum, tr., turn, turn around; terga vertere, flee. I. 53; III. 19.

Verucloetius, -ātī, m., Verucloetius (vēr’u-kli’shē-‘yō), an Helvetian envoy, sent to Caesar. I. 7.

vērus, -a, -um, adj., true; n. as noun, the truth; vērī similis, likely, probably. I. 18.

vertētum, -ī, n., dart, javelin.

Vesontius, -ōnis, m. (Cf.), Vesontio (vēsōn’shē-yō), the chief town of the Sequani, situated on the Doubs, modern Besançon. I. 38.

vesper, -āri, m., evening; sub vesperum, towards evening. I. 26.

vēster, -tra, -trum, poss. pron. [vōs, you], your, yours.

vēstigium, -ī, n. [vēstīgō, trace out], trace, track, footprint; spot, place; moment, instant. IV. 2.

vēstīō, -āri, tr., clothe, cover.

vēstis, -is, f. [cf. vōstīo, clothe], clothing.

vēstitus, -ās, m. [vēstīo, clothe], clothing. IV. 1.

vētērānus, -a, -um, adj. [vētus, old], old, veteran; pl. as noun, veterans. I. 24.

vētō, -āre, -āli, -ītum, tr., forbid. II. 20.

vētus, -āris, adj., old, ancient, former; with militēs, veteran. I. 13.

vexillum, -ī, n., banner, flag, standard. II. 20.

vēxō, 1, tr. [intens. of vehō, carry], carry or drag hither and thither; harass, plunder, waste, overrun. I. 14.

via, -ae, f., way, road, route; journey, march. I. 9.

viātor, -āris, m. [via, road], traveler. IV. 5.

viceāli, -ae, -a, distr. num. adj., [cf. viginti, twenty], twenty each, two.

vicēsimus, -a, -um, ord. num. adj. [c. viginti, twenty], twentieth.

viola, num. adv. [cf. viginti, twenty], twenty times.

vicinitas, -tātis, f. (vicinus, near), neighborhood; pl., neighborhoods.

vicis, gen. (no nom.), change; only in the adv. phrase in vicem, alternately, in turn. IV. 1.

victima, -ae, f., victim; a sacrificial animal.

victor, -ōris, m. [vīncō, conquer], conqueror, victor; as adj., victorious. I. 31; II. 24.

victória, -ae, f. [victor, victor], victory. I. 14.

victus, see vīncō.

victus, -ās, m. [vīvō, live], living, mode of life; provisions, food. I. 31.

vicus, -ī, m., hamlet, village. I. 5.

videō, vidēre, vidē, visum, tr., see, perceive, observe, examine, understand; see to, take care; in pass., be seen; seem, appear; seem proper, seem best. I. 6.

Vienna, -ae, f. (Df.), Vienna (vī-ēn’ē-a), modern Vienne.

vigilia, -ae, f. [vigil, awake], wakefulness, watching; a watch, one of the four equal divisions of the night, used by the Romans in reckoning time. I. 12.


vīmen, -inis, n., a pliant twig, switch, osier. II. 25.

vinxī, vincere, vinxi, vinctum, tr., bind. I. 53.

vīncō, vincere, vici, victum, tr., conquer, overcome, vanquish; prevail; have one’s way or desire. I. 25.

vinctus, see vīncō.


vindicō, 1, tr., assert authority, assert, claim; set free, deliver; inflict punishment. III. 16.

vinea, -ae, f. [vinum, wine], vine arbor, hence, a shed for the defense of a besieging party. II. 12.

vinum, -ī, n., wine. II. 15.

violo, 1, tr., harm, injure; devastate.
vir, viri, m., man; husband; a man of distinction or honor; cf. homō, a human being as distinguished from the lower animals. II, 25.

virēs, see vis.

virgō, -inis, f., maiden, virgin.

virgultum, -ī, n., thicket, brush, bushwood. III, 28.

Viridomārus, -i, m., Viridomarus (virīn. i-dō-mā'rus), a chief of the Haeduī.

Viridovix, -icos, m., Viridovix (virī-dō-'viks), a chief of the Venēlli. III, 17.

virītum, ādīv. [virī, man], man by man, to each one, individually.

Viromandulī, -īrum, m. (Be), the Viromanduli (virī-mō-'man-dū'-ī). II, 4.

virūns, -ūtis, f. [virī, man], manliness, valor, merit, worth, virtue, courage; strength, energy; pl., good qualities, virtues, merits. I, 1.

vis, vis (App. 27.), f., force, might, energy, strength, violence, severity; authority, power; a force, a great number; pl., virēs, strength, force; vim facere, use violence. I, 6.

visus, see videō.

vīsa, -ae, f. [cf. vivō, live], life; manner of living, living. I, 18.


vitrum, -ī, n., woad, a plant used by the Britons for dyeing blue.

vivō, vivere, vivī, victum, ātr., live; subsist on. IV, 1.

vīvus, -a, -um, adj. [cf. vivō, live], alive, living.

vīx, adv., with difficulty, barely, hardly; scarcely. I, 6.

Vocātīs, -ītum, m. (Ded), the Vocates (vō-kā'-tēs). III, 23.

Vocō, -ōnīs, m., Vocōt (vōk'-shō), a king of Noricum. I, 53.

vocē, 1. tr. [vōx, voice], call, summon; invite. I, 19.

Vocontii, -ōrum, m. (Df), the Voconciai (vō-kōn'-shyli). I, 10.

Vocācius, -ōs, m., Gaius Volcacius Tulius (gā'yūs vōk-'shyūs tū'lī-us), a young man in Caesar's army.

Volcae, -ārum, m. (1) Volcae Are-
INDEX

TO THE INTRODUCTION, NOTES, AND APPENDIX

References in plain-faced type are to pages; in bold-faced type, to sections of the Appendix.

A

Ablative:
absolute, 160: I, 2, 2; 3, 21; 8, 6: II, 1, 6; 2, 2; 7, 7.
of accompaniment, 140: I, 1, 10; 3, 5; 10, 11: II, 3, 5; 5, 6; 11, 11: III, 11, 14.
of accordance, 142, a: I, 4, 1; 8, 8, 14; 3, II, 4, 21; 13, 11; 19, 4.
of agent, 137: I, 3, 11; 7, 13; 14, 17: II, 1, 7; 5, 3; 10, 1.
of attendant circumstance, 142, b: I, 18, 22; 15, II, 1, 14; 23, 13.
of cause, 138: I, 2, 6; 9, 5; 14, 11: II, 1, 10; 4, 7; 9, 10.
of comparison, 139: I, 15, 14; 23, 2; 41, 11: II, 3, 1; 7, 10.
of degree of difference, 148: I, 5, 1; 6, 14; 3, II, 7, 8; 20, 4; 30, 7.
with deponent verbs, 145: I, 2, 5; 5, 9; 16, 5: II, 3, 12; 7, 1; 14, 10.
descriptive, 141: I, 6, 11; 7, 15; 18, 6: II, 6, 10; 15, 3; 18, 4.
with dignus and indignus, 149, a.
duration of a time, 152, a: I, 26, 13.
of manner, 142: I, 7, 2; 10, 8; 25, 10: II, 6, 2; 7, 8; 11, 1.
of means, 143: I, 1, 2; 3, 7, 8; 1: II, 1, 2; 3, 7; 8, 3.
for partitive genitive, 101, b: II, 6, 11.
of penalty, 108.
of place from which, 134, a: I, 5, 8; 6, 1; 10, 10.
of place in which, 151: I, 6, 8; 7, 5; 15, 5; 39, 17.
with prepositions, 153.

of separation, 134: I, 1, 13; 2, 8; 8, 11: II, 6, 6; 9, 13; 11, 15.
of source, 135: II, 4, 3; 29, 10: IV, 12, 13.
with special verbs and adjectives, 143, a: I, 13, 16; 53, 4: II, 27, 2: III, 9, 12; 21, 1.
of specification, 149: I, 1, 3; 2, 5; 5, 4: II, 4, 13; 8, 6; 13, 6.
of the way, 144: I, 6, 1; 9, 1; 16, 5: II, 19, 21: III, 1, 5: IV, 35, 7.

absurum, 78.
Accent, 10-12: in gen. of nouns in -lus and -lum, 16, c.

Accusative:

with adjectives and adverbs, 122, b: I, 46, 2; 54, 3: III, 7, 7: IV, 9, 3.
cognate, 128: I, 36, 1.
with compound verbs, 127: I, 12, 5: II, 5, 12, 10, 2.
direct object, 124: I, 1, 1; 2, 15, 5: II, 1, 3; 7, 2.
in exclamations, 129.
extent of space, 130: I, 2, 16: 8, 4: II, 6, 2; 11, 12; 16, 1.
inner, 125, b: 128, a.
with passive verbs, 125, c: 127, a: II, 4, 3.
place to which, 131: I, 5, 6; 7, 4; 23, 5: II, 10, 12: 11, 3; 18, 2.
as subject of infinitive, 123: I, 14: 2, 15, 7, 1: II, 1, 3; 2, 7, 6, 13.
two accusatives, 125-127: I, 16, 1; 16, 12; 34, 6; 35, 13: II, 2, 7; 3, 3.

Accusing, verbs of, constr., 108.

Acquitting, verbs of, constr., 108.

ac, with subjunctive, 261.

Active voice, 181.

Adjectives:

for adverb, 159.

agreement of, 157: I, 2, 1; 3, 6; 7, 7: II, 1, 3; 5, 2; 10, 1.

attributive, defined, 156; agreement of, 157, a, 1.

comparison, 35-45.

decension, 1st and 2nd, 31, 32; 3rd, 33-38.

meaning of comp. and sup., 161.

numeral, 47.

with partitive meaning, 160: I, 22, 1; 24, 3; 27, 12: II, 7, 1; 15, 13; 18, 5.

predicate, 156: I, 2, 1; 7, 7: II, 1, 3: 3, 2; 10, 1.

as predicate acc., 126: II, 2, 7.

used substantively, 158.

Adverbs, formation and comparison, 46.

Adversative clause, 239; 246; 247: I, 2, 5; 9, 2; 14, 16: II, 3, 2; 11, 3; 22, 4: III, 9, 16: V, 4, 13.

Agent, see Dative and Ablative of.

aggris, 33, 34.

aliquis, 62; 175.

amplius, 139: b: I, 38, 10; 41, 11.

annōn, 214.

Answers, 215.

antequarn, with ind., 236, a; with subj., 236, b; as two words, 236, c.

Appositive, 95: b: I, 1, 4; 3, 10; 6, 2: II, 2, 3; 5, 11; 9, 11.

aqua, 26; Plate I, 6.

Arar, declension of, 25, a.

Armor and Arms of legonary soldiers, 24.

Army, 23-38.

Artillery, 35, 36.

Asking, verbs of, with double acc., 125:

a: I, 16, 1; 18, 4; with substantive purpose clause with ut omitted, 228.

assuocfactis and assuocatus, with abl., 143, c.

Attempted action, 191, a.

Attraction, 274: I, 19, 2; 45, 5: II, 11, 15; 27, 2: III, 4, 1; 23, 5.

Attributive, adjectives, 156; agreement of, 157, a, 1; genitive, 98-102.

B

baleus, 25.

Base, 14, a.

ballista, 35: Plate II, 5.

Batavi, island of, IV, 10, 2.

Battle, 31, 32: line of, 32.

bonus, comparison of, 42.

bōs, declension of, 27.

C

Caesar: early years, and choice of party, 11; overthrow of his party, 11; weakness of opposite party, 12; revival of his party, 12; development of his powers, 12; his first military command, 13; his consulship, 13; his command in Gaul, 14; outbreak of civil war, 14; weakness of the constitutional government, 14; master of Rome, 15; as statesman, 15; assassination, 16; chronological table of his life, 17.

Calendar, Roman, 297-300.

Calends, 298.

Camp: fortifications of, 29; gates, 30; location and form, 28; plan, 29; valium and fossa, 30.

Capture of towns: blockade, 33; sudden assault, 33; formal siege, 33.

Cardinals, 32; 47-49.

Cases, function of, 92, 93. See also Abl., Acc., Dat., Gen., and Loc.

cassis, 24.

Catapult, 36.

causā, position, 99, a; with gen. to express cause, 138, a; with gerund and gerundive, to express purpose, 291.

Causal clauses, 239; 243-245; cum, 239: I, 2, 5; 9, 2: II, 3, 3; 11, 2; 23, 4.

quod, 244: I, 1, 7: 9, 6; 7, 12: II, 1, 13: 8, 8: 15, 2; relative, 245: II, 15, 13: 31, 4: IV, 23, 14.

Cavalry, 28; German, IV, 2, 12.

cavē, 319.

centuriō, 26; Plate, II, 3.

Civil War, 14, 15.

INDEX

Clauses: coordinate, 223; coordinate relative in ind. disc., 269, a: II, 17, 11; subordinate, in ind. disc., 269: I, 8, 17; 6, 11; 10, 14: II, 1, 6; 3, 9, 10, 13; see also, Adversative, Causal, Characterizing, Comparison, Conditions, Determining, Generalizing, Indirect questions, Ininitiative, Provision, Purpose, Parenthetical, Result, Substantive, and Temporal.

cœpi, 86.
cognōvi, use of tenses, 193, I, a; 194, a; 195, a.

Commands: in 1st person pl., 217; in 2nd person, 219; in 3rd person, 220; in indirect discourse, 267: I, 7, 20; 13, 10. For negative commands see Prohibitions.

Comparatives, declension, 34; occasional meaning, 161.

Comparison, of adj., 39-45; of adverbs, 46; clauses of, 261: I, 32, 11.

Comparative infinitive, 275.

Condemning, verbs of, 108.

Conditions, 249-255:
connectives, 250.
undetermined present or past, 253: I, 31, 44; 34, 6; 40, 24: III, 22, 5.
present or past contrary to fact, 254: I, 34, 5.
more vivid future, 256: I, 31, 7; 35, 12; 40, 9.
mixed, 258.
in indirect discourse, 272: I, 34, 5.
cōndidō, with abl., 145, a: I, 55, 4: III, 9, 12.

Conjugation of verbs: four regular, 67-70; four regular, how distinguished, 69; cāptō, 71: sum, 66; irregular, 77-85; deponents, 73; semi-deponents, 74; defective, 86; periphrastic, 75, 76; impersonal, 87.

cōnśuēvi, use of tenses, 193, I, a; 194, a: 195, a.

Consonants, sounds of, 6; doubled, 6, a; division of, into syllables, 8.
cōnśūlō, constr., 114, b.

Contracted verb forms, 72: I, 12, 10; 18, 12: II, 3, 6; 14, 13; 17, 6.

Convicting, verbs of, constr., 108.

Coördinate relative clause, 176, a: I, 11; 2, 13; 13, 12; 13, II, 4, 7, 8, 3, 12, 4; in indirect discourse, 269, a: II, 7, 11.

Council of war, 26: III, 3, 5.
cum, used as conj., 238-242; causal or adversative, 239: I, 2, 5; 9, 2; 14, 16: II, 3, 7; 11, 3; 22, 4; temporal, rules, 240; indic. temporal, 241: III, 14, 15: IV, 17, 10: V, 19, 7: VI, 12, 1; subjunctive temporal, 242: I, 4, 8; 7, 1; 12, 13; 25, 7: II, 1, 1; 3, 4; 6, 8.

cum primum, 237.

D


Dative:
with adjectives, 106, b; 122: I, 1, 9; 3, 14; 9, 6: II, 2, 5; 3, 2; 9, 6.
double, see Purpose.
with fidem habēre, 115, a: I, 19, 15; 41, 11.

indirect object with compound verbs, 116: I, 2, 5: 5, 13; 10, 7; 43, 16: II, 6, 5: 9, 10; 14, 6.
indirect object with intr. verbs, 115: I, 2, 3; 3, 9, 8: II, 1, 11; 10, 18; 16, 5.
indirect object with tr. verbs, 114: I, 3, 15: 4, 10, 1; II, 2, 5; 4, 8; 10, 19.
with passive verbs, 114, c; 115, d; 116, II, c: I, 4, 1; 22, 8.
of possessor, 117: I, 7, 9; 10, 1; 11, 12; 34, 5: II, 6, 9; 15, 9; 16, 9.
of purpose, 119: I, 18, 27; 25, 5; 33, 2: II, 7, 3; 9, 13; 19, 6.
of reference, 120: I, 3, 6: 5, 8; 20, 20; 31, 4, II, 11, 17; 26, 14; 31, 9.

Declensions, of nouns, how distinguished, 14; nouns, 15-30; adjectives, 31-39; pronouns, 51-62; cardinals, 48, 49.

Defective verbs, 86.


Demonstratives, declension, 54-68; uses, 169-171.

Deponent verbs, 73; with abl., see abl.

Desire, subjunctive of, 184, a; in commands and prohibitions, 217; 230; in wishes, 231; in purpose clauses, 228; in substantive clauses, 228.
INDEX

Determining clause, 231: III, 4, 1; 22, 5:
IV, 29, 11.

deus, declension of, 16.
dexter, comparison, 42.
dies, gender, 30, a: I, 4, 3.
dignus with abl., 149, a.
Diphthongs, sounds of, 5.
Direct discourse, 265.
dissimiulō, comparison of, 41; with gen.,
106, b; with dat., 122.
Distributives, 47.
dō, 85.
domus, declension and gender, 29, a;
29, d.
dōneco, with ind., 234, b; 235, a; with
subj., 235, b.
dōnō, constr., 114, a.
doubting, expressions of, with subj., 229,
d.
Druuids, VI, 13, 7.
dubitā, with subj., 229, d: II, 2, 8.
dum: ind. temporal clauses, 234; 235, a:
I, 27, 7; 29, 1; 46, 1: III, 21, 1; subj.
temporal clauses, 235, b: IV, 13, 4; 23,
10; proviso clauses, 260.
dummodo, with subj., 260.
duo, 49.
E
Emotion, verbs of, with gen., 109: IV,
5, 9.
Enclitics, effect on accent, 12; cum,
with pers. pron., 51, c; cum, with reflec.
pron., 52, a: I, 5, 5; cum, with rel.
pron., 60, b: I, 1, 10; cum, with interro.
g. pron., 61, b: nam, with interro.
g. pron., 61, a.
enim, 243.
eō, conj. of, 84.
eō ... quō, 148, a: I, 14, 3.
etenim, 243.
et al, with ind., 246.

F
Fearing, expressions of, 228, b: I, 19, 11;
27, 9; 39, 24: II, 1, 7; 26, 5.
ferō, 81.
fidō, with abl., 143, a.
Filling, verbs and adj. of, with abl.,
143, a.
flō, 83.
Fleet, 36, 37.

fore ut, for future inf., 205, b: I, 42, 8.
Forgetting, verbs of, with gen., 107: I,
14, 7.
frētus, with abl., 143, a: III, 21, 1.
fruor, with abl., 145; use of gerundive,
289, I, a.
fungor, with abl., 145; use of gerundive,
289, I, a.
Future tense, 192; use, 199.
Future perfect tense, 195; equivalent
to future, 195, a; use, 199.

G

gallic, 24.
Gallic campaigns, Importance, 9; effect,
9, 10.
Gauls, first appearance in history, 20;
decline of their power, 20; invasion of
Cimbri and Teutoni, 21; their civiliza.
tion, 22.
Gaul factions, 22; geographical divi.
sions in Caesar's time, 21.
Gender, general rules, 13; exceptions,
15, a; 16, a; 29, a; 30, a; of 1st declen.
sion, 15, a; of 2nd declension, 16, a: of
3rd declension, 28; of 4th declension,
29, a; of 5th declension, 30, a.
Generalizing, relative, 60, a: cum
clauses, 241, b: 242, b: I, 25, 7: III,
14, 15: IV, 17, 10: V, 19, 7; relative
clauses, 250.
Genitive:
with adj. 106: I, 14, 4; 18, 8; 21, 9:
III, 21, 9.
appositional, 97, a.
with causa and grātiā, 99, a.
descriptive, 100; 104: I, 5, 7; 8, 4: 25,
11: II, 5, 20; 10, 2; 15, 12.
of material, 102: I, 24, 4.
odefinite, 98: I, 2, 2; 4, 3; 14, 8; 30,
3: II, 4, 7; 7, 4; 21, 4.
partitive, 101: I, 1, 5: 3, 7, 5: II,
2, 4: 4, 19; 10, 5.
possessive, 99; 103: I, 1, 13; 2, 7, 10,
15: II, 1, 9; 2, 11, 7, 8: IV, 5, 4.
subjective, 98: I, 30, 3: II, 1, 3: 4, 5:
11, 15.
with verbs, 107-111: I, 3, 22: 13, 11,
Gerund, 287; 289-294: I, 2, 3; 3, 2; 7, 18:
II, 7, 4; 9, 3; 10, 10.
INDEX

Gerundive, 285, II; 288-294; I, 3, 6; 5, 7; 16; 44, 9; II, 7, 5; 9, 13; 10, 8; III, 4; 12; 6, 4; 14, 13.

ACLUS, 24.

Acclus, position, 99, a.

H

HIE, declension, 54; uses, 163; 170, a.

Hinder, verbs of, 238, c.

Historical, tenses, 205; present, 190, a: I, 3, 7, 5, 2, 10, 11: II, 5, 5, 6, 12, 14: infinitive, 231: I, 16, 2: II, 30, 6: III, 4, 3.

Hollow square (orbus), 32.

Hoping, verbs of, 230, c.

Hostages, (obedientes), I, 9, 10.

I

I, consonant and vowel, 5-7.

Iacito, in composition, 7.

IAM DIM, etc., with pres., 190, b; with impf., 191, b: I, 31, 10: III, 5, 1.

Idem, 58.

Ide, 288.

Iondoens, constr., 132, a.

II, declension, 56; use, 170, a.

Imperative mood, 185; in commands, 218; in indirect discourse, 267: 7, 20; 13, 10; 26, 17.


Impar, constr., 115, b.

Imperative verbs, 87; with substantive clauses of result, 229, b: I, 2, 12: II, 11, 5, 17, 11; with infinitives, 278; gen. with, 109: IV, 5, 9.

Implied indirect discourse, 273: I, 16, 1; 16, 14; 22, 9; 22, 8: II, 2, 6.

Indefinite pronouns, declension, 62; uses of, 174-178: I, 7, 19; 18, 21; 20, II, 14, 13; 22, 5.

Indicative mode, 183; in statements, 206; in questions, 209; in relative clauses, 231; 232; in causal clauses, 244; in adversative clauses, 248; in temporal clauses, 254; 235, a; 236, a; 227; 241; in conditions, 253; 254, a; 255.

Indigus, constr. with, 149, a.

Indirect discourse:

discussion of, 265: I, 13, 7.

conditional sentences in, 272: I, 34, 5.

côdinate relative clauses in, 269, a: II, 17, 11.

declarative sentences in, 266: I, 1, 14:

2, 5; 7, 11: II, 1, 4; 2, 8; 6, 13.

imperative sentences in, 267: I, 7, 20:

13, 11; 26, 17.

interrogative sentences in, 268: I, 3,

13, 14; 8; 44, 24.

subordinate clauses in, 269: I, 3, 17:

6, 11; 10, 4: II, 1, 6: 3, 9; 10, 13.

Indirect questions, 262-264: I, 8, 13:

12, 3, 15, 4.

Infantry, 27.

Infinitive, 186; 275-281; tenses of, 206:

I, 31, 11; 31, 36; 25, 18: componen-
tary, 275; historical, 281: I, 16, 2: II,

30, 6: III, 4, 3: as subject, 276: clause,

186; 277-280; in indirect discourse,

266: I, 1, 14; 5, 7; 1: II, 1, 4; 2, 8;

6, 13.

Intensive pronoun, (ipse), declension,

59; use, 172.

Interest, with genitive, 110: II, 5, 5.

Interrogative pronoun, declension, 61;

uses 212; 264, a.

Interrogative particles, 213; 264, b.

Ipse, declension, 59; use, 172.

Irregular verbs, conjugation, 66; 77-85.

Is, declension, 57; use, 171.

Iste, declension, 55; use, 169.

Iuppiter, declension, 27.

J

Judicial action, verbs of, 106.

L

Lacessó, constr., 143, a.

Legitus, 25; Plate II, 2.

Legion, number of men in, 23; baggage

of, 27; officers of, 25, 26; organization

of, 23; standards and signals of, 26.

Legionary soldiers, clothing and arms,

24; baggage, 25. See also Plate I, 3.

Locative, of 1st declension, 15, b; of

second declension, 16, b, used to ex-

press place, 181, a: I, 16, 13; 30, 4;

28, 6.

Lórica, 24.

M

Magis, comparison with, 45.

Magnus, comparison, 42.

Malis, 52.

Malus, comparison, 42.
INDEX

March line of, 31; length of, 31.
mare, declension, 25, a.
maximē, comparison with, 40.
memini, conjugation, 36; with gen., 107.
meatu, constr., 114, b.
mille, milla, 48.
minus, constr., 139, b: II, 7, 8.
misero, constr., 109.
miseret, constr., 109.
modo, with subj., 260.
Modes, 132-185. See also Indicative, Subjunctive, and Imperative.
multus, comparison, 42.
musculus, 34, 35.
Musical instruments, 27.

N
nam, 243; see also Enclitics.
-ne, 213, a; 264, b.
ne, 188, b; conj.: with purpose clause,
225, b: I, 4, 7; II 5, 7; with substantive purpose clause, 228: I, 19, 11;
27, 9: II, 1, 7; 24, 5: in commands and prohibitions, 218-220.

né . . . quidem, 188, b.
nece, 264, c.
Negatives, 188.
neque, 188, a.
nescīō quis, 178.
nēve, with subjunctive of desire, 188, b.
nisi, 250.
nitor, constr., 143, a: I, 13, 16.
nōll, or nōlit, to express prohibition,
nōlō, 82.
Nominative, as subject, 96: in predicate,
95, a: I, 1, 3; 2, 1.
nōn, 188, a.
Nones, 298.
nōnne, 213, b.
Nouns, 1st declension, 15; 2nd declension, 16; 3rd declension, 17-27; 4th declension, 29; 5th declension, 30; gender of, 13; 15; a: 16, b: 19, a: 30, a: predicate, 95, a: I, 1, 3; appositive, 96, b: I, 1, 4, 8, 10, 6, 2: II, 2, 3, 3, 11; 9, 11.
nōvi, translation of tenses 193, I, a;
194, a; 196, a.
num, 213, c; 264, b.
Numerals, 47-50.

O
Object, direct, see accusative; indirect, see dative.
obliverter, with gen., 107: I, 14, 7.
oūl, 86.
onager, 36: Plate III, 4.
Optative subjunctive, 184, a. See also wishes.
Ordinal numerals, 47.
ōs, declension, 27.

P
paenitet, with gen., 109: IV, 5, 9.
Parenthetical relative clauses, 232.
Participles, used attributively, 157; used predicatively, 157; used substantively, 188; tenses of, 205; used for clause 233: I, 4, 3; future active, 235; I; future passive, 235, II: I, 13, 2;
19, 3: III, 11, 10: IV, 22, 18: V, 1, 4;
23, 9; see also Periphrastic; perfect passive 236: I, 15, 3, 18, 9; 44, 38: II, 4, 9: present, 234; see also Ablative absolute.
parvus, comparison, 42.
Passive voice, 181; intransitive verbs in, 115; dative retained with, 114, c:
115, d; 116, II, c: I, 4, 1; 22, 8: constr. of passive verbs of saying, 279, a.
Perfect tense, with force of pres., 193, I, a: historical, 193, II.
Periphrastic conj., 75, 76; active, 235; I; passive, 235, II, a: I, 11, 13, 14, 7;
23, 4: II, 17, 21: 20, 1: 31, 8: with dat. of agent, 118; with abl. of agent, 118.
Personal pronouns, declension, 51; uses, 162; as partitive or objective genitives, 51, b; with similis and dissimilis, 106, b.
persuädeō, constr., 115: I, 2, 3, 3, 9:
II, 10, 18; 16, 5.
Phalanx, I, 24, 11.
pliūnum, 24.
piget, with gen., 109.
Place, from which, 124, a: I, 5, 8, 6, 1:
10, 10; in which, 151: I, 6, 8; 7, 5, 15,
5; 39, 17: to which, 151: I, 5, 6; 7, 4,
23, 5: II, 10, 12; 11, 3, 18, 2.
plēnus, with gen., 106, a.
INDEX

pluperfect tense, 194; with force of imperfect, 194, a: III, 1, 6; in narration, 197, 198.
plús, declension, 84, a; constr., 139, b.
Pompey, 14.
Possessive pronouns, declension, 53; used for possessive gen., 99; position with causa or grátia, 99, a; with interest, 110; omission of, 167.
possum, 86.
póstquam, with ind., 237: I, 24, 1; 37, 5; II, 5, 12; as two words, 236, c.
Potential subjunctive, 184, b: 208; 209.
potior, with abl., 145: I, 2, 5; with gen., 111: I, 8, 22; use of gerundive, 269, I a: III, 8, 4.
praefectus fabrum, 25.
presasitum, 245.
Prepositions, with abl., 153, a; with acc., 155; with acc. or abl., 154; verbs compounded with, 116, I: 124, c: 127.
Present tense 190; historical present, 190, a: I, 3, 7, 5, 2: 10, 1: II, 5, 5, 6, 12, 12: 14: with iam, etiam and iam
Principal parts of verbs, 65.
Principal tenses, 203.
priusquam, with ind., 236, a; with subj. 236, b: II, 12, 1: III, 10, 9, 18, 15: IV, 14, 2: VII, 7, 11, 1; as two words, 236, c III, 28, 8.
.éronouns, 51-63: 163-178; in indirect discourse, 271; see also Demonstrative, Generalizing Indefinite, Intensive, Interrogative, Personal, Possessive, Reflexive, and Relative.
Pronation, 1-12; of proper names, 1, 1.
propior, comparison of, 43, with acc., 122, b.
propius, with acc., 122, b: I, 46, 2: IV, 3, 3.
prósum, 79.
Proviso clause 260.
próvinda, 9.
proximus, with acc., 122, b: I, 1, 9; 56, 3: III, 7, 7.
proximó, with acc., 122, b.
pudet, with gen., 109.
quesor, 25.
quam, with comparatives, 189, a; with superlatives, 161, a.
quam diù, with ind., 234, b.
quam si, with subj., 261.
quamquam, with ind., 234.
quamvis, with subj., 247.
quando, in causal clause, 244.
Quantity, of syllables, 9; of vowels 1-8.
quasi, with subj., 261.
quí, relative, 60; indefinite, 62; interrogative, 61. See also Relative.
quia, in causal clause, 244.
quelcumque, 60, a.
quidam, 62, b.
quilibet, 62.
quispiam, 62, 176.
quisque, 62.
quīs, 60, a.
INDEX

quilibus, 62.
quō, in purpose clauses, 225, a, 2: 1, 8, 6: II, 17, 15: V, 8, 18.
quod, with ind., 234, b; 235, a; with subj., 235, b.
quod, in causal clauses, 244: I, 1, 7; 2, 6; 7, 12; 16, 14; II, 1, 13; 8, 8; 15, 2; 30, 7; in substantive clauses, 245, 246, a: I, 14, 8; 19, 2; 25, 6; 36, 14; 40, 36; II, 10, 18; 17, 12; 30, 10.
quōminus, with substantive clause of desire, 226, c: I 31, 24: IV, 22, 16.
quoniam, in causal clause, 244.

R

Reciprocal expression, 166.
réfert, constr., 110.
Reflexive pronouns, declension, 55; use, 163; to express reciprocal idea, 166; direct reflexive, 164: I, 30, 6; 33, 14; 40, 11; indirect reflexive, 165: I, 30, 3; 33, 11; 40, 5.
Relative clauses, adverbial, 247: V, 4, 13; causal 245: II, 15, 13; 31, 4: IV, 23, 14; characteristic, 230: I, 6, 4; 14, 6: 19, 6; 23, 7; 29, 4; 31, 26; 39, 12: II, 4, 7; 16, 9; 21, 6: IV, 34, 9; 36, 3; conditions, 250; coordinate, 173, a: I, 1, 11; 2, 13; 11, 13: II, 4, 7; 5, 3; 13, 4; coordinate in indirect discourse, 269, a: II, 7, 11: determining, 231: III, 4, 1; 22, 5: IV, 29, 11: parenthetical, 232; of purpose 225, a: I 1, 16, 14: II, 2, 3; result, see Characterizing.
Relative pronouns, declension, 60; agreement of, 173; see also Relative clauses.
remanscor, constr. 107: I, 13, 11.
Repeated action, 191, a.
Result clauses 226: I 6, 4; 11, 6; 12, 2: II, 3, 13; 18, 6; 21, 12: sequence of tenses in, 204, a: II, 21, 12: V, 18, 3; substantive, 229: I, 3, 12; 10, 5; 13, 4: 31, 51: 33, 15: II, 3, 14: 4, 8; 17, 11.
Rhetorical question, 211.

S

scorpiō, 36.
sōtum, 24.

Semi-deponent verb, 74.
semen, declension, 27.
Sentences, defined, 58; simple, 99; complex 91; compound, 90.
Separation, see Dative and Ablative.
Sequence of tenses, 202, 203: I, 12, 2; 13, 7; 19, 1: II, 12, 14; 17, 2; exceptions to, 204: II, 21, 12: V, 15, 3.
si, in conditions, 250, see also Conditions; meaning to see whether, 264, b.
signum, 27.
similis, with gen., 106, b; with dat., 122; comparison of, 41.
simul ac, with ind., 237.
sin, with conditions, 250.
Spain, Caesar's idea of location, V, 13, 5.
Subjunctive:
by attraction, 274: I, 19, 2; 48, 5: II, 11, 15; 27, 2: III, 4, 1; 22, 5.
of desire, 184, a; in commands and prohibitions, 217; 220; in wishes, 231; in purpose clauses, 225; in substantive clauses, 223.
of contingent futurity, 184, b; in conclusion of conditional sentences, 207; 254; 257; 259; in questions, 209; in characterizing clauses, 230, a, b.
of fact, 184, c; in result clauses, 226; in substantive clauses, 229; in characterizing clauses, 230, a, b.
See also ac, si, antequam, cum, dōneō, dum, dummodo, modo, nē, nēve, priusquam, quam si, quamvis, quasi, quin, quō, quod, quōminus, tamquam, ut, and ut si.
Subordinate clauses, see Clauses.
Substantive clauses, see Indirect questions, Infinitive clauses, Purpose, quod, and Result.
Substantives, agreement of, 95.
Sulla, 11, 12.
sum, conjugation, 66; compounds of, 77-80.
Supine, acc., 295: I, 11, 4; 18, 17; 30, 2; abl., 296: IV, 30, 6.
suus and sui, declension, 52; reflexives, 163-168.
Syllables, 9; quantity of, 9.
INDEX

T

taedet, with gen., 100.
tametsi, with ind., 246.
tamquam, with subj., 261.
Temporal clauses, 233-242; see cum, dum, postquam, priusquam, quoad, ubi, ut.
Tenses, stems of, 64; of ind., 190-199; of subj., 200, 201; of infinitive and participle, 205; sequence of, 202-204; see also Sequence of tenses, Present, Imperfect, Future, Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future perfect.
testudō, 33; Plate III, 3.
testudō aristēria, 35; Plate III, 2.
Cimbri and Teutoni, invasion of, 21.
Time, at which, 152: I, 3, 14; 4, 3; 13, 13: II, 3, 10; 4, 18; 6, 3; duration of, 130; 152, a: I, 3, 11; 26, 13: II, 29, 14; see also Temporal clauses.
trēs, declension, 49.
Tower, 33; Plate III, 1.
tribunus, 26.
Triumvirate, 13; IV, 1, 1.
thā, 51.

U

nullus, 177.
minus, declension, 32.
ut, in purpose clause, 225, a, 1: I, 3, 4: II, 9, 4; in result clause, 226: I, 6, 4; 11, 6; 12, 2: II, 3, 13; 18, 6; 21, 12; in substantive clauses of purpose, 228, a, b: I, 2, 4; 3, 12; 7, 11; 39, 24; in substantive clauses of result, 229, b: I, 2, 12; 10, 5; 13, 4: II, 4, 8; 17, 11; in adversative clause, 247: III, 9, 16; omitted, 228, a: I, 30, 13: III, 11, 2.
ut nōn, in result clauses, 226; in substantive result clauses, 229.

ut sē, with subjunctive, 261.
utinam, with subjunctive of desire, 221.

V

vāgina, 24.
velut, with subj., 261.
velut sē, with subj., 261: I, 32, 11.
Verbs, 1st conj., 67; 2nd conj., 68; 3rd conj., 69; 3rd conj., in -15, 71; 4th conj., 70; irregular, 66; 77-85; deponent, 73; semi-deponent, 74; defective, 86; impersonal, 87; act. periphrastic, 75; pass. periphrastic, 76; principal parts, 65; three stems of, 64; agreement of, 179, 180; voices of, 181; modes, 182-185; tenses, 189-205; contracted forms, 72: I, 12, 10, 18, 12: II, 8, 6, 14, 13, 17, 6; singular with plural subject, 180, b: I, 1, 5; intransitive in passive voice, 118, d: I, 33, 18; 40, 7: III, 14, 2.
Verbal adjective, 187.
Verbal nouns, 187.
vēscor with abl., 145; gerundive of, 269, I, a.
vīnes, 35.
vīs, declension, 27.
Vocative, 132.
Voices, 181; see Active and Passive.
Volitive subjunctive, 184, a.
vōlō, 82.
Vowels, sounds of, 4; quantity of, 1-3.

W

Wishes, subjunctive in, 221; introduced by utinam, 221.
Wall, Gallic, 32, 33.
RETURN TO the circulation desk of any
University of California Library
or to the
NORTHERN REGIONAL LIBRARY FACILITY
Bldg. 400, Richmond Field Station
University of California
Richmond, CA 94804-4698

ALL BOOKS MAY BE RECALLED AFTER 7 DAYS
• 2-month loans may be renewed by calling
(510) 642-6753
• 1-year loans may be recharged by bringing
books to NRLF
• Renewals and recharges may be made 4
days prior to due date.

DUE AS STAMPED BELOW

SEP 25 1996

12,000 (11/95)
Contract Price = $0.87 cents
Exchange Price = $0.43 cents

The price marked hereon is fixed by the State, and any deviation therefrom should be reported to the State Superintendent of Public Instruction.